

**RAIL PUBLIC REGISTER COPY**  
**REDACTED IN ACCORDANCE WITH FOIA 2000**

Dated

19 May 2021

- (1) The Secretary of State for Transport
- (2) First TransPennine Express Limited

**National Rail Contract**

**WITHDRAWN**

**TransPennine Express**

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

PARTIES .....	15
BACKGROUND .....	15
OBJECTIVES .....	15
1. COMMENCEMENT .....	15
2. DURATION OF THE NATIONAL RAIL CONTRACT .....	16
3. GENERAL OBLIGATIONS.....	16
4. RAIL SERVICES .....	16
5. NOTICES .....	16
6. ENTIRE AGREEMENT .....	18
SIGNATURE PAGE .....	19
CHAPTER 1 – LEADERSHIP AND MANAGEMENT .....	21
CHAPTER 1.1 - ORGANISATION AND MANAGEMENT.....	22
1. CORPORATE INFORMATION .....	22
2. CHANGE OF CONTROL AND FACILITATION FEE .....	22
3. MAINTENANCE OF RECORDS .....	23
4. RIGHT TO INSPECT .....	24
5. PERIODIC UPDATE REPORTS.....	24
6. CONTRACT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM .....	25
7. IDENTIFICATION OF KEY PERSONNEL AND PROVISION OF ORGANISATION CHART .....	25
8. CONTRACT PERFORMANCE MEETINGS .....	25
CHAPTER 1.2 - STRATEGIES AND PLANS .....	27
1. SMALL AND MEDIUM-SIZED ENTERPRISES.....	27
2. BUSINESS CONTINUITY PLAN .....	27
3. SUICIDE PREVENTION PLAN .....	27
4. SAFEGUARDING STRATEGY .....	27
5. INCIDENT RESPONSE PLAN .....	28
6. CYBER SECURITY INFORMATION SHARING.....	29
7. MODERN SLAVERY, CHILD LABOUR AND INHUMANE TREATMENT.....	29
CHAPTER 2 -PEOPLE .....	31
CHAPTER 2.1 – DIVERSITY AND INCLUSION AND TRAINING AND DEVELOPMENT.....	32
1. DIVERSITY AND INCLUSION .....	32
2. APPRENTICESHIPS.....	34
CHAPTER 2.2– RAIL WORKFORCE.....	36
1 NOTIFICATION OF THE SECRETARY OF STATE .....	36
2. REWARD AND PEOPLE PRINCIPLES.....	37
3. TERMS OF EMPLOYMENT.....	37
4. IN-SCOPE MATTERS.....	38
5. INDUSTRIAL ACTION.....	39
6. REFORM .....	40
7. DUTIES OF THE OPERATOR .....	40
8. COOPERATION WITH SECRETARY OF STATE AND RELEVANT EMPLOYER.....	41
9. DISALLOWABLE COSTS .....	41
10. WORKERS.....	41
11. CHANGES IN NUMBERS AND TOTAL COST OF EMPLOYEES .....	41
CHAPTER 3 - COLLABORATION .....	44
1. DUTY OF COOPERATION.....	45

2.	NR DATA SHARING STRATEGY .....	45
3.	SHARING FURTHER DATA WITH NETWORK RAIL.....	45
4.	SAFETY INFORMATION .....	46
5.	BRITISH TRANSPORT POLICE.....	46
6.	CO-OPERATION WITH WELSH MINISTERS .....	47
7.	CO-OPERATION WITH SCOTTISH MINISTERS .....	47
	CHAPTER 4 – RAIL SERVICES .....	49
	CHAPTER 4.1 –SERVICE DEVELOPMENT .....	50
1.	TRAIN SERVICE REQUIREMENT .....	50
2.	TRAIN FORMATION CAPACITY PLAN .....	50
3.	CONSULTATION ON ALTERATIONS TO THE TIMETABLE .....	51
4.	TIMETABLE DEVELOPMENT RIGHTS .....	51
5.	CERTIFICATION AND NOTIFICATION BY OPERATOR OF EXERCISING TIMETABLE DEVELOPMENT RIGHTS .....	52
6.	PLANNING TO MEET TARGET PASSENGER DEMAND .....	53
7.	RESTRICTIONS RELATING TO RAIL SERVICES .....	54
8.	DEVELOPMENT OF PROPOSALS FOR PASSENGER SERVICE ENHANCEMENTS.....	54
9.	PROCEDURAL ARRANGEMENTS AND TIMESCALES .....	55
10.	OBLIGATIONS IN RELATION TO OTHER TRAIN OPERATORS .....	55
11.	PROVISIONS RELATING TO ACCESS AGREEMENTS AND PROPERTY LEASES .....	56
12.	THE TIMETABLE AND NETWORK RAIL’S WORKING TIMETABLE.....	56
13.	SUBCONTRACTING ANY PASSENGER SERVICES .....	57
14.	BOXING DAY SERVICES.....	57
15.	PASSENGER NUMBERS INFORMATION.....	58
16.	MANUAL PASSENGER COUNTS .....	59
17.	TECHNOLOGY FOR OBTAINING THE INFORMATION REFERRED TO IN PARAGRAPH 15.2.....	59
	CHAPTER 4.2 - OPERATING OBLIGATIONS.....	61
1.	DAILY OPERATING OBLIGATIONS .....	61
2.	TIMETABLING AND TRAIN PLANNING COMPLIANCE INVESTIGATION AND CONTRAVENTION .....	61
3.	TIMETABLE CHANGES PROPOSED BY NETWORK RAIL .....	61
4.	TIMETABLE CHANGES PROPOSED BY THE OPERATOR .....	62
5.	TIMETABLE CHANGES AND TRAIN FORMATION CAPACITY PLAN CHANGES REQUESTED BY THE SECRETARY OF STATE .....	63
6.	OBLIGATIONS OF THE OPERATOR IN THE EVENT OF DISRUPTION TO RAILWAY PASSENGER SERVICES .....	63
7.	OBLIGATION TO USE ALL REASONABLE ENDEAVOURS UNDER CHAPTER 4.2 .....	64
8.	OBLIGATIONS RELATING TO OPERATING PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT .....	65
9.	IMPROVING ACCURACY OF FUTURE TIMETABLES AND OPERATIONAL PLANNING ...	66
10.	ROYAL TRAIN .....	66
11.	ANCILLARY SERVICES .....	67
12.	RESTRICTIONS ON CLOSURES OF RAILWAY PASSENGER SERVICES OR RAILWAY FACILITIES.....	67
	CHAPTER 4.3 – THE ROLLING STOCK.....	69
1.	THE COMPOSITION/DEPLOYMENT OF THE TRAIN FLEET .....	69
2.	CHANGES TO THE TRAIN FLEET .....	69
3.	TRAIN MAINTENANCE .....	69
	APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 4.3 - THE COMPOSITION OF THE TRAIN FLEET .....	71
	CHAPTER 4.4 - OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE.....	74

1.	DEFINITIONS, TRACK ACCESS AGREEMENT, AMENDMENTS TO OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE TARGETS AND NOTICE OF PERFORMANCE RESULTS .....	74
2.	REPORTING REQUIREMENTS.....	74
3.	TOC ON SELF CANCELLATION CALCULATION .....	75
4.	TOC MINUTES DELAY CALCULATIONS .....	75
5.	SHORT FORMATIONS .....	76
6.	CALCULATIONS.....	77
7.	SERVICE RECOVERY PLANS AND FORCE MAJEURE.....	77
8.	CONSEQUENCES FOR POOR PERFORMANCE – ENFORCEMENT BENCHMARKS .....	78
9.	CONSEQUENCES FOR POOR PERFORMANCE.....	78
10.	ALLOCATION OF DISPUTED CANCELLATIONS/DISPUTED PARTIAL CANCELLATIONS .....	80
11.	ALLOCATION OF DISPUTED MINUTES DELAY .....	80
12.	OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE INFORMATION .....	81
	CHAPTER 5 – THE CUSTOMER .....	86
	CHAPTER 5.1 – CUSTOMER INFORMATION.....	87
1.	CUSTOMER REPORT .....	87
2.	CUSTOMER SERVICE AND SATISFACTION DATA.....	88
3.	PUBLICATION OF PERFORMANCE DATA.....	89
4.	PUBLICATION OF COMPLAINTS AND FAULTS HANDLING DATA.....	90
5.	PASSENGER’S CHARTER .....	91
6.	COMPENSATION .....	92
7.	PUBLISHING THE TIMETABLE .....	92
8.	ROUTE MAPS .....	93
	CHAPTER 5.2 – CUSTOMER SCHEMES.....	95
1.	CONSULTATIONS.....	95
2.	COMMUNITY RAIL PARTNERSHIPS.....	95
	APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 5.2 – COMMUNITY RAIL PARTNERSHIPS.....	97
	CHAPTER 5.3 - ACCESSIBILITY AND INCLUSIVITY .....	98
1.	RELATIONSHIP WITH OTHER OBLIGATIONS RELATING TO DISABLED PERSONS.....	98
2.	PHYSICAL ALTERATIONS AND ACCESSIBILITY OF STATIONS .....	98
3.	DEALING WITH CLAIMS RELATING TO STATIONS.....	99
4.	SPECIFIC ADDITIONAL OBLIGATIONS RELATING TO DISABLED PERSONS .....	100
5.	ANNUAL ACCESSIBILITY UPDATE .....	101
6.	ACCESSIBILITY DIRECTOR AND ACCESSIBILITY MANAGER.....	101
7.	ACCESSIBILITY PANEL .....	102
8.	ENHANCED DISABILITY AWARENESS TRAINING .....	102
9.	ACCESSIBLE FORMATS OF PASSENGER FACING INFORMATION .....	102
10.	DIVERSITY IMPACT ASSESSMENTS .....	103
11.	STATION ACCESSIBILITY DATA COLLECTION.....	103
	APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 5.3 - ACCESSIBLE TRANSPORT ARRANGEMENTS.....	104
	CHAPTER 5.4 – CUSTOMER BENEFITS .....	105
1.	SMART TICKETING.....	105
2.	RETAIL.....	106
3.	CYCLES.....	107
4.	BABY CHANGING FACILITIES .....	107
5.	STATION TOILET ACCESS .....	107
6.	SECURITY AT STATIONS.....	107
7.	CCTV .....	108

APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 5.4- LIST OF STATIONS AND CAR PARKS WITH ACCREDITATION	109
CHAPTER 5.5 – CUSTOMER EXPERIENCE PERFORMANCE.....	110
PART 1: SERVICE QUALITY REGIME.....	110
1. PURPOSE.....	110
PART 1A - SERVICE QUALITY MANAGEMENT PROCESS.....	110
2. SERVICE QUALITY MANAGEMENT .....	110
PART 1B – INSPECTIONS AND AUDITS .....	112
3. OPERATOR SERVICE QUALITY INSPECTIONS .....	112
4. SERVICE QUALITY RE-INSPECTION AND SERVICE QUALITY TRAINS RECTIFICATION EVIDENCE.....	114
5. INDEPENDENT SERVICE QUALITY AUDIT .....	115
6. SECRETARY OF STATE’S RIGHT OF AUDIT.....	116
7. ACCESS RIGHTS .....	116
PART 1C - CALCULATIONS OF PASS RATES AND CALCULATIONS RELATED TO THE SERVICE QUALITY REGIME.....	117
8. CALCULATION OF PASS RATES.....	117
9. CALCULATIONS RELATED TO THE SERVICE QUALITY REGIME .....	119
PART 1D - PUBLICATION AND REPORTING REQUIREMENTS.....	119
10. PUBLICATION OF PASS RATES.....	119
11. REPORTING REQUIREMENTS.....	119
12. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS FOR SERVICE QUALITY RE-INSPECTIONS AND SERVICE QUALITY TRAINS RECTIFICATION EVIDENCE .....	120
13. MAINTENANCE OF RECORDS .....	120
PART 1E - REMEDIES .....	120
14. CONSEQUENCES OF A FAILED AUDIT.....	120
15. MATERIAL DISCREPANCIES.....	121
16. CONTRAVENTION OF THE NATIONAL RAIL CONTRACT IN RESPECT OF MATERIAL DISCREPANCIES .....	122
17. CONSEQUENCES OF PERFORMANCE FALLING BELOW THE SQR BENCHMARK.....	122
18. VARIATIONS TO THE SERVICE QUALITY REGIME .....	123
APPENDIX 1 TO PART 1 OF CHAPTER 5.5 - SERVICE QUALITY SCHEDULES .....	125
PART 1 – SQR STATIONS .....	125
PART 2 – SQR TRAINS.....	140
PART 3 – SQR CUSTOMER SERVICE .....	149
APPENDIX 2 TO PART 1 OF CHAPTER 5.5 - SERVICE QUALITY AREAS/SERVICE QUALITY INDICATORS/WEIGHTINGS .....	151
PART 1 – SQR STATIONS .....	151
PART 2 – SQR TRAINS.....	152
PART 3 – SQR CUSTOMER SERVICE .....	153
PART 2: - NRPS AND WAVELENGTH.....	154
19. CONDUCT OF NATIONAL RAIL PASSENGER SURVEYS .....	154
20. PERFORMANCE REVIEW .....	154
21. NRPS IMPROVEMENT PROPOSALS.....	155
22. WAVELENGTH.....	155
CHAPTER 6 - ENVIRONMENT AND SUSTAINABILITY.....	159
1. ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION .....	159
2. AIR QUALITY MONITORING AND IMPROVEMENT/NOT USED.....	160
3. SUSTAINABILITY .....	161
4. MEASUREMENT OF TRACTION ENERGY USAGE .....	161

APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 6 - ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION.....	162
1. ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT MONITORING DATASET .....	162
CHAPTER 7 – FINANCIAL OBLIGATIONS, INCENTIVES AND SCORECARDS .....	164
CHAPTER 7.1 - CONTRACT PAYMENTS.....	165
1. CONTRACT PAYMENTS.....	165
2. PAYMENT OF CONTRACT PAYMENTS .....	166
3. INTEREST.....	166
4. CONTRACT PAYMENT ADJUSTMENTS AND DISPUTES .....	167
5. NO DOUBLE RECOVERY.....	167
6. FORCE MAJEURE AND PAYMENTS.....	168
7. FORMAT AND CONTENT OF THE COST BUDGET AND FORECAST REVENUE .....	168
8. PERIODIC FINANCE REVIEW MEETINGS .....	168
9. WORKING CAPITAL PAYMENTS .....	174
10. WORKING CAPITAL REPAYMENT .....	175
11. FINAL WORKING CAPITAL ADJUSTMENT.....	175
12. FIXED FEE AND PERFORMANCE BASED FEE .....	176
13. FURTHER SECRETARY OF STATE’S RIGHTS IN RELATION TO ACCOUNTING MATTERS .....	177
14. INDEXATION .....	177
15. FURTHER OBLIGATIONS OF THE OPERATOR.....	177
16. RELEVANT CONTRACTS.....	178
17. CLOSING ADJUSTMENTS.....	179
18. ADVISORY SUPPORT COSTS PAYMENTS.....	180
APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 7.1 - CALCULATION OF PERIODIC CONTRACT PAYMENTS (PCP)...	181
APPENDIX 2 TO CHAPTER 7.1 - DISALLOWABLE COSTS.....	186
CHAPTER 7.2 – PERFORMANCE BASED FEE.....	190
1. MAXIMUM FEE .....	190
2. CALCULATION OF THE PERFORMANCE BASED FEE .....	190
3. FINANCIAL TARGETS.....	195
4. TARGET AMENDMENTS.....	198
5. EFFECT OF EXTENDED TERM AND ALTERATIONS TO THE PBF ASSESSMENT PERIOD .....	198
6. EXCEPTIONAL EVENTS .....	199
7. INCENTIVE REGIMES .....	201
APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 7.2 – PBF ASSESSMENT PERIOD REVIEW.....	202
APPENDIX 2 TO CHAPTER 7.2 – PBF ASSESSMENT PERIOD REVIEW CHECKLIST .....	206
APPENDIX 3 TO CHAPTER 7.2 – SCORECARD CRITERIA.....	210
APPENDIX 4 TO CHAPTER 7.2 – SCORECARD METHODOLOGY.....	220
APPENDIX 5 TO CHAPTER 7.2 – QUANTIFIED TARGET METHODOLOGY.....	225
APPENDIX 6 TO CHAPTER 7.2 – COMBINED METHODOLOGY.....	234
CHAPTER 7.3 – MANAGEMENT INFORMATION.....	241
1 FINANCIAL INFORMATION .....	241
1.1 ACCOUNTING RECORDS .....	241
1.3 REPORTING PERIOD FINANCIAL INFORMATION .....	242
1.4 QUARTERLY FINANCIAL INFORMATION .....	245
1.5 ANNUAL FINANCIAL INFORMATION .....	246
1.6 ACCOUNTING STANDARDS AND PRACTICES .....	247
1.7 CHANGES TO ACCOUNTING POLICIES.....	248
1.8 PARENT AND AFFILIATE ACCOUNTS AND AFFILIATE TRADING .....	248

1.9	SECRETARY OF STATE AUDIT OF CALCULATIONS AND DATA PROVIDED PURSUANT TO PARAGRAPHS 1.3, 1.4 AND 1.5 .....	249
1.10	ADJUSTMENT AND RESTATEMENT OF THE ANNUAL AUDITED ACCOUNTS .....	250
1.11	ACCESS TO FINANCIAL INFORMATION .....	250
	CHAPTER 7.4 - FINANCIAL COVENANTS AND BONDS .....	251
1.	OBLIGATIONS.....	251
2.	LOCK-UP RESTRICTION .....	251
3.	SEASON TICKET BOND .....	252
	CHAPTER 7.5 – VARIATIONS, CHANGES AND AMENDMENTS .....	256
1.	PURPOSE AND APPLICATION OF CHAPTER.....	256
2.	HOW ANY ADJUSTMENTS TO THE COST BUDGET, RECORD OF ASSUMPTIONS, AMENDABLE FINANCIAL TARGET(S) AND OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE TARGET(S) WILL BE ESTABLISHED .....	256
3.	OTHER IMPACTS OF TRIGGER EVENTS AND AGREED UPDATES.....	259
4.	INFORMATION .....	260
5.	OPERATOR’S ESCROW OBLIGATIONS .....	260
6.	SECRETARY OF STATE’S ESCROW OBLIGATIONS .....	261
7.	ERRORS IN ESCROW DOCUMENTS.....	261
8.	VARIATIONS .....	261
9.	INCREASED LEVEL OF SERVICES.....	262
	APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 7.5 – TRIGGER EVENTS .....	263
	CHAPTER 7.6 – RAILWAYS PENSION SCHEME.....	272
1.	DEFINITIONS.....	272
2.	OPERATOR PENSION SECTIONS .....	272
3.	CLOSED SCHEMES .....	272
4.	VARIATIONS IN BENEFITS, CONTRIBUTIONS AND INVESTMENT.....	272
5.	FUNDING LIABILITIES .....	273
6.	DISCHARGE OF OBLIGATIONS .....	273
7.	TERMINATION OF NATIONAL RAIL CONTRACT .....	274
8.	OPERATOR OBLIGATIONS TO PARTICIPATE IN ANY INVESTIGATION AND REFORM .....	274
9.	INFORMATION POWERS.....	274
10.	PENSION DIRECTIONS BY THE SECRETARY OF STATE .....	274
	APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 7.6- LIST OF SHARED COSTS SECTIONS.....	276
	CHAPTER 7.7 – BUSINESS PLAN.....	277
1	CONTENTS OF THE BUSINESS PLAN .....	277
2	INITIAL BUSINESS PLAN.....	279
3	ANNUAL BUSINESS PLAN PROCESS .....	279
4	BUSINESS PLAN COMMITMENTS.....	280
5	BUSINESS PLAN KPIS.....	282
6	BUSINESS PLAN REVISIONS.....	283
7.	INDUSTRY CHANGE PROJECTS .....	284
8.	CONFLICTS BETWEEN THIS CONTRACT AND THE BUSINESS PLAN .....	285
9.	BUSINESS PLAN INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS .....	285
10.	INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS AND GENERAL PROVISIONS .....	286
11	ACCESS TO IP MATERIALS AND RESOURCES .....	287
12	CONTRACTS ASSOCIATED WITH THE DELIVERY OF BUSINESS PLAN COMMITMENTS .....	287
	CHAPTER 8 – FARES AND REVENUE .....	290
	CHAPTER 8.1 – MARKETING AND REVENUE GROWTH .....	291



PART A – MARKETING AND REVENUE GROWTH.....	291
1. TICKETLESS TRAVEL SURVEYS .....	291
2. TICKETLESS TRAVEL PERFORMANCE .....	291
3. PERCENTAGE ALLOCATIONS.....	292
4. YIELD MANAGEMENT DATA .....	292
CHAPTER 8.2 – FARES.....	294
CHAPTER 8.2.1 – PURPOSE, STRUCTURE AND CONSTRUCTION.....	294
1 PURPOSE OF PROVISIONS RELATING TO CREATING FARES .....	294
2. STRUCTURE OF CHAPTER 8 .....	294
3. REFERENCES TO 'FARE' .....	295
4. FARES DOCUMENTS .....	295
5. SETTING OF CHILD PRICES.....	295
6. NEW STATIONS.....	296
CHAPTER 8.2.2 – OPERATOR’S OBLIGATION TO CREATE FARES .....	297
1. CREATION OF COMMUTER FARES AND PROTECTED FARE.....	297
2. RESTRICTIONS ON CREATION OF FARES.....	297
3. FLEXIBLE TICKET.....	297
CHAPTER 8.2.3 – ALLOCATION OF FARES TO FARES BASKETS.....	298
1. ALLOCATION OF FARES TO FARES BASKETS .....	298
2. DESIGNATION OF NON FARES BASKET FARES .....	298
CHAPTER 8.2.4 – REGULATION OF FARES BASKET VALUES AND INDIVIDUAL FARES .....	299
PART A – REGULATION OF FARES BASKET VALUES .....	299
1. VALUE OF FARES BASKET NOT TO EXCEED REGULATED VALUE .....	299
2. VALUE.....	299
3. PROJECTED REVENUE .....	299
4. REGULATED VALUE.....	299
PART B – REGULATION OF INDIVIDUAL FARES .....	301
1. PRICE NOT TO EXCEED REGULATED PRICE OR REGULATED CHILD PRICE.....	301
2. REGULATED PRICE .....	301
3. COMPULSORY INTER-AVAILABLE FLOWS .....	302
CHAPTER 8.2.5 – EXCEEDING THE REGULATED VALUE, REGULATED PRICE OR REGULATED CHILD PRICE, AND CHANGES TO FARES AND FARES REGULATION.....	303
PART A – EXCEEDING THE REGULATED VALUE, REGULATED PRICE OR REGULATED CHILD PRICE .....	303
1. EXCEEDING THE REGULATED VALUE.....	303
2. EXCEEDING THE REGULATED PRICE OR REGULATED CHILD PRICE .....	303
PART B – CHANGES TO FARES AND FARES REGULATION .....	304
1. CHANGES TO FARES BASKETS.....	304
2. CHANGES TO THE 2010 NOMINAL TICKET SALES.....	304
3. CHANGES TO THE REFERENCE REVENUE, GROSS REVENUE, 2010 NOMINAL TICKET SALES AND/OR 2010 TICKET REVENUE .....	305
4. CHANGES TO PRICES.....	305
5. CHANGES TO FARES REGULATION .....	305
6. CHANGES TO COMPULSORY INTER-AVAILABLE FLOWS.....	306
7. CHANGE OF LEAD OPERATOR/MAJOR FLOW OPERATOR .....	306
8. CHANGES TO FARES DOCUMENTS .....	306
9. CHANGES TO APPLICABLE FARES PLANS .....	306
CHAPTER 8.2.6 – FARES REGULATION INFORMATION AND MONITORING .....	307
1. INFORMATION.....	307



2.	MONITORING .....	307
	CHAPTER 8.2.7 – FARES SELLING RESTRICTIONS .....	308
1.	FARES SELLING RESTRICTIONS.....	308
2.	REDUCTION IN PRICES OF FARES DURING THE LAST THIRTEEN (13) MONTH PERIOD .....	309
3.	RESTRICTIONS IN RESPECT OF SALE OF ADVANCE PURCHASE TRAIN-SPECIFIC FARES.....	310
	CHAPTER 8.2.8 – TRANSPORT, TRAVEL AND OTHER SCHEMES .....	311
1.	LOCAL AUTHORITY CONCESSIONARY TRAVEL SCHEMES .....	311
2.	MULTI-MODAL FARES SCHEMES.....	311
3.	DISCOUNT FARE SCHEMES .....	311
4.	INTER-OPERATOR SCHEMES.....	311
5.	VOTING ON SCHEME COUNCILS .....	312
	APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 8.2.8 - LIST OF TRANSPORT, TRAVEL AND OTHER SCHEMES .....	313
	CHAPTER 9 – STANDARD PROVISIONS .....	316
	CHAPTER 9.1 – FIXED ASSETS .....	317
1.	STATION ASSET MANAGEMENT.....	317
2.	INFORMATION ABOUT STATION IMPROVEMENT MEASURES .....	318
3.	VESTING OF PROPERTY LEASES AT THE START DATE.....	319
4.	NOVATION OF ACCESS AGREEMENTS DURING THE CONTRACT TERM.....	319
5.	ASSIGNMENT OF PROPERTY LEASES DURING THE CONTRACT TERM .....	320
6.	SUB-LEASING ARRANGEMENTS .....	320
7.	STATION AND DEPOT LEASES .....	321
8.	STATION SUBLEASES.....	321
9.	ROLLING STOCK RELATED CONTRACTS AND INSURANCE ARRANGEMENTS .....	321
10.	CASCADED ROLLING STOCK AND DELAYED CASCADE MITIGATION PLAN .....	322
	APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 9.1- INFORMATION ABOUT STATION IMPROVEMENT MEASURES .....	325
	CHAPTER 9.2 – KEY CONTRACTS AND KEY ASSETS.....	326
	CHAPTER 9.2.1 – KEY CONTRACTS .....	327
1.	KEY CONTRACTS.....	327
2.	DESIGNATION OF KEY CONTRACTS .....	327
3.	DE-DESIGNATION OF KEY CONTRACTS .....	328
4.	RE-DESIGNATION OF KEY CONTRACTS.....	328
5.	DIRECT AGREEMENTS .....	328
6.	EMERGENCIES.....	328
7.	NO AMENDMENT .....	329
8.	REPLACEMENT OF KEY CONTRACTS .....	329
9.	TERMINATION OF KEY CONTRACTS .....	329
	APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 9.2.1 - LIST OF KEY CONTRACTS .....	330
	CHAPTER 9.2.2 – KEY ASSETS -- DESIGNATION OF ASSETS.....	331
1.	OPERATING ASSETS.....	331
2.	ASSETS .....	331
3.	SPARES .....	331
4.	PRIMARY ASSETS .....	332
5.	DESIGNATION OF ADDITIONAL PRIMARY ASSETS .....	333
6.	DESIGNATION DURING LAST TWELVE (12) MONTHS OF CONTRACT PERIOD.....	333
7.	DESIGNATION OF KEY CONTRACTS AS PRIMARY ASSETS .....	333
8.	DESIGNATION OF FARES AND DISCOUNT CARDS.....	333

9.	RIGHTS AND LIABILITIES.....	333
10.	DISPUTES OVER DESIGNATION .....	333
11.	PROVISION OF INFORMATION TO THE SECRETARY OF STATE .....	333
12.	DE-DESIGNATION OF ASSETS AND PRIMARY ASSETS .....	334
13.	AMENDMENT OF THE LIST OF PRIMARY ASSETS .....	334
14.	ASSETS NOT DESIGNATED AS PRIMARY ASSETS.....	334
15.	LIABILITIES NOT DESIGNATED AS PRIMARY ASSETS .....	334
16.	ASSETS AND PRIMARY ASSETS.....	334
17.	OTHER SECURITY INTERESTS.....	335
18.	INFORMATION ABOUT ASSETS USED IN RESPECT OF THE RAIL SERVICES .....	335
19.	DESIGNATION OF ASSETS COMPRISED IN BUSINESS PLAN COMMITMENTS AS PRIMARY ASSETS .....	335
	APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 9.2.2 - LIST OF PRIMARY ASSETS .....	336
	CHAPTER 9.3 – BRANDING AND INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY.....	337
1.	BRANDING AND BRAND LICENCE .....	337
2.	REMOVAL OF BRANDING .....	338
3.	DESIGNATION AS PRIMARY ASSETS .....	338
4.	LICENCE TO OPERATOR’S INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY .....	339
5.	CUSTOMER RELATIONSHIP MANAGEMENT (CRM) DATA.....	340
6.	RAIL PASSENGER COUNTS DATABASE .....	340
7.	INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS AND GENERAL PROVISIONS .....	342
	APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 9.3 - LIST OF OPERATOR TRADE MARKS .....	345
1.	REGISTERED TRADE MARKS .....	345
2.	UNREGISTERED TRADE MARKS .....	345
	CHAPTER 9.4 – REMEDIES AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION.....	346
	CHAPTER 9.4.1 – EVENTS OF DEFAULT AND TERMINATION EVENTS.....	347
1.	DEFINITION OF EVENTS OF DEFAULT .....	347
2.	DEFINITION OF TERMINATION EVENTS .....	350
3.	CONSEQUENCES OF EVENTS OF DEFAULT .....	350
4.	NOTIFICATION OF EVENT OF DEFAULT.....	350
5.	TERMINATION NOTICES.....	350
6.	CONSEQUENCES OF TERMINATION OR EXPIRY .....	351
	CHAPTER 9.4.2 –DISPUTE RESOLUTION PROCEDURES .....	352
1.	DISPUTES UNDER THE NATIONAL RAIL CONTRACT.....	352
2.	DISPUTES UNDER OTHER AGREEMENTS .....	352
3.	DISPUTES UNDER CHAPTER 7 ( <i>FINANCIAL OBLIGATIONS, INCENTIVES AND SCORECARDS</i> ) OF THIS CONTRACT .....	353
4.	CUMULATIVE RIGHTS AND REMEDIES.....	353
	CHAPTER 9.4.3 – PROCEDURE FOR REMEDYING A CONTRAVENTION OF THE NATIONAL RAIL CONTRACT .....	354
1.	CONTRAVENTIONS OF THE NATIONAL RAIL CONTRACT.....	354
2.	REMEDIES FOR CONTRAVENTIONS OF THE NATIONAL RAIL CONTRACT .....	354
3.	REMEDIAL PLAN NOTICES .....	354
4.	REMEDIAL PLANS .....	355
5.	REMEDIAL AGREEMENTS .....	355
6.	ENHANCED MONITORING BY THE SECRETARY OF STATE .....	356
7.	STATUTORY NOTICES.....	356
	CHAPTER 9.4.4 – FORCE MAJEURE.....	357
1.	DEFINITION OF FORCE MAJEURE EVENTS.....	357

2.	CONDITIONS TO FORCE MAJEURE EVENTS .....	358
3.	CONSEQUENCES OF FORCE MAJEURE EVENTS .....	359
4.	EFFECT OF FORCE MAJEURE EVENT ON A REMEDIAL AGREEMENT .....	359
5.	NO RELIEF UNDER FORCE MAJEURE.....	360
6.	FORCE MAJEURE AND PAYMENTS .....	360
	CHAPTER 9.4.5 – LIABILITY .....	361
1.	LIABILITY WITH RESPECT TO PASSENGERS AND THIRD PARTIES .....	361
2.	LIABILITY OF THE SECRETARY OF STATE .....	361
3.	NO RELIEF DUE TO THE SECRETARY OF STATE.....	361
	CHAPTER 9.5 – EXIT MANAGEMENT .....	362
	CHAPTER 9.5.1 – HANDOVER PACKAGE .....	363
1.	HANDOVER PACKAGE STATUS .....	363
2.	DIRECTOR’S CERTIFICATE .....	363
3.	KEY PERSONNEL LIST .....	364
	APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 9.5.1 - FORM OF HANDOVER PACKAGE.....	365
	CHAPTER 9.5.2 – RELETING PROVISIONS AND MAINTENANCE AS A GOING CONCERN .....	366
1.	RELETING OF RAIL SERVICES .....	366
2.	PREPARATION FOR RELETING .....	366
3.	DATA SITE INFORMATION .....	366
4.	NON-FRUSTRATION OF TRANSFER TO SUCCESSOR OPERATOR.....	368
5.	INSPECTION RIGHTS DURING THE TENDERING/RELETING PROCESS.....	368
6.	MAINTENANCE AS A GOING CONCERN.....	368
	CHAPTER 9.5.3 - PROVISIONS APPLYING ON AND AFTER TERMINATION.....	370
1.	NOVATION OF ACCESS AGREEMENTS ON TERMINATION OF THE NATIONAL RAIL CONTRACT .....	370
2.	CO-OPERATION WITH SUCCESSOR OPERATOR.....	370
3.	TRANSFER OF PRIMARY ASSETS.....	371
4.	ASSOCIATED OBLIGATIONS ON TERMINATION .....	372
5.	ACTIONS REQUIRED IMMEDIATELY ON HANDOVER .....	373
6.	MAINTENANCE RECORDS IN RELATION TO ROLLING STOCK .....	373
7.	TICKETING ARRANGEMENTS .....	373
8.	INFORMATION ABOUT PASSENGERS.....	374
9.	SUCCESSOR OPERATOR TIMETABLES .....	374
10.	OTHER TRAIN OPERATING COMPANIES.....	375
	CHAPTER 9.6 – CONFIDENTIALITY AND DATA PROTECTION .....	376
1.	CONFIDENTIALITY.....	376
2.	DISCLOSURE OF CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION .....	376
3.	PUBLICATION OF CERTAIN INFORMATION .....	377
4.	SERVICE DEVELOPMENT INFORMATION .....	378
5.	PUBLICATION BY SECRETARY OF STATE .....	379
6.	PROVISION OF INFORMATION TO THE ORR.....	379
7.	DISCLOSURE BY COMPTROLLER AND AUDITOR GENERAL.....	379
8.	CONTINUING OBLIGATION .....	379
9.	FREEDOM OF INFORMATION - GENERAL PROVISIONS .....	379
10.	REDACTIONS .....	380
11.	DATA PROTECTION .....	381
12.	DATA PROTECTION – APPRENTICESHIPS.....	382
13.	FURTHER INFORMATION.....	383

14.	REQUEST FOR DATA .....	383
15.	INFORMATION FROM THIRD PARTIES.....	385
16.	COMPATIBILITY OF INFORMATION .....	385
17.	INFORMATION IN RESPECT OF THE FIRST CONTRACT YEAR .....	385
	CHAPTER 9.7 – MISCELLANEOUS LEGAL TERMS.....	387
1.	ALL REASONABLE ENDEAVOURS .....	387
2.	ASSIGNMENT .....	387
3.	COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS .....	387
4.	SET-OFF .....	387
5.	MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS .....	388
6.	COMPETITION.....	390
7.	SUBSIDY CONTROL, STATE AID AND PROCUREMENT REGULATIONS .....	391
8.	GOVERNING LAW AND JURISDICTION .....	392
	CHAPTER 10 -DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATION .....	394
1.	INTERPRETATION .....	395
2.	AGREED DOCUMENTS.....	398
3.	DEFINITIONS.....	398
	DEROGATIONS (WAIVERS) - POST CONTRACT SIGNATURE DATE.....	502

## **THIS CONTRACT is dated                      May 2021**

### **BETWEEN:**

- (1) **THE SECRETARY OF STATE FOR TRANSPORT**, whose principal address is at 33 Horseferry Road, London SW1P 4DR (the “**Secretary of State**”); and
- (2) **FIRST TRANSPENNINE EXPRESS LIMITED** (Company Number: 09111801), whose registered office is at 4<sup>th</sup> Floor Capital House, 25 Chapel Street, London, United Kingdom NW1 5DH (the “**Operator**”).

### **BACKGROUND:**

- (A) National Rail Contracts are the successors to the previous Franchise Agreements, enabling the Secretary of State to appoint private sector operators to run rail services in line with its statutory duties.
- (B) National Rail Contracts represent a new approach to the delivery of rail services, with operators providing their leadership, operating and management expertise, in return for management fees, and the inclusion of incentives for operators to act in the best interests of passengers, taxpayers and the wider community and excel in the delivery of their services. The contracts will reward agile and responsive operators who act in the best interests of passengers, taxpayers and the wider community in the delivery of their services.
- (C) National Rail Contracts are designed to be flexible and responsive over the life of the contract, and are structured around an annual Business Plan process. The Secretary of State will set out detailed objectives and priorities each year in a Request for Business Plan. The operator will then prepare the Business Plan on a basis that seeks to achieve these objectives and priorities, in collaboration with rail industry partners to deliver in the best interests of passengers and taxpayers.
- (D) The National Rail Contract should therefore be read alongside the Business Plan which sets out the Business Plan Commitments, targets and performance measures that the operator is contracted to deliver.

### **OBJECTIVES:**

The Secretary of State has the following objectives for the delivery of rail services under the National Rail Contract:

- To improve the passenger experience on the railway, by providing a modern and reliable means of transport accessible to all;
- To meet the needs of the wider community through working collaboratively with stakeholders and all rail industry partners;
- To meet the challenge of improving the railway’s contribution to the Government’s wider sustainability aims; and
- The Secretary of State also wishes to ensure that the railway is operated efficiently and is affordable for the taxpayer.

Through these objectives, the Secretary of State aims to restore and improve the reputation of the railway, rebuilding trust in the way it operates for passengers, stakeholders and the wider community.

#### **1. COMMENCEMENT**

- 1.1 All the clauses of this Contract and the Immediately Effective Chapter Provisions shall take effect and be binding upon each of the Secretary of State and the Operator immediately upon signature of this Contract.
- 1.2 The other provisions of this Contract shall take effect and become binding upon the Parties on the Start Date.

**2. DURATION OF THE NATIONAL RAIL CONTRACT**

2.1 This Contract shall expire on the Expiry Date or pursuant to Chapter 9.4 (*Remedies and Dispute Resolution*).

**2.2 Additional Reporting Periods**

(a) If the Secretary of State gives notice to the Operator by no later than 23:59 on 4 March 2023, the National Rail Contract shall continue after such date on the terms set out in the National Rail Contract for not less than one (1) and not more than 26 Reporting Periods following the date set out in limb (a) of the definition of Expiry Date, as the Secretary of State may stipulate.

(b) Not Used

2.3 Not Used

**3. GENERAL OBLIGATIONS**

3.1 The Operator shall perform its obligations under the National Rail Contract in accordance with its terms and with that degree of skill, diligence, prudence and foresight which would be exercised by a skilled and experienced Train Operator of the Rail Services.

3.2 The Operator agrees to co-operate with the Secretary of State in an open and transparent manner, which shall include an obligation on the Operator to disclose to the Secretary of State anything which the Secretary of State would reasonably expect notice of in connection with the matters arising under the National Rail Contract.

3.3 The Operator shall act reasonably and in good faith in and about the performance of its obligations and the exercise of its rights pursuant to the National Rail Contract.

3.4 The Secretary of State shall act reasonably and in good faith in and about the performance of the Secretary of State's obligations and the exercise of the Secretary of State's rights pursuant to the National Rail Contract.

**4. RAIL SERVICES**

4.1 The Operator shall at all times during the Contract Term:

- (a) provide and operate the Rail Services specified in the National Rail Contract;
- (b) carry out the Station Services and the Light Maintenance Services; and
- (c) be permitted to carry out the Ancillary Services.

4.2 The Operator shall not directly or indirectly, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State, carry on any business or activity other than the provision and operation of the Rail Services.

4.3 Nothing in the National Rail Contract shall restrict any Affiliate of the Operator from having an interest in or participating in any business or activity.

4.4 The Operator shall not engage any Business Employee in any activity or business which it may not conduct or engage in under the National Rail Contract.

**5. NOTICES**

**5.1 Notices**

(a) Any notice, notification or other communication under or in connection with the matters specified in Chapter 9.4 (*Remedies and Dispute Resolution*) or any dispute under or in connection with the National Rail Contract shall be in writing and shall be delivered by hand or recorded delivery or sent by pre-paid first class post to the relevant Party at the address for service set out below, or to such other address in the United Kingdom as each Party may specify by notice in writing to the other Party:

<b>Table 1</b>	
<b>Name:</b>	The Department for Transport
<b>Address:</b>	33 Horseferry Road, London SW1P 4DR

<b>Email:</b>	franchise.notices@dft.gov.uk
<b>Attention:</b>	The Market Lead – TransPennine Express

<b>Table 2</b>	
<b>Name:</b>	First TransPennine Express Limited
<b>Address:</b>	4 <sup>th</sup> Floor Capital House, 25 Chapel Street, London, United Kingdom NW1 5DH
<b>Email:</b>	[REDACTED <sup>1</sup> ]
<b>Attention:</b>	Legal Director: Rail Division

- (b) Any other notice, notification or other communication including any Variations, derogations under or in connection with the National Rail Contract shall be in writing and shall be delivered:
- (i) by email; or
  - (ii) through the Secretary of State's contract management system,
- except that it shall be marked for the attention of the Operator Relationship Manager or the Secretary of State Relationship Manager:

<b>Table 3</b>	
<b>Name:</b>	The Department for Transport
<b>Address:</b>	33 Horseferry Road, London SW1P 4DR
<b>Email:</b>	franchise.notices@dft.gov.uk
<b>Attention:</b>	The Operator Relationship Manager – TransPennine Express

<b>Table 4</b>	
<b>Name:</b>	First TransPennine Express Limited
<b>Address:</b>	4th Floor Capital House, 25 Chapel Street, London, United Kingdom NW1 5DH
<b>Email:</b>	[REDACTED <sup>2</sup> ]
<b>Attention:</b>	First TransPennine Express - The Secretary of State Relationship Manager

## 5.2 **Deemed Receipt**

Any such notice or other communication shall be deemed to have been received by the Party to whom it is addressed as follows:

- (a) if sent by hand or recorded delivery, when delivered; or
- (b) if sent by pre-paid first class post, from and to any place within the United Kingdom, three (3) Weekdays after posting unless otherwise proven; or

<sup>1</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>2</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.



- (c) if sent by email, upon sending, subject to receipt by the sender of a “**delivered**” confirmation (provided that the sender shall not be required to produce a “**read**” confirmation); or
- (d) if sent through the Secretary of State’s contract management system, an “**actual date**” confirmation in the audit log from the Secretary of State’s contract management system.

6. **ENTIRE AGREEMENT**

- 6.1 This Contract and the Direct Award Collateral Agreement contains the entire agreement between the Parties in relation to the subject matter of the National Rail Contract and supersede all prior agreements and arrangements between the Parties other than any confidentiality agreements or undertakings which the Operator may have entered into with the Secretary of State in connection with the Secretary of State’s proposal to secure the provision of the Passenger Services under the National Rail Contract.
- 6.2 The Operator hereby acknowledges that it is not entering into the National Rail Contract in reliance on any warranties, representations or undertakings howsoever or to whomsoever made except in so far as such warranties, representations or undertakings are contained in the National Rail Contract.
- 6.3 The Operator hereby acknowledges and agrees with the Secretary of State (for the Secretary of State and as trustee for each of the other persons referred to therein) to the disclaimers of liability which are contained in the Request for Business Plan or in any document supplied by or on behalf of the Secretary of State in connection with the National Rail Contract, the process leading to the entering into of the National Rail Contract, or the Rail Services (including Request for Business Plan issued in connection therewith).
- 6.4 The Operator irrevocably and unconditionally waives any right which it may otherwise have to claim damages in respect of and/or to rescind this Contract and/or the Direct Award Collateral Agreement on the basis of any warranty, representation (whether negligent or otherwise, and whether made prior to and/or in this Contract or the Direct Award Collateral Agreement) or undertaking howsoever or to whomsoever made unless and to the extent that such warranty, representation or undertaking was made fraudulently.

**SIGNATURE PAGE**

This Contract has been executed as a deed and is delivered and takes effect on the date stated at the beginning of it.

**SEAL REF No.**

THE CORPORATE SEAL OF )  
THE SECRETARY OF STATE FOR )  
TRANSPORT )  
is hereunto affixed: )

-----  
**Authenticated by authority of the  
Secretary of State for Transport**  
-----

Executed as a deed by **FIRST TRANSPENNINE  
EXPRESS LIMITED** acting by \_\_\_\_\_,  
a director in the presence of a witness

\_\_\_\_\_  
**Director:** )  
)  
)

**Witness Signature:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Witness Name:**

**Witness Address:**  
-----

## Chapter 1 – Leadership and Management



### Chapter 1.1 - Organisation and Management



### Chapter 1.2 - Strategies and Plans

**Chapter 1****LEADERSHIP AND MANAGEMENT**

Chapter 1.1	Organisation and Management
Chapter 1.2	Strategies and Plans

## Chapter 1.1

### Organisation and Management

#### 1. Corporate Information

- 1.1 The Operator shall provide the following information to the Secretary of State no later than the Start Date and shall notify the Secretary of State of any change to such information within twenty one (21) days of such change:
- (a) its name;
  - (b) its business address and registered office;
  - (c) its directors and company secretary;
  - (d) its auditors;
  - (e) its trading name or names; and
  - (f) to the best of the Operator's knowledge and belief, having made due and diligent enquiry, the identity of all persons holding, separately or acting by agreement, directly or indirectly, the right to cast more than twenty per cent (20%) of the votes at general meetings of the Operator.
- 1.2 The Operator shall inform the Secretary of State of any material change or proposed material change in its business (including the employment or the termination of employment of any Key Personnel, the termination of any Key Contract and any litigation or other dispute which may have a material effect on its business) and any material change in or restructuring of the capitalisation or financing of the Operator, the Parent, the Guarantor or the ETIA Counterparty.
- 1.3 The Operator shall provide the Secretary of State any information the Secretary of State may reasonably require for the purpose of complying with its obligations under Article 4.7, Chapter 4 of Title XI of Part Two of the Trade and Cooperation Agreement.

#### 2. Change Of Control and Facilitation Fee

- 2.1 A "**Change of Control**" is a change occurring in the identity of any one (1) person, or two (2) or more persons acting by agreement, who may Control the Operator on and from the date of the National Rail Contract and during the Contract Term, which shall include a person, or two (2) or more persons acting by agreement, ceasing to Control the Operator at any time during the Contract Term, whether or not any other person Controls the Operator at the same time and for the purposes of this paragraph 2, two (2) or more persons shall be deemed to be acting by agreement in relation to the Operator if, assuming the Operator was a target company as defined in the Companies Act 2006 such persons would be under an obligation to disclose an interest in shares in such company by virtue of an agreement between such persons.
- 2.2 Otherwise than in accordance with the prior consent of the Secretary of State given pursuant to paragraph 2.3, a Change of Control shall constitute an Event of Default pursuant to paragraph 1.3 (*Change of Control*) of Chapter 9.4.1 (*Events of Default and Termination Events*).
- 2.3 The Operator may, at any time, apply in writing to the Secretary of State for the Secretary of State's consent to a Change of Control (as such term is defined pursuant to paragraph 2.1).
- 2.4 The Secretary of State may require the Operator to pay a fee in consideration of the grant of such consent (the "**Facilitation Fee**").
- 2.5 The Secretary of State may require the Operator to pay an additional fee in respect of the staff, professional and other costs incurred by the Secretary of State in connection with the Operator's application (the "**Administration Fee**"). The Administration Fee shall be payable whether or not the Secretary of State consents to the proposed Change of Control.
- 2.6 On or after submitting such application to the Secretary of State, the Operator shall provide, and will procure that the seller and the buyer provide, the Secretary of State with such documentation and information as the Secretary of State may require to assess such

application and the amount of the Facilitation Fee. Without limiting paragraph 2.11 or 2.12, it shall be deemed to be reasonable for the Secretary of State to delay or withhold consent to the Change of Control where any such documentation is not provided.

- 2.7 The Facilitation Fee shall be a sum equal to one million pounds (£1,000,000).
- 2.8 The Administration Fee shall be determined by the Secretary of State on the basis of:
- (a) the aggregate time spent by officials within the Secretary of State's Department on matters relating to such application;
  - (b) the Secretary of State's hourly scale rates for such officials, as varied from time to time; and
  - (c) the aggregate costs and disbursements, including where applicable VAT and professional costs, incurred by the Secretary of State in connection with such application.
- 2.9 Any determination by the Secretary of State for the purposes of paragraph 2.8 shall in the absence of manifest error be final and binding as between the Secretary of State and the Operator.
- 2.10 Any consent by the Secretary of State to a Change of Control may be given subject to such conditions as the Secretary of State sees fit and the Operator shall, as applicable, comply with, and/or procure that the seller and/or the buyer comply with, any such conditions.
- 2.11 The Secretary of State shall have absolute discretion as to the grant of consent to any Change of Control and may accordingly refuse such consent for any reason that the Secretary of State sees fit.
- 2.12 The Secretary of State shall have no liability whatever to the Operator in respect of any refusal of consent to a Change of Control, any delay in providing such consent, or any condition of such consent.
- 2.13 The Parties acknowledge and agree that the Operator shall under no circumstances be entitled to reimbursement, pursuant to Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) or otherwise, of any Facilitation Fee or Administration Fee paid by it under the terms of this paragraph 2.
- 3. Maintenance of Records**
- 3.1 The Operator shall at all times create and maintain true, up to date and complete records, books and other materials relating to the:
- (a) operation and maintenance of Assets;
  - (b) operation of the Rail Services; and
  - (c) financial performance of the Rail Services,
- in each case, in exercising that degree of care, skill, diligence, prudence, efficiency, foresight and timeliness which would reasonably be expected from a prudent and leading Train Operator and in order to fulfil the requirements of the National Rail Contract including in relation to maintenance of the Rail Services as a going concern in accordance with paragraph 6 (*Maintenance as a going concern*) of Chapter 9.5.2 (*Reletting Provisions and Maintenance as a Going Concern*).
- 3.2 Unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State, all records, books and materials required to be maintained by the Operator in accordance with this Contract, shall be held in a form that is capable of audit for a period of not less than six (6) years following the Expiry Date or the date of any earlier termination of this Contract.
- 3.3 References to records, books and materials in this Chapter 1.1 shall include records, books and materials maintained under any Previous Agreement to the extent that such records relate to services equivalent to the Rail Services and the Operator has access to them (which it shall use all reasonable endeavours to secure). Notwithstanding the requirements of paragraphs 3.2 and 3.4, the Operator shall only be required to hold such records, books and materials created under any Previous Agreement for a period of six (6) years following the date of this Contract.
- 3.4 Without prejudice to the reporting obligations of the Operator under the Previous Agreement and for the purposes of this paragraph 3 only, the Operator shall not be responsible for any

records, books or materials maintained under any Previous Agreement, as referred to in paragraph 3.3, being true, complete and up to date. As soon as reasonably practicable after becoming aware that any such records, books or materials are not true, complete and up to date, the Operator shall take all reasonable steps to remedy any such deficiency, and shall thereafter maintain such records, books or materials in accordance with paragraph 3.1.

#### 4. **Right to Inspect**

4.1 The Operator shall, if requested by the Secretary of State, allow the Secretary of State and the Secretary of State's representatives and advisers:

- (a) to inspect and copy any records referred to in this Chapter 1 (*Leadership and Management*), Chapter 3 (*Collaboration*) and Chapter 4 (*Rail Services*), Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*), Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*) or Chapter 9 (*Standard Provisions*), and the Secretary of State may verify any such records; and/or
- (b) to inspect and copy at any reasonable time any books, records and any other material kept by or on behalf of the Operator and/or its auditors and any assets (including the Assets) used by the Operator in connection with the Rail Services.

4.2 The Operator shall make available to the Secretary of State, the Secretary of State's representatives and advisers the information referred to in paragraph 4.1 and grant or procure the grant of such access (including to or from third parties) as the Secretary of State, the Secretary of State's representatives and advisers shall reasonably require in connection therewith. The obligation of the Operator under this paragraph 4.2 shall include an obligation on the Operator to grant or procure the grant of such access to premises (including third party premises) where the information referred to in paragraph 4.1 is kept by or on behalf of the Operator.

4.3 The Secretary of State, the Secretary of State's representatives and advisers shall be permitted to take photographs, film or make a video recording, or make any other kind of record of any such inspection.

4.4 If any inspection reveals that information previously supplied to the Secretary of State was, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, inaccurate in any material respect or if such inspection reveals any other contravention of the Operator's obligations under the National Rail Contract which the Secretary of State considers to be material, the costs of any such inspection shall be borne by the Operator and which, shall be Disallowable Costs pursuant to Appendix 2 (*Disallowable Costs*) to Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*).

#### 5. **Periodic Update Reports**

5.1 The Operator shall prepare and submit to the Secretary of State, a periodic report in each Reporting Period, not later than five (5) days prior to each Contract Performance Meeting held in accordance with paragraph 8 (*Contract Performance Meetings*), which shall:

- (a) contain updates on the Operator's progress in complying with its Business Plan Commitments, the Operator's performance against its Business Plan KPIs and the Operator's compliance with its other obligations under this Contract, together with any other information as the Secretary of State may specify from time to time;
- (b) relate to the previous Reporting Period, unless another period is reasonably required by the Secretary of State; and
- (c) be disaggregated to the extent required by the Secretary of State.

5.2 Where, as part of the periodic report referred to in paragraph 5.1, the Secretary of State requires the Operator to provide information and/or details in addition to those required pursuant to paragraph 5.1, the Operator shall ensure that the periodic report includes such additional information and/or details subject to the Operator having received at least twenty eight (28) days' notice of the additional information and/or details required by the Secretary of State.

5.3 Without prejudice to any other reporting obligations of the Operator, the Operator shall, at the end of each Reporting Period, provide a separate and standalone progress update to the Secretary of State in respect of:



- (a) the matters included in schedule 2 (*Termination of the Franchise Agreement*) to the ERMA; and
- (b) such other related information as the Secretary of State may request.

## 6. **Contract Management System**

6.1 The Operator shall, no later than the Start Date and thereafter throughout the Contract Term:

- (a) use the contract management system which the Secretary of State uses to manage the delivery of the obligations under the National Rail Contract; and
- (b) use the contract management system to administer any variations to the National Rail Contract after the Start Date

## 7. **Identification of Key Personnel and Provision of Organisation Chart**

7.1 The Operator shall identify and provide to the Secretary of State a schedule of Key Personnel who shall be employed by the Operator in the performance of the National Rail Contract. This shall include but not be limited to the following persons:

- (a) a managing director whose role will include the overall management of the operation of the Rail Services;
- (b) a train service delivery director, whose role will include responsibility for ensuring compliance by the Operator with Chapter 4.4 (*Operational Performance*);
- (c) a safety director, whose role will include responsibility for ensuring that the Operator complies with its legal obligations in relation to the Rail Services including the Safety Certificate; and
- (d) a finance director, whose role will include responsibility in relation to the Cost Budget, the Annual Audited Accounts and the provision of other financial data to Secretary of State.

7.2 The Operator shall nominate a board level director of the Operator (or at the Secretary of State's sole discretion, a board level director of the Parent or any appropriate Affiliate of the Operator) within seven (7) days of the date of this Contract. Such board level director's responsibilities shall include overseeing, at a strategic level, the Operator's interface with the Secretary of State in relation to sections 119 to 121 (inclusive) of the Act and co-ordinating relevant activities and delivery of counter terrorist security on behalf of the Operator in connection with the Operator's compliance with relevant instructions issued by the Secretary of State under section 119 of the Act from time to time. Such board level director shall be identified by job title in the organisation chart referred to in paragraph 7.3 and shall be deemed part of the Key Personnel.

7.3 On or before the Start Date the Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State the schedule of Key Personnel and the organisation chart detailing the responsibilities and reporting lines of each of the Key Personnel and shall update such schedule and organisation chart (and provide copies to the Secretary of State promptly thereafter) as and when any changes occur.

## 8. **Contract Performance Meetings**

8.1 The Parties shall hold a Contract Performance Meeting at least once in every Reporting Period (or such other interval as the Secretary of State may notify to the Operator in writing) at a time and location notified to the Operator by the Secretary of State.

8.2 The Operator shall ensure that:

- (a) the representatives of the Operator at a Contract Performance Meeting shall include such directors and/or senior managers of the Operator as the Secretary of State may require; and
- (b) representatives of the Parent (which shall include such directors and/or senior managers of the Parent as the Secretary of State may require) attend a Contract Performance Meeting at least once every quarter.

8.3 The Operator shall prepare and present such reports to each Contract Performance Meeting as the Secretary of State may reasonably request. The Operator's obligations under this

paragraph 8.3 are subject to the Operator receiving at least twenty eight (28) days' notice of the requirement to prepare and present any such report.

- 8.4 No comment or failure to comment nor any agreement or approval, implicit or explicit by either Party at a Contract Performance Meeting will relieve a party of its obligations, constitute a waiver of an obligation or otherwise vary the terms of the National Rail Contract.

**CHAPTER 1.2****Strategies and Plans****1. Small and Medium-sized Enterprises**

- 1.1 The Operator shall at all times keep accurate and complete records of its use of and interaction with SMEs and VCSEs in delivering the Rail Services.
- 1.2 By no later than 31 January in each year (and within one (1) month of the end of the Contract Period) the Operator shall deliver to the Secretary of State:
- (a) a breakdown of the number of SMEs and VCSEs used by the Operator in providing the Rail Services;
  - (b) the total value of expenditure on all subcontracts; and
  - (c) the value of expenditure on (i) SMEs and (ii) VCSEs (as proportions of the figure referred to in paragraph 1.2(b) above),
- during the calendar year (or part thereof) which ended on the immediately preceding 31 December or at the end of the Contract Period (as applicable).

**2. Business Continuity Plan**

- 2.1 Within one (1) month following the Start Date the Operator shall produce and provide to the Secretary of State a written Business Continuity Plan in respect of the Rail Services and the people, facilities and assets used to provide them which is consistent with the requirements of ISO 22301:2012.
- 2.2 Within one (1) month of the end of each Contract Year the Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State a certificate addressed to the Secretary of State and signed by a statutory director of the Operator confirming that the Business Continuity Plan is consistent with the requirements of the ISO 22301:2012.

**3. Suicide Prevention Plan**

- 3.1 The Operator shall review and update the Suicide Prevention Plan:
- (a) immediately following any amendment to, or replacement of, the Suicide Prevention Strategy and/or the Suicide Prevention Duty Holders' Group's 9 Point Plan; and
  - (b) as requested by the Secretary of State or the British Transport Police from time to time.

Any such review and any updating shall be by reference to changing circumstances, new relevant information and any amended or replaced Suicide Prevention Strategy and/or the Suicide Prevention Duty Holders' Group's 9 Point Plan with the intention that it is kept as up to date and effective as reasonably possible. The Operator shall consult with the British Transport Police and wider cross-industry suicide prevention group (as appropriate) in relation to any such review and update of the Suicide Prevention Plan. The Operator shall deliver a copy of any revised and/or updated Suicide Prevention Plan to the Secretary of State as soon as is reasonably practicable together with written confirmation from the British Transport Police that the Plan complies with the requirements of the Suicide Prevention Strategy and the Suicide Prevention Duty Holders' Group's 9 Point Plan and accordingly remains approved by it.

- 3.2 The Operator shall implement the Suicide Prevention Plan as it may be revised and/or updated pursuant to paragraph 3.1 in accordance with its then prevailing provisions.

**4. Safeguarding Strategy**

- 4.1 The Operator shall review and, as necessary, update the Safeguarding Strategy:
- (a) within one (1) month following the publication of any amendment to, or replacement of the Safeguarding on Rail Audit; and
  - (b) as requested by the Secretary of State.

- 4.2 Any review and necessary updates to the Safeguarding Strategy in accordance with paragraph 4.1 shall take into account any changes to, or replacement of the Safeguarding on Rail Audit and any other relevant circumstances that would reasonably be considered to impact the objectives contained in the Safeguarding on Rail Audit and shall ensure that the Safeguarding Strategy remains up-to-date and appropriate for delivering the objectives contained in the Safeguarding on Rail Audit.
- 4.3 The Operator shall undertake any review and necessary updates to the Safeguarding Strategy in accordance with paragraph 4.1 in consultation with the British Transport Police and such other relevant groups as the Operator and/or the British Transport Police consider appropriate. The Operator shall submit such updated Safeguarding Strategy to the British Transport Police within one (1) month of such review for its approval that the Safeguarding Strategy complies with the requirements of the Safeguarding on Rail Audit and the Operator shall take into account any comments or amendments proposed by:
- (a) the British Transport Police; and
  - (b) such other relevant groups as the Operator and/or the British Transport Police consider appropriate,
- as are required to ensure that the Safeguarding Strategy remains up-to-date and appropriate for delivering the objectives contained in the Safeguarding on Rail Audit.
- 4.4 The Operator shall deliver a copy of any updated Safeguarding Strategy to the Secretary of State together with written confirmation of the approval issued by the British Transport Police as soon as reasonably practicable following such approval.
- 4.5 The Operator shall implement the approved Safeguarding Strategy as it may be revised and/or updated pursuant to this paragraph 4 from time to time.
- 5. Incident Response Plan**
- 5.1 By no later than six (6) months following the Start Date the Operator shall prepare and provide to the Secretary of State for approval (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) the Incident Response Plan.
- 5.2 The Incident Response Plan shall:
- (a) detail how the Operator would respond to an incident or emergency (including cyber security incidents); and
  - (b) reflect the RDG Guidance on Emergency Planning, Knowledge, Understanding and Responsibilities,
- and it shall be reasonable for the Secretary of State to not approve a plan which does not include such information or meet such requirements.
- 5.3 Where the Secretary of State does not approve the draft Incident Response Plan submitted to it, the Operator shall make:
- (a) such amendments to it as the Secretary of State shall reasonably direct; and
  - (b) provide such additional information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require.
- 5.4 From the date of approval, the Operator shall implement and comply with the Incident Response Plan.
- 5.5 The Incident Response Plan shall be updated by the Operator on an annual basis and submitted to the Secretary of State for approval (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed).
- 5.6 Each updated version of the Incident Response Plan shall incorporate a schedule of revisions to the Incident Response Plan compared to the previous version and a brief summary of the rationale supporting each such revision.
- 5.7 If:
- (a) the Secretary of State approves an updated draft Incident Response Plan submitted to it pursuant to paragraph 5.5, such document shall become the then current Incident Response Plan; or

- (b) the Secretary of State does not approve an updated draft Incident Response Plan submitted to it pursuant to paragraph 5.5, the provisions of paragraph 5.3 shall apply.

## 6. **Cyber Security Information Sharing**

### 6.1 The Operator shall:

- (a) share, as soon as reasonably practicable, information regarding cyber security threats and incidents with the Department for Transport, British Transport Police, Police Scotland (where relevant), the National Cyber Security Centre and other industry partners; and
- (b) comply at all times with the latest Secretary of State's cyber incident reporting guidance including use of the NCSC Cyber-Security Information Sharing Partnership (CISP).

## 7. **Modern Slavery, Child Labour and Inhumane Treatment**

### 7.1 The Operator:

- (a) shall not use, or allow its subcontractors to use, forced, bonded or involuntary prison labour;
- (b) shall not require any Operator or subcontractor staff to lodge deposits or identity papers with the relevant employer or deny Operator staff freedom to leave their employer after reasonable notice;
- (c) warrants and represents that neither it nor its Parent or Affiliates has been convicted of any slavery or human trafficking offences anywhere around the world;
- (d) warrants that to the best of its knowledge neither it nor its Parent or Affiliates is currently under investigation, inquiry or enforcement proceedings in relation to any allegation of slavery or human trafficking offences anywhere around the world;
- (e) shall make reasonable enquiries to ascertain that its officers and subcontractors have not been convicted of slavery or human trafficking offences anywhere around the world;
- (f) shall have and maintain throughout the term of the Contract its own policies and procedures to ensure its compliance with the Modern Slavery Act 2015 and shall include in its contracts with its subcontractors anti-slavery and human trafficking provisions;
- (g) shall implement appropriate due diligence procedures to ascertain any non-compliance by its subcontractors with the anti-slavery and human trafficking procedures required by this clause;
- (h) if requested to do so by the Secretary of State, shall prepare and deliver to the Secretary of State a slavery and human trafficking report setting out the steps it has taken to ensure that slavery and human trafficking is not taking place in any of its supply chains or in any part of its business;
- (i) shall not use, or allow its employees or subcontractors to use, physical abuse or discipline, the threat of physical abuse, sexual or other harassment and verbal abuse or other forms of intimidation of its employees or subcontractors;
- (j) shall not use, or allow its subcontractors to use, child or slave labour; and
- (k) shall report the discovery or suspicion of any slavery or trafficking by it or its subcontractors to the Secretary of State and Modern Slavery Helpline.

## Chapter 2 – People



Chapter 2.1 - Diversity and Inclusion and Training and Development



Chapter 2.2 - Rail Workforce

**CHAPTER 2****PEOPLE**

Chapter 2.1:	Diversity and Inclusion and Training and Development
Chapter 2.2:	Rail Workforce



## Chapter 2.1

### Diversity and Inclusion and Training and Development

#### 1 Diversity and Inclusion

##### 1.1 Diversity and Inclusion Strategy

- (a) The Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to implement and comply with its D&I Strategy.
- (b) In respect of any new contract or arrangements it enters into with third parties during the Contract Term, the Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure it obliges its counterparty to comply with and implement suitable diversity and inclusion policies.
- (c) To the extent the Operator is entering into any material amendments to any existing contracts or arrangements with third parties, it shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that the contract or arrangement (as amended) does not materially adversely affect the Operator's ability to comply with its D&I Strategy.

##### 1.2 Diversity Accreditation

The Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to attain and/or maintain at least one diversity accreditation from a Recognised Accreditation Scheme within such timeframe as may be set out in its D&I Strategy which shall comply with the timescales set by the relevant Recognised Accreditation Scheme or as otherwise agreed between the Parties.

##### 1.3 Performance Reporting

The Operator shall submit a D&I Annual Report to the Secretary of State on the D&I Annual Reporting Date. The Parties acknowledge and agree that the Operator's D&I Annual Report shall be provided substantially in the same form as the Secretary of State may request and shall include:

- (a) evidence of the Operator's performance against, and impact of implementing, its D&I Strategy;
- (b) evidence of the Operator's performance against the Diversity KPIs;
- (c) evidence of the Operator working towards achieving and maintaining diversity accreditation in accordance with paragraph 1.2 (*Diversity Accreditation*);
- (d) evidence of the Operator establishing diversity in its procurement process and using a diverse supply chain;
- (e) evidence of the Operator's performance against its Recruitment Objectives;
- (f) a record of any other diversity data collected by the Operator in respect of its workforce; and
- (g) such other information and data as the Secretary of State may reasonably request at least three (3) months prior to the D&I Annual Reporting Date.

##### 1.4 Diversity and Inclusion Champion

- (a) The Operator shall, from the Start Date (to the extent that the Operator has not already done so), nominate a board director of the Operator or a member of the senior executive team of the Operator to act as D&I Champion.
- (b) The Operator shall ensure that the D&I Champion role is filled as soon as reasonably practicable after such role becomes vacant throughout the term of this Contract.

##### 1.5 Recruitment Targets and Objectives

- (a) The Operator shall use all reasonable and lawful endeavours to:
  - (i) be objective, transparent and fair in its recruitment processes;
  - (ii) meet Recruitment Targets; and
  - (iii) improve retention rates of underrepresented groups

(together, the “**Recruitment Objectives**”).

- (b) The Operator shall report on its performance against its Recruitment Objectives as part of its D&I Annual Report, together with relevant supporting evidence. Such supporting evidence may include details of Operator policies and procedures such as: advertising across a variety of channels to reach a broad range of candidates; blind sifting applications; engaging in CV blind interviewing; engaging in outreach programmes; establishing a returners policy; and/or establishing mentoring schemes.
- (c) Nothing in this paragraph 1.5 or this Chapter 2.1 is intended to impose or require any quota.

#### 1.6 **Data – Collecting, Monitoring and Reporting**

- (a) During the Contract Term, the Operator shall monitor the diversity profile of its workforce and collect Workforce Diversity Data.
- (b) Within six (6) weeks of the Start Date, the Secretary of State may notify the Operator of any further data requirements it may have, including:
  - (i) any additions to the scope of the Workforce Diversity Data the Operator is required to monitor and collect;
  - (ii) the frequency in which it shall be measured or collected; and
  - (iii) the form in which the Operator is required to deliver this to the Secretary of State via such data hub as the Secretary of State may direct.
- (c) The Operator shall use reasonable endeavours to collect and submit this data in accordance with the Secretary of State’s data requirements.
- (d) The Operator acknowledges and agrees that the Secretary of State may use any data provided to it by the Operator pursuant to this Chapter 2.1 for analytical and policy development purposes.
- (e) The Operator shall provide a detailed report to the Secretary of State of its Workforce Diversity Data:
  - (i) by 19 September 2021; and
  - (ii) no later than 31 March 2022 and each anniversary thereof.
- (f) The Operator shall organise the detailed report in accordance with the characteristics listed in the definition of Workforce Diversity Data.

#### 1.7 **Improvement and Remedial Plans**

- (a) If and to the extent that the Secretary of State considers that the Operator has not adequately:
  - (i) delivered its D&I Strategy;
  - (ii) achieved accreditation in accordance with its D&I Strategy or has otherwise lost its accreditation;
  - (iii) used all reasonable and lawful endeavours to deliver against its Recruitment Objectives; or
  - (iv) collected, monitored and reported on data pursuant to paragraph 1.6 (*Data – Collecting, Monitoring and Reporting*),
 it may notify the Operator that it requires it to deliver a plan for how it will improve its performance in the relevant area (a “**D&I Improvement Plan**”) for its approval. The D&I Improvement Plan shall include the Operator’s proposed timeline for implementing any changes or actions.
- (b) If the Parties cannot agree the D&I Improvement Plan within twenty (20) Weekdays from the Secretary of State’s notification pursuant to paragraph 1.7(a), the Secretary of State may impose such D&I Improvement Plan as it considers reasonable.
- (c) If the Operator fails to implement the D&I Improvement Plan, then the Secretary of State may serve a Remedial Plan Notice on the Operator in accordance with paragraph

2 (*Remedies for Contraventions of the National Rail Contract*) of Chapter 9.4.3 (*Procedure for remedying a contravention of the National Rail Contract*).

## 2. Apprenticeships

- 2.1 The Operator shall at all times keep accurate and complete records of the Apprenticeships (and the training provided to apprentices) offered by the Operator and (if applicable) its immediate UK based supply chain in delivering the Rail Services on a basis which is at all times compliant with Data Protection Legislation. In particular, in relation to each Reporting Period the Operator shall record:
- (a) the number of new Apprenticeships created, continuing and concluding in that Reporting Period;
  - (b) the date of commencement and conclusion of each Apprenticeship; and
  - (c) in relation to each Business Employee that commences an Apprenticeship in such Reporting Period:
    - (i) the level of such Apprenticeship as described in the Regulated Qualifications Framework;
    - (ii) the skills category (as described in the Standard Occupational Classification Codes) within which Apprenticeship falls;
    - (iii) the month and year of birth of that Business Employee;
    - (iv) the current occupation of that Business Employee;
    - (v) the gender of that Business Employee (except in relation to those Business Employees who do not permit disclosure);
    - (vi) whether that Business Employee is of BAME origin (except in relation to those Business Employees who do not permit disclosure);
    - (vii) the postcode of the location at which that Business Employee is principally employed at (e.g. the relevant train crew depot of train crew); and
    - (viii) the first half of that Business Employee's residential postcode.
- 2.2 Subject to paragraph 12.1 (*Data Protection – Apprenticeships*) of Chapter 9.6 (*Confidentiality and Data Protection*), the Operator shall provide an Apprenticeships Data Collection Form to the Rail Delivery Group containing the information set out in paragraph 2.1 for the purpose of enabling the Secretary of State to monitor the achievement of the apprenticeship targets set out in the Transport Infrastructure Skills Strategy and check for any duplication of records.
- 2.3 By no later than 31 January each year (and within one (1) month of the end of the Contract Period) the Operator shall deliver to the Rail Delivery Group the breakdown of the information recorded pursuant to paragraph 2.1, and (subject to the requirements of paragraph 2.2) it shall record this during the calendar year (or part thereof) which ended on the immediately preceding 31 December or at the end of the Contract Period (as applicable), and that information is to be transmitted via the completed Apprenticeships Data Collection Form and submitted to the Rail Delivery Group for onward transmission to the Secretary of State on an annual basis or at such other time as the Secretary of State may specify.
- 2.4 The Operator shall ensure that the number of Business Employees who begin an Apprenticeship in:
- (a) the first Contract Year shall be no fewer than [REDACTED<sup>3</sup>] Business Employees; and

<sup>3</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

(b) any Contract Year (other than the first Contract Year) shall constitute no fewer than the proportion of Business Employees specified in the Business Plan in relation to that Contract Year, such proportion to be no less than 2.5%,

(the “**Apprenticeships Requirement**”), provided that the Apprenticeships Requirement shall be subject to a pro rata reduction in respect of the Final Contract Year in the event that the Final Contract Year consists of less than thirteen (13) Reporting Periods.

2.5 The Operator shall provide evidence of the satisfaction of the Apprenticeships Requirement to the Secretary of State within ten (10) days of the end of each Contract Year.

## Chapter 2.2

### Rail Workforce

#### 1. Notification of the Secretary of State

1.1 The Operator shall, and shall procure that each other Relevant Employer, shall:

- (a) as soon as reasonably practicable prior to engaging with any Trade Union or other employee representative body in relation to any In-Scope Matter; or
- (b) promptly and in any event three (3) Weekdays following any communication from any Trade Union or other employee representative body to the Operator (or the Relevant Employer, as applicable) in relation to any potential In-Scope Matter which is not covered by an existing Mandate,

and where reasonably practicable in each case in good time to allow for proper engagement with the Secretary of State, inform the Secretary of State of all relevant information relating to any such matters and any other information the Secretary of State may request from time to time in relation to such matters. Where there is any doubt as to whether a matter requires notification in accordance with this paragraph 1.1, the Operator shall, and shall procure that each other Relevant Employer shall, make a notification in any event. In determining whether to make a notification and/or what information must be provided to the Secretary of State by the Operator, the Operator shall have regard to its obligations under paragraph 7.1 (*Duties of the Operator*) of this Chapter 2.2.

1.2 Following notification to the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 1.1 above, the Operator shall, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall, prior to any further communication with any Trade Union or other employee representative body in relation to the applicable In-Scope Matter, consult with the Secretary of State with a view to reaching agreement with the Secretary of State on a Mandate.

1.3 If:

- (a) a Mandate cannot be agreed and the Operator or a Relevant Employer acts or omits to act in respect of a relevant In-Scope Matter without a Mandate;
- (b) the Secretary of State determines that the Operator or Relevant Employer has incorrectly treated a matter as not being an In-Scope Matter and the Operator or Relevant Employer acts or omits to act in respect of that matter without a Mandate; or
- (c) the Operator or Relevant Employer breaches a Mandate or acts outside the scope of a Mandate in relation to the relevant In-Scope Matter,

and, in any such case, in doing so incurs costs, or loses revenue, then the Secretary of State may in the Secretary of State's sole discretion direct that:

- (i) any loss of revenue shall be treated as Revenue Foregone; and
- (ii) any increase in costs shall be treated as a Disallowable Cost,

in each case where the Secretary of State in the Secretary of State's sole discretion determines that such loss of revenue or increased costs (as the case may be) arises in connection with actions taken (or omitted to be taken) by the Operator or Relevant Employer in relation to the relevant In-Scope Matter.

1.4 Once a Mandate has been agreed, the Operator shall and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall:

- (a) act in accordance with the Mandate; and
- (b) act in accordance with paragraph 2 (*Reward and People Principles*) below,

in relation to the In-Scope Matter to which that Mandate relates.

1.5 For the purposes of this paragraph 1, communications shall include any verbal discussions or written communications, in each case of a formal or informal nature.

1.6 Where any Business Employees are not subject to collective representation (whether by a Trade Union or any other employee representative body):

- (a) any issue which would require notification in paragraphs 1.1(a) and 1.1 (b) in relation to an In-Scope Matter shall require notification if the issue arises in respect of any group of more than one such unrepresented Business Employees (“**Unrepresented Employees**”); and
- (b) when paragraph 1.6(a) applies, once a Mandate is required, the provisions of this Chapter 2.2 shall apply in full in respect of the relevant Unrepresented Employees.

## 2. **Reward and People Principles**

2.1 In relation to any In-Scope Matter (and whether or not a Mandate has been agreed in respect of that matter), the Parties acknowledge the applicable principles for reward and working arrangements are set out in Reward and People Principles established in accordance with the Previous Agreement, subject to the remainder of this paragraph 2.1. Specifically:

- (a) the Operator agrees that the Reward and People Principles and any other policies, high level instructions or guidance that the Secretary of State may reasonably introduce or direct from time to time (including in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 6 (*Reform*) below) (together, the “**Employment Policy Framework**”), shall, in the case of any conflict or inconsistency, take precedence over any arrangements which form the substance of an In-Scope Matter between the Secretary of State and the Operator which are in place immediately prior to the Start Date, including:
  - (i) any multi-year pay awards;
  - (ii) staffing budgets (whether pre-approved or otherwise, and including where any assumptions relating to pay growth may have been made); and
  - (iii) any other agreement or arrangement relating to any In-Scope Matters, in each case which may take effect following the Start Date; however
- (b) without prejudice to paragraph 2.2, the Employment Policy Framework shall not take precedence over any such In-Scope Matters which, prior to the Start Date, have become legally binding on the Operator or Relevant Employer (whether by reason of individual contract of employment, collective agreement or by custom and practice) and including agreements made which have not yet taken effect at the Start Date or any changes which the Operator or Relevant Employer is required to make by law.

2.2 Nothing in this Chapter 2.2 shall prevent the Operator or Relevant Employer from seeking to reach agreement with any Trade Union, other employee representative body or Business Employees or taking such other steps as are appropriate or necessary regarding new or revised terms and conditions of employment in order to implement the Employment Policy Framework or any Mandate.

2.3 The Operator shall, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall, unless otherwise directed by the Secretary of State, conduct any negotiations or consultation with any Trade Union, other employee representative body or group of employees (within paragraph 1.6(a) (*Notification of the Secretary of State*)) regarding the subject of a Mandate in accordance with the Employment Policy Framework.

2.4 Subject to paragraph 2.3, the Operator shall, or shall procure that the Relevant Employer shall, lead and have full day to day conduct of the relevant negotiations or consultation and implementation of any Mandate.

## 3. **Terms of Employment**

3.1 In addition to the obligations set out in paragraph 1 (*Notification of the Secretary of State*) above but subject to the provisions of paragraph 3.2 below, the Operator shall not, and shall procure that each other Relevant Employer shall not, without the Secretary of State’s consent (which shall not be unreasonably withheld) effect, or purport or promise to effect, or otherwise implement any In-Scope Matter other than in accordance with the relevant Mandate.

3.2 Without limiting paragraph 3.1, subject to paragraph 3.4, the Operator shall not, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall not, without the prior consent of the Secretary of State (which shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed), vary, or purport or promise to



- vary the terms or conditions of employment with any Business Employee (in particular, the Operator shall not, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall not, promise to make any additional payment or provide any additional benefit or vary any term or condition relating to holiday, leave or hours to be worked) where the revised terms of employment of any existing Business Employee may take effect on or after the Start Date if and to the extent that such terms or conditions are more favourable than the standard terms or conditions of employment of the equivalent or nearest equivalent Business Employee role at the date on which such revised terms and conditions are scheduled to take effect.
- 3.3 Without limiting paragraph 3.1 above, subject to paragraph 3.4, the Operator shall not, and shall procure that each other Relevant Employer shall not, without the prior consent of the Secretary of State (which shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed), create or grant, or promise to create or grant, terms or conditions of employment for any prospective Business Employee where the employment of such prospective Business Employee by the Operator or such other Relevant Employer may commence on or after the Start Date if and to the extent that:
- (a) such terms or conditions are more favourable than the standard terms or conditions of employment of the equivalent or nearest equivalent Business Employee role at the date on which such employment is scheduled to commence; and
  - (b) if such terms or conditions were granted to such equivalent Business Employee already employed by the Operator by way of variation to their terms or conditions of employment, the Operator would be in contravention of paragraph 3.2.
- 3.4 For the purposes of matters falling within paragraphs 3.2 and 3.3, no consent will be required from the Secretary of State in respect of any changes or proposed changes made or proposed in the ordinary course of business in accordance with human resources policies (in relation to the day to day management of the Operator's or Relevant Employer's business) which exist prior to the Start Date which: (a) are not likely to give rise to material industrial relations risks (including a risk of Industrial Action); and/or (b) will not have a material negative impact on productivity; and/or (c) are not contrary to train passengers' interests.
- 3.5 The expression "**promise to vary**" or "**promise to effect**" when used in paragraphs 3.1 and 3.2 includes any offer or indication of willingness to vary (whether or not such offer or willingness is made conditional upon obtaining the Secretary of State's consent).
4. **In-Scope Matters**
- 4.1 The Secretary of State may at any time, in the Secretary of State's sole discretion, determine that a matter is, or is not, an In-Scope Matter. Save where either paragraph 4.4 or 4.5 applies, a determination that a matter is an In-Scope Matter will be final and conclusive but will not prevent the Parties agreeing that a matter is no longer an In-Scope Matter.
- 4.2 Without prejudice to paragraphs 4.3 and 4.4, if a matter is not an In-Scope Matter, no Mandate is required. For these purposes, matters in respect of which a Mandate is not required will include changes to working practices made in the ordinary course of business in accordance with human resources policies (in relation to the day to day management of the Operator's or Relevant Employer's business) which exist prior to the Start Date which:
- (a) are not likely to give rise to material industrial relations risks (including a risk of Industrial Action); and/or
  - (b) will not have a material negative impact on productivity; and/or
  - (c) are not contrary to train passengers' interests.
- 4.3 Where the Operator (or a Relevant Employer) is in any doubt as to whether any matter is an In-Scope Matter requiring a Mandate, it must, or must procure that the Relevant Employer shall, inform the Secretary of State in good time prior to steps being taken to implement such matter or change and the Operator must, or must procure that the Relevant Employer shall, if requested by the Secretary of State, provide an explanation of why it believes the proposed matter or change is not an In-Scope Matter requiring a Mandate. Thereafter, the Secretary of State may make a determination in accordance with paragraph 4.1. Provided the Secretary of State, acting reasonably, is satisfied that the Operator complied with its obligations under this paragraph 4.3 and paragraph 7.1 (*Duties of the Operator*), the Secretary of State's determination shall, subject to paragraph 4.5, be final and conclusive. Where the Secretary of



State has determined that a matter is an In-Scope Matter, nothing will prevent the Parties subsequently agreeing that the matter is no longer an In-Scope Matter.

- 4.4 Where a matter is not an In-Scope Matter, the Parties acknowledge and agree that further developments in relation to, and/or escalation of, that matter may be such that it could result in (a) material industrial relations risks (including a risk of Industrial Action); and/or (b) a material negative impact on productivity; and/or (c) be contrary to train passengers' interests. In any such event, the Operator will make a notification to the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 4.3 with a view to seeking a determination from the Secretary of State as to whether the matter has become an In-Scope Matter.
- 4.5 Any determination by the Secretary of State that any matter is an In-Scope Matter is conditional on the Secretary of State, acting reasonably, being and remaining satisfied that the Operator and, where relevant, the Relevant Employer have disclosed all relevant information relating to such matter and complying and continuing to comply with the duty in paragraph 7.1 (*Duties of the Operator*). If, in the Secretary of State's opinion, acting reasonably, there is or has been any material non-disclosure of relevant information or a material breach of paragraph 7.1 (*Duties of the Operator*) by the Operator or Relevant Employer, the Secretary of State may determine that the Mandate is void in which case for the purposes of this Chapter 2.2 costs, losses and revenues shall be treated as if that Mandate had never been agreed and paragraph 1.3(a) (*Notification of the Secretary of State*) of this Chapter 2.2 shall apply in respect of any acts or omissions of the Operator, or the Relevant Employer, in relation to that matter. The Parties acknowledge and agree that where this paragraph 4.5 applies, the Secretary of State may take such action and/or instruct such changes as it considers reasonably necessary to correct the apportionment of costs, losses and revenues between the Parties and designate the Operator's costs, losses and revenues as Disallowable Costs and/or Revenue Forgone.

## 5. **Industrial Action**

- 5.1 The Operator shall, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall, comply with the Dispute Handling Policy. Without prejudice to any obligations under the Dispute Handling Policy, to the extent the Operator, acting reasonably, believes that Industrial Action is likely to occur as a result of its (or any Relevant Employer's) compliance with any aspect of this Chapter 2.2 (including any Mandate agreed pursuant to it), or for any other reason, it shall promptly notify the Secretary of State of its reason for that belief and the effect, or the anticipated effect, of such event on the performance of the Rail Services and provide the Secretary of State with such further information as the Secretary of State may request.
- 5.2 As soon as reasonably practicable following a notification set out in paragraph 5.1 above, and in any event within three (3) Weekdays following such notification, the Operator shall propose a process it intends to adopt to deal with the relevant Industrial Action in accordance with and subject to the Dispute Handling Policy. The Operator and the Secretary of State shall use reasonable endeavours to agree how the relevant Industrial Action shall be handled, bearing in mind the Dispute Handling Policy, provided however that the Operator's handling of such Industrial Action will be subject always to the Secretary of State's direction, such agreement and/or direction being the "**Dispute Handling Plan**". The Operator shall, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall, act in accordance with the Dispute Handling Plan.
- 5.3 If:
- (a) agreement is not reached regarding how relevant Industrial Action is to be handled; or
  - (b) in the event that Industrial Action occurs which the Secretary of State determines (at the Secretary of State's sole discretion, acting reasonably), has arisen as a result of the Operator or any Relevant Employer not complying with its or their obligations under this Chapter 2.2 (including any Mandate agreed pursuant to it, any failure to act in accordance with the Dispute Handling Plan, to make a notification required by paragraph 1.1 (*Notification of the Secretary of State*) or to provide all relevant information in relation to such notification and/or to comply with paragraphs 7.1 (*Duties of the Operator*) and 7.3 (*Duties of the Operator*)),

either of which has resulted in a loss of revenue, an increase or decrease in costs, or a combination of the foregoing, as a consequence (direct or otherwise) of the disruption to

Passenger Services (however so related), the Secretary of State may in the Secretary of State's sole discretion:

- (c) determine that this shall be a Financial Target Amendment Event (as applicable) and/or a Cost Budget Change Event;
- (d) direct that any such increase in costs shall be treated as Disallowable Costs and the Operator shall not, in any circumstances, be entitled to claim back such costs from the Secretary of State whether pursuant to Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) or otherwise; and/or
- (e) direct that any such lost revenue shall be treated as Revenue Foregone.

5.4 To the extent that the Operator:

- (a) has complied with this Chapter 2.2 (including any applicable Mandate); and
- (b) has complied with the Dispute Handling Plan,

then

- (c) the Secretary of State, will not treat any increase in costs or loss of revenue of the Operator arising from the relevant Industrial Action (however caused and of whatever nature) as a Disallowable Cost or Revenue Foregone (respectively); and
- (d) a Financial Target Amendment Event (as applicable) shall occur and a Cost Budget Change Event shall occur;

in circumstances where the Secretary of State is satisfied that the Operator has acted reasonably in taking all reasonable steps (and procuring that any Relevant Employer has taken all reasonable steps) to avoid the Industrial Action and that, Industrial Action having nevertheless occurred, the Operator has taken all reasonable steps (and has procured that any Relevant Employer has taken all reasonable steps) to mitigate its effects.

## 6. Reform

6.1 The Operator shall, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall:

- (a) co-operate with the Secretary of State as may be required by the Secretary of State from time to time in respect of the planning, development and/or implementation (as applicable) of industry reform with respect to the Employment Policy Framework and the Dispute Handling Policy, including co-operating and collaborating with other Train Operators and other organisations in respect of planning, developing and implementing such reforms to the extent permitted by applicable laws; and
- (b) provide to the Secretary of State, such information and data in relation to the Employment Policy Framework and/or the Dispute Handling Policy (or any aspect of it/them) as the Secretary of State may require from time to time.

6.2 The Operator shall, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall, use all reasonable endeavours to introduce, implement and comply with such amendments to the Dispute Handling Policy, the Employment Policy Framework generally and any other applicable industry agreements (including any successor arrangements or any other agreement between the Operator and one or more third parties relating to the sustainability of the Operator's staffing model, people practices, engagement with related industry stakeholders or any related matter) as may be directed by the Secretary of State from time to time.

6.3 During the Contract Term, the Operator shall not, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall not, enter into any new Employment Agreements otherwise than in accordance with the terms of this Chapter 2.2 (including any applicable Mandate) and the Employment Policy Framework without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State.

## 7. Duties of the Operator

7.1 In relation to any matters dealt with in this Chapter 2.2, the Operator shall, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall, deal with the Secretary of State in an open and cooperative way, and must disclose to the Secretary of State on an ongoing basis anything relating to the Business Employees (and any Trade Union or other employee representative body representing any such employees) of which the Secretary of State would reasonably expect

notice in respect of anything which might reasonably be expected to be relevant to an In-Scope Matter.

7.2 The Operator shall (and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall) act within the spirit of this Chapter 2.2 in its communications and dealings with any Trade Union, employee representative body or any Business Employee, both locally and nationally.

7.3 The Operator's duty to act as a Good and Efficient Operator shall apply to the discharge of its obligations under this Chapter 2.2.

## 8. Cooperation with Secretary of State and Relevant Employer

8.1 Where the Operator or Relevant Employer reasonably considers that complying with any aspect of this Chapter 2.2, including any aspect of the Employment Policy Framework or any Mandate, will cause it to breach any legal obligation of the Operator or Relevant Employer in their capacity as employer (whether arising under legislation or at common law) including breaches of legislation relating to unlawful discrimination or equal pay, the Secretary of State and Operator shall work in cooperation (and/or, as appropriate, the Secretary of State shall, and the Operator shall use reasonable endeavours to procure that the Relevant Employer shall, work in cooperation) with a view to agreeing an approach to, as the case may be, compliance with such obligations under this Chapter 2.2 or avoidance or mitigation of the risk of such breach by the Operator or Relevant Employer. Once such an approach is agreed, the Operator shall, and will procure that the Relevant Employer shall, implement it on its terms.

## 9. Disallowable Costs

9.1 Save as provided in this Chapter 2.2 or as expressly agreed with the Secretary of State, any losses and liabilities (including costs, charges, penalties, compensation or similar payments) incurred as result of termination of a contract of employment of, or reaching any settlement or compromise with a Business Employee shall be Disallowable Costs.

## 10. Workers

10.1 To the extent that the Operator or any Relevant Employer engages individuals to work on the Rail Services as workers (howsoever "workers" is defined in relevant English employment legislation from time to time, but excluding "agency workers" as defined in the Agency Worker Regulations 2010, as amended from time to time) ("**Workers**") rather than employees, the provisions in this Chapter 2.2 shall be deemed to cover such Workers. In such circumstances, the engaging party shall be the Operator or the Relevant Employer, as applicable, and references to terms and conditions of employment shall be construed as references to terms and conditions of engagement and references to Business Employees shall include such workers.

## 11. Changes in Numbers and Total Cost of Employees

11.1 Subject to and excluding any increase in the remuneration of Business Employees permitted under this Chapter 2.2 (*Rail Workforce*) the Operator shall not, and shall secure that each other relevant employer shall not, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State (which shall not be unreasonably withheld) increase or decrease the number of Business Employees such that:

- (a) the total number of Business Employees or the total cost per annum to the Operator and each other relevant employer of employing all Business Employees is increased by more than five per cent (5%);
- (b) the total number of Business Employees is decreased by more than five per cent (5%);
- (c) the total number of Business Employees in any particular role or the total cost per annum to the Operator and each other relevant employer of employing all Business Employees in any particular role is increased by more than five per cent (5%); or
- (d) the total number of Business Employees in any particular role or the total cost per annum to the Operator and each other relevant employer of employing all Business Employees in any particular role is decreased by more than five per cent (5%),

in each case (unless otherwise agreed or determined by the Secretary of State), during the Contract Period as compared to (i) the relevant total number of such Business Employees as

at the Start Date, or (ii) the budgeted costs of employing such Business Employees as set out in the Operator's first Cost Budget, as applicable.

11.2 The Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State a report at the end of each Reporting Period which sets out:

- (a) the numbers of Business Employees that fall into the categories of (a) revenue protection, (b) ticket office staff; (c) the sale of tickets or (d) any other category notified by the Secretary of State to the Operator; and
- (b) in outline, the Operator's plan for recruitment to fill any vacancies where the vacant role wholly or partially relates to the categories noted at (a), (b), (c) or (d) in paragraph 11.2(a) above.

## Chapter 3 – Collaboration



### Chapter 3 - Collaboration

**Chapter 3**  
**COLLABORATION**

1	Duty of Cooperation
2	NR Data Sharing Strategy
3	Sharing Further Data with Network Rail
4	Safety Information
5	British Transport Police
6	Co-operation with Welsh Ministers
7	Co-operation with Scottish Ministers

## Chapter 3

### COLLABORATION

#### 1. **Duty of Cooperation**

- 1.1 The Operator shall fully and effectively cooperate with each of the Specified Persons, to the extent applicable, in respect of each of the Specified Matters. This cooperation shall include such of the Specified Actions as are relevant or applicable to the particular Specified Matter. These Specified Actions shall be undertaken by the Operator in collaboration with such of the Specified Persons (if any) as may be appropriate in the particular circumstances.
- 1.2 At any time the Secretary of State may specify, by notice to the Operator, any additional Specified Persons, Specified Matter and/or Specified Action as the Secretary of State may reasonably determine. The Operator's obligations pursuant to paragraph 1.1 above in relation to any such additional Specified Persons, Specified Matter and/or Specified Action determined by the Secretary of State shall take effect from the date of the Operator's receipt of such notice.
- 1.3 If in the course of the cooperation required pursuant to paragraph 1.1 above, a Specified Person seeks to require the Operator to implement:
- (i) any Specified Action; or
  - (ii) any initiative or action that is not a Specified Action,
- and such implementation would necessitate additional staff headcount or other material out-of-pocket expenses that are not to be fully funded by a third party and that were not provided for within the Cost Budget most recently Placed in Escrow, the Operator shall discuss the matter with the Secretary of State and paragraph 1.1 above shall not require the Operator to implement that initiative or action unless the Parties agree or the Secretary of State instructs to the contrary.
- 1.4 Notwithstanding any other terms of this paragraph 1, the Operator shall not be required to do anything which would put it in breach of any obligation on the Operator arising under applicable Law (including competition law under the Competition Act 1998) or the terms of its Licences.

#### 2. **NR Data Sharing Strategy**

- 2.1 The Operator shall continue to use all reasonable endeavours to implement the NR Data Sharing Strategy in accordance with its terms, and shall continue to consult, collaborate and co-operate with Network Rail to agree any reasonable amendments or updates to the NR Data Sharing Strategy from time to time.
- 2.2 The Operator shall propose and use all reasonable endeavours to agree with Network Rail suitable amendments to the NR Data Sharing Strategy to ensure compliance with any guidance or instructions issued or provided by the Secretary of State from time to time.
- 2.3 The Operator shall not unreasonably withhold or delay its consent to any amendments which Network Rail may reasonably propose to the NR Data Sharing Strategy, provided that the Operator shall not agree to any amendments which would not be in compliance with any guidance the Secretary of State may provide or issue from time to time.
- 2.4 Notwithstanding any other term of this paragraph 2, the Operator shall not be required to do anything which would put it in breach of any obligation on the Operator arising under applicable Law (including competition law under the Competition Act 1998) or the terms of its Licences.

#### 3. **Sharing further data with Network Rail**

- 3.1 The Operator shall, to the extent reasonably requested by Network Rail, share with Network Rail all relevant data including GPS data and data derived from geometry measurement systems, forward facing CCTV, driver advisory systems and train condition monitoring systems fitted to any rolling stock within the Train Fleet. Any such data provided to Network

Rail shall be provided in such format as Network Rail may reasonably request as soon as reasonably practicable and without charge.

- 3.2 The Operator shall, if so requested by Network Rail, provide advice to Network Rail on the feasibility, costs and associated practicalities of providing Network Rail with access to real-time (or near-real-time) footage from on-train forward-facing CCTV systems.
- 3.3 The Operator shall, as soon as reasonably practicable following any request, provide Network Rail with such information as it may reasonably request, including:
- (a) information in relation to current and projected future numbers of train crew employed, in aggregate and in respect of each individual train crew depot or link, and distinguishing in each case between different types of train crew and between fully qualified individuals and trainees (the “**Train Crew Numbers Data**”); and
  - (b) a comparison of the Train Crew Numbers Data against the Operator’s most recent assessment of the current and expected future Required Establishment in each case.

#### **4. Safety information**

- 4.1 The Operator shall co-operate with any request from any relevant competent authority for provision of information and/or preparation and submission of reports detailing or identifying compliance with safety obligations set out in the Safety Regulations including any breaches of the Safety Regulations.
- 4.2 The Operator shall notify the Secretary of State as soon as practicable of the receipt and contents of any formal notification relating to safety or any improvement or prohibition notice received from the ORR. Immediately upon receipt of such notification or notice, the Operator shall provide the Secretary of State with a copy of such notification or notice.
- 4.3 The Operator shall participate in industry groups and committees addressing the domestic and European safety agenda of the Railway Group.

#### **5. British Transport Police**

- 5.1 The Operator shall give due consideration to any request by the British Transport Police to provide suitable accommodation (including additional or alternative accommodation) or facilities at Stations to enable the British Transport Police to effectively perform the services owed to the Operator under any contract or arrangement entered into between the British Transport Police and the Operator.
- 5.2 The Operator shall:
- (a) work with the British Transport Police to:
    - (i) reduce crime and anti-social behaviour on the railway;
    - (ii) reduce minutes lost to police-related disruption;
    - (iii) increase passenger confidence with personal security on train and on station;
  - (b) work in partnership with the British Transport Police and conduct an annual assessment of the security and crime risk at all Stations and across the Rail Services area generally;
  - (c) co-operate with the British Transport Police to provide it with access to records and/or systems maintained by the Operator which relate to lost property to enable the British Transport Police to have access to such information when dealing with items reported to them as lost; and
  - (d) consult with the British Transport Police as to its requirements in relation to records and/or systems and shall ensure that the British Transport Police has access to such records and/or systems within fifteen (15) Weekdays of the Start Date and in any event within five (5) Weekdays of the notification of a crime by the British Transport Police.
- 5.3 The Operator shall consult with the British Transport Police in relation to plans to develop any part of the land within a Property Lease which could affect staff or customers and give the



British Transport Police an opportunity to advise on and/or provide comments on any opportunities for the enhancement of safety and reduction in crime.

**6. Co-operation with Welsh Ministers**

6.1 The Operator shall at all times during the Contract Term fully and effectively co-operate with Welsh Ministers in relation to:

- (a) any scheme to reopen or divert any rail route; and
- (b) any proposal which may be promoted by (or on behalf of) Welsh Ministers during the Contract Term for the provision of additional, varied or extended Passenger Services to and from destinations in Wales, such co-operation to:

include the provision of information to Welsh Ministers in respect of the implications of such proposals on the operation of the existing Passenger Services in Wales, costs and revenues and any other impact on the Operator's obligations under the National Rail Contract.

**7. Co-operation with Scottish Ministers**

7.1 The Operator shall at all times during the Contract Term fully and effectively co-operate with Scottish Ministers in relation to:

- (a) any scheme to reopen or divert any rail route; and
- (b) any proposal which may be promoted by (or on behalf of) Scottish Ministers during the Contract Term for the provision of additional, varied or extended Passenger Services to and from destinations in Scotland, such co-operation to:

include the provision of information to Scottish Ministers in respect of the implications of such proposals on the operation of the existing Passenger Services in Scotland, costs and revenues and any other impact on the Operator's obligations under the National Rail Contract.

## Chapter 4 – Rail Services



Chapter 4.1 - Service Development



Chapter 4.2 - Operating Obligations



Chapter 4.3 - The Rolling Stock



Chapter 4.4 - Operational Performance

**CHAPTER 4**  
**RAIL SERVICES**

Chapter 4.1:	Service Development
Chapter 4.2:	Operating Obligations
Chapter 4.3	The Rolling Stock
	Appendix 1: The Composition of the Train Fleet
Chapter 4.4:	Operational Performance

## Chapter 4.1

### Service Development

#### 1. Train Service Requirement

- 1.1 The Train Service Requirement is the specification of the Passenger Services to be provided by the Operator during the Contract Term.
- 1.2 The Train Service Requirement shall remain in force unless and until amended or replaced pursuant to this Chapter 4.1.

#### 2. Train Formation Capacity Plan

- 2.1 Subject to paragraph 2.2, for the purposes of this Contract, the “**Train Formation Capacity Plan**” shall be the plan (including sub-plans) prepared by the Operator for the operation of trains and train formations under the Timetable that best matches available capacity to Forecast Passenger Demand as amended from time to time during the Contract Period in accordance with this Contract.
- 2.2 For the purposes of Chapter 4.4 (*Operational Performance*) references to “**Train Formation Capacity Plan**” shall be construed as the latest version of the Train Formation Capacity Plan which includes any amendments thereto pursuant to paragraphs 3 (*Timetable changes proposed by Network Rail*), 4 (*Timetable changes proposed by the Operator*) and/or 5 (*Timetable changes and Train Formation Capacity Plan changes requested by the Secretary of State*) of Chapter 4.2 (*Operating Obligations*):
- (a) where such amendments are required as a consequence of Network Rail exercising its rights pursuant to the Track Access Agreement;
  - (b) where such amendments proposed by the Operator have prior approval from the Secretary of State; or
  - (c) where such amendments are requested by the Secretary of State.
- 2.3 The Operator shall submit to the Secretary of State a Train Formation Capacity Plan in respect of each Timetable in accordance with this Contract.
- 2.4 In preparing any Train Formation Capacity Plan, the Operator shall do so by reference to the Timetable that it envisages operating in order to comply with the Train Service Requirement and paragraph 6 of this Chapter 4.1.
- 2.5 Each Train Formation Capacity Plan shall set out for each railway passenger service in the Timetable to which it relates:
- (a) its start point and departure time;
  - (b) its terminating point and arrival time;
  - (c) the number and class of rolling stock vehicles allocated to each such railway passenger service;
  - (d) the Passenger Carrying Capacity that each such railway passenger service, as formed, is to have; and
  - (e) its Forecast Passenger Demand and, where this has been requested by the Secretary of State and is capable of calculation, Actual Passenger Demand.
- 2.6 A Train Formation Capacity Plan shall be in any format that the Secretary of State may reasonably specify for this purpose.
- 2.7 From the Start Date until the next Passenger Change Date, the Operator shall adopt as the Train Formation Capacity Plan the document in the agreed terms marked **TFCP**. It is acknowledged that the Train Formation Capacity Plan in the agreed terms marked **TFCP** shall be replaced from time to time during the Contract Period in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 6.4.

### 3. **Consultation on Alterations to the Timetable**

- 3.1 If the Secretary of State is of the opinion that the proposed alterations to the Timetable represent a material alteration, the Secretary of State will require the Operator to undertake a consultation exercise, the scope of which must be agreed in advance with the Secretary of State.

### 4. **Timetable Development Rights**

- 4.1 The Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to amend and/or enter into such Access Agreements as may be necessary or desirable from time to time to obtain the timetable development rights that it requires to secure a Timetable that enables it to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement or such service amendments as may be agreed by the Secretary of State and Network Rail, pursuant to paragraph 8 and otherwise comply with its obligations under the National Rail Contract (including under paragraph 6 of this Chapter 4.1).
- 4.2 Subject to the remaining provisions of this paragraph 4, the Operator shall exercise its Timetable Development Rights so as to secure a Timetable that enables it to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement and paragraph 6 of this Chapter 4.1 in accordance with its obligations under paragraph 9 of this Chapter 4.1.
- 4.3 The Operator shall work with Network Rail, for the purposes of securing a Timetable that complies with the Train Service Requirement. In so doing the Operator may, in such a manner as can be reasonably considered appropriate in the circumstances, exercise its rights under the Track Access Agreement (including the Network Code) to object, to make representations and to withhold consent in respect of any actual or proposed act or omission by Network Rail in relation to such agreement in respect of its Timetable Development Rights, and shall inform the Secretary of State of the circumstances providing any supporting evidence from Network Rail.
- 4.4 If the Secretary of State does not consider that the Operator has taken sufficient steps under paragraph 4.3, the Secretary of State may require the Operator to exercise its rights in such manner as the Secretary of State reasonably considers appropriate in the circumstances, including:
- (a) disputing any actual or proposed act or omission by Network Rail in respect of any Timetable Development Rights; and
  - (b) submitting such dispute to any relevant dispute resolution arrangements or procedures and appealing against any award or determination under such arrangements or procedures, including to the ORR.
- 4.5 Subject to the Operator complying with its obligations under paragraph 4.3 above, it shall not be liable for any failure to secure a Timetable that enables the Operator to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement and paragraph 6 of this Chapter 4.1, to the extent that such failure is caused by:
- (a) the Operator's Timetable Development Rights being inadequate to enable it to secure the requisite Train Slots, provided that the Operator has exercised all reasonable endeavours to obtain the requisite Timetable Development Rights in accordance with paragraph 4.1 above;
  - (b) Network Rail exercising its flexing rights from time to time under the Track Access Agreement or the Network Code in respect of such Train Slots;
  - (c) Network Rail exercising its other rights from time to time under the Track Access Agreement or the Network Code; or
  - (d) the exercise by the ORR of its powers pursuant to section 22C of the Act.
- 4.6 **TDR Amendments**
- (a) If and to the extent that the Operator is not able to secure a Timetable that enables it to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement as a result of it not being able to obtain the Timetable Development Rights that it requires for that purpose, the Secretary of State shall (subject to paragraphs 4.6(b) and 4.6(c) below) issue to the Operator amendments to the Train Service

Requirement (“**TDR Amendment**”). The amendments to the Train Service Requirement contained in the TDR Amendment shall be those that the Secretary of State considers necessary for the purposes of enabling the Operator to secure a Timetable that is compliant with the Train Service Requirement by exercise of the Timetable Development Rights that the Operator does have.

- (b) The Secretary of State shall have an unfettered discretion as to whether or not to issue a TDR Amendment in circumstances where the Operator:
    - (i) has failed to exercise all reasonable endeavours to obtain the requisite Timetable Development Rights in accordance with paragraph 4.1; and
    - (ii) is not relieved by paragraph 4.5 above from liability for such failure to secure a Timetable that enables the Operator to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement.
  - (c) The Operator shall not be relieved from its obligations to obtain a Timetable that enables the Operator to operate the Train Service Requirement by the issue of any TDR Amendment where the Secretary of State reasonably considers that such failure to secure a Timetable that enables the Operator to operate the Train Service Requirement is partly due to the default of the Operator in not properly complying with its obligations under the National Rail Contract in relation to securing timetable development rights. Accordingly any TDR Amendment may be drafted so that it does not relieve the Operator of the obligation to comply with the Train Service Requirement to the extent that the Secretary of State determines that the failure is due to such default of the Operator and the Operator may therefore be in contravention of the National Rail Contract.
- 4.7 Following issue of any TDR Amendment pursuant to paragraph 4.6 the Operator shall, unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State, continue to use all reasonable endeavours to amend and/or enter into such Access Agreements as may be necessary or desirable from time to time to obtain the timetable development rights that it requires to secure a Timetable that enables it to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement without such TDR Amendment.
- 4.8 Any TDR Amendment issued pursuant to paragraph 4.6 shall:
- (a) unless otherwise required by the Secretary of State, cease to have effect on the date (if any) on which the first Timetable comes into effect after the Operator has obtained the Timetable Development Rights to secure a Timetable that enables it to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement without any such TDR Amendment; and
  - (b) amount to a Financial Target Amendment Event (as applicable), a Cost Budget Change Event and an Operational Performance Target Amendment Event but if such TDR Amendment has been issued in consequence of Network Rail exercising the rights referred to in paragraphs 4.5(b) or 4.5(c) there shall be no Trigger Event.
- 4.9 With effect from the date on which any TDR Amendment ceases to have effect in accordance with paragraph 4.8:
- (a) the Train Service Requirement without such TDR Amendment shall thereafter apply; and
  - (b) where a TDR Amendment resulted in a Trigger Event pursuant to paragraph 4.8 (b), the cessation of such TDR Amendment shall be further Financial Target Amendment Event (as applicable), a Cost Budget Change Event and an Operational Performance Target Amendment Event.
5. **Certification and Notification by Operator of Exercising Timetable Development Rights**
- 5.1 Before exercising any Timetable Development Right to bid for Train Slots, the Operator shall provide a certificate addressed to the Secretary of State and signed by a statutory director of the Operator confirming that its proposed exercise of that Timetable Development Right will be compliant with its obligation specified in paragraph 4.2.

- 5.2 The Operator shall also provide a statement of the agreed approach with, and response from, the “*Industry Timetable Change Assurance Programme Management Office*” (or any similar independently minded timetable improvement and assurance cooperative function, as may be identified by the Secretary of State).
- 5.3 If requested by the Secretary of State, the Operator agrees to demonstrate to the reasonable satisfaction of the Secretary of State that the Operator’s certificate referred to in paragraph 5.1 is a true and accurate confirmation of compliance with its obligation specified in paragraph 4.2.
- 5.4 The Operator shall:
- (a) keep the Secretary of State fully informed of any discussions with Network Rail in relation to the matters referred to in this Chapter 4.1 which may, in the reasonable opinion of the Operator, have a material impact on the ability of the Operator to deliver the Train Service Requirement or meet the requirements of paragraph 6 of this Chapter 4.1 through the Timetable and shall, if required to do so by the Secretary of State, supply copies of any related correspondence to the Secretary of State; and
  - (b) update any notification under this paragraph 5.4 and/or certification under paragraph 5.1 as soon as reasonably practicable, if at any time it elects or is required to modify any aspect of its exercise of its Timetable Development Rights following Network Rail’s proposed or actual rejection or modification of its bid or any part of it or for any other reason.

## 6. **Planning to meet Target Passenger Demand**

### 6.1 **Capacity and Timetable Planning**

- (a) The Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to provide for Passenger Carrying Capacity on each Passenger Service that meets as a minimum the Target Passenger Demand for that Passenger Service.
- (b) The Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to provide passengers with a reasonable expectation of a seat:
  - (i) on boarding any Off-Peak Passenger Service; and
  - (ii) twenty (20) minutes after boarding (or such other time period as the Secretary of State may stipulate) on any Peak Passenger Service.

### 6.2 **Allocation of rolling stock where Operator unable to meet the capacity requirements**

If at the time it prepares its Timetable and/or Train Formation Capacity Plan, having exercised all reasonable endeavours, the Operator is unable to prepare a Timetable and/or Train Formation Capacity Plan having the Passenger Carrying Capacity and/or meeting the reasonable expectations referred to in paragraphs 6.1(a) and 6.1(b), then the Timetable and/or the Train Formation Capacity Plan shall specify the best allocation of Passenger Services and rolling stock vehicles to Passenger Services that is reasonably practicable with a view to:

- (a) minimising, so far as is possible, the amount by which Target Passenger Demand exceeds the provision of Passenger Carrying Capacity on the affected Passenger Services;
- (b) ensuring, so far as is possible, that such excess is not unduly concentrated on any particular Route or Passenger Service; and
- (c) minimising, so far as is possible, the extent to which passengers are required to stand:
  - (i) on boarding any Off-Peak Passenger Service; and
  - (ii) twenty (20) minutes after boarding (or such other time period as the Secretary of State may stipulate) on any Peak Passenger Service.

### 6.3 **Preparation of Timetable and Train Formation Capacity Plan**

- (a) Subject to paragraph 6.3(b), the Operator shall in preparing its Timetable and its Train Formation Capacity Plan take full and proper account of its calculation of



Forecast Passenger Demand and use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that the Train Fleet is deployed in an optimal manner for the purposes of complying with its obligations under paragraphs 6.1 and 6.2 above.

- (b) The Operator shall in preparing its Timetable and Train Formation Capacity Plan deploy the entire Train Fleet (excluding reasonable planning requirements for the allocation of Hot Standbys or other rolling stock vehicles to be out of service due to maintenance requirements, Mandatory Modifications or any other reason agreed with the Secretary of State (such agreement not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed)) in delivering the Passenger Services at all such times where such deployment of the entire Train Fleet is reasonably required to meet the Operator's obligations pursuant to paragraphs 6.1 and 6.2 above.

#### 6.4 Finalising the Train Formation Capacity Plan

- (a) The Operator shall submit its proposed Train Formation Capacity Plan to the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable after Network Rail has issued the Timetable on which the Train Formation Capacity Plan is to be based.
- (b) The Operator shall submit its final Train Formation Capacity Plan to the Secretary of State prior to the commencement of the Timetable to which it relates.
- (c) The Train Formation Capacity Plan shall be certified by a statutory director of the Operator as being true and accurate and including the minimum capacity specified in the Train Service Requirement.
- (d) The Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State in a timely manner such rolling stock diagrams as the Secretary of State may reasonably request from time to time.

#### 7. Restrictions Relating to Rail Services

- 7.1 In preparing its Timetable, the Operator shall not without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State plan to operate Passenger Services other than those reasonably required to deliver the Train Service Requirement (including as amended by any TDR Amendment).
- 7.2 The Secretary of State may impose such conditions to the Secretary of State's consent as the Secretary of State considers appropriate for the purpose of securing the continuity of the provision of the Rail Services at the end of the Contract Term.

#### 8. Development of Proposals for Passenger Service Enhancements

- 8.1 In delivering improvements to Passenger Services (which may include service decrements), the Operator shall co-operate with Network Rail, the Secretary of State and where appropriate, other operators to identify options (the "**Passenger Services Enhancement Options**").
- 8.2 The Passenger Services Enhancement Options shall:
  - (a) respond to changes in travel patterns and increases and decreases in demand;
  - (b) improve network performance;
  - (c) propose/take advantage of changes to the existing infrastructure;
  - (d) propose/take advantage of changes in rolling stock capability or reliability as a result of changes in the Train Fleet;
  - (e) improve overall industry cost efficiency and/or reduce in costs in relation to any or all parts of the railway network;
  - (f) promote decarbonisation and other environmental improvements (in addition to the Secretary of State's goals and ambitions on decarbonisation for rolling stock as set out in the rolling stock part of the Business Plan);
  - (g) propose the reopening of disused, freight-only or new railway routes to passenger services; or
  - (h) support any government policy objective,
 including for this purpose any such options which arise after the expiry of the Contract Term.



- 8.3 Processes contained in this paragraph 8 shall take place in accordance with procedural arrangements and timescales stipulated by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 9.2 of this Chapter 4.1.
- 8.4 The Secretary of State may, in accordance with any stipulation made under paragraph 9.2, issue to the Operator any amended or new Train Service Requirement that the Secretary of State requires the Operator to operate and notice of the amendments (if any) to the Enforcement Benchmarks. Such amended or new Train Service Requirement will be issued prior to the commencement of the timetable development process of Network Rail for the Timetable in respect of which it is proposed to implement the change to Passenger Services arising from the amended or new Train Service Requirement.
- 8.5 Where the Operator is required by the Secretary of State to produce a report pursuant to paragraph 8.6, the Operator shall undertake a feasibility study for the purposes of identifying options for delivering enhanced Passenger Services on Routes where such improvements can be delivered, including by:
- (a) implementing changes to the existing infrastructure;
  - (b) improving rolling stock capability or reliability including through the modification of rolling stock or employing efficient maintenance arrangements; and/or
  - (c) implementing changes in service patterns.
- 8.6 At the request of the Secretary of State, the Operator shall submit to the Secretary of State within the timescales specified in any such request (or such other timescales as may be agreed by the Secretary of State and the Operator) a report which sets out the outcomes of the feasibility study undertaken pursuant to paragraph 8.5.

## 9. Procedural Arrangements and Timescales

- 9.1 The Operator agrees that the effective operation of the provisions of this Chapter 4.1 (and of provisions addressing the same or similar matters in other franchise agreements) will require certain procedural arrangements and timescales to be followed to a common timescale by the Secretary of State, the Operator, Network Rail and others.
- 9.2 The Operator agrees that the Secretary of State may stipulate any reasonable procedural arrangements and timescales that are to be followed by the Secretary of State and the Operator for these purposes (which shall be consistent with any relevant standard railway industry processes for the development of the Timetable and the resultant Train Formation Capacity Plan) and that the Secretary of State may amend any such stipulation from time to time.
- 9.3 The Secretary of State agrees to consult the Operator as far as reasonably practicable prior to stipulating or amending any such procedural arrangements and timescales in accordance with paragraph 9.2.
- 9.4 Any stipulation by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 9.2:
- (a) shall be at the reasonable discretion of the Secretary of State;
  - (b) may contain procedural arrangements and timescales to be followed by the Operator in relation to other changes to the Rail Services (pursuant to Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*)) in conjunction with the Train Service Requirement; and
  - (c) may provide for iterations of drafts of any amended or new Train Service Requirement, Train Formation Capacity Plan or Timetable.
- 9.5 Any procedural arrangements and timescales stipulated by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 9.2 shall have contractual effect between the Operator and the Secretary of State in accordance with the terms of such stipulation.

## 10. Obligations in relation to other Train Operators

- 10.1 Subject to the terms of the Licences and any applicable Law, the Operator shall co-operate with other Train Operators in respect of their timetable development rights where such other Train Operators provide railway passenger services meeting common or displaced passenger demand, with a view to ensuring that:

- (a) the levels of overcrowding over the Routes or other relevant routes are minimised and not unduly concentrated on particular railway passenger services, Routes or other relevant routes;
- (b) the stopping patterns of such railway passenger services are placed at approximately evenly-spaced intervals throughout each relevant hour, taking into account the reasonable needs of passengers and the different types of railway passenger services provided by other Train Operators and the Operator; and
- (c) a reasonable pattern of railway passenger service is provided on the relevant route(s) to enable passengers to make Connections (particularly where low frequency railway passenger services are operated, first trains or last trains are involved, taking account of seasonal fluctuations in passenger demand and the time needed to make any such Connection).

## 11. Provisions relating to Access Agreements and Property Leases

11.1 Where the Secretary of State considers it requisite for the purposes of better securing the delivery of railway passenger services under the National Rail Contract, or any other franchise agreement, or for the better achievement by the Secretary of State of any of the Secretary of State's duties, functions and powers in relation to railways, the Secretary of State may require the Operator:

- (a) to exercise or refrain from exercising any or all of its rights under any Access Agreement or any Property Lease, or any related rights under such other agreements as the Secretary of State may specify; and/or
- (b) subject to the consent of the counterparty thereto, to assign, novate or surrender its rights under any Access Agreement or Property Lease.

11.2 Except to the extent that the Secretary of State otherwise indicates from time to time, the Operator shall notify the Secretary of State of its intention to enter into or amend any Access Agreement:

- (a) where the approval of the ORR is required under the Act, not less than ten (10) Weekdays before the submission to the ORR; and
- (b) where no such approval is required, not less than ten (10) Weekdays prior to entering into such amendment or Access Agreement.

11.3 The Operator shall comply with its obligations under any Access Agreement or any Property Lease to which it is a party from time to time:

- (a) to notify or consult with the Secretary of State on any matter or proposal relating to that Access Agreement or Property Lease; and
- (b) which are contingent on a particular course of action being taken by the Secretary of State or which are otherwise expressly included in that Access Agreement or Property Lease for the benefit of the Secretary of State.

11.4 If and to the extent that:

- (a) the Secretary of State exercises the Secretary of State's rights pursuant to paragraph 11.1;
- (b) the Operator's compliance with the Secretary of State's requirements pursuant to paragraph 11.1 would lead to the unavoidable consequence of the Operator contravening any other terms of the National Rail Contract or the occurrence of an Event of Default; and
- (c) the Operator duly complies with such requirements,

no such contravention of the National Rail Contract or Event of Default shall have occurred.

## 12. The Timetable and Network Rail's Working Timetable

12.1 Any specification of Passenger Services in the Train Service Requirement shall (unless the Secretary of State states to the contrary) be regarded as relating to how those Passenger Services are to be provided for in the National Rail Timetable that Network Rail publishes for passengers.

12.2 The Operator shall ensure, for each period between two (2) consecutive Passenger Change Dates during the Contract Term that the Timetable for such period is, in its reasonable opinion, not materially different from the relevant working timetable issued by Network Rail.

### 13. **Subcontracting any Passenger Services**

13.1 Subject to paragraph 13.2, the Operator may not subcontract or delegate the provision of the Passenger Services without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State.

13.2 The Operator may subcontract or delegate the provision of the Passenger Services, provided that:

- (a) the Secretary of State receives prior written notice of any such subcontracting or delegation;
- (b) the Operator continues to be party to all Access Agreements and Property Leases necessary to provide such Passenger Services and to enjoy all relevant access and operational rights thereunder;
- (c) the Operator continues to specify and control the terms and conditions (subject to the requirements of the Inter-Operator Schemes) on which such Passenger Services are to be provided, including the determination of the Price or Child Price (as the case may be) of any Fares;
- (d) the Planned Train Mileage of the Passenger Services so delegated or subcontracted does not exceed five per cent (5%) of the Planned Train Mileage of the Operator in any Reporting Period; and
- (e) the Operator continues to perform its obligations under this Chapter 4.1 in respect of any subcontracted or delegated services.

13.3 Any such subcontracting or delegation shall not relieve the Operator from any of its obligations under the National Rail Contract, including its obligations under this paragraph 13 and any other obligations under this Contract.

### 14. **Boxing Day Services**

14.1 At least six (6) months prior to each of the Passenger Change Dates occurring in those Contract Years as may be nominated by the Secretary of State and notified to the Operator from time to time, the Operator shall:

- (a) consult with passengers, user groups, Network Rail, other train operators licensed under the Act and who operate along the affected Routes and other relevant Stakeholders on the potential demand for passenger services on 26 December in each Contract Year ("**Boxing Day Services**"); and
- (b) prepare and submit a report to the Secretary of State which sets out its proposals for operating Boxing Day Services which are additional to those Passenger Services to be operated by the Operator on 26 December in each Contract Year pursuant to the relevant Train Service Requirement (the "**Additional Boxing Day Services**"). Such report shall include:
  - (i) the Operator's view on whether or not the operation of the Additional Boxing Day Services will be commercially viable;
  - (ii) the anticipated impact on Actual Costs and/or Actual Revenue (if any) if the Secretary of State (at the Secretary of State's sole discretion) elects to vary the Train Service Requirement in accordance with paragraph 8.4 of this Chapter 4.1 to require the provision of the Additional Boxing Day Services.

14.2 Following the submission of the report required pursuant to paragraph 14.1(b) the Operator shall:

- (a) promptly respond to the Secretary of State's reasonable queries in relation to such report (including the provision of such assistance as the Secretary of State may

reasonably require in connection with the verification of any information contained in such report); and

- (b) upon reasonable notice, attend any such meeting as the Secretary of State may reasonably require for the purposes of discussing the contents of such report.

14.3 The Operator shall have due regard to the outcomes and findings of the consultation referred to in paragraph 14.1(b) in proposing on which Routes the Additional Boxing Day Services should operate if the Secretary of State (at the Secretary of State's sole discretion) elects to vary the Train Service Requirement to require the provision of the Additional Boxing Day Services.

#### 15. **Passenger Numbers Information**

15.1 The Operator shall, as and when reasonably requested by the Secretary of State (and, for these purposes, it shall not be unreasonable to make such a request at least twice yearly), provide information to the Secretary of State on the extent of the use by passengers of the Passenger Services. Without limitation to the generality of the foregoing, in particular and when so requested, the Operator shall provide information relating to:

- (a) the number of passengers travelling in each class of accommodation:
- (i) on each Passenger Service;
  - (ii) on each Route; and/or
  - (iii) at any station or between any stations;
- (b) the times of the day, week or year at which passengers travel; and
- (c) the Actual Consist Data and the Scheduled Consist Data,

(the information referred to in the whole of paragraph 15.1 being referred to together as "**Actual Passenger Demand**").

15.2 The Operator shall obtain and collate the information specified in paragraph 15.1 by using the technology specified in paragraph 17. The Operator shall ensure that any technology for determining the number of passengers travelling in each class of accommodation that is fitted on the Train Fleet remains operational and in good working order from the date that it is fitted throughout the Contract Period. The Operator shall also ensure that, if such technology is not fitted to one hundred per cent (100%) of the Train Fleet, the individual rolling stock vehicles that have been fitted with such technology shall be rotated around the Routes as necessary to satisfy such request for data as is made by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 15.1. The Secretary of State acting reasonably shall have the right to obtain such other information that the Operator has, ought properly to have or could reasonably obtain which may provide a more detailed or accurate view of the extent of use by passengers of the Passenger Services including information about ingress and egress of passengers at ticket gates at Stations.

15.3 The Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State all of the information generated by the technology specified in paragraph 17 and/or by using manual counts pursuant to paragraph 16 including the information specified in paragraph 15.1:

- (a) promptly following its collation and in any case within the following timescales:
- (i) in the case of data collected automatically by the Count Equipment and capable of being transmitted directly and automatically to the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database (as appropriate), within forty-eight (48) hours of its collation;
  - (ii) in the case of data collected automatically by the Count Equipment but not capable of direct and automatic transmission to the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database (as appropriate), within one (1) calendar month of its collation; and
  - (iii) in the case of data collected by manual count, within one (1) calendar month of its collation;

- (b) using such systems, in such a format and to such level of disaggregation as the Secretary of State may reasonably require, and in a format which is capable of being read by the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database (as appropriate) (which shall include providing data which is not encrypted);
- (c) either by transmitting such data directly to the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database (as appropriate) or by ensuring that the database provider can pull and transmit such data to the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database (as appropriate), as appropriate according to the nature of the Operator's Count Equipment from time to time or by providing such data to the Secretary of State by such other means as the Secretary of State notifies to the Operator from time to time; and
- (d) to the extent required by the Secretary of State, by providing the Secretary of State with direct remote access to the system used by the Operator to collect such information such that the Secretary of State is able to download such information, and such information may be used by the Secretary of State for such purposes as the Secretary of State may reasonably require including for the purposes of assisting the Secretary of State's decision making on train service requirements, infrastructure, station and rolling stock investment, the best use of the network and the alleviation of overcrowding.

15.4 The Operator shall use any flagging system contained within the RPC Database to highlight such events and occurrences as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify in writing from time to time.

## **16. Manual Passenger Counts**

16.1 The Secretary of State shall have the right to require the Operator to carry out manual counts in relation to some or all of the Passenger Services at such times as may be required and in such manner (including as to levels of accuracy and the number of days) as may be specified from time to time by the Secretary of State including if, exceptionally, the Operator is unable to comply with its obligations to provide data generated by the technology specified in paragraph 17.

16.2 The Secretary of State shall be entitled to audit such counts (whether by specimen checks at the time of such counts, verification of proper compliance with the manner approved by the Secretary of State or otherwise). In the event that such audit reveals, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, a material error, or a reasonable likelihood of material error, in such counts, the Secretary of State may require the counts to be repeated or the results adjusted as the Secretary of State considers appropriate, and in these circumstances the Operator shall pay to the Secretary of State the costs of any such audits (and such payment shall be a Disallowable Cost).

## **17. Technology for Obtaining the Information referred to in paragraph 15.2**

17.1 The technology to be used for the purpose of paragraph 15.2 shall be:

- (a) infrared based passenger counting technology in relation to the Class 185 and Class 802 rolling stock vehicles; and
- (b) stereo-scopic passenger counting technology in relation to the Mark 5A coaching stock and Class 397 rolling stock vehicles.

17.2 The technology to be used for the purposes of paragraph 15.2 shall be fitted to:

- (a) in the case of any brand new rolling stock which is admitted to the Train Fleet, one hundred per cent (100%) of it from the date that such rolling stock is properly admitted; and
- (b) in the case of all other rolling stock, by the Start Date, to every vehicle comprised within no less than thirty-five per cent (35%) of such rolling stock units included in the Train Fleet from time to time in aggregate.

17.3 Without limiting the Secretary of State's rights under paragraph 15.1 of this Chapter 4.1, the technology specified in paragraph 17.1 above shall be used to provide counts in respect of, in any period of not less than twelve (12) weeks, at least two (2) of each of the Timetabled Services, and each count shall be carried out on each rolling stock unit comprising a particular

train. The Operator may only use a method of extrapolation and use extrapolated data to provide a reliable estimate of a full train's count with the Secretary of State's prior written approval of the use of extrapolated data and the method of extrapolation (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed). The Operator shall comply with its obligation under this paragraph 17 from the date(s) such rolling stock is incorporated into the Train Fleet.

- 17.4 The Parties acknowledge that the information supplied under paragraph 15.1 above, and any product of it created by the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database (as appropriate), may constitute Confidential Information to which Chapter 9.6 (*Confidentiality and Data Protection*) applies.



## Chapter 4.2

### Operating Obligations

#### 1. Daily Operating Obligations

The Operator agrees to use all reasonable endeavours to operate on each day of the Contract Term each of its Passenger Services as are set out in the Plan of the Day for that day and with at least the Passenger Carrying Capacity specified in the Train Formation Capacity Plan for that Passenger Service. The Operator shall notify the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable if it has on any day of the Contract Term failed to operate to a material extent each of its Passenger Services as are set out in the Plan of the Day for that day and with at least the Passenger Carrying Capacity specified in the Train Formation Capacity Plan for that Passenger Service.

#### 2. Timetabling and Train Planning Compliance Investigation and Contravention

2.1 The Secretary of State shall have the right, by serving notice on the Operator, to instigate an investigation of the Operator's compliance with its obligations of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*) regarding creation of the Timetable and Train Formation Capacity Plan, and paragraph 1 of this Chapter 4.2 ("**Timetabling and Train Planning Compliance Investigation**").

2.2 Following the service of such a notice the Operator shall fully co-operate to facilitate such audit and provide such information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require for the purposes of determining if the Operator has complied with its obligations including evidence of:

- (a) the steps taken by the Operator regarding Access Agreements, and exercise of its rights under the Track Access Agreement;
- (b) the extent to which the Operator has operated on each day of the relevant Reporting Period each of its Passenger Services as are set out in the Plan of the Day for that day and with at least the Passenger Carrying Capacity specified in the Train Formation Capacity Plan for that Passenger Service;
- (c) the means of Forecast Passenger Demand calculation and assessment;
- (d) any assumptions about the timetables likely to be operated by other Train Operators made by the Operator; and
- (e) the alternative solutions considered by the Operator before finalising the Timetable and Train Formation Capacity Plan and the reasons why any such alternative solutions were not adopted.

2.3 The Secretary of State shall, upon conclusion of the Timetabling and Train Planning Compliance Investigation, provide a copy of the finalised report to the Operator.

2.4 The Secretary of State shall notify the Operator if the Secretary of State concludes the Operator is in contravention of the National Rail Contract and the Secretary of State may at the Secretary of State's discretion, and entirely without prejudice to the Secretary of State's other rights consequent upon the relevant contravention, serve a Remedial Plan Notice pursuant to paragraph 2 of Chapter 9.4.3 (*Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the National Rail Contract*).

#### 3. Timetable changes proposed by Network Rail

3.1 The Operator agrees, after being notified by Network Rail that Network Rail has decided or proposes to exercise its rights under the Track Access Agreement (including the Network Code) to:

- (a) omit from the Plan of the Day Passenger Services that are included in the Timetable; or
- (b) reschedule in the Plan of the Day Passenger Services from their scheduling in the Timetable,

- to maintain appropriate record (having regard to both duration and scale) in respect of any actual or proposed omission or rescheduling of Passenger Services by Network Rail.
- 3.2 To the extent that any such decision or proposal may, in the reasonable opinion of the Operator, materially (having regard to both duration and scale) prejudice the Operator's ability to deliver the Timetable with the Passenger Carrying Capacity stipulated in the Train Formation Capacity Plan the Operator shall (unless the Secretary of State specifically agrees otherwise), and in such a manner as can be reasonably considered appropriate in the circumstances, exercise its rights under the Track Access Agreement (including the Network Code) on a basis that seeks to limit the impact on the Operator whilst accommodating as far as possible the requirements of Network Rail.
- 3.3 The Operator agrees to supply to the Secretary of State from time to time, in the format required by the Secretary of State, such details of any actual or proposed omission or rescheduling of Passenger Services by Network Rail as the Secretary of State may reasonably require, including details of the steps which the Operator reasonably considered appropriate in the circumstances, to exercise its rights under the Track Access Agreement (including the Network Code) to reach agreement of the changes on a basis that seeks to limit the impact on the Operator whilst accommodating as far as possible the requirements of Network Rail.
- 3.4 The Operator shall explain in such submission the way in which, in its reasonable opinion, such omission or rescheduling may materially (having regard to both duration and scale) prejudice the Operator's ability to deliver the Timetable with the Passenger Carrying Capacity stipulated in the Train Formation Capacity Plan.
- 3.5 The provisions of this paragraph 3 shall apply to any actual or proposed omission or rescheduling of Passenger Services that originates from any person other than Network Rail or the Secretary of State, as those provisions apply to Network Rail.

#### 4. **Timetable changes proposed by the Operator**

- 4.1 The Operator agrees, (with the exception of paragraph 4.3 of this Chapter 4.2), not to implement any:
- (a) addition to the Plan of the Day of any railway passenger services which are not included in the Timetable;
  - (b) omission from the Plan of the Day of any Passenger Services included in the Timetable; or
  - (c) rescheduling in the Plan of the Day of any Passenger Services from their scheduling in the Timetable,
- without the Secretary of State's prior consent, and wherever possible, the prior agreement of Network Rail.
- 4.2 The Operator shall (with the exception of paragraph 4.3 of this this Chapter 4.2) submit to the Secretary of State an amended Train Formation Capacity Plan in respect of each Timetable change proposal.
- 4.3 Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph 7 (*Restrictions Relating to Rail Services*) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*), the Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to operate adequate railway passenger services to or from any special events which are not already provided for in the Plan of the Day to meet the passenger demand that is reasonably likely to arise from such special events and to ensure that the railway passenger services provided have an appropriate amount of passenger carrying capacity. The Operator shall in meeting its obligations pursuant to this paragraph 4.3:
- (a) if so requested by the Secretary of State, each quarter, submit to the Secretary of State their list of identified special events to which the Operator shall consider application of this paragraph 4.3 (the list is not exhaustive and does not obligate the Operator to amend the Plan of the Day);
  - (b) consider amending the Plan of the Day through the omission, addition or rescheduling of Passenger Services;
  - (c) consider submitting to the Secretary of State an amended Train Formation Capacity Plan in respect of each special event where to apply the current Train Formation



Capacity Plan will have an avoidable detrimental effect to the Short Formations Figures; and

- (d) seek to optimise the effective delivery of the Passenger Services as a whole with the provision of appropriate capacity in the context of the additional demand consequent upon a relevant special event.

**5. Timetable changes and Train Formation Capacity Plan changes requested by the Secretary of State**

5.1 The Operator agrees, as and when requested by the Secretary of State, to use all reasonable endeavours to seek and to obtain:

- (a) the addition to the Plan of the Day of any railway passenger services that are not included in the Timetable;
- (b) the omission from the Plan of the Day of any Passenger Services that are included in the Timetable; and/or
- (c) the rescheduling in the Plan of the Day of any Passenger Services from their scheduling in the Timetable.

5.2 The Secretary of State may reasonably request that the Operator shall submit to the Secretary of State an amendment to the Train Formation Capacity Plan at any time.

**6. Obligations of the Operator in the event of disruption to railway passenger services**

6.1 In the event of any planned or unplanned disruption to railway passenger services operated on the Routes, or on other parts of the network which are reasonably local to the Routes, the Operator shall:

- (a) without prejudice to any other provision of this Chapter 4.2, notify the Secretary of State promptly where such disruption would materially (having regard to both duration and scale) prejudice the Operator's ability to deliver the Timetable or deliver the Timetable in accordance with the Train Formation Capacity Plan;
- (b) co-operate with Network Rail and other Train Operators to act in the overall interests of passengers using such railway passenger services, including using all reasonable endeavours to ensure that such disruption is not concentrated on a particular part of the network, except where such concentration either:
- (i) would be in the overall interests of passengers using such Passenger Services or railway passenger services and would not result in disproportionate inconvenience to any group of passengers; or
- (ii) is reasonably necessary as a result of the cause or the location of the disruption; and
- (c) use all reasonable endeavours to provide or secure the provision of alternative transport arrangements in accordance with paragraph 6.2.

6.2 The Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to provide or secure the provision of alternative transport arrangements to enable passengers affected by any disruption referred to in paragraph 6.1 to complete their intended journeys in accordance with this paragraph 6.2. In particular, the Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to:

- (a) ensure that such alternative transport arrangements are of reasonable quality, of a reasonably similar frequency to the Passenger Services included in the Timetable which such arrangements replace and reasonably fit for the purpose of the journey to be undertaken;
- (b) transport passengers to, or as near as reasonably practicable to, the end of their intended journey on such Passenger Services, having particular regard to the needs of any Disabled Persons and, where appropriate, making additional arrangements for such Disabled Persons to complete their intended journey;

- (c) provide adequate and prominent publicity of such alternative transport arrangements in advance, subject, in the case of unplanned disruption, to the Operator having sufficient notice of such disruption to enable it to provide such publicity;
- (d) provide sufficient alternative transport capacity for the reasonably foreseeable demand for the disrupted Passenger Services; and
- (e) ensure, if any planned disruption overruns, that there is a reasonable contingency arrangement for such alternative transport arrangements to continue for the duration of such overrun.

7. **Obligation to use “all reasonable endeavours” under Chapter 4.2**

7.1 Any obligation in this Chapter 4.2 on the part of the Operator to use “**all reasonable endeavours**” shall (with the exception of paragraph 5 of this Chapter 4.2) include an obligation to:

- (a) ensure (so far as it is able to do so) the provision of the Passenger Services as set out in the Plan of the Day in accordance with the Train Formation Capacity Plan in ordinary operating conditions;
- (b) take reasonable measures to avoid and/or reduce the impact of any disruption to the Rail Services having regard to all the circumstances, including the reasonably foreseeable risks arising from the matters referred to in paragraph 7.2; and
- (c) actively engage Network Rail in its contractual relationship with the Operator (and provide appropriate management resources for this purpose) so as to secure the best performance reasonably obtainable by these means, having regard to all the circumstances, including the steps referred to in paragraph 8.

7.2 The matters to which the Operator is to have regard pursuant to paragraph 7.1(b) shall include:

- (a) variations in weather and operating conditions (including Network Rail’s infrastructure not being available for any reason), which may in either case include seasonal variations;
- (b) default by, or restrictions imposed by, suppliers to the Operator;
- (c) shortages of appropriately skilled or qualified Business Employees;
- (d) disputes with Business Employees;
- (e) the availability of the Train Fleet, having regard to maintenance requirements and any Mandatory Modifications;
- (f) establishing reasonable Turnaround Time allowances for enabling or disabling (as appropriate) any part of a train, the rostering of any train crew and the servicing or cleaning of any rolling stock vehicles;
- (g) failures of rolling stock vehicles in service and contingency arrangements (including Hot Standbys and rescue traction); and
- (h) the impact, and emerging projections relating to the likely or potential impact, from time to time, of COVID-19 on the Operator’s ability to provide the Passenger Services and/or the level of passenger demand or reasonably expected passenger demand for the Passenger Services.

7.3 For the purpose of taking measures in respect of any disruption to the Rail Services in accordance with paragraph 7.1(b) and assessing the extent of any risk referred to in paragraph 7.1(b) and any such risk’s reasonable foreseeability, regard shall be had both:

- (a) to the historical levels of incidence of disruption in the operation of:
  - (i) the Rail Services;
  - (ii) similar services both by the Operator and/or its predecessors; and
  - (iii) other services of a type similar to the Rail Services; and
- (b) to potential changes in circumstances which may affect those levels.

7.4 To the extent not already provided for in the National Rail Contract, the Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure the performance by Network Rail of its obligations under any relevant agreement including, where appropriate or where requested by the Secretary of State, enforcing its rights against Network Rail under any such agreement.

7.5 When and to the extent reasonably requested by the Secretary of State, the Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State evidence of the steps taken by the Operator in order to comply with its obligations under this paragraph 7.

## 8. **Obligations relating to operating performance management**

8.1 The Operator shall actively manage operating performance, in doing so shall consult, co-ordinate and co-operate with Network Rail (or as may be required by the Secretary of State) from time to time in respect of devising a structured framework for continuous improvement in operating performance.

8.2 The steps to which paragraph 8.1 refers include:

- (a) co-operating with Network Rail in the development, agreement and implementation of:
  - (i) a five (5) year (rolling) Performance Strategy Plan;
  - (ii) effective recovery plans in response to failures to achieve the performance levels specified in any Performance Strategy Plan;
  - (iii) analysis of “Reactionary Delay” (as defined by the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules) and below/sub threshold delay, to develop and deliver performance improvement plans to address areas of underperformance, focusing on improving Timetable robustness and contingency planning; and
  - (iv) review and identification of opportunities to improve the delay attribution process set out in the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules;
- (b) co-operating with Network Rail in adopting the principles set out in any industry good practice regarding:
  - (i) Service Recovery Plans agreed between Network Rail and the Operator from time to time, including appropriate diversionary route availability;
  - (ii) jointly developed train regulation policies; and
  - (iii) approaches to improving performance systems, including, if requested by the Secretary of State, the deployment of the RM3P and the Performance Improvement Management System;
- (c) undertaking recording, monitoring and regular reviews of:
  - (i) the most common and most detrimental causes of delay to the Passenger Services; and
  - (ii) the causes of the ten (10) delays to the Passenger Services with the longest duration (to the extent not already reviewed in accordance with paragraph 8.2(c)(i)),  
which have occurred during a defined review period (e.g. weekly/four (4) weekly/quarterly) and which have been caused by the Operator, any other Train Operator, any other train operator licensed under the Act or Network Rail;
- (d) undertaking with Network Rail a review of the time taken to recover the Passenger Services following the occurrence of any of the events specified in paragraphs 8.2(c)(i) and 8.2(c)(ii) and seeking to identify and implement actions that reduce the delay effect of such events;
- (e) setting up and holding regular and effective performance review meetings with Network Rail, evidenced by meeting minutes and the closure of actions agreed between the Parties;
- (f) regularly monitoring (at least every Reporting Period) the delivery of local output commitments made by Network Rail in the Performance Strategy Plan and derived

delivery plans and using reasonable endeavours to specify and develop such delivery plans;

- (g) co-operating with Network Rail in other delay management initiatives and ongoing quarterly reviews of the Performance Strategy Plan;
- (h) regularly reviewing (at least every Reporting Period) the imposition and clearance of temporary speed restrictions;
- (i) regularly reviewing (at least every Reporting Period) the timely and efficient handover and hand-back of possessions; and
- (j) where appropriate and where Network Rail fails to perform its obligations under the Track Access Agreement, enforcing the Operator's rights under the Track Access Agreement.

8.3 The Operator undertakes to reasonably co-operate with Network Rail with regard to Network Rail's management of the network, including in relation to:

- (a) Contingency Plans, as defined in Chapter 9.4.4;
- (b) weather resilience and seasonal preparedness;
- (c) prevention of trespass and vandalism;
- (d) effects of climate change on the railway; and
- (e) improvements in railway control structure and functions.

## 9. Improving accuracy of future Timetables and operational planning

9.1 The Operator shall consult, co-ordinate and co-operate with Network Rail and any relevant Train Operators in respect of the planning, development and implementation of proposals to support the continuous improvement of train timetabling and train planning functions, including:

- (a) collaborative working between the Operator's and Network Rail or other Train Operators' train planning teams;
- (b) establishment of up to date Timetable Planning Rules.
- (c) robust and resilient traincrew flexibility, including for diversionary routes;
- (d) disclosure to, and enabling assurance activity by the "*Industry Timetable Change Assurance Programme Management Office*", including participation in related steering groups, or any similar independently minded timetable improvement and assurance cooperative function, as may be identified by the Secretary of State.

9.2 The Operator shall, provide Network Rail with such information as it may reasonably request in respect of paragraph 9.1, including:

- (a) relevant data required to support timetable simulation and performance modelling; and
- (b) the Operator's assessment of operational resource required to operate the Passenger Services and ancillary train movements, as calculated in accordance with industry standards in each case.

## 10. Royal Train

10.1 The Operator shall, if and to the extent requested by any person (including DB Cargo UK Limited, its successors and assigns) and subject to the payment by such person of any reasonable costs of the Operator, co-operate in the provision by such person of railway passenger services for Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II or any successor head of state or members of the royal family or representatives of either of them.

10.2 The provision of railway services for Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II or any successor head of state or members of the royal family or representatives of either of them may include:

- (a) running a "**sweeper**" train in front of the royal train;
- (b) having spare locomotives or other rolling stock on standby as rescue traction; and/or

- (c) carrying out security requirements or co-operating with other persons in ensuring that security requirements are carried out prior to calling at any station on the Routes.

## 11. Ancillary Services

11.1 Subject to obtaining the Secretary of State's prior written consent (such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed), the Operator, to the extent required in order to best serve the needs of passengers on railway passenger services within Great Britain from time to time, shall use all reasonable endeavours to carry out the following Ancillary Services:

- (a) in any Reporting Period, the subleasing, hiring or licensing of the rolling stock vehicles used in the provision of the Passenger Services;
- (b) the lending, seconding, hiring or contracting out during any Reporting Period to another person or persons (whether for a charge or not) of Business Employees;
- (c) any heavy maintenance of rolling stock vehicles which does not fall within the Light Maintenance Services, carried out on behalf of any other person at the following Depot(s): none.

11.2 The Operator:

- (a) may; and
- (b) to the extent required in order to best serve the needs of passengers on railway passenger services within Great Britain from time to time, shall use reasonable endeavours to,

carry out the following Ancillary Services on an emergency basis; the subleasing, hiring, licensing, lending, selling of any rolling stock vehicles or other assets of the Operator or the lending, hiring or contracting out of any employees of the Operator or the provision of any other services to Network Rail or any other Train Operator.

11.3 The Operator shall not during the Contract Term, without the consent of the Secretary of State:

- (a) provide or operate any railway passenger services other than the Passenger Services or Charter Services;
- (b) operate any stations or light maintenance depots other than the Stations and Depots; or
- (c) hold shares, participations or any other interest in any other company or body corporate unless such company or body corporate is:
  - (i) Network Rail; or
  - (ii) owned directly or indirectly by another participant in the railway industry and the holding is incidental to the Operator's participation in an Inter-Operator Scheme or any other arrangement designed to ensure or facilitate co-operation between such participants or between any such participants and any other person.

## 12. Restrictions On Closures Of Railway Passenger Services Or Railway Facilities

12.1 Except to the extent that the Secretary of State agrees otherwise, the Operator shall not:

- (a) cease to operate;
- (b) cease to secure the operation of; or
- (c) propose to terminate the use of,

any Station (or part of a Station) or any railway passenger service over a Route where such cessation or proposal might result in a Closure.

12.2 If any procedures are commenced under Part 4 of the Railways Act 2005 in relation to a Closure, the Operator shall, at the Secretary of State's cost and to the extent so requested by the Secretary of State, take such action as the Secretary of State may require in order to enable

the Secretary of State to comply with any duty imposed on the Secretary of State under Part 4 of the Railways Act 2005 in relation to such Closure.

## Chapter 4.3

### The Rolling Stock

#### 1. The Composition/Deployment of the Train Fleet

##### 1.1 The Train Fleet consists of:

- (a) from the Start Date until the lease expiry dates referred to in Column 6 of Table 1 in Appendix 1 to this Chapter 4.3 the rolling stock vehicles set out in Table 1 in Appendix 1 to this Chapter 4.3 (“**Original Rolling Stock**”) with the Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit referred to in Column 3 and Column 4 of Table 1 in Appendix 1 to this Chapter 4.3; and
- (b) from the dates set out in Column 6 of Table 2 in Appendix 1 to this Chapter 4.3, until the lease expiry dates referred to in Column 7 of Table 2 in Appendix 1 to this Chapter 4.3 the rolling stock vehicles including new build or cascaded rolling stock (“**Specified Additional Rolling Stock**”) set out in Table 2 in Appendix 1 to this Chapter 4.3, with the Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit referred to in Column 3 and Column 4 of Table 2 in Appendix 1 to this Chapter 4.3.

##### 1.2 The Passenger Carrying Capacity of any rolling stock vehicles shall be as set out in Tables 1 or 2 in Appendix 1 to this Chapter 4.3.

##### 1.3 The Operator shall procure that the rolling stock vehicles described in the Tables 1 or 2 in Appendix 1 to this Chapter 4.3, with the capacity and other characteristics referred to there, are available for deployment in the provision of the Passenger Services to the extent required by the Timetable and Train Formation Capacity Plan during the periods referred to therein.

#### 2. Changes to the Train Fleet

##### 2.1 The Operator shall maintain the composition of the Train Fleet during the Contract Period, unless the Secretary of State otherwise agrees or otherwise directs the Operator pursuant to paragraph 2.4, such that there are no changes to the Train Fleet, including changes:

- (a) to the classes or types;
  - (b) to the interior configurations; or
  - (c) which may reduce the journey time capabilities,
- of any rolling stock vehicles specified in the Train Fleet.

##### 2.2 During the Contract Period, the Operator shall advise the Secretary of State of any rolling stock vehicles damaged beyond economic repair or likely to be unavailable for service for a period of three (3) consecutive Reporting Periods or more.

##### 2.3 If any change is made to the Train Fleet in accordance with this Chapter 4.3, the Secretary of State may, after consulting the Operator, determine the Passenger Carrying Capacity of any rolling stock vehicles or class of rolling stock vehicles comprising the Train Fleet following such change. The Secretary of State shall notify the Operator of the Secretary of State’s determination of any such Passenger Carrying Capacity.

##### 2.4 The Secretary of State may (by Variation or Business Plan Revision) require the Operator to:

- (a) change the composition of the Train Fleet during the term of this Contract;
- (b) sub-let some of its Train Fleet to another Train Operator or to sub-lease a Train Fleet from another Train Operator;
- (c) procure modifications to the Train Fleet and to manage any modification programme subject to payment of the Operator’s reasonable costs by the Secretary of State or a relevant third party; and/or
- (d) work in collaboration with the Secretary of State to identify and secure additional or replacement rolling stock vehicles during the term of this Contract in which case the Secretary of State may require the Operator to set the specification of such rolling stock, subject to the Secretary of State’s prior written consent.

#### 3. Train Maintenance



- 3.1 The Operator shall procure that heavy maintenance of Train Fleet is undertaken in accordance with the standard expected of a competent, skilled and experienced train operator.
- 3.2 The Operator shall seek approval from the Secretary of State for any changes to the heavy maintenance regime for the Train Fleet where such change will result in any cost saving to the Operator including the reduction of any lease payments for the relevant rolling stock (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed).



**Appendix 1 to Chapter 4.3**

**The Composition of the Train Fleet**

**1. Original Rolling Stock**

**Explanatory Note A:** Where in Column 6 both a scheduled lease expiry date and an early redelivery date are specified in relation to one or more specified units (each being a “Specified Unit”) the lease expiry date for the Specified Units shall be the early redelivery date provided that where any unit shown in Table 2 or Table 3 below as replacing any Specified Unit from the early delivery date is delivered after the early redelivery date such Specified Unit shall remain in the Train Fleet until the relevant scheduled lease expiry date or such earlier date as the Secretary of State acting reasonably may agree.

Table 1 (Original Rolling Stock)									
Column 1	Column 2	Column 3			Column 4		Column 5	Column 6	
Class of vehicle/unit	Number of vehicles in fleet and unit configuration	Standard Class Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit			First Class per unit		Owner/Lessor	Lease expiry date(s) <i>(See Explanatory Note A above)</i>	
		Seated	Wheelchair spaces	Standing	Seats	Wheelchair Spaces		Scheduled Lease Expiry Date <i>Note 1</i>	Early Redelivery Date (if any)
Class 185	108 (36 x 3-car)	164	2	104	15	0	Eversholt	01 April 2023	N/A
Class 185	45 (15 x 3-car)	164	2	104	15	0	Eversholt	22 December 2021	N/A
Class 68	Up to 18	0	0	0	0	0	Beacon Rail/DRS	01 April 2023	N/A
Class 397	60 (12 x 5-car)	274	0	130	24	2	Eversholt	01 April 2023	N/A
Class 802-2	95 (19 x 5-car)	320	0	146	24	2	Angel	01 April 2023	N/A

Table 1 (Original Rolling Stock)									
Column 1	Column 2	Column 3			Column 4		Column 5	Column 6	
Class of vehicle/unit	Number of vehicles in fleet and unit configuration	Standard Class Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit			First Class per unit		Owner/Lessor	Lease expiry date(s) <i>(See Explanatory Note A above)</i>	
		Seated	Wheelchair spaces	Standing	Seats	Wheelchair Spaces		Scheduled Lease Expiry Date <b>Note 1</b>	Early Redelivery Date (if any)
Mark 5a coaching stock	66 (13 x 5-coach) plus 1 coach <b>Note 2</b>	269	0	130	30	2	Beacon Rail	01 April 2023	N/A

**Notes to Table 1**

**Note 1:** References to 1 April 2023 are subject to the lease provisions on extension where the Secretary of State exercises his rights to extend the Contract Term.

**Note 2:** The number of vehicles specified in this table reflects the total number of vehicles to be supplied and “Accepted” in accordance with (and as defined in) the relevant manufacture and supply agreement (the “MSA”). As at the Start Date, 6 coaches (being 1 x 5 coach set plus one coach) have not been Accepted into revenue earning service and these coaches will only form part of the Train Fleet once so Accepted.

**2. Specified Additional Rolling Stock**

None.

## Chapter 4.4

### Operational Performance

#### 1. Definitions, Track Access Agreement, Amendments to Operational Performance Targets and Notice of Performance Results

- 1.1 The OP Targets in relation to TOC on Self Cancellations and Enforcement TOC on Self Cancellations Benchmarks are set out in the TOC on Self Cancellations Benchmark Table and the Enforcement TOC on Self Cancellations Benchmark Table.
- 1.2 The OP Targets in relation to TOC Minute Delay and Enforcement TOC Minute Delay Benchmarks are set out in TOC Minute Delay Benchmark Table and the Enforcement TOC Minute Delay Benchmark Table.
- 1.3 The OP Targets in relation to Short Formation and Enforcement Short Formation Benchmarks are set out in the Short Formation Benchmark Table and Enforcement Short Formation Benchmark Table.
- 1.4 The T-3 Measure is set out in T-3 Table.
- 1.5 The T-15 Measure is set out in the T-15 Table.
- 1.6 The All Cancellations Measure is set out in the All Cancellations Table.

#### 1.7 Track Access Agreement

The Operator agrees with the Secretary of State to comply with the requirements of the Track Access Agreement in respect of cancellations attribution (Cancellations, Partial Cancellations, Network Rail Cancellations and Network Rail Partial Cancellations) and Minutes Delay attribution.

#### 1.8 Amendments to Operational Performance Targets

The Operator acknowledges that:

- (a) paragraph 2.15 (*Operational Performance Target Amendments*) of Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*) sets out the circumstances and the process by which adjustments to the relevant Operational Performance Targets consequent upon the occurrence of an Operational Performance Target Amendment Event will be determined and effected;
- (b) pursuant to paragraph 2.5 (*Calculation of the Performance Based Fee*) of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*), the Secretary of State may propose changes to the relevant Operational Performance Targets annually in each Request for Business Plan in accordance with the process set out in paragraph 3 (*Annual Business Plan Process*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*); and
- (c) paragraph 2.7 (*Changes to the Applicable Assessment Methodology*) of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*) sets out the circumstances in which the Secretary of State may, from time to time, consult with the Operator to determine the relevant Operational Performance Targets for the application of the Quantified Target Methodology to the Operational Performance Fee.

#### 1.9 Notice of Performance Results

As soon as reasonably practicable after the end of each Reporting Period and each Contract Year, the Secretary of State shall notify the Operator of the results of the calculations performed pursuant to this Chapter 4.4.

### 2 Reporting Requirements

The Operator shall at the end of each Reporting Period and in accordance with the relevant requirements of paragraph 12 (*Operational Performance Information*) of this Chapter 4.4 (*Operational Performance*) report to the Secretary of State the operational information as specified in paragraph 12 (*Operational Performance Information*) of this Chapter 4.4 (*Operational Performance*) and required for the purposes of the Secretary of State undertaking any the calculations required to be performed by the Secretary of State pursuant to this Chapter 4.4 .

**3. TOC on Self Cancellation Calculation**

- 3.1 For each Reporting Period during the Contract Term the Secretary of State shall:
- (a) calculate the Operator’s performance in relation to TOC on Self Cancellations in accordance with the formula set out in Table 1 below (each an “**Initial TOC on Self Cancellations Calculation**”); and
  - (b) (other than for the first and second Reporting Periods following the Start Date) re-calculate the Operator’s performance in relation to TOC on Self Cancellations for the two (2) Reporting Periods immediately preceding the relevant Reporting Period using the formula set out in Table 1 below (each a “**TOC on Self Cancellations Re-Calculation**”), except that
  - (c) if there are outstanding claims with regard to any Force Majeure Event relating to TOC on Self Cancellations for any Reporting Period then a further TOC on Self Cancellations Re-Calculation shall be undertaken for the relevant Reporting Period once the relevant claims have been resolved.
- 3.2 In the event that a TOC on Self Cancellations Re-Calculation demonstrates that the Initial TOC on Self Cancellations Calculation or an earlier TOC on Self Cancellations Re-Calculation was incorrect, the Initial TOC on Self Cancellations Calculation and/or the relevant earlier TOC on Self Cancellations Re-Calculation shall, for the relevant Reporting Period, be replaced with the latest TOC on Self Cancellations Re-Calculation.

<b>Table 1</b>		
<b>A</b>	=	$\frac{B}{C} \times 100$
<b>where:</b>		
B		is the total number of Cancellations or Partial Cancellations of Passenger Services scheduled to be operated in the Enforcement Plan of the Day for that Reporting Period, on the basis that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) a Cancellation shall count as 1;</li> <li>(b) a Partial Cancellation shall count as 0.5; and</li> <li>(c) any Cancellations or Partial Cancellations during that Reporting Period which were caused by:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) the Operator’s implementation of a Service Recovery Plan during that Reporting Period; or</li> <li>(ii) the occurrence or continuing effect of a Force Majeure Event, shall, if the Operator has complied with paragraph 7.1 (<i>Service Recovery Plans and Force Majeure</i>) of this Chapter 4.4, be disregarded in determining such total number of Cancellations and Partial Cancellations;</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
C		is the total number of Passenger Services scheduled to be operated in the Enforcement Plan of the Day for that Reporting Period, disregarding, if the Operator has complied with paragraph 7.1 ( <i>Service Recovery Plans and Force Majeure</i> ) of this Chapter 4.4, any Cancellations or Partial Cancellations during that Reporting Period which were caused by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the Operator’s implementation of a Service Recovery Plan during that Reporting Period; or</li> <li>(b) the occurrence or continuing effect of a Force Majeure Event.</li> </ul>

**4. TOC Minutes Delay Calculations**

- 4.1 For each Reporting Period during the Contract Term the Secretary of State shall:
- (a) calculate the Operator’s performance in relation to TOC Minutes Delay in accordance with the formula set out in Table 2 below (each an “**Initial TOC Minutes Delay Calculation**”); and
  - (b) (other than for the first (1<sup>st</sup>) and second (2<sup>nd</sup>) Reporting Periods following the Start Date) re-calculate the Operator’s performance in relation to TOC Minutes Delay for the

two (2) Reporting Periods immediately preceding the relevant Reporting Period using the formula set out in Table 2 below (each a “**TOC Minutes Delay Re-Calculation**”), except that:

- (c) if there are outstanding claims with regard to any Force Majeure Event relating to TOC Minutes Delay for any Reporting Period then a further TOC Minutes Delay Re-Calculation shall be undertaken for the relevant Reporting Period once relevant claims have been resolved.

4.2 In the event that a TOC Minutes Delay Re-Calculation demonstrates that the Initial TOC Minutes Delay Calculation or an earlier TOC Minutes Delay Re-Calculation was incorrect, the Initial TOC Minutes Delay Calculation and/or the relevant earlier TOC Minutes Delay Re-Calculation shall, for the relevant Reporting Period, be replaced with the latest TOC Minutes Delay Re-Calculation.

<b>Table 2</b>	
$\frac{MD_{SRP}}{H_{SRP}}$	
<b>where:</b>	
<b>MD<sub>SRP</sub></b>	is the sum of Minutes Delay that are attributable to the Operator in that Reporting Period.
<b>H<sub>SRP</sub></b>	is ascertained as follows:
	$\frac{V}{1000}$
	<b>where:</b>
<b>V</b>	is the sum of Actual Train Mileage in that Reporting Period.

5. **Short Formations**

5.1 **Short Formations Calculation**

For each Reporting Period during the term of the Contract Term the Secretary of State shall:

- (a) calculate the Operator’s performance in relation to Short Formations in accordance with the formula set out in Table 3 below (each an “**Initial Short Formations Calculation**”); and
- (b) (other than for the first (1st) and second (2nd) Reporting Periods following the Start Date), re-calculate the Operator’s performance in relation to Short Formations (and, if applicable, re-calculate the Operator’s performance in respect of Short Formations against the OP Target for Short Formations) for the two (2) Reporting Periods immediately preceding the relevant Reporting Period using the formula set out in Table 3 below (each a “**Short Formations Re-Calculation**”), except that
- (c) if there are outstanding claims with regard to any Force Majeure Event relating to Short Formations for any Reporting Period then a further Short Formations Re-Calculation shall be undertaken for the relevant Reporting Period once the relevant claims have been resolved.

5.2 In the event that a Short Formations Re-Calculation demonstrates that the Initial Short Formations Calculation or an earlier Short Formations Re-Calculation was incorrect, the Initial Short Formations Calculation and/or the relevant earlier Short Formations Re-Calculation shall, for the relevant Reporting Period, be replaced with the latest Short Formations Re-Calculation.

<b>Table 3</b>		
$A_{SF}$	=	$\frac{B_{SF}}{C_{SF}} \times 100$
<b>where:</b>		
$B_{SF}$	is the total number of Passenger Services in that Reporting Period operated with less Passenger Carrying Capacity than that specified for each such Passenger Service in the Train Formation Capacity Plan disregarding, if the Operator has complied with paragraph 7.1 ( <i>Service Recovery Plans and Force Majeure</i> ) of this Chapter 4.4, any such Passenger Services which were operated in that way as a result of:	
	(a) the Operator’s implementation of a Service Recovery Plan during that Reporting Period; or	
	(b) the occurrence or continuing effect of a Force Majeure Event; and	
$C_{SF}$	is the total number of Passenger Services scheduled to be operated in that Reporting Period disregarding, if the Operator has complied with paragraph 7.1 ( <i>Service Recovery Plans and Force Majeure</i> ) of this Chapter 4.4, any such Passenger Service operated with less Passenger Carrying Capacity than that specified for each such Passenger Service in the Train Formation Capacity Plan as a result of:	
	(a) the Operator’s implementation of a Service Recovery Plan during that Reporting Period; or	
	(b) the occurrence or continuing effect of a Force Majeure Event.	

- 5.3 For the purposes of the calculation to be undertaken by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 5.1:
  - (a) if and to the extent that any Passenger Service is operated in excess of the Passenger Carrying Capacity specified for that Passenger Service in the Train Formation Capacity Plan, the excess capacity shall be disregarded; and
  - (b) any Passenger Service that is the subject of a Cancellation or a Partial Cancellation shall be disregarded.

**6. Calculations**

6.1 The Secretary of State shall perform the calculations referred to in 3.1, 4.1 and 5.1 rounded to two (2) decimal places with the midpoint (that is, 11.115) rounded upwards (that is, 11.12).

**7. Service Recovery Plans and Force Majeure**

7.1 Subject to paragraph 7.2 below, the Operator shall, within four (4) weeks of the end of each Reporting Period for which a Service Recovery Plan has been implemented (or such other period as may be agreed by the Secretary of State), submit to the Secretary of State all the comprehensive records (as more particularly described in the “Approved Code of Practice 2013” or any document of a similar equivalent nature) which relate to the implementation of such Service Recovery Plan during that Reporting Period.

7.2 The Secretary of State may, from time to time, notify the Operator that the provisions of paragraph 7.1 above shall no longer apply (and consequently, the Operator’s compliance with paragraph 7.1 shall not be considered for the purposes of Table 1 or Table 3 above), provided that the Secretary of State shall give the Operator at least two (2) Reporting Periods’ notice of the date from which such provisions shall no longer apply.

7.3 If the Secretary of State issues a notice to the Operator in accordance with paragraph 7.2 above, the Parties shall seek to agree, not later than ten (10) Weekdays before the date specified in the notice given paragraph 7.2 above, any necessary amendments to the relevant Enforcement Benchmarks and the relevant OP Targets which may be required to ensure the Operator is no more or less likely to achieve the relevant Enforcement Benchmarks or OP Targets for the relevant Reporting Period(s). If, by the date falling ten (10) Weekdays prior to the date specified in the notice given paragraph 7.2 above, the Parties have not agreed the



amendments to the relevant Enforcement Benchmarks or the relevant OP Targets, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine such amendments and notify the Operator accordingly prior to the commencement of the date the disapplication of paragraph 7.1 is to take effect.

- 7.4 In performing the calculations pursuant to paragraphs 3.1 (*TOC on Self Cancellations Calculations*), 4.1 (*TOC Minutes Delay Calculations*) and 5.1 (*Short Formations*) the Secretary of State shall disregard any TOC on Self Cancellations, Minutes Delay, or Short Formations (as applicable) that have been agreed or finally determined to have been caused by the occurrence or continuing effect of a Force Majeure Event.
- 8. Consequences for Poor Performance – Enforcement Benchmarks**
- 8.1 The Operator shall ensure that its performance in each Reporting Period as calculated by the Secretary of State in accordance with the requirements of this Chapter 4.4, **is not equal to or worse than** each Breach Performance Level in respect of the relevant Contract Year.
- 8.2 Without limiting the provisions of paragraph 8.4 below and Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*), if in any Reporting Period the Operator’s performance, as calculated by the Secretary of State in accordance with the requirements of this Chapter 4.4, is **equal to or worse than** any Breach Performance Level relating to an Enforcement Benchmark in respect of the relevant Contract Year, then a contravention of the National Rail Contract shall occur and the Secretary of State may serve a Remedial Plan Notice in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 2 (*Remedies for Contraventions of the Rail Contract*) of Chapter 9.4.3 (*Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the National Rail Contract*).
- 8.3 For the purposes of paragraph 4.2(c) (*Remedial Plans*) of Chapter 9.4.3 (*Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the National Rail Contract*) the steps to be proposed by the Operator pursuant to that paragraph are those which ensure that the Operator’s performance against the relevant Enforcement Benchmark will be **better than** the Breach Performance Level relating to such Enforcement Benchmark.
- 8.4 Certain consequences of the Operator’s performance being **equal to or worse than** the Breach Performance Levels and Default Performance Levels relating to each Enforcement Benchmark are set out in Chapter 9.4 (*Remedies and Dispute Resolution*).
- 9. Consequences for Poor Performance.**
- 9.1 Action Plans**
- (a) If in any three (3) consecutive Reporting Periods the:
- (i) Operator’s performance against the OP Target for Cancellations is worse than Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level; and/or
  - (ii) Operator’s performance against the OP Target for TOC Minutes Delay is worse than Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level; and/or
  - (iii) Operator’s performance against the OP Target for Short Formations is worse than the Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level; and/or
  - (iv) Actual T-3 Performance Level is worse than the Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level; and/or
  - (v) Actual T-15 Performance Level is worse than the Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level;
  - (vi) Actual All Cancellations Performance Level is worse than the Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level; and/or
  - (vii) Secretary of State considers the Operator’s performance on a Route or group of Routes (as applicable) to be unacceptably poor notwithstanding the fact that the Operator’s overall performance in respect of any applicable target or level measured pursuant to this Chapter 4.4 meets the relevant target or threshold,
- then the Secretary of State shall be entitled to request from the Operator a plan in order to secure:

- (viii) in respect of paragraphs 9.1(a)(i) to (vi) above, a Required Performance Improvement; and
  - (ix) in respect of paragraph 9.1 (a)(vii) above, an improvement of the Operator's performance level on a Route or group of Routes (as applicable) to the satisfaction of the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) (a "**Route-Specific Required Performance Improvement**").
- (b) Within one (1) month of the Secretary of State's request pursuant to paragraph 9.1(a) above, the Operator shall:
- (i) produce and deliver to the Secretary of State its draft plan for securing a Required Performance Improvement and/or Route-Specific Required Performance Improvement (as applicable) (the "**Draft Action Plan**"); and
  - (ii) subject to paragraph 9.1(d)(iv) below:
    - A. obtain the Secretary of State's approval of the Draft Action Plan in accordance with paragraph 9.1(d) below; and
    - B. commence the implementation of a resulting Action Plan.
- (c) The Draft Action Plan shall contain specific tangible action points and indicate in the case of each action point:
- (i) how that action will contribute to achieving the Required Performance Improvement and/or Route-Specific Required Performance Improvement (as applicable);
  - (ii) where the action is to be implemented;
  - (iii) when the action is to be commenced and by when it is to be implemented provided always that where any action is expressed to be ongoing the Draft Action Plan shall include specific review dates;
  - (iv) how performance of the action is to be measured; and
  - (v) set out the additional expenditure associated with each action.
- (d) The Secretary of State shall be entitled to:
- (i) request further information from the Operator with respect to its Draft Action Plan and the Operator shall submit such further information to the Secretary of State within the timescales as reasonably requested by the Secretary of State; and/or
  - (ii) propose amendments to the Draft Action Plan and the Parties shall agree and, in the absence of agreement, the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine the amendments to the Draft Action Plan, in which case paragraph 9.1(e) below shall apply; or
  - (iii) accept the Draft Action Plan, in which case paragraph 9.1(e) below shall apply; or
  - (iv) not accept the Draft Action Plan, in which case the Operator shall not be obliged to undertake any further action with respect to its Draft Action Plan.
- (e) The Draft Action Plan as agreed, determined or accepted by the Secretary of State (as the case may be) in accordance with paragraph 9.1(d) above, shall be referred to as the "**Action Plan**". The Operator shall implement the Action Plan in accordance with its terms.
- (f) The Operator acknowledges and agrees that the approval or lack of approval by the Secretary of State of each Draft Action Plan as contemplated in this paragraph 9.1 shall not relieve the Operator of its obligations under this Chapter 4.4 or any other provisions of the National Rail Contract.
- 9.2 Except where an Action Plan is required and implemented pursuant to paragraph 9.1(a)(vii), this paragraph 9 shall only apply if the Parties have agreed (or the Secretary of State has

determined, if applicable) that the Quantified Target Methodology shall apply to the Operational Performance Fee pursuant to Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*).

**10. Allocation of Disputed Cancellations/Disputed Partial Cancellations**

10.1 For the purpose of performing the calculations referred to in paragraph 3.1 of this Chapter 4.4 the Secretary of State shall, subject to paragraph 10.2, allocate any Disputed Cancellations and/or Disputed Partial Cancellations between the Operator and Network Rail at the end of a Reporting Period in the following ratio of:

<b>Table 4</b>	
<b>F: G</b>	
<b>where:</b>	
<b>F</b>	is the total number of Undisputed Cancellations and/or Undisputed Partial Cancellations from the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods including any Disputed Cancellations or Disputed Partial Cancellations which were resolved or determined (and attributed to the Operator) during such twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods; and
<b>G</b>	is the total number of Undisputed Network Rail Cancellations and/or Undisputed Network Rail Partial Cancellations from the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods including any Disputed Cancellations or Disputed Partial Cancellations which were resolved or determined (and attributed to Network Rail) during such twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods.

10.2 For so long as fewer than thirteen (13) Reporting Periods have elapsed following the Start Date, the Secretary of State shall, for the purposes of allocating Disputed Cancellations and/or Disputed Partial Cancellations between the Operator and Network Rail in accordance with Table 4, assume performance at the Previous Performance Level in respect of the relevant Reporting Periods (up to a maximum of twelve (12) Reporting Periods) that precede the Start Date.

**11. Allocation of Disputed Minutes Delay**

11.1 Where the attribution of any Minutes Delay is in dispute between Network Rail and the Operator at the end of a Reporting Period the Secretary of State shall, subject to paragraph 11.2, for the purpose of performing the calculations referred to in paragraph 4.1 of this Chapter 4.4, allocate any disputed Minutes Delay between the Operator and Network Rail in the ratio of:

<b>Table 5</b>	
<b>FF: GG</b>	
<b>where:</b>	
<b>FF</b>	is the total number of undisputed Minutes Delay, in each case, from the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods that are attributable to the Operator including any disputed attributions which were resolved or determined (and attributed to the Operator) during such twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods; and
<b>GG</b>	is the total number of undisputed Minutes Delay, in each case from the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods that are attributable to Network Rail including any disputed attributions which were resolved or determined (and attributed to Network Rail) during such twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods.

11.2 For so long as fewer than thirteen (13) Reporting Periods have elapsed following the Start Date, the Secretary of State shall, for the purposes of allocating disputed Minutes Delay

between the Operator and Network Rail in accordance with Table 5, assume performance at the Previous Performance Level in respect of the relevant Reporting Periods (up to a maximum of twelve (12) Reporting Periods) that precede the Start Date.

**12. Operational Performance Information**

12.1 The Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State the information specified in paragraph 12 (*Operational Performance Information*) to this Chapter 4.4 at the times specified herein.

**Information about the operational performance of the Operator**

12.2 The Operator shall at all times during the Contract Term maintain records in relation to its operational performance under the National Rail Contract, covering the areas and the information described in this paragraph 12. Such information shall include details as to whether or not any curtailment, diversion, delay or failure to attain any connection is attributable, in the Operator’s opinion, to either a Force Majeure Event or the implementation of a Service Recovery Plan.

12.3 The Operator shall, subject to paragraph 12.4, provide to the Secretary of State the information set out in the following tables at the frequency specified in the Column of each such table headed “**When information to be provided**”.

12.4 When so requested by the Secretary of State, the Operator shall, within such reasonable period as the Secretary of State may specify, make such information available for review by the Secretary of State by reference to:

- (a) such level of disaggregation (including by Route or Service Group) as is reasonably specified by the Secretary of State; and
- (b) any particular day, week or other longer period as is reasonably specified by the Secretary of State.

12.5 The following key shall apply to the table in this paragraph 12:

<b>A =</b>	Information to be provided on or before any Passenger Change Date;
<b>B =</b>	Information to be provided for every Reporting Period within ten (10) Weekdays of the last day of each Reporting Period; and
<b>C =</b>	Information to be provided annually within ten (10) Weekdays of the last day of each Contract Year.

12.6 For the purposes of this paragraph 12, the following words and expressions shall have the following meanings:

Direct Delay attributable to any other Train Operator	means the number of minutes of delay to the Passenger Services that are: (a) attributed as a “Direct Delay” in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules; and (b) attributable to any other Train Operator;
Direct Delay attributable to Network Rail	means the number of minutes of delay to the Passenger Services that are: (a) attributed as a “Direct Delay” in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules; and (b) attributable to Network Rail;
Direct Delay attributable to the Operator	means the number of minutes of delay to the Passenger Services that are: (a) attributed as a “Direct Delay” in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules; and (b) attributable to the Operator;

Direct Delay on other operators attributable to the Operator	means the number of minutes of delay to passenger services operated by any other Train Operator or services operated by freight operators that are attributed: (a) as “Direct Delay” in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules; and (b) to the Operator pursuant to the Track Access Agreement;
Reactionary Delay attributable to any other Train Operator	means the number of minutes of delay to the Passenger Services that are: (a) attributed as a “Reactionary Delay” in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules; and (b) attributable to any other Train Operator;
Reactionary Delay attributable to Network Rail	means the number of minutes of delay to the Passenger Services that are: (a) attributed as a “Reactionary Delay” in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules; and (b) attributable to Network Rail;
Reactionary Delay attributable to the Operator	means the number of minutes of delay to the Passenger Services that are: (a) attributed as a “Reactionary Delay” in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules; and (b) attributable to the Operator; and
Reactionary Delay on other operators attributable to the Operator	means the number of minutes of delay to passenger services operated by any other Train Operator or services operated by freight operators that are attributed: (a) as “Reactionary Delay” in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules; and (b) to the Operator pursuant to the Track Access Agreement.

12.7 This paragraph 12 shall be interpreted in accordance with any guidance issued by the Secretary of State from time to time for that purpose.

<b>Table 1 - Operational Performance Information</b>		
<b>Information to be provided</b>	<b>Information (format)</b>	<b>When information to be provided</b>
<b>Number of Passenger Services</b>		
Number of Passenger Services in the Timetable	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day	[number]	B
<b>Number of Cancellations and Partial Cancellations</b>		
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Cancellation	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Partial Cancellation	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Cancellation attributable to the Operator’s implementation of a Service Recovery Plan	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Partial Cancellation attributable to the Operator’s implementation of a Service Recovery Plan	[number]	B

<b>Table 1 - Operational Performance Information</b>		
<b>Information to be provided</b>	<b>Information (format)</b>	<b>When information to be provided</b>
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Network Rail Cancellation	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Network Rail Partial Cancellation	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Disputed Cancellation	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Disputed Partial Cancellation	[number]	B
Number of Disputed Cancellations and Disputed Partial Cancellations for the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods for which the attribution remains in dispute between Network Rail and the Operator	[number]	B
Number of Disputed Cancellations and Disputed Partial Cancellations from the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods for which disputed attribution has been resolved or determined since the Operator's previous report including whether each relevant Disputed Cancellation and/or Disputed Partial Cancellation was attributed to Network Rail or to the Operator	[number]	B
Where there is a difference between the Timetable and the Plan of the Day on any day the following: (a) the fact of such difference; and (b) the number of: (i) Passenger Services affected; and (ii) Cancellations or Partial Cancellations which would have arisen if the Timetable on that day had been the same as the Plan of the Day	[number]	B
Where there is a difference between the Plan of the Day and the Enforcement Plan of the Day on any day: (a) the fact of such difference; (b) the number of: (i) Passenger Services affected; and (ii) Cancellations or Partial Cancellations which would have arisen if the Plan of the Day had been the same as the Enforcement Plan of the Day	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a cancellation and which satisfied the conditions of the term Cancellation, except that such cancellations occurred for reasons attributable to the occurrence of a Force Majeure Event	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a partial cancellation and which satisfied the conditions of the term Partial Cancellation, except that such partial cancellations occurred for reasons attributable to the occurrence of a Force Majeure Event	[number]	B
<b>Number of Short Formations</b>		
<b>Simple Short Formations</b>		
<b>All Day</b>		
Number of Passenger Services that have <i>less than the required Passenger Carrying Capacity</i> specified in the Train Formation Capacity Plan	[number]	B



<b>Table 1 - Operational Performance Information</b>		
<b>Information to be provided</b>	<b>Information (format)</b>	<b>When information to be provided</b>
Number of Passenger Services that have <i>less than the required Passenger Carrying Capacity</i> specified in the Train Formation Capacity Plan attributable to the Operator's implementation of a Service Recovery Plan	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services that have <i>less than the required Passenger Carrying Capacity</i> specified in the Train Formation Capacity Plan attributable to the occurrence of a Force Majeure Event	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services scheduled (excluding Cancellations or Partial Cancellations)	[number]	B
<b>Minutes Delay</b>		
Number of Minutes Delay attributable to the Operator	[number]	B
Number of Minutes Delay attributable to Network Rail	[number]	B
Number of Minutes Delay attributable to any other Train Operator	[number]	B
Number of Minutes Delay for such Reporting Period for which the attribution is in dispute between Network Rail and the Operator	[number]	B
Number of Minutes Delay for the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods for which the attribution remains in dispute between Network Rail and the Operator	[number]	B
Number of Minutes Delay from the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods for which disputed attribution has been resolved or determined since the Operator's previous report and the number of such Minutes Delay attributed to each of the Operator and Network Rail as a result of such resolution or determination	[number]	B
Number of Minutes Delay attributed to the occurrence of a Force Majeure Event	[number]	B
<b>T-3, T-15, All Cancellations and On Time</b>		
Time to 3 Minutes percentage published by Network Rail, rounded to two (2) decimal places	[number]	B
Time to 15 Minutes percentage published by Network Rail, rounded to two (2) decimal places	[number]	B
All Cancellations percentage published by Network Rail, rounded to two (2) decimal places	[number]	B
On Time percentage published by Network Rail, rounded to two (2) decimal places	[number]	B
<b>Train Mileage</b>		
Planned Train Mileage	[mileage]	A
Actual Train Mileage	[mileage]	B

Direct Delay attributable to the Operator	[number]	B
Reactionary Delay attributable to the Operator	[number]	B
Direct Delay attributable to Network Rail	[number]	B
Reactionary Delay attributable to Network Rail	[number]	B
Direct Delay attributable to any other Train Operator	[number]	B
Reactionary Delay attributable to any other Train Operator	[number]	B
Direct Delay on other operators attributable to the Operator	[number]	B
Reactionary Delay on other operators attributable to the Operator	[number]	B



## Chapter 5 – The Customer



Chapter 5.1 - Customer Information



Chapter 5.2 - Customer Schemes



Chapter 5.3 - Accessibility and Inclusivity



Chapter 5.4 - Customer Benefits



Chapter 5.5 - Customer Experience Performance

**CHAPTER 5**  
**THE CUSTOMER**

Chapter 5.1:	Customer Information
Chapter 5.2:	Customer Schemes
	Appendix 1: Community Rail Partnerships
Chapter 5.3:	Accessibility and Inclusivity
	Appendix 1: Accessible Transport Arrangements
Chapter 5.4:	Customer Benefits
	Appendix 1: List of Stations and Car Parks with Accreditation
Chapter 5.5:	Customer Experience Performance
	Part 1: Service Quality Regime
	Appendix 1 to Part 1: Service Quality Schedules
	Appendix 2 to Part 1: Service Quality Areas/Service Quality Indicators/Weightings
	Part 2: NRPS and Wavelength

## Chapter 5.1

### Customer Information

#### 1. Customer Report

1.1 The Operator shall, in accordance with the requirements of paragraph 1.2 and paragraph 1.3 below, publish a Customer Report in such readily accessible formats as the Secretary of State may reasonably require (including in booklet or other similar hard copy formats, in electronic formats (such as on the Operator's website, through social media channels and by email)), in each case in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 3 (*Publication of Performance Data*) and paragraph 4 (*Publication of Complaints and Faults Handling Data*) of this Chapter 5.1 and paragraph 1 (*Environmental Information*) of Chapter 6 (*Environment and Sustainability*).

1.2 The Operator shall publish a Customer Report as follows:

- (a) in respect of the first (1st) Contract Year:
  - (i) where such Contract Year is less than seven (7) Reporting Periods, the Operator shall only be required to publish a Customer Report for that Contract Year by no later than the Start Date (or if later, the date falling six (6) months after the Operator last published an equivalent contract report under the Previous Agreement); or
  - (ii) where such Contract Year is equal to or less than thirteen (13) Reporting Periods but equal to or more than seven (7) Reporting Periods, the Operator shall be required to publish two (2) Customer Reports in that Contract Year, the first Customer Report to be published by no later than the Start Date (or if later, the date falling six (6) months after the Operator last published an equivalent contract report under the Previous Agreement) and the second Customer Report to be published before the end of that first Contract Year; and
- (b) in respect of each subsequent Contract Year, the Operator shall be required to publish a Customer Report at least twice in that Contract Year provided that where the final Contract Year is less than seven (7) Reporting Periods the Operator shall not be required to publish a Customer Report,

provided that in no circumstances shall the Operator be required to publish more than one Customer Report in any period of six (6) consecutive months.

1.3 Without prejudice to the obligations of the Operator as specified in each of paragraphs 2 (*Customer Service and Satisfaction Data*), paragraph 3 (*Publication of Performance Data*) and paragraph 4 (*Publication of Complaints and Faults Handling Data*) of this Chapter 5.1 and paragraph 1 (*Environmental Information*) of Chapter 6 (*Environment and Sustainability*), the Secretary of State and the Operator acknowledge and agree that in respect of each Contract Year to which the provisions of paragraph 1.2(b) apply, the first (1st) Customer Report to be published for that Contract Year shall be prepared in respect of the first six (6) Reporting Periods of that Contract Year and the second (2nd) Customer Report to be published for that Contract Year shall be prepared in respect of the last seven (7) Reporting Periods of that Contract Year.

1.4 The Operator shall ensure that a summary of the then current Customer Report is made available at all staffed Stations (in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require) and that such summary includes instructions to enable passengers to locate and obtain a full copy of the applicable Customer Report.

1.5 The Operator shall ensure that the Pass Rates published by it pursuant to paragraph 10.1 of Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*) are also recorded in the subsequent Customer Report which relates to the Reporting Periods during which the applicable Pass Rates were achieved, along with:

- (a)

- (i) (in relation to the third (3rd) Customer Report) a comparison with the Pass Rates achieved in relation to the Reporting Periods that have elapsed since the last Reporting Period reported on in the relevant Previous Customer Report accompanied by a supporting narrative describing the outcomes and implications of the results of such comparison exercise onwards;
- (ii) (in the case of each subsequent Customer Report) a comparison with the Pass Rates achieved in relation to the Reporting Periods that have elapsed since the last Reporting Period reported on in the relevant Previous Customer Report for the same Reporting Periods in the previous Contract Year accompanied by a supporting narrative describing the outcomes and implications of the results of such comparison exercise onwards;
- (b) details of any remedial work either:
  - (i) planned by the Operator to occur in the period in relation to which the next Customer Report will report to improve the Operator's performance in relation to achieving and exceeding the SQR Benchmarks in respect of any Service Quality Area where performance is below the applicable SQR Benchmark; or
  - (ii) undertaken by the Operator during the Reporting Periods that have elapsed since the previous Customer Report or, in the case of the first Customer Report, since the Start Date, for the purposes of improving the Operator's performance in relation to achieving and exceeding the SQR Benchmarks for any Service Quality Area where performance was below the applicable SQR Benchmark; and
- (c) details of any other initiatives planned to be implemented by the Operator to improve the Operator's performance against the SQR Benchmarks.

## 2. Customer Service and Satisfaction Data

2.1 As part of each Customer Report to be provided by the Operator pursuant to paragraph 1.1 of this Chapter 5.1, the Operator shall publish (in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require) details of the Operator's:

- (a) level of adherence to scheduled ticket office opening hours at Stations (so that the Customer Report shows, as a percentage, the proportion of scheduled ticket office opening hours not delivered aggregated across all ticket offices at all Stations); and
- (b) performance by reference to such benchmarks as may be agreed between the Operator and the ORR as part of the Operator's Accessible Travel Policy in respect of the Passenger Assistance service operated by the Operator,

In each case in relation to the Reporting Periods that have elapsed since the last Reporting Period reported on in the Previous Customer Report or, in the case of the first (1<sup>st</sup>) Customer Report, since the last Reporting Period reported on in the last Customer Report provided by the Operator in accordance with the Previous Agreement (and as defined therein), along with a comparison with the relevant statistics or results (as applicable) provided for the same Reporting Periods in the previous Contract Year.

2.2 The Operator shall publish on its website (in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require):

- (a) within twenty (20) Weekdays of the publication of each National Rail Passenger Survey carried out by the Passengers' Council during the Contract Term, details of the scores achieved by the Operator in such National Rail Passenger Survey, including the scores achieved in respect of passengers' "overall satisfaction"; and
- (b) within twenty (20) Weekdays of the publication of the last National Rail Passenger Survey to be carried out by the Passengers' Council during any Contract Year, details of the scores achieved by the Operator as against each NRPS Benchmark, as calculated in accordance with paragraph 20 (*Performance Review*) of Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*).

2.3 The Operator shall ensure that the scores achieved as against each NRPS Benchmark, published by it pursuant to paragraph 2.2, are also recorded in the subsequent Customer

Report which relates to the Reporting Periods during which the applicable scores were achieved, along with:

- (a) from the third (3<sup>rd</sup>) Customer Report onwards a comparison with the scores that were achieved as against each NRPS Benchmark for the same Reporting Periods in the previous Contract Year (if available), accompanied by a supporting narrative describing the outcomes and implications of the results of any such comparison exercise;
- (b) details of any remedial work either:
  - (i) planned by the Operator to occur in the period in relation to which the next Customer Report will report to improve the Operator's performance in relation to achieving and exceeding the NRPS Benchmarks (for instance, the planned application of additional expenditure); or
  - (ii) undertaken by the Operator during the Reporting Periods that have elapsed since the last Reporting Period reported on in the Previous Customer Report or, in the case of the first (1st) Customer Report, since the last Reporting Period reported on in the last Customer Report provided by the Operator in accordance with the Previous Agreement (and as defined therein), for the purposes of improving the Operator's performance in relation to achieving and exceeding the NRPS Benchmarks (for instance, the planned application of additional expenditure); and
- (c) details of any other initiatives planned to be implemented by the Operator to improve passenger experience.

### 3. **Publication of Performance Data**

3.1 The Operator shall in accordance with paragraph 3.2 of this Chapter 5.1 (and in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require) publish on the Operator's website in relation to each Reporting Period during the Contract Term the performance of the Operator by reference to:

- (a) Cancellations Figures;
- (b) Short Formations Figures;
- (c) Time to 3 Minutes Figures;
- (d) Time to 15 Minutes Figures;
- (e) All Cancellations Figures; and
- (f) On Time Figures.

Such data shall be published by the Operator within ten (10) Weekdays of it becoming available to the Operator.

3.2 The Operator shall ensure that the data published by it pursuant to paragraph 3.1 shall in each case be shown:

- (a) in relation to all Passenger Services;
- (b) disaggregated by reference to Service Groups;
- (c) on a periodic and/or on an average basis (as applicable); and
- (d) include details of:
  - (i) the number of Passenger Services operated by the Operator during each relevant Reporting Period which are late in arriving at their final scheduled destination in the Plan of the Day:
    - (A) by between 30 minutes and 59 minutes;
    - (B) by between 60 minutes and 119 minutes; and
    - (C) by 120 minutes or more,

and the percentage that each such category of delayed Passenger Services represents of the total number of Passenger Services scheduled to be provided in the Plan of the Day during such Reporting Period; and

- (ii) the number of Passenger Services formed with less than the required Passenger Carrying Capacity specified in the Train Formation Capacity Plan during such Reporting Period and the percentage that this represents of all Passenger Services scheduled in the Train Formation Capacity Plan to be operated in that Reporting Period.

3.3 As part of each Customer Report to be provided by the Operator pursuant to paragraph 1 (*Customer Report*) of this Chapter 5.1, the Operator shall publish (in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require):

- (a) the mean average of each of the Cancellations Figures and the Short Formations Figures for the Reporting Periods that have elapsed since the last Reporting Period reported on in the previous Customer Report (or, in the case of the first (1st) Customer Report, since the last Reporting Period reported on in the last Customer Report provided by the Operator in accordance with the Previous Agreement (and as defined therein));
- (b) the latest Time to 3 Minutes Figures, Time to 15 Minutes Figures, All Cancellation Figures and On Time Figures for the last Reporting Period before publication of the relevant Customer Report;
- (c) a summary comparison of the statistics produced pursuant to paragraphs 3.3(a) and 3.3(b) as against the equivalent statistics provided for the same Reporting Period(s) in the previous Contract Year (or, in the case of the first (1st) Customer Report, those provided by the Operator in accordance with the Previous Agreement);
- (d) an update on the key activities undertaken by the Operator to improve its performance in relation to the measures referred to in paragraphs 3.3(a) and 3.3(b); and
- (e) a summary of the key activities planned to be undertaken by the Operator in the period in relation to which the next Customer Report will report to improve its performance in relation to the measures referred to in paragraphs 3.3(a) and 3.3(b).

#### 4. **Publication of Complaints and Faults Handling Data**

4.1 As part of each Customer Report to be provided by the Operator pursuant to paragraph 1 (*Customer Report*) of this Chapter 5.1, the Operator shall publish (in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require) in relation to the Reporting Periods that have elapsed since the last Reporting Period reported on in the previous Customer Report or, in the case of the second (2<sup>nd</sup>) Customer Report, since the last Reporting Period reported on in the last Customer Report provided by the Operator in accordance with the Previous Agreement (and as defined therein):

- (a) a summary of the data published by the ORR from time to time in relation to the handling of passenger complaints regarding the Operator's operation of the Passenger Services;
- (b) details of the number of faults notified to the Operator by passengers or station users through specified channels including the website of the Operator (each a "**Notified Fault**") in each case identifying the total numbers of Notified Faults (by reference to whether such Notified Faults relate to rolling stock or stations), with such numbers further disaggregated by Service Group and broken down into relevant sub-categories of Notified Fault;
- (c) the mean average time taken by the Operator:
  - (i) to resolve Notified Faults; and
  - (ii) where Notified Faults are not resolved within twenty (20) Weekdays, to provide feedback to applicable passengers and/or station users on its progress in seeking resolution of such Notified Faults; and
- (d) a summary comparison of:

- (i) the mean average number of Notified Faults notified to the Operator;
- (ii) the mean average time taken by the Operator to resolve Notified Faults; and
- (iii) the mean average time taken by the Operator, where Notified Faults have not been resolved within twenty (20) Weekdays to provide feedback to applicable passengers and/or station users on its progress in seeking resolution of such Notified Faults,

in each case in comparison with the relevant equivalent mean average statistics provided for the same Reporting Periods in the previous Contract Year (or, in the case of the first (1st) Customer Report, those provided by the Operator in accordance with the Previous Agreement).

## 5. **Passenger's Charter**

### 5.1 **Content**

The Operator shall:

- (a) publish its Passenger's Charter:
  - (i) in substantially the same form as the document in the agreed terms marked **PC**; and
  - (ii) in accordance with the requirements specified in paragraph 5.3;
- (b) review the need for changes to the Passenger's Charter at least every three (3) years, in consultation with the Passengers' Council, and shall submit a draft of any revisions to the Passenger's Charter that it wishes to propose, together with proof of such consultation, to the Secretary of State; and
- (c) state the date of publication clearly on the front cover of the Passenger's Charter.

5.2 The Operator may not change the Passenger's Charter without the Secretary of State's prior written consent (which is not to be unreasonably withheld).

### 5.3 **Publishing the Passenger's Charter**

The Operator shall publicise its Passenger's Charter by:

- (a) providing copies to the Secretary of State and the Passengers' Council at least seven (7) days before it comes into effect;
- (b) sending a printed copy, free of charge, to any person who requests it; and
- (c) displaying it on its website at all times and, in the case of any revision thereto, at least seven (7) days before such revision comes into effect,

save in respect of the Passenger's Charter which is effective on the Start Date, in which case the Operator shall publicise such Passenger's Charter in the manner contemplated by this paragraph 5.3 on and from the Start Date.

5.4 The Operator shall provide copies of its Passenger's Charter to the operators of Operator Access Stations to enable such operators to publish it.

### 5.5 **Passenger's Charter Payments and Other Obligations**

The Operator shall:

- (a) make all payments which passengers may reasonably expect to be made or provided from time to time under the terms of the Passenger's Charter (whether or not the Operator is legally obliged to do so);
- (b) use all reasonable endeavours to make passengers aware of their right to claim compensation pursuant to the Passenger's Charter including by:
  - (i) displaying the relevant information on trains and at Stations;
  - (ii) making appropriate announcements to passengers on trains and at Stations when the circumstances giving rise to that right occur;



- (iii) making compensation claim forms readily available to passengers at Stations and on the Operator's website; and
- (iv) any other reasonable means to reflect future advancements in technology proposed in writing either by the Operator or the Secretary of State and agreed by both Parties (acting reasonably); and
- (c) use all reasonable endeavours:
  - (i) to comply with any other obligations, statements and representations; and
  - (ii) to meet any other standards or targets of performance, as are comprised in its Passenger's Charter from time to time.

## 6. Compensation

6.1 Save with the prior written consent (such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) of the Secretary of State, the Operator shall not:

- (a) enter into any new agreement, contract or other arrangement which relates to the receipt, review, response to, or processing of passengers' compensation claims;
- (b) materially amend, vary or waive the terms of any existing agreement, contract or other arrangement which relates to the receipt, review, response to, or processing of passengers' compensation claims; or
- (c) extend the term of any agreement, contract or other arrangement which relates to the receipt, review, response to, or processing of passengers' compensation claims.

## 7. Publishing the Timetable

7.1 The Operator shall publish the Timetable, and revisions and alterations on the Timetable via the following media:

- (i) at each staffed Station, by making the relevant information available upon request and free of charge in one or more booklets or in other similar form;
- (ii) at each Station by displaying the relevant information via digital displays or on static information displays where digital displays are not available or functioning;
- (iii) at each Operator Access Station, by providing to the operator of each such station the departure and arrival times of the Passenger Services that call at each such station and the principal Connections to any other transport services relevant to each such station in the same forms as are specified in paragraphs (i) and (ii); and
- (iv) on the Operator's website, and

such publication shall be from the Start Date, and in the case of revisions and alterations at least four (4) weeks before the changes come into effect.

## 7.2 Late and Emergency Timetable Changes

The Operator shall inform passengers, so far as possible on not less than seven (7) days' prior notice or as soon as reasonably practicable in relation to emergency changes, if it will be unable to operate in accordance with the Timetable. Such information shall include any revised Timetable or travelling arrangements.

7.3 Such information shall be provided (in each case as soon as reasonably practicable) by:

- (a) at each Station, displaying the relevant information via digital displays or on static information displays where digital displays are not available or functioning;
- (b) notifying the operators of the Operator Access Stations, as appropriate; and
- (c) updating the Operator's website.

7.4 Where any amendments to the Timetable are made pursuant to paragraphs 3, 4, 5 or 6 of Chapter 4.2 (*Operating Obligations*) the Operator shall inform passengers as soon as reasonably practicable in accordance with paragraph 7.3 and;

- (a) via the Operator's social media accounts (through which the Operator shall in any event publish any such amendments to the Timetable no later than two (2) hours following agreement of such amendments); and
- (b) via any other direct means of communication with passengers available to the Operator, including email and/or text messaging services.

#### 7.5 **Other Train Operators' Timetables**

The Operator shall also comply with the requirements of paragraphs 7.1 to 7.4 inclusive in respect of any other Train Operator's timetable at each Station where the railway passenger services of such other Train Operator are scheduled to call or in respect of which Connections to such other Train Operators railway passenger services can be made from that Station:

- (a) within the time limits specified in paragraphs 7.1 to 7.4 where and to the extent that such other Train Operator delivers to the Operator the relevant information and materials in sufficient time for the Operator to so publish; and
- (b) as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter where and to the extent that such other Train Operator delivers the relevant information and materials late to the Operator.

#### 7.6 **National Rail Timetable and National Rail Enquiry Scheme**

The Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to procure (including by virtue of any arrangements made from time to time between Network Rail and RSP) that the National Rail Timetable (or any replacement timetable), which Network Rail is responsible for publishing from time to time in relation to the Passenger Services, incorporates or is consistent with its Timetable from time to time.

7.7 The Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to procure that information in relation to:

- (a) the Timetable; and
- (b) any material alterations to the Timetable to take effect between any two (2) Passenger Change Dates,

is available to passengers through the National Rail Enquiry Scheme (or any replacement) not less than four (4) weeks prior to coming into effect.

### 8. **Route Maps**

8.1 The Operator shall produce a Route Map which shall include as a minimum;

- (a) all stations served by the Passenger Services; and
- (b) key stations located on any Other Passenger Route Within the Geographical Area (which shall either be selected by the Operator on a reasonable basis or, if so directed by the Secretary of State, specified by the Secretary of State in a notice to the Operator).

8.2 The Route Map shall include notes identifying:

- (a) in relation to any Other Passenger Route Within the Geographical Area with a principal destination point outside of the Geographical Area, such ultimate origin or ultimate destination point; and
- (b) those Routes over which services are also operated and such service is:
  - (i) operated by a passenger train operator other than the Operator; and
  - (ii) run on a more frequent basis (as stated in the National Rail Timetable) than the Passenger Services.

8.3 The Operator shall, as soon as reasonably practicable, update the Route Map in all places where it is displayed where there is any change:

- (a) to the Passenger Services, leading to a change in the routes falling within the definition of Route; or
- (b) to the passenger services operated by another passenger train operator (as stated in the National Rail Timetable), leading to a change to the routes falling within the definition of Other Passenger Route Within the Geographical Area.

- 8.4 The Route Map shall at all times be displayed:
- (a) in every passenger carrying vehicle within the Train Fleet;
  - (b) at every Station; and
  - (c) on its website.
- 8.5 The Operator shall be regarded as having complied with the requirement of paragraph 8.1 if a map that meets the requirements of a Route Map is produced by a Local Authority or other relevant Stakeholder. The provisions of paragraphs 8.3 and 8.4 shall apply in relation to any such map.

## Chapter 5.2

### Customer Schemes

#### 1. Consultations

The Operator shall undertake consultations from time to time as required with:

- (a) passengers, potential passengers, Stakeholders and other users of the rail network;
- (b) persons who are protected by an Accessible Travel Policy; and
- (c) persons with other protected characteristics within the meaning of the EA 2010, for the purposes of the Customer Report.

#### 2. Community Rail Partnerships

2.1 The Operator shall become a member of and shall continue to participate in the Community Rail Partnerships relevant to the Passenger Services, including the Community Rail Partnerships listed in the table in Appendix 1 to this Chapter 5.2 (and any successor Community Rail Partnerships). As part of such participation the Operator shall identify a senior Business Employee whose duties shall include:

- (a) supporting the Community Rail Partnerships;
- (b) ensuring managerial focus within the Operator's organisation to enable the Operator to meet its Community Rail Partnership obligations; and
- (c) leading on the Operator's development of community rail projects.

2.2 The Operator shall, at the request of the Secretary of State:

- (a) co-operate with the Secretary of State, Network Rail, Community Rail Network, local transport authorities and/or any other person as the Secretary of State may nominate for the purposes of developing and furthering the success of the Community Rail Partnerships;
- (b) co-operate with, establish and/or participate in any Community Rail Partnership;
- (c) provide technical support in respect of timetable specification for the Community Rail Partnerships, including providing appropriate journey and revenue data; and
- (d) co-operate in the development of the Secretary of State's initiatives to examine:
  - (i) options for a more cost effective delivery of the railway passenger services operated on any Community Rail Route (such options to include changes in working practices of the relevant Business Employees, reducing rolling stock lease costs and maximising opportunities for obtaining local funding of development at relevant stations and developing new ways of maintaining and renewing relevant railway infrastructure); and
  - (ii) the actual costs incurred in operating, maintaining and renewing the infrastructure relevant for such Community Rail Route.

2.3 The Operator shall use reasonable endeavours to develop and implement the Community Rail Partnership's initiatives in order to increase the use of the Passenger Services by non-users of the Passenger Services and tourists including, where appropriate, the development of and implementation of marketing strategies.

2.4 The Secretary of State may at any time, by proposing a Variation pursuant to paragraph 8 of Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*) require the transfer of any Rail Services to another Train Operator in order to deliver either of the initiatives that were examined pursuant to paragraph 2.2(d).

2.5 The Operator shall become a member and shall continue to participate in the National Community Rail Steering Group.

2.6 Within one (1) month of the Start Date in respect of the first Contract Year and no later than three (3) months before the start of each subsequent Contract Year, the Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State a report ("**Community Rail Report**") setting out the distribution of

- the CRP Amount in full amongst the Community Rail Partnerships identified in paragraphs 2.1 and 2.2.
- 2.7 The Community Rail Report shall contain the following information:
- (a) a statement confirming that the Operator's distribution of funds to the Community Rail Partnerships takes account of the Secretary of State's then current published Community Rail Strategy;
  - (b) a statement confirming that the Operator has discussed the funding of the Community Rail Partnerships with Community Rail Network and has taken sufficient account of Community Rail Network's views;
  - (c) confirmation that the Operator has discussed with all Community Rail Partnerships the aims and needs of such partnerships and the funding required to achieve these;
  - (d) a table setting out the relevant portions of the CRP Amount which are to be paid to each Community Rail Partnership (on a non-indexed basis) over the next three (3) years (it being acknowledged that these amounts are likely to be different for each Community Rail Partnership);
  - (e) the activities undertaken by the Operator pursuant to paragraph 2.3 of this Chapter 5.2;
  - (f) Not Used; and
  - (g) such further information as the Secretary of State may from time to time request.
- 2.8 The Operator shall within thirty (30) days of the commencement of each Contract Year, make the relevant payments totalling the CRP Amount to each of the Community Rail Partnerships identified in the Community Rail Report for that year.
- 2.9 The Operator shall hold an annual conference for the Community Rail Partnerships' officers and station adopters in conjunction with the Community Rail Network to encourage the spread of best practice and to communicate plans for service development. The first such conference shall be held within four (4) months of the Start Date.
- 2.10 The Operator shall devise and implement, in collaboration with the relevant Community Rail Partnership, a "**station adopters scheme**" under which members of the local community can "**adopt**" a local Station and engage in activities such as:
- (a) promotion of the Passengers Services calling at the Station;
  - (b) monitoring and reporting faults, damage and anti-social and criminal behaviour;
  - (c) carrying out minor Station cleaning and maintenance tasks and the development and cultivation of station gardens.
- 2.11 The Operator shall take reasonable steps to promote the station adopters scheme and provide safety and other training and support to participants.
- 2.12 In collaboration with the relevant Community Rail Partnership and other Stakeholders the Operator shall use reasonable endeavours to identify sources of third party funding for the Community Rail Partnerships and encourage such third parties to make funding commitments.

**Appendix 1 to Chapter 5.2**  
**Community Rail Partnerships**

	<b>Community Rail Partnership</b>	<b>Community Rail Route</b>
1.	Bentham Line	Leeds – Lancaster – Morecombe
2.	Bishop Line	Darlington – Bishop Auckland
3.	Clitheroe Line	Clitheroe – Manchester Victoria
4.	Crewe – Manchester	Crewe – Manchester
5.	Cumbrian Coast	Carlisle – Barrow
6.	East Lancashire	Colne – Preston
7.	Esk Valley Railway Development Company	Middlesbrough – Whitby
8.	Furness Line	Lancaster – Barrow-in-Furness
9.	Hope Valley & High Peak	Manchester – Sheffield / Buxton / Glossop
10.	Humber Region	Cleethorpes – Barton-on-Humber
11.	Lakes Line	Oxenholme – Windermere
12.	Mid Cheshire	Manchester – Northwich – Chester
13.	Penistone Line	Huddersfield – Sheffield
14.	Settle Carlisle Railway Development Company	Leeds – Carlisle
15.	South Fylde	Preston – Blackpool South
16.	Tyne Valley	Newcastle – Carlisle
17.	West Lancashire	Preston – Ormskirk
18.	Yorkshire Coast	Hull - Scarborough
(and any successor Community Rail Partnerships)		

## Chapter 5.3

### Accessibility and Inclusivity

#### 1. Relationship with other obligations relating to Disabled Persons

- 1.1 The Operator acknowledges that its obligations in this Chapter 5.3 are in addition to and do not limit its obligations to comply with:
- (a) the EA 2010 and any regulations imposed by it;
  - (b) any applicable condition(s) in any of its Licences (including in respect of Disabled Persons); and
  - (c) any other requirements of the National Rail Contract.
- 1.2 This Chapter 5.3 sets out requirements for changes, improvements to and maintenance of stations to facilitate and maximise accessibility and use by Disabled Persons and those requiring assistance.
- 1.3
- (a) Subject to paragraph 1.3(c) below, it is acknowledged that the Operator is subject to obligations regarding accessibility under the terms of its Licences (including under the form of its Accessible Travel Policy as approved from time to time by the ORR in connection with the requirements of its Licences) (the “**Licence Accessibility Obligations**”).
  - (b) Where any matter included in this Chapter 5.3 is the subject of a Licence Accessibility Obligation, it is agreed that compliance with the Licence Accessibility Obligation shall take precedence over this Chapter 5.3 such that compliance with the Licence Accessibility Obligation shall be deemed to fulfil the obligation of the Operator in respect of that matter under this Chapter 5.3 and any failure by the Operator in respect of that matter shall be addressed under that Licence and not under this Contract.
  - (c) Paragraph 1.3(a) shall have no application to paragraph 3 (*Dealing with Claims relating to Stations*).

#### 2. Physical Alterations and Accessibility of Stations

- 2.1 Current accessibility standards must be met whenever station infrastructure is installed, replaced or renewed. In respect of physical alteration works at stations to facilitate accessibility and use by Disabled Persons, it is acknowledged by the Operator that:
- (a) there is limited funding available to the Secretary of State to assist Train Operators and/or franchise operators with the carrying out of those works;
  - (b) consequently, there is a need for such works to be carried out over a period of time to reflect the availability of funding, and for such works to be prioritised as identified through an accessibility (audit) data collection with the Operator responsible for designing and delivering this; and
  - (c) the Secretary of State’s Access for All programme of works of physical alterations at stations addresses these issues in a structured way.
- 2.2 The Operator shall:
- (a) co-operate reasonably with and assist the Secretary of State in the development and furtherance by the Secretary of State of the programme described in paragraph 2.1(c) by providing to the Secretary of State:
    - (i) information concerning the usage of Stations (including, where and to the extent reasonably practicable, usage of Stations by Disabled Persons); and
    - (ii) advice as to the most economical way in which accessibility for Disabled Persons could, in the Operator’s reasonable opinion, be improved at Stations;
  - (b) co-operate reasonably with other Train Operators and/or Network Rail to seek to ensure that, where it would be advantageous to do so, having regard to the needs of



Disabled Persons, any planned work on the Stations to facilitate accessibility and use by Disabled Persons is, so far as reasonably practicable, co-ordinated with other work to be carried out at the Stations and/or other parts of the network; and

- (c) use all reasonable endeavours to secure sources of grant funding (other than from itself or an Affiliate of the Operator) for improving accessibility for Disabled Persons at Stations (in addition to any funding secured through the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 2.5), including from Local Authorities, local development agencies and National Lottery funding. The Operator shall notify the Secretary of State of:
    - (i) any such additional funding which it secures; and
    - (ii) the terms on which such additional funding has been granted.
- 2.3 In participating in any multi-modal fares scheme, the Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to secure, through the planning and development of such scheme, improvements in disabled access to the entrances of any relevant station, including within and in the immediate proximity of such station.
- 2.4 If, during the Contract Term:
- (a) the Operator has complied with its obligations in section 20(4) and section 20(9), as varied by paragraph 2(3) of Schedule 2 of the EA 2010 (to take such steps as are reasonable to provide a reasonable alternative method of making services at a Station accessible to a Disabled Person to avoid a Disabled Person being placed at a substantial disadvantage by a physical feature at a Station); and
  - (b) notwithstanding such compliance, the Operator reasonably considers it is still required to carry out or procure physical works of alteration at a Station in order to comply with the EA Requirements in respect of that Station, and, in so carrying out or procuring, would incur expenditure which it would not otherwise have an obligation to incur and which was not contemplated in the Cost Budget as most recently Placed in Escrow,

the Operator may propose a Cost Budget Change in respect of the same.

- 2.5 If the Operator proposes a Cost Budget Change under paragraph 2.4, and demonstrates to the Secretary of State's satisfaction that the criteria in paragraph 2.4 have been satisfied, then a Cost Budget Change Event shall occur and the Operator shall deliver the relevant improvements so as to comply with the EA Requirements referred to in paragraph 2.4(b).
- 2.6 If and to the extent the Operator is required to pay any increased access charges as a result of additional expenditure required to be incurred by another station Facility Owner for the purpose of complying with the EA Requirements in respect of an Operator Access Station, provided that the Operator:
- (a) notifies the Secretary of State within seven (7) days of becoming aware of any proposal for the increase in such charges (or the works to which they relate); and
  - (b) complies with the Secretary of State's reasonable directions regarding the exercise of any rights the Operator may have in respect thereof,

the imposition of the increased access charges shall be a Cost Budget Change Event and a Cost Financial Target Amendment Event or Profit Financial Target Amendment Event (as applicable).

### 3. Dealing with Claims relating to Stations

- 3.1 If the Operator receives notification of a claim under the EA 2010 in respect of any alleged non-compliance with the EA Requirements or otherwise in respect of any Station (an "EA Claim") then the Operator shall:
- (a) notify the Secretary of State within seven (7) days of receiving notification of the EA Claim. The Operator shall at the same time notify the Secretary of State of any reasonable alternative methods of making services at the Station accessible to Disabled Persons that it has considered and/or put in place pursuant to section 20(4) and section 20(9), as varied by paragraph 2(3) of Schedule 2 of the EA 2010;

- (b) if required by the Secretary of State, defend the EA Claim or any aspect of the EA Claim (which may include appealing the judgment). The Secretary of State shall, subject to paragraph 3.4, pay the Operator's reasonable costs of:
- (i) any defence or appeal required by the Secretary of State; and/or
  - (ii) compliance with the Secretary of State's instructions in accordance with paragraph 3.1(c); and
- (c) act in accordance with the reasonable instructions of the Secretary of State to defend the EA Claim (or any aspect of it) as required under paragraph 3.1(b) and shall not (without the prior consent of the Secretary of State) settle or enter into any compromise in relation to the EA Claim (or the relevant aspect of it), including by entering into mediation.
- 3.2 If, in the reasonable opinion of the Operator, it will be more cost effective to settle the EA Claim rather than act in accordance with the Secretary of State's requirement under paragraph 3.1, it shall produce for the Secretary of State's approval a settlement proposal, setting out the terms of the Operator's proposals to make an offer to the Disabled Person making the EA Claim and its reasons for making such offer (the "**Settlement Proposal**").
- 3.3 If the Secretary of State does not accept the Settlement Proposal and still requires the Operator to defend the EA Claim (or any aspect of it) then the Operator shall defend the EA Claim in accordance with paragraph 3.1.
- 3.4 If the Operator is required to defend an EA Claim where it has submitted a Settlement Proposal to the Secretary of State and an award is made in respect of the EA Claim in favour of the person bringing it which is higher than the figure set out in the Settlement Proposal, then, subject to paragraph 3.5, the Secretary of State shall pay to the Operator:
- (a) the difference between such an award and the figure set out in the Settlement Proposal; and
  - (b) the further reasonable costs incurred or payable by the Operator in defending the EA Claim, to the extent that such costs have not already been paid by the Secretary of State under paragraph 3.1(b).
- 3.5 The Secretary of State shall not have any obligation to make the payments described in paragraphs 3.1(b) or 3.4 where it is determined or, if no declaration or determination by the court on this point has been sought or made, the Secretary of State, in the Secretary of State's reasonable opinion, considers that the Operator has not taken such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for it to take to provide a reasonable alternative method of making services at the Station accessible to Disabled Persons.
4. **Specific additional obligations relating to Disabled Persons**
- 4.1 To the extent the Operator did so prior to the Start Date, it shall continue to implement procedures necessary to:
- (a) record the making of reservations for seating accommodation and for spaces for wheelchairs and/or for the provision of assistance to, Disabled Persons which are made through the Passenger Assistance (or whatever service may replace it from time to time for the purposes of ORR's most recent guidance on the Accessible Travel Policies);
  - (b) record whether such seating accommodation and/or assistance is actually provided, whether there has been a delay in providing such assistance at either departing, arrival or any interchange stations, and whether the journeys planned using Passenger Assistance have been completed successfully (e.g. by surveying a representative sample of users); and
  - (c) provide the results of such records to the Secretary of State, and publish a summary of the data in its Customer Report(s) and on the relevant section of the Operator's website.
- 4.2 The Parties acknowledge that, under the terms of the Previous Agreement, the Operator has notified the Secretary of State of:

- (a) the extent to which it recorded the matters described in paragraphs 4.1(a) and 4.1(b) above (collectively referred to as the “**Seating and Assistance Provisions**”), as at the date of the notification; and
  - (b) if and to the extent to which it did not previously record any aspect of the Seating and Assistance Provisions, its assessment of the costs, practicalities and timescales involved in putting in place the necessary systems and processes to enable them to do so.
- 4.3 Following the Start Date:
- (a) if the Operator already records the Seating and Assistance Provisions, it shall continue to do so and shall provide the results of such records to the Secretary of State, and publish a summary of the data in its Customer Report(s) and on the relevant section of the Operator’s website; and
  - (b) if the Operator does not record any aspect of the Seating and Assistance Provisions, then the Secretary of State may by a Business Plan Revision require the Operator to establish and implement the necessary systems and processes by such date as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify (having regard to any assessment provided by the Operator pursuant to paragraph 4.1 above), and with effect from such date, it shall record Seating and Assistance Provisions and shall provide the results of such records to the Secretary of State and publish a summary of the data in its Customer Report(s) and on the relevant section of the Operator’s website.
- 4.4 The Operator shall promptly send to the Secretary of State a copy of:
- (a) each set of results of the surveys of Passenger Assistance users that the Operator undertakes pursuant to its Accessible Travel Policy; and
  - (b) any reports that the Operator submits to ORR in connection with the effectiveness of, and satisfaction with, the Passenger Assistance service.
- 4.5 The Operator shall comply with the requirements set out in Appendix 1 (*Accessible Transport Arrangements*) to this Chapter 5.3 in respect of the provision of accessible transport arrangements for Disabled Persons.
- 5. Annual Accessibility Update**
- 5.1 The Parties acknowledge that the Operator, pursuant to its Licence Accessibility Obligations, is required to submit reports from time to time to ORR in respect of accessibility matters, including, in relation to:
- (a) the activities undertaken by the Operator to improve accessibility to the Rail Services;
  - (b) the approach that the Operator has taken to assessing the accessibility requirements of passengers pursuant to the requirements of the EA 2010, for example when making decisions about operations, design and service improvements; and
  - (c) the action(s) taken by the Operator to remedy any failure (whether identified by the Operator or ORR) to comply with the Operator’s Accessible Travel Policy or any other accessibility related obligation arising pursuant to its Licence Accessibility Obligations.
- 5.2 The Operator shall provide a copy of any report submitted to ORR pursuant to paragraph 5.1 to the Secretary of State within seven (7) Weekdays of it being submitted to ORR.
- 6. Accessibility Director and Accessibility Manager**
- 6.1 The Operator shall nominate from the Start Date (to the extent that the Operator has not already done so):
- (a) a director to the board of directors of the Operator; and
  - (b) an operational manager,
- each with specific responsibility of ensuring the Operator complies with its obligations in connection with accessibility, including pursuant to its Accessible Travel Policy requirements.

6.2 The Operator shall ensure that such roles referred to in paragraph 6.1 are filled as soon as reasonably practicable after such roles become vacant throughout the Contract Term.

## 7. **Accessibility Panel**

7.1 The Operator shall:

- (a) consult the Accessibility Panel on operational and policy decisions that may have an impact on the needs of passengers with accessibility requirements;
- (b) develop the design of the Enhanced Disability Awareness Training referred to in paragraph 8 below, and the co-design of physical assets, electronic services and applications, and other services and facilities relating to accessibility as appropriate, in each case, actively engaging with the Accessibility Panel as may be appropriate; and
- (c) provide the Accessibility Panel the opportunity to report to the board of directors of the Operator on a quarterly basis.

## 8. **Enhanced Disability Awareness Training**

8.1

- (a) The Operator shall deliver Enhanced Disability Awareness Training to:
  - (i) all Business Employees in customer facing roles (excluding train drivers) by no later than 31 July 2021 (or such later date as may be agreed by the Secretary of State and the Operator); and
  - (ii) all of those Business Employees who are train drivers by no later than 28 May 2023 (or such later date as may be agreed by the Secretary of State and the Operator), who, in either case, have not received such training under the Previous Agreement.
- (b) The Operator shall also ensure it delivers the Enhanced Disability Awareness Training to any Business Employees in customer facing roles appointed following the Start Date (excluding Business Employees in customer facing roles appointed less than two (2) months prior to the Expiry Date (as extended pursuant to clause 2 (*Duration of the National Rail Contract*) of this Contract, if applicable) if it is not reasonably practicable to deliver Enhanced Disability Awareness Training to such Business Employees) as soon as reasonably practicable after their appointment.
- (c) If at any time there is material change to the Enhanced Disability Awareness Training as compared to the relevant training provided previously to Business Employees in customer facing roles pursuant to this paragraph 8.1, the Operator shall use reasonable endeavours to communicate the new and/or amended Enhanced Disability Awareness Training (including relevant materials) to the Business Employees in customer facing roles which had received the previous Enhanced Disability Awareness Training.

8.2 In developing the Enhanced Disability Awareness Training, the Operator shall:

- (a) take into account a wide range of disabilities (including non-visible disabilities); and
- (b) ensure the content complies with the requirements of the ORR's Accessible Travel Policy guidance.

8.3 The Operator shall involve Disabled Persons and/or groups representing Disabled Persons (which may include the Accessibility Panel) in the delivery of the Enhanced Disability Awareness Training.

## 9. **Accessible Formats of Passenger Facing Information**

9.1 By no later than the Start Date the Operator shall ensure (and continue to ensure throughout the Contract Term) that, if and to the extent reasonably practicable, passenger facing information (in whatever form or media) is presented or made available in a range of accessible formats, taking into account the requirements of Disabled Persons in relation to communication (such as passengers who use British Sign Language or "easy read").

9.2 The Parties acknowledge that:

- (a) the ORR licensing regime requires the publication of certain documents (the “**Relevant Documents**”) in accessible formats; and
- (b) insofar as the obligation in paragraph 9.1 above applies to the Relevant Documents, enforcement action is within the remit of the ORR and accordingly a failure to comply with paragraph 9.1 in respect of the Relevant Documents shall not be treated as a contravention of this Contract (but the Operator nevertheless acknowledges that it will remedy any such failure, as soon as practicable and in accordance with any directions as may be given by the ORR).

#### 10. **Diversity Impact Assessments**

- 10.1 The Operator shall, from the Start Date and throughout the Contract Term, ensure that it conducts a diversity impact assessment on all projects that will or may affect the interests of persons with protected characteristics (as defined under the EA 2010) carried out by the Operator (except where in the reasonable opinion of the Operator, the project is sufficiently completed such that a diversity impact assessment is not reasonably expected to materially influence the outcome of the project, in which case the requirement to conduct a diversity impact assessment in respect of that particular project shall not apply).
- 10.2 The Operator shall take such steps as it considers appropriate (acting reasonably) in light of the conclusions of the diversity impact assessment to ensure that issues affecting people with protected characteristics (as defined under the EA 2010) are properly addressed in compliance with applicable Laws.

#### 11. **Station Accessibility Data Collection**

- 11.1 The Operator shall comply with any reasonable request by the Secretary of State in connection with the development and implementation of a station accessibility data collection plan which may include (but shall not be limited to):
  - (a) supporting the Secretary of State in developing and designing the methodology for data collection;
  - (b) completing questionnaires and/or using reasonable endeavours to procure that the relevant station Facility Owner completes the relevant questionnaire;
  - (c) providing information in relation to Station accessibility and/or using reasonable endeavours to procure that the relevant station Facility Owner provides such information; and
  - (d) providing access to Stations to facilitate accessibility data collection and/or using reasonable endeavours to procure that the relevant station Facility Owner provides such access,
 in each case, in a timely manner.

## Appendix 1 to Chapter 5.3

### Accessible Transport Arrangements

1. References in this Appendix 1 to Chapter 5.3 (*Accessibility and Inclusivity*) to passengers are references to disabled passengers who are wheelchair users or otherwise severely mobility impaired.
2. Subject to paragraph 4, where:
  - 2.1 a passenger wants to travel on a Passenger Service; and
  - 2.2 the design of the station at which the passenger's journey on such Passenger Service is to start (the "**Departure Station**") or finish (the "**Destination Station**") prevents the passenger from using that station to access or disembark from that Passenger Service,

the Operator shall provide accessible transport arrangements for that passenger in accordance with paragraph 3.
3. The Operator shall provide accessible transport arrangements for the passenger referred to in paragraph 2:
  - 3.1 from the Departure Station to the next station at which the Passenger Service is scheduled to call and at which it is possible for the passenger to access that Passenger Service;
  - 3.2 to the Destination Station, from the station closest to such station at which the Passenger Service is scheduled to call and which it is possible for the passenger to use to disembark from that Passenger Service; and/or
  - 3.3 to or from such other station as the Operator may, having regard to the journey and the needs of the passenger, agree,

and, in any case, at no cost additional to the price of the Fare which would otherwise be payable for the passenger's rail journey.
4. The Operator's obligations under this Appendix 1 to Chapter 5.3 (*Accessibility and Inclusivity*) are subject to:
  - 4.1 reasonable prior notice of the passenger's requirement for accessible transport arrangements; and
  - 4.2 the availability of suitable accessible transport arrangements (provided that the Operator has used all reasonable endeavours to ensure that it has arrangements in place to meet requirements for the provision of such accessible transport arrangements).



## Chapter 5.4

### Customer Benefits

#### 1. Smart Ticketing

##### 1.1 The Operator shall:

- (a) join and comply with any RDG approved Smart Ticketing Schemes relevant to some or all of the Passenger Services unless otherwise directed by the Secretary of State;
- (b) fully and effectively co-operate with Network Rail, other Train Operators, Transport for the North and relevant Local Authorities, including in relation to the provision of any required equipment, to implement and operate Smart Ticketing Schemes;
- (c) fully and effectively co-operate with other Train Operators, Transport for the North, Local Authorities and other organisations in relation to proposals to apply Smart Ticketing Schemes to new or existing multi-modal fares schemes, including in the implementation of any Smart Media technology pursuant to any multi-modal fares schemes that it may participate in pursuant to its obligations under paragraph 2.1 (*Multi Modal Fares Schemes*) of Chapter 8.2.8 (*Transport, Travel and Other Schemes*) or as directed by the Secretary of State within and beyond the Rail Services boundary on other modes; and
- (d) prepare and submit a report to the Secretary of State in advance of each Contract Performance Meeting (in such form as the Secretary of State may reasonably require) setting out:
  - (i) the baseline of uptake and journey usage of Smart Media from the Start Date and level of migration from magstripe tickets and increased take-up and journeys made using Smart Ticketing Schemes, as a minimum disaggregated between types of fares (Season Ticket Fares, Single Fares and Saver Return Fares) and type of Smart Media (using the LENNON database as the sole source of data unless otherwise agreed with the Secretary of State) by users of the Passenger Services, for each completed Reporting Period during the Contract Term;
  - (ii) the Operator's performance against the Smart Media Targets as specified in the Business Plan;
  - (iii) the steps that the Operator is taking, including other Train Operators, Network Rail, Transport for the North, Local Authorities or other organisations that it will be working with, to increase channel shift to Smart Ticketing Schemes operated by the Operator, or enabled by the Operator for other Smart Ticketing Schemes, and increase usage of Smart Ticketing Schemes by users of the Passenger Services; and
  - (iv) demonstrate how the information and data provided by Smart Ticketing Schemes has been used to better inform customers and provide customer support before, during and after their journey,

and the Operator shall present the report at the Contract Performance Meeting.

##### 1.2 The Operator shall ensure, with effect from the Start Date in relation to any Previous Operator ITSO Smart Media Ticketing Scheme and from the date of commissioning in relation to any ITSO Smart Media Ticketing Scheme introduced by it, that from such relevant date until the end of the Contract Term:

- (a) it continues to provide, make available and promote (and where applicable effectively maintain) such ITSO Smart Media Ticketing Scheme (including any associated infrastructure);
- (b) all components of the ITSO Smart Media Ticketing Scheme (and any amendment, extension or replacement thereof) inherited, used or introduced by the Operator (whether on a permanent or a trial basis) are at all times compliant with:
  - (i) version 2.1.4 of the ITSO Specification;



- (ii) the ITSO Operating Licence; and
  - (iii) RSPS3002,  
or such subsequent versions as the Operator and the Secretary of State may agree;
  - (c) any ITSO Certified Smart Media readers introduced by the Operator (whether on a permanent or temporary basis) shall conform to EMV level 1 certification (hardware) and be capable of being upgraded whilst in operation to EMV level 2 (application);
  - (d) both the RDG operated central back office and the RSP owned product set that is compliant with the ITSO Specification are used;
  - (e) all available Fares on all Flows for which it is Lead Operator are capable of residing upon and being fulfilled as soon as reasonably practicable by the use of ITSO Certified Smart Media; and
  - (f) if so requested in writing by another Train Operator, the Operator shall as soon as reasonably practicable give all necessary permissions to that Train Operator so that all available Fares on all Flows for which that Train Operator is Lead Operator are capable of residing upon and being fulfilled by the use of ITSO Certified Smart Media.
- 1.3 Where the Operator was a participant in any RDG approved Smart Ticketing Scheme pursuant to the Previous Agreement, the Operator shall take such action as may be required to ensure that it continues to participate in such Smart Ticketing Scheme from the Start Date without any disruption to the continuity of service received by passengers unless otherwise directed by the Secretary of State.
- 1.4 Without prejudice to its other obligations pursuant to paragraphs 1 and 2 of this Chapter 5.4, the Operator shall undertake such further actions as the Secretary of State may reasonably require in connection with the introduction of Smart Ticketing Schemes.
- 1.5 Either Party may propose, or the Secretary of State may reasonably determine, a change to the definition of “Smart Media” to include any new technology which enables the fulfilment of a Smart Ticketing Scheme.
- 1.6 The Operator shall ensure that all Weekly Season Tickets, Monthly Season Tickets and Annual Season Tickets which are ordered through the Operator’s online retail channels or at ticket offices are, as the default option, offered to the customer on Smart Media.
- 2. Retail**
- 2.1 The Operator shall provide a high quality standard of ticket retailing to all customers including people with physical, developmental, cognitive and/or sensory impairments, people with mental health conditions, people with reduced mobility, and any other class of people that the Secretary of State may reasonably designate from time to time across the different communication channels and points of purchase. This will include but is not limited to:
- (a) providing clear information about fares, Passenger Services and ticketing options, including restrictions and fulfilment methods, ensuring:
    - (i) these are easy to access and consistent across the different communication channels, points of purchase and on tickets; and
    - (ii) customers can easily identify and choose the cheapest appropriate fare for their journey;
  - (b) ensuring online, digital and self-service channels are easy to access, clear and user-friendly and incorporate and promote Smart Media functionality;
  - (c) any new or substantially upgraded ticketing retail machines and systems incorporate Smart Media functionality as directed by the Secretary of State;
  - (d) ticket vending machines adopting the RDG Design Guidelines;
  - (e) accepting multiple payment methods; and
  - (f) providing options for those without access to, or unable to use, technology.

- 2.2 The Operator shall promote Smart Media across all retail channels enabling customers to make journeys without a magstripe ticket and facilitating integration for all journeys made entirely on Passenger Services.
- 2.3 Without prejudice to its other obligations pursuant to paragraphs 1 and 2 of this Chapter 5.4, the Operator shall undertake such further actions as the Secretary of State may reasonably require in connection with the introduction of retailing proposals.
- 2.4 The Operator shall:
- (a) bring forward new proposals for implementing; and/or
  - (b) introduce and implement,
- such amendments to the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement, the Pay As You Go Agreement , the CPAY Agreement and any other applicable industry agreements (including any successor arrangements or any other agreement between the Operator and one or more other Train Operators, rail industry parties and other relevant organisations (including Transport for London) relating to ticketing, fares, fares settlement, the operation of discount schemes or any related matter) as may be directed by the Secretary of State from time to time.
- 2.5 During the term of the National Rail Contract, the Operator shall not enter into any new arrangements or material amendments to existing arrangements for the delivery of Fares, ticketing or the retailing of tickets without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State.
- 2.6 The Operator shall promptly (and in any event within any timeframes specified by the Secretary of State) provide to the Secretary of State such information and data in relation to Fares, ticketing and the retail of tickets as the Secretary of State may require from time to time.
3. **Cycles**
- The Operator shall permit the carriage of folding cycles on all Passenger Services and non-folding cycles wherever reasonably practicable.
4. **Baby Changing Facilities**
- The Operator shall ensure that each train operated by the Operator in delivering the Passenger Services that is fitted with toilet facilities is also fitted with such number of baby change facilities as is necessary to be compliant with the requirements of the PRM TSI.
5. **Station Toilet Access**
- The Operator shall ensure that no charge is levied in respect of access to toilet facilities at any Station.
6. **Security at Stations**
- 6.1 The Operator shall maintain for the duration of the Contract Period the Secure Stations Accreditation for the Stations already achieved by the Train Operator as set out in Appendix 1 (*List of Stations and Car Parks with accreditation*) to this Chapter 5.4.
- 6.2 The Operator shall maintain for the duration of the Contract Period the Park Mark scheme for the Stations already achieved by the Train Operator as set out in Appendix 1 (*List of Stations and Car Parks with accreditation*) to this Chapter 5.4.
- 6.3 In the event that the TRH Score for a Station increases by five per cent (5%) or more from the previous year's TRH Score for such Station, the Operator shall:
- (a) in respect of a Station that does not have Secure Station Accreditation, notify the Secretary of State of such increase and, as soon as reasonably practicable, obtain Secure Station Accreditation for such Station and shall maintain the same throughout the Contract Period; or
  - (b) in respect of a Station that already has Secure Station Accreditation (either pursuant to paragraph 6.1 above, or because the Operator has been required to obtain Secure Station Accreditation pursuant to paragraph 6.3(a) above), notify the Secretary of State of such TRH Score increase and the provisions of paragraph 6.4 shall apply.

- 6.4 Upon the Secretary of State receiving notification pursuant to paragraph 6.3(b) above, the Secretary of State may, following consultation with the British Transport Police, revoke the Secure Station Accreditation for such Station.
- 6.5 Where a Station loses its Secure Station Accreditation (whether pursuant to paragraph 6.4 or otherwise) the Operator shall:
- (a) obtain Secure Station Accreditation for such Station as soon as reasonably practicable, in any event no later than twelve (12) months from and including the date of the loss of such Secure Station Accreditation; and
  - (b) maintain such Secure Station Accreditation once obtained for the duration of the Contract Period.
7. **CCTV**
- 7.1 The Operator shall ensure that any installation of, or upgrade to, CCTV in the areas accessible by passengers of any vehicle that is operated as part of the Train Fleet shall be undertaken in accordance with the CCTV Guidance.
- 7.2 The Operator shall ensure that any installation of, or upgrade to CCTV at any Station shall be undertaken in accordance with the CCTV Guidance.
- 7.3 The Operator shall ensure that any body worn video equipment used by any Business Employees, and any system associated with it, shall comply with the CCTV Guidance.

**Appendix 1 to Chapter 5.4****List of Stations and Car Parks with accreditation****1. Stations**

- (a) Barnetby;
- (b) Brough;
- (c) Cleethorpes;
- (d) Dewsbury;
- (e) Grimsby Town;
- (f) Huddersfield;
- (g) Hull;
- (h) Malton;
- (i) Manchester Airport;
- (j) Middlesbrough;
- (k) Northallerton;
- (l) Seamer;
- (m) Scarborough;
- (n) Scunthorpe;
- (o) Selby;
- (p) Stalybridge;
- (q) Thirsk;
- (r) Thornaby; and
- (s) Yarm

**2. Car Parks**

- (a) Brough;
- (b) Cleethorpes;
- (c) Grimsby Town;
- (d) Huddersfield;
- (e) Hull;
- (f) Malton;
- (g) Middlesbrough;
- (h) Northallerton;
- (i) Scarborough;
- (j) Scunthorpe;
- (k) Selby;
- (l) Thirsk;
- (m) Thornaby.

## Chapter 5.5

### Customer Experience Performance

#### Part 1: Service Quality Regime

##### 1. Purpose

1.1 This Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 sets out the following:

- (a) Part A – Service Quality Management Process;
- (b) Part B – Inspections and Audits;
- (c) Part C – Calculation of Pass Rates and Calculations related to the Service Quality Regime;
- (d) Part D – Publication and Reporting Requirements; and
- (e) Part E – Remedies.

#### Part 1A - Service Quality Management Process

##### 2. Service Quality Management

###### 2.1 SQR Management System

- (a) The Operator shall put in place service quality management arrangements and processes (including the collection of relevant data) which shall (as a minimum):
  - (i) be capable of measuring and reporting the Operator’s performance against each Service Quality Indicator comprised in a Service Quality Area;
  - (ii) be capable of recording and retaining Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence; and
  - (iii) set out procedures for:
    - (A) ensuring compliance with the requirements of this Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 including the obligation to conduct Service Quality Inspections as required pursuant to this paragraph 2; and
    - (B) identifying and rectifying failures identified during each Service Quality Inspection (including processes which ensure that corrective actions identified during any Service Quality Inspection are undertaken in a diligent and prompt manner),

(the “**SQR Management System**”).

- (b) The SQR Management System shall be implemented and fully operational in accordance with the timescales set out in Business Plan Commitment CEX24, paragraph (E) as contained in the Business Plan applicable to the first Contract Year (recognising that the SQR Register will be available to the timescale as set out in paragraph 2.2(a)).

###### 2.2 SQR Register

- (a) The Operator shall prepare and complete the SQR Register so as to include the facilities and services which exist on every SQR Train and every SQR Station by the last day of the third complete Reporting Period after the date on which the Service Quality Inspections are first commenced.
- (b) The form and content of the SQR Register shall include as a minimum the following content:
  - (i) description, purpose and quantity of each facility or service;
  - (ii) photographic evidence of each facility or service;
  - (iii) individual serial number and asset tracking number (where applicable) for each facility or service;

- (iv) details of the applicable Service Quality Indicators against which the facility or service will be measured and reported against as set out in Appendix 2 (*Service Quality Areas/Service Quality Indicators/Weightings*) of this Part 1 of Chapter 5.5; and
  - (v) map of each SQR Station, setting out the location of each facility or service located at such SQR Station.
- (c) The Operator shall maintain the SQR Register and update such SQR Register at such regular intervals as is reasonably necessary to ensure compliance with its obligations under this Part 1 of Chapter 5.5. The Operator shall not, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State, remove any facility or service from the SQR Register unless such facility or service relates solely to a Ceased Service.
- (d) The Operator shall provide an up to date copy of the SQR Register to the Secretary of State (when requested to do so from time to time), a representative of Rail North Partnership or to any person carrying out an SoS Audit or SoS Service Quality Inspection on behalf of the Secretary of State.

### 2.3 Changes to Rail Services

- (a) If at any time during the Contract Term, the Operator:
- (i) operates additional railway passenger services or operates additional stations (including any Relevant Managed Stations) which are not part of the SQR Trains or SQR Stations (as the case may be) at the Start Date (including where such are transferred from another Train Operator) (“**New Services**”); and/or
  - (ii) introduces new facilities or services on a SQR Train and/or on a SQR Station (including Relevant Managed Stations) which were not in existence at the Start Date (including where such are transferred from another Train Operator) (“**New Facilities**”),

then it shall update its SQR Management System and the SQR Register to include such New Services and New Facilities by no later than the first day of the first Reporting Period which commences after the date upon which the Operator begins to operate such New Services or such New Facilities are introduced (as the case may be).

- (b) The requirements of this Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 shall begin to apply in relation to such New Services and such New Facilities from the first day of the first Reporting Period which commences after the date on which the Operator commences the operation of such New Services or New Facilities are introduced (as the case may be).
- (c) If at any time during the Contract Term, the Secretary of State directs the Operator to:
- (i) permanently stop operating certain railway passenger services or permanently stop operating stations which are part of the SQR Trains or SQR Stations, (as the case may be) at the Start Date; and/or
  - (ii) to remove any facilities or services which are part of the SQR Trains or SQR Stations (as the case may be),

(together, the “**Ceased Services**”),

then the Operator shall update the SQR Management System and the SQR Register to remove such Ceased Services by no later than the first day of the first Reporting Period which commences after the date upon which the Operator stopped operating such Ceased Services.

- (d) The requirements of this Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 shall cease to apply in relation to such Ceased Services from the first day of the first Reporting Period which commences after the date on which the Operator stops the operation of such Ceased Services are introduced.

### Part 1B – Inspections and Audits

#### 3. Operator Service Quality Inspections

- 3.1 From commencement of Service Quality Inspections by the SQR Contractor (in accordance with paragraph (E) of Business Plan Commitment CEX24 (as set out in the Business Plan for the first Contract Year)) and in each Reporting Period thereafter, the Operator shall procure the undertaking of:
- (a) Station Service Quality Inspections, and Train Service Quality Inspections and Customer Service Quality Inspections (together to be known as the “**Service Quality Inspections**”) in accordance with the requirements of paragraph 3.4;
  - (b) Service Quality Re-inspections, in accordance with the requirements of paragraph 4.1(a); and
  - (c) audits to verify the matters referred to in paragraph 4.1(b).
- 3.2 The Operator shall agree the terms of reference for the procurement of any Service Quality Inspection and the identity of any independent party proposed to undertake such Service Quality Inspection with the Secretary of State prior to any procurement by the Operator of any such Service Quality Inspection.
- 3.3 For the purposes of this Part 1B of Chapter 5.5, where the definition of “**SQR Station**” refers to the Relevant Managed Stations, this shall exclude any areas that are exclusively utilised by operators other than the Operator.
- 3.4 The Operator shall (as a minimum):
- (a) ensure that each Service Quality Inspection is carried out so as to determine whether any Service Quality Indicator has been passed or failed in accordance with the failure criteria specified in the Service Quality Schedules;
  - (b) ensure that each Service Quality Inspection is carried out accurately and impartially by independent parties who are not Business Employees (excluding employees of the SQR Contractor from the scope of the term “Business Employees” for these purposes);
  - (c) ensure that any Business Employee who is a member of the customer relations team or who is involved in the operation of any SQR Station or SQR Train (including any person who is responsible for the management and operation of any such SQR Station or SQR Train) in respect of which a Service Quality Inspection is to be undertaken is not notified or otherwise made aware of the date or time of any proposed or actual Service Quality Inspection;
  - (d) ensure that:
    - (i) Not Used
    - (ii) a Station Service Quality Inspection is carried out in respect of each Reporting Period at each SQR Station (which is not a Relevant Managed Station) with such Station Service Quality Inspection being distributed across the day and between the days of the week in proportion to typical passenger use of the SQR Station across the day and the days of the week in each such Reporting Period. Such Station Service Quality Inspections shall be reasonably apportioned so that subsequent Service Quality Inspections in respect of each SQR Station are not unduly concentrated on a particular time of the day or day of the week; and
    - (iii) each SQR Station (which is a Relevant Managed Station) is the subject of a Station Service Quality Inspection twice in each Contract Year with such Station Service Quality Inspection being distributed across the day and between the days of the week in proportion to typical passenger use of the SQR Station across the day and the days of the week; and
  - (e) ensure that:
    - (i) in respect of each Reporting Period, 120 Train Service Quality Inspections are carried out in respect of different vehicles comprised within different SQR



Trains with such Train Service Quality Inspection being apportioned across the day and between the days of the week in proportion to the typical distribution of passenger journeys across the day and between the days of the week; and

- (ii) Train Service Quality Inspections are carried out in respect of vehicles operating on each Route once every Reporting Period. Such Train Service Quality Inspections shall not be unduly concentrated on vehicles that operate on a particular Route; and
  - (iii) 90% of the Train Service Quality Inspections are carried out on standard class vehicles and 10% of the Train Service Quality Inspections are carried out on first class vehicles in each Reporting Period; and
- (f) ensure that, in each Reporting Period:
- (i) at least 24 Customer Service Quality Inspections are conducted of the “Helpfulness of Staff at Stations” Service Quality Indicator;
  - (ii) at least 36 Customer Service Quality Inspections are conducted of the “Helpfulness of Staff on Trains” Service Quality Indicator;
  - (iii) at least 28 Customer Service Quality Inspections are conducted of the “Social Media Mystery Shopper Question” Service Quality Indicator; and
  - (iv) at least 12 Customer Service Quality Inspections are conducted of the “Planned and Unplanned Disruption” Service Quality Indicator,
- in each case, in accordance with the provisions of Part 1 (*Service Quality Schedules*) of Appendix 1 to Part 1 of this Chapter 5.5; and
- (g) ensure that:
- (i) 25% of Customer Service Quality Inspections of the “Helpfulness of Staff at Stations” and 25% of Customer Service Quality Inspections of the “Helpfulness of Staff on Trains” Service Quality Indicators are completed by mystery shoppers who require additional assistance (including disabled persons with mobility or other impairments) in each Reporting Period;
  - (ii) 25% of all Customer Service Quality Inspections of the “Social Media Mystery Shopper Question” Service Quality Indicator are related to questions about accessibility in each Reporting Period;
  - (iii) Customer Service Quality Inspections relating to SQR Stations are apportioned across the day and between the days of the week in proportion to typical passenger use of the SQR Station across the day and the days of the week in each such Reporting Period; and
  - (iv) Customer Service Quality Inspections relating to SQR Trains are carried out on each Route once every Reporting Period. Such Customer Service Quality Inspections shall be reasonably apportioned so that they are undertaken on SQR Trains across the different Routes.

3.5 For any Reporting Period which is longer than thirty-two (32) days or shorter than twenty-five (25) days the minimum number of:

- (a) Station Service Quality Inspections as specified in paragraph 3.4(d);
  - (b) Train Service Quality Inspections as specified in paragraph 3.4(e); and
  - (c) Customer Service Quality Inspections as specified in paragraph 3.4(f) and 3.4(g),
- shall be increased or reduced pro rata based on a normal Reporting Period of twenty-eight (28) days.

3.6 For any Contract Year which has less than thirteen (13) Reporting Periods:

- (a) Station Service Quality Inspections as specified in paragraph 3.4(d);
- (b) Train Service Quality Inspections as specified in paragraph 3.4(e); and

- (c) Customer Service Quality Inspections as specified in paragraph 3.4(f) and 3.4(g), shall be reduced pro rata based on a normal Contract Year of thirteen (13) Reporting Periods.
4. **Service Quality Re-Inspection and Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence**
- 4.1 If in any Reporting Period a “fail” is recorded against any Service Quality Indicator set out in any Service Quality Schedule (“**Service Quality Failure**”) then:
- (a) in relation to SQR Stations, the Operator shall rectify such specific Service Quality Failure and undertake an inspection of the relevant facility or service which resulted in the occurrence of such Service Quality Failure within the relevant time period set out within the Service Quality Schedule (“**Service Quality Re-inspection**”) and the requirements of paragraphs 3.4(b) and 3.4(c) shall apply to any such Service Quality Re-inspection. Where such Service Quality Re-inspection identifies that the Service Quality Failure has not been rectified, then a further Service Quality Failure shall occur (“**Re-inspection Failure**”); and
- (b) in relation to SQR Trains, the Operator shall within the relevant time period specified in the Service Quality Schedule (the “**Relevant Rectification Period**”), ensure that relevant Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence is recorded and retained in the SQR Management System. If no Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence is recorded in the SQR Management System within the Relevant Rectification Period, then a further Service Quality Failure shall occur (“**Rectification Evidence Failure**”).
- 4.2 Where a Service Quality Re-inspection or Rectification Evidence Failure results in a Service Quality Failure being recorded against a facility or service, such Service Quality Failure(s) shall be included in the calculation of the Pass Rates for the Reporting Period in which the Service Quality Re-inspection is conducted or the Rectification Evidence Failure occurs, in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 8 (*Calculation of Pass Rates*) and paragraph 17 (*Consequences of Performance falling below the SQR Benchmark*) of this Chapter 5.5.
- 4.3 The provisions of this paragraph 4 shall continue to apply until such a time as:
- (a) in the case of the circumstances described in paragraph 4.1(a), the relevant facility or service which has resulted in the occurrence of a Service Quality Failure is rectified and a Service Quality Re-inspection in respect of that facility or service has not resulted in a Service Quality Failure; or
- (b) in the case of the circumstances described in paragraph 4.1(b), the Operator has recorded relevant Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence within the Relevant Rectification Period and accordingly a Service Quality Failure has not occurred.
- 4.4 If following two (2):
- (a) Re-inspection Failures, the original Service Quality Failure has not been rectified; or
- (b) Rectification Evidence Failures, no Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence has been recorded in the SQR Management System in respect of the facility or service which resulted in the occurrence of the original Service Quality Failure;
- then the Operator shall within fourteen (14) days of the occurrence of such Re-inspection Failure or Rectification Evidence Failure notify the Secretary of State of such failure.
- 4.5 The Operator shall prepare and submit to the Secretary of State, together with such notice, a plan which sets out the steps the Operator proposes to implement to ensure that the Re-inspection Failure or Rectification Evidence Failure is rectified before the next Service Quality Inspection and the Re-inspection Failure or Rectification Evidence Failure does not reoccur. The Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to implement such plan in accordance with its terms.
- 4.6 The provisions of this paragraph 4 shall not apply to Relevant Managed Stations, Customer Service Quality Inspections, or the Service Quality Indicators relating to “*Information During Disruption*”.

## 5. **Independent Service Quality Audit**

- 5.1 In respect of each Contract Year, the Operator shall procure the carrying out of an independent audit (“**Independent Service Quality Audit**”).
- 5.2 The Operator shall agree the terms of reference for the procurement of any Independent Service Quality Audit and the identity of any independent party proposed to undertake such Independent Service Quality Audit with the Secretary of State prior to any procurement by the Operator of any such Independent Service Quality Audit.
- 5.3 The Independent Service Quality Audit shall be undertaken a minimum of once per year to verify and confirm that the:
- (a) SQR Management System complies with the requirements of paragraph 2.1 (*SQR Management System*) and has been implemented as required pursuant to this Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 (including that Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence has been recorded and retained in accordance with (and is otherwise in compliance with) the requirements of this Part 1 of Chapter 5.5);
  - (b) Service Quality Inspections undertaken in that Contract Year comply with the requirements of paragraph 3.4 (*Operator Service Quality Inspections*);
  - (c) SQR Register has been maintained and updated as required pursuant to paragraph 2.2 (*SQR Register*);
  - (d) Pass Rates reported by the Operator for Reporting Periods within that Contract Year have been calculated in accordance with the requirements of paragraph 8.1 (*Calculation of Pass Rates*);
  - (e) Pass Rates reported by the Operator for that Contract Year have been calculated in accordance with paragraph 8.2 (*Calculation of Pass Rates*).
- 5.4 Any Independent Service Quality Audit shall either:
- (a) confirm that, after having regard to the findings of such inspections, its assessment of the matters referred to in paragraphs 5.3(a) to 5.3(e) and any other relevant information at the disposal of any person conducting such Independent Service Quality Audit, it can reasonably be concluded that the Pass Rates reported by the Operator for that Reporting Periods within that Contract Year and/or for that Contract Year are a fair, accurate and impartial reflection of the Operator’s performance against each Service Quality Indicator or Service Quality Area; or
  - (b) state that such confirmation cannot be provided and proceed to comply with paragraph 5.9 below.
- 5.5 Any Independent Service Quality Audit carried out on behalf of the Operator as required under this paragraph 5 shall be for the benefit of the Secretary of State.
- 5.6 The Secretary of State (and any of the Secretary of State’s employees, agents, representatives and/or advisers, including for these purposes Rail North Partnership and any of its advisers, representatives and employees (each such person to be referred to as a “**SoS Nominee**”)) shall have the right to witness any inspection carried out as part of an Independent Service Quality Audit.
- 5.7 The Operator shall co-operate in good faith with the Secretary of State in permitting the Secretary of State (including a SoS Nominee) to exercise the Secretary of State’s rights under paragraph 5.6 and this paragraph 5.7 including by promptly providing to the Secretary of State the details of how and when any Independent Service Quality Audit will be conducted a reasonable time (and in any event not less than two (2) weeks) prior to the commencement of any such Independent Service Quality Audit.
- 5.8 The Operator shall provide the report together with all data produced as a consequence of any Independent Service Quality Audit to the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable after the completion of the Independent Service Quality Audit to which it relates and in any event by no later than the date that is twenty eight (28) days following the last day of the Contract Year to which the Independent Service Quality Audit relates.

5.9 To the extent that the confirmation specified in paragraph 5.4(b) cannot be provided in respect of any Independent Service Quality Audit, the Operator shall procure that any such audit report specifies in detail the reasons why such confirmation cannot be provided (including details of any Material Discrepancies between any Pass Rate reported by the Operator in accordance with paragraph 11 (*Reporting Requirements*) and a comparable Pass Rate derived from the inspections carried out as part of the Independent Service Quality Audit (and in particular where any such Material Discrepancies are in favour of the Operator)).

## 6. **Secretary of State's Right of Audit**

6.1 Without prejudice to any other audit rights the Secretary of State may have under the National Rail Contract, the Secretary of State (and a SoS Nominee on the Secretary of State's behalf), shall have the right to carry out audits (the "**SoS Audits**") for the purposes of verifying, as a minimum, the matters referred to in paragraph 3.1 (*Operator Service Quality Inspections*).

6.2 The Secretary of State shall use the Secretary of State's reasonable endeavours to procure that any inspections carried out as part of any SoS Audits undertaken pursuant to this paragraph 6 are conducted on a basis that is, as far as reasonable practicable, consistent with the Service Quality Inspections undertaken in respect of the Contract Year to which the SoS Audit relates.

## 7. **Access Rights**

7.1 The Operator shall grant such access to information, individuals and facilities including:

- (a) access to the SQR Stations and the SQR Trains;
- (b) access to schedules of the locations and times of any actual or planned Independent Service Quality Audits or Service Quality Inspections (as the case may be);
- (c) access to the relevant Business Employees, records and information (including access to relevant third parties and information, records and other materials kept by such third parties on behalf of the Operator); and
- (d) access to any and all Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence,

as is reasonably necessary to enable the Secretary of State and/or the SoS Nominees to carry out SoS Audits or SoS Service Quality Inspections (as the case may be) or to witness any Service Quality Inspections, or Independent Service Quality Audits.

7.2 The Operator shall ensure that it has necessary arrangements in place with any relevant third parties for the purposes of ensuring that it can comply with its obligations under this paragraph 7.

7.3 The Secretary of State shall use reasonable endeavours to ensure that the persons employed in undertaking any SoS Service Quality Inspections or SoS Audits carry out such audits diligently and objectively.

7.4 The Secretary of State shall use reasonable endeavours to notify the Operator of the result of any SoS Service Quality Inspection or SoS Audit that is undertaken.

7.5 In carrying out any SoS Service Quality Inspection or SoS Audit (as the case may be) or witnessing any Service Quality Inspections, or Independent Service Quality Audits, the Secretary of State shall, subject to paragraph 7.6, be responsible for ensuring that the SoS Nominees:

- (a) are appropriately trained and briefed with respect to such reasonable location-specific safety rules and regulations; and
- (b) obey such reasonable location-specific rules and regulations in respect of security and access,

in each case, as have been notified to the Secretary of State under paragraph 7.6.

7.6 The Operator shall provide reasonable prior notice from time to time of current location-specific access, security and safety rules and regulations to the Secretary of State for the purpose of ensuring that the Secretary of State (and the SoS Nominees) can carry out their respective inspection and auditing rights in an efficient, secure and safe manner.

**Part 1C – Calculations of Pass Rates and Calculations related to the Service Quality Regime**

**8. Calculation of Pass Rates**

8.1 From the date on which the Operator commences Service Quality inspections in accordance with paragraph 3.1, the Operator shall calculate the Pass Rates for the Train Service Quality Inspections, Station Service Quality Inspections and the Customer Service Quality Inspections for each Reporting Period as follows:

<b>Table 1</b>						
<b><math>SQA_{rp} = \sum IPR_{rp}</math></b>						
<b>where:</b>						
<b><math>SQA_{rp}</math></b>	is the Pass Rate for each Service Quality Area comprised in such Service Quality Schedule for that Reporting Period;					
<b><math>IPR_{rp}</math></b>	is ascertained as follows:					
	$p \times w$					
	where:					
	p is ascertained as follows:					
	$P = \left( \frac{SQ_i - SQ_f}{SQ_i} \right) \times 100$					
	where:					
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td><math>SQ_i</math></td> <td>is, in respect of each Service Quality Indicator relevant to a Service Quality Area, the total number of:                      (a) Service Quality Inspections carried out;                      (b) Service Quality Re-inspections where a “fail” was recorded; and                      (c) occasions on which the Operator failed to record Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence in the SQR Management System within the Relevant Rectification Period pursuant to paragraph 4.1(b),                      in respect of that Service Quality Indicator for that Reporting Period;</td> </tr> <tr> <td><math>SQ_f</math></td> <td>is, in respect of each Service Quality Indicator relevant to a Service Quality Area, the total number of:                      (a) Service Quality Inspections where a “fail” was recorded;                      (b) Service Quality Re-inspections where a “fail” was recorded; and                      (c) occasions on which the Operator failed to record Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence in the SQR Management System within the Relevant Rectification Period pursuant to paragraph 4.1(b),                      in respect of that Service Quality Indicator for that Reporting Period; and</td> </tr> <tr> <td>w</td> <td>is the weighting as specified in either Column 3 (<i>Weighting</i>) or Column 4 (<i>Alternative Weighting</i>) (as applicable) of the table(s) in Appendix 2 (<i>Service Quality Areas/Service Quality Indicators/Weightings</i>) of this Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 in respect of the relevant</td> </tr> </table>	$SQ_i$	is, in respect of each Service Quality Indicator relevant to a Service Quality Area, the total number of: (a) Service Quality Inspections carried out; (b) Service Quality Re-inspections where a “fail” was recorded; and (c) occasions on which the Operator failed to record Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence in the SQR Management System within the Relevant Rectification Period pursuant to paragraph 4.1(b), in respect of that Service Quality Indicator for that Reporting Period;	$SQ_f$	is, in respect of each Service Quality Indicator relevant to a Service Quality Area, the total number of: (a) Service Quality Inspections where a “fail” was recorded; (b) Service Quality Re-inspections where a “fail” was recorded; and (c) occasions on which the Operator failed to record Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence in the SQR Management System within the Relevant Rectification Period pursuant to paragraph 4.1(b), in respect of that Service Quality Indicator for that Reporting Period; and	w
$SQ_i$	is, in respect of each Service Quality Indicator relevant to a Service Quality Area, the total number of: (a) Service Quality Inspections carried out; (b) Service Quality Re-inspections where a “fail” was recorded; and (c) occasions on which the Operator failed to record Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence in the SQR Management System within the Relevant Rectification Period pursuant to paragraph 4.1(b), in respect of that Service Quality Indicator for that Reporting Period;					
$SQ_f$	is, in respect of each Service Quality Indicator relevant to a Service Quality Area, the total number of: (a) Service Quality Inspections where a “fail” was recorded; (b) Service Quality Re-inspections where a “fail” was recorded; and (c) occasions on which the Operator failed to record Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence in the SQR Management System within the Relevant Rectification Period pursuant to paragraph 4.1(b), in respect of that Service Quality Indicator for that Reporting Period; and					
w	is the weighting as specified in either Column 3 ( <i>Weighting</i> ) or Column 4 ( <i>Alternative Weighting</i> ) (as applicable) of the table(s) in Appendix 2 ( <i>Service Quality Areas/Service Quality Indicators/Weightings</i> ) of this Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 in respect of the relevant					

Table 1		
		Service Quality Indicator comprised in that Service Quality Area.

8.2 Within fourteen (14) days after the end of each Contract Year, the Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State its calculation of the Pass Rate for the relevant Contract Year in respect of each Service Quality Area comprised in each Service Quality Schedule, such Pass Rate to be separately calculated for the Train Service Quality Inspections, Station Service Quality Inspections and the Customer Service Quality Inspections carried out in that Contract Year as follows:

Table 2				
$SQA_{yr} = \sum IPR_{yr}$				
<b>where:</b>				
$SQA_{yr}$	is the Pass Rate for each Service Quality Area comprised in such Service Quality Schedule for that Contract Year;			
$IPR_{yr}$	is ascertained as follows:			
	$p \times w$			
	where:			
	p is ascertained as follows:			
	$P = \left( \frac{SQ_i - SQ_f}{SQ_i} \right) \times 100$			
	where:			
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td><math>SQ_i</math></td> <td>is, in respect of each Service Quality Indicator relevant to a Service Quality Area, the total number of:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Service Quality Inspections carried out;</li> <li>(b) Service Quality Re-inspections where a “fail” was recorded; and</li> <li>(c) occasions on which the Operator failed to record Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence in the SQR Management System within the Relevant Rectification Period pursuant to paragraph 4.1(b),</li> </ul>                             in respect of that Service Quality Indicator for that Contract Year;                         </td> </tr> <tr> <td><math>SQ_f</math></td> <td>is, in respect of each Service Quality Indicator relevant to a Service Quality Area, the total number of:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Service Quality Inspections where a “fail” was recorded;</li> <li>(b) Service Quality Re-inspections where a “fail” was recorded; and</li> <li>(c) occasions on which the Operator failed to record Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence in the SQR Management System within the Relevant Rectification Period pursuant to paragraph 4.1(b),</li> </ul>                             in respect of that Service Quality Indicator for that Contract Year; and                         </td> </tr> </table>	$SQ_i$	is, in respect of each Service Quality Indicator relevant to a Service Quality Area, the total number of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Service Quality Inspections carried out;</li> <li>(b) Service Quality Re-inspections where a “fail” was recorded; and</li> <li>(c) occasions on which the Operator failed to record Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence in the SQR Management System within the Relevant Rectification Period pursuant to paragraph 4.1(b),</li> </ul> in respect of that Service Quality Indicator for that Contract Year;	$SQ_f$
$SQ_i$	is, in respect of each Service Quality Indicator relevant to a Service Quality Area, the total number of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Service Quality Inspections carried out;</li> <li>(b) Service Quality Re-inspections where a “fail” was recorded; and</li> <li>(c) occasions on which the Operator failed to record Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence in the SQR Management System within the Relevant Rectification Period pursuant to paragraph 4.1(b),</li> </ul> in respect of that Service Quality Indicator for that Contract Year;			
$SQ_f$	is, in respect of each Service Quality Indicator relevant to a Service Quality Area, the total number of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Service Quality Inspections where a “fail” was recorded;</li> <li>(b) Service Quality Re-inspections where a “fail” was recorded; and</li> <li>(c) occasions on which the Operator failed to record Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence in the SQR Management System within the Relevant Rectification Period pursuant to paragraph 4.1(b),</li> </ul> in respect of that Service Quality Indicator for that Contract Year; and			



<b>Table 2</b>		
	w	is the weighting as specified in either Column 3 ( <i>Weighting</i> ) or Column 4 ( <i>Alternative Weighting</i> ) (as applicable) of the table(s) in Appendix 2 ( <i>Service Quality Areas/Service Quality Indicators/Weightings</i> ) of this Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 in respect of the relevant Service Quality Indicator comprised in that Service Quality Area.

8.3 The Operator shall perform the calculations referred to in paragraphs 8.1 and 8.2 rounded to two (2) decimal places with the midpoint (that is, 0.115) rounded upwards (that is, 0.12).

**9. Calculations related to the Service Quality Regime**

9.1 On the later of receipt of the notification(s) referred to in paragraph 8.2 in respect of a Contract Year or any audit report relating to any Independent Service Quality Audit or SoS Audit (as the case may be) undertaken in respect of that Contract Year, the Secretary of State shall:

- (i) confirm the calculation of **SQA<sub>yr</sub>**; or
- (ii) notify the Operator that the provisions of paragraph 15 (*Material Discrepancies*) shall apply where any Independent Service Quality Audit or SoS Audit (as the case may be) reveals that there were Material Discrepancies in the calculation of the Pass Rate in favour of the Operator for that Contract Year (including where any such Independent Service Quality Audit or SoS Audit (as the case may be) fails to confirm or verify any of the matters specified in paragraph 5.1 (*Independent Service Quality Audits*)).

**Part 1D – Publication and Reporting Requirements**

**10. Publication of Pass Rates**

10.1 The Operator shall publish (as a minimum) on its web site (in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require) details of:

- (a) within one (1) week of the end of each Reporting Period, the Pass Rate for SQR Stations, SQR Trains and SQR Customer Service for that Reporting Period, alongside the SQR Benchmark for such Service Quality Area; and
- (b) within two (2) weeks of receipt of the confirmation from the Secretary of State provided in accordance with paragraph 9.1 (*Calculations related to the Service Quality Regime*), the Pass Rate for each Service Quality Area for each Contract Year alongside the applicable SQR Benchmark for such Service Quality Area.

**11. Reporting Requirements**

11.1 Within fourteen (14) days after the end of each Reporting Period, the Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State:

- (a) a statement (disaggregated to separately show the total number of Train Service Quality Inspections, Stations Service Quality Inspections and Customer Service Quality Inspections carried out in that Reporting Period) setting out the following:
  - (i) the raw data produced by any Service Quality Inspection (and where applicable Service Quality Re-inspections) and/or the recording of Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence in the SQR Management System within the Relevant Rectification Period pursuant to paragraph 4.1(b) (where applicable);
  - (ii) the number of:
    - (A) Service Quality Inspections (and where applicable Service Quality Re-inspections) carried out in respect of each Service Quality Schedule in that Reporting Period; and
    - (B) occasions on which the Operator was required to record Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence in the SQR Management



System within the Relevant Rectification Period pursuant to paragraph 4.1(b) in that Reporting Period;

- (iii) the number of:
    - (A) Service Quality Inspections (and where applicable Service Quality Re-inspections) where a “fail” was recorded in respect of a Service Quality Indicator in that Reporting Period; and
    - (B) Service Quality Failures occurring in the circumstances described in paragraph 4.1(b) in that Reporting Period;
  - (iv) the number of:
    - (A) Service Quality Inspections (and where applicable Service Quality Re-inspections) where a “pass” was recorded in respect of a Service Quality Indicator in that Reporting Period for each Service Quality Schedule; and
    - (B) occasions on which the Operator was required to record Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence in the SQR Management System within the Relevant Rectification Period pursuant to paragraph 4.1(b) in that Reporting Period and a Service Quality Failure did not occur in respect of the same pursuant to paragraph 4.1(b);
  - (v) for each Service Quality Schedule and in respect of a Service Quality Area, the total number of “passes” and “fails” recorded in respect of each Service Quality Indicator comprised in such Service Quality Area; and
  - (b) in respect of that Reporting Period, the Operator’s calculation of the Pass Rate for each Service Quality Area comprised in the relevant Service Quality Schedule.
- 11.2 The Pass Rate shall be separately calculated for the Train Service Quality Inspections, the Station Service Quality Inspections and the Customer Service Quality Inspections in that Reporting Period determined as set out in paragraph 8 (*Calculation of Pass Rates*).
12. **Additional Information Requirements for Service Quality Re-inspections and Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence**
- 12.1 In addition to the information to be provided by the Operator pursuant to paragraph 11 (*Reporting Requirements*), the Operator shall at the end of each Reporting Period during which Service Quality Inspections have been carried out provide to the Secretary of State a list of each facility or service or train comprised in a SQR Train and SQR Station (on a Station by Station basis) against which a “fail” was recorded:
- (a) during any Service Quality Inspections or Service Quality Re-inspection (as the case may be); or
  - (b) in the circumstances described in paragraph 4.1(b).
13. **Maintenance of Records**
- 13.1 Without limiting the obligations of the Operator pursuant to paragraph 3 (*Maintenance of Records*) of Chapter 1.1 (*Organisation and Management*), the Operator shall maintain true, up to date and complete records of the results of each Service Quality Inspection, its calculations of the Pass Rates in relation to such Service Quality Inspections and the results of each Independent Service Quality Audit.
- 13.2 The Operator shall, immediately at the request of the Secretary of State (or the Rail North Partnership on the Secretary of State’s behalf) make any records required under this Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 available to the Secretary of State (or the Rail North Partnership on the Secretary of State’s behalf) (as the case may be).

## Part 1E – Remedies

### 14. Consequences of a Failed Audit

- 14.1 If:

- (a) following an Independent Service Quality Audit or SoS Audit (as the case may be) any such audit cannot verify or confirm any of the matters referred to in paragraph 5 (*Independent Service Quality Audits*) or any confirmation required by paragraph 5.4(a) (*Independent Service Quality Audits*) cannot be provided; or
- (b) the Operator fails to:
  - (i) carry out a Service Quality Inspection as required by paragraph 3.1 (*Operator Service Quality Inspection*); or
  - (ii) calculate the Pass Rates and/or report to the Secretary of State the Pass Rates as required pursuant to paragraphs 8.1 and 8.2 (*Calculation of the Pass Rates*); or
  - (iii) procure that an Independent Service Quality Audit is carried out or fails to provide an audit report as required pursuant to paragraph 5.9 (*Independent Service Quality Audits*),

then the provisions of this paragraph 14 shall apply.

14.2 If any of the circumstances specified in paragraph 14.1 occur then:

- (a) the Secretary of State may in the case of an SoS Audit, require the Operator to reimburse to the Secretary of State the reasonable and proper costs incurred in undertaking any such SoS Audit (and such reimbursement shall be a Disallowable Cost); and
- (b) the Secretary of State may in all cases:
  - (i) require the Operator to carry out additional Service Quality Inspections at the Operator's cost (that is, in excess of those required pursuant to paragraph 3.1 (*Operator Service Quality Inspections*)) which cost shall be a Disallowable Cost;
  - (ii) require the Operator to procure a further Independent Service Quality Audit (or the Secretary of State may carry out a further SoS Audit) for the purposes of verifying whether any deficiencies in the SQR Management System have led or contributed to the failure of any Independent Service Quality Audit or SoS Audit or to confirm or verify whether any of the matters referred to in paragraph 5 (*Independent Service Quality Audits*) have been subsequently rectified by the Operator (the cost of which shall be a Disallowable Cost); or
  - (iii) elect to step in and carry out SoS Service Quality Inspections in place of the Service Quality Inspections for the remainder of the Contract Term or such period as the Secretary of State may specify (the "**SoS Service Quality Inspection Period**") and in these circumstances:
    - (A) the results of each SoS Service Quality Inspection shall be used for the purposes of calculating the Pass Rates in accordance with paragraph 8 (*Calculation of Pass Rates*) and paragraph 2 of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*);
    - (B) the Operator's obligations to undertake Service Quality Inspections and procure an Independent Service Quality Audit shall cease to apply for the duration of the SoS Service Quality Inspection Period; and
    - (C) the Secretary of State may require the Operator to reimburse to the Secretary of State the reasonable and proper costs incurred by the Secretary of State in undertaking any such SoS Service Quality Inspection during the SoS Service Quality Inspection Period (and such reimbursement shall be a Disallowable Cost).

## 15. **Material Discrepancies**

15.1 Subject to paragraph 15.3, for the purposes of this Part 1 of Chapter 5.5, "**Material Discrepancies**" means:

- (a) discrepancies in the Operator's calculation of the Pass Rate which in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State are considered to be material; or

- (b) where an Independent Service Quality Audit or SoS Audit fails to confirm or verify any of the matters specified in paragraph 5.3 (*Independent Service Quality Audits*) in circumstances where the Pass Rate has been calculated wrongly; or
  - (c) where an Independent Service Quality Audit or SoS Audit confirms that there would have been a different Pass Rate if the Operator had complied with the requirements of paragraph 5.3 (*Independent Service Quality Audits*).
- 15.2 If, in any PBF Assessment Period, an Independent Service Quality Audit or SoS Audit (as the case may be) reveals any Material Discrepancies, paragraph 3.2 (*Material Discrepancies*) of Appendix 5 (*Quantified Target Methodology*) to Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*) shall apply, save in the case set out in paragraph 15.3 below.
- 15.3 Where a Material Discrepancy results from the acts or omissions of the SQR Contractor and the Operator is able to demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Secretary of State that the Operator has diligently enforced and responsibly managed the SQR Contract, and in so doing could not have reasonably avoided the discrepancies or errors referred to in paragraph 15.1, then:
- (a) for the purposes of paragraphs 15.2 and 16 (*Contravention of the National Rail Contract in respect of Material Discrepancies*) of this Chapter and paragraph 3.2 (*Material Discrepancies*) of Appendix 5 (*Quantified Target Methodology*) to Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*), a Material Discrepancy will be deemed not to have arisen; and
  - (b) the Pass Rate to which the Material Discrepancy relates shall be subject to recalculation and determination by the Secretary of State by reference to only that data which the Secretary of State considers to be reliable (which may include the inspections carried out as part of the relevant Independent Service Quality Audit) so as to provide a rate which the Secretary of State considers provides a more accurate reflection of the Operator's performance than the Pass Rate to which the Material Discrepancy relates. Such recalculated rate as determined by the Secretary of State shall be deemed to be the Pass Rate for the purposes of paragraph 10.1(b) (*Publication of Pass Rates*) and paragraph 17.1 (*Consequences of Performance falling below the SQR Benchmark*) of this Chapter and paragraph 3.1 (*Calculation of Service Quality Standards Fee ("SQ")*) of Appendix 5 (*Quantified Target Methodology*) to Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*).
16. **Contravention of the National Rail Contract in respect of Material Discrepancies**
- 16.1 On the second occasion that any Independent Service Quality Audit or SoS Audit (as the case may be) identifies any Material Discrepancies (irrespective of the nature or type of such Material Discrepancy) then this shall constitute a contravention of the National Rail Contract in addition to the provisions of paragraph 15.2 of this Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 applying.
17. **Consequences of Performance falling below the SQR Benchmark**
- 17.1 If:
- (a) the Pass Rate of any individual Service Quality Indicator falls below the SQR Benchmark (as applicable) for the applicable Service Quality Area ("**Affected Service Quality Indicator**") for:
    - (i) any three (3) consecutive Reporting Periods; or
    - (ii) any four (4) Reporting Periods within any period of thirteen (13) consecutive Reporting Periods; or
  - (b) the Pass Rate as calculated in accordance with paragraph 8 (*Calculation of the Pass Rates*) in respect of any Service Quality Area is below any SQR Benchmark for that Service Quality Area ("**Affected Service Quality Area**") for:
    - (i) any three (3) consecutive Reporting Periods; or
    - (ii) any four (4) Reporting Periods within any period of thirteen (13) consecutive Reporting Periods; or
    - (iii) any Contract Year,

then the Operator shall immediately notify the Secretary of State of such fact and, if requested to do so by the Secretary of State, within twenty-eight (28) days (or such longer period as the Secretary of State may specify) of such request prepare and submit to the Secretary of State (for the Secretary of State's approval) the Operator's proposals for achieving, as soon as reasonably practicable, a Service Quality Improvement (a "**Service Quality Improvement Proposal**").

17.2 The Service Quality Improvement Proposal shall:

- (a) contain specific tangible action points and indicate in the case of each action point:
  - (i) how that action will contribute to meeting the relevant SQR Benchmark;
  - (ii) where the action is to be implemented;
  - (iii) the proposed timescales for implementing such action and, where any action is expressed to be ongoing, proposed review dates;
  - (iv) the date by which the Service Quality Improvement will be achieved; and
- (b) the additional expenditure associated with each action.

17.3 The Secretary of State shall be entitled to:

- (a) request further information from the Operator with respect to its Service Quality Improvement Proposal and the Operator shall submit such further information to the Secretary of State within the timescales as reasonably requested by the Secretary of State; and/or
- (b) propose amendments to the Service Quality Improvement Proposal and the Parties shall agree and, in the absence of agreement, the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine the amendments to the Service Quality Improvement Proposal, in which case paragraph 17.4 shall apply; or
- (c) accept the Service Quality Improvement Proposal, in which case paragraph 17.4 shall apply; or
- (d) not accept the Service Quality Improvement Proposal, in which case the Operator shall not be obliged to undertake any further action with respect to its Service Quality Improvement Proposal.

17.4 The Operator shall implement the Service Quality Improvement Proposal as amended, determined or accepted by the Secretary of State (as the case may be) in accordance with paragraph 17.3. Any additional expenditure stated in the Service Quality Improvement Proposal shall trigger a Cost Budget Change Event.

17.5 If:

- (a) the Operator fails to implement any Service Quality Improvement Proposal (as approved by the Secretary of State) as required pursuant to paragraph 17.4 of this Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 within the required timescales; or
- (b) the Operator's performance in relation to the Affected Service Quality Area is not at a level that is equal to or above the SQR Benchmark within the period specified in the Service Quality Improvement Proposal,

then this shall constitute a contravention of the National Rail Contract.

## 18. Variations to the Service Quality Regime

18.1 The Secretary of State and the Operator may from time to time agree to vary the contents of the Service Quality Schedules, the weightings associated with any Service Quality Indicators and/or any SQR Benchmark (including by reducing the SQR Benchmark in respect of certain Service Quality Areas and at the same time increasing others, or by adjusting the treatment of Service Quality Re-Inspections and/or Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence). Any variation agreed by the Secretary of State and the Operator pursuant to this paragraph 18.1 shall be effective from the date agreed by the Parties for this purpose. Any such variation as agreed by the Secretary of State and the Operator shall (unless otherwise agreed by the Parties) constitute a Cost Budget Change Event and a Cost Financial Target Amendment

Event, a Revenue Financial Target Amendment Event or a Profit Financial Target Amendment Event (as applicable).

- 18.2 It is acknowledged that the process of introduction, implementation and operation of the Service Quality Regime may give rise to proposals, methodologies and approaches to promote efficiency, consistency, standardisation and other benefits. The Operator will collaborate with the Secretary of State in relation to such matters and paragraph 18.1 may be applied where appropriate to reflect in the Service Quality Regime matters which are agreed between the Parties.

**Appendix 1 to Part 1 of Chapter 5.5**  
**Service Quality Schedules**

**PART 1 – SQR STATIONS**

Please note that a Service Quality Indicator should only be subject to a Service Quality Inspection if the relevant facility or service is included in the SQR Register for that SQR Station.

For the purposes of this Part 1, the ‘customer-facing areas of the station’ shall be categorised as follows:

1. Approach and entrance, including cycle storage facilities (exterior);
2. Concourse area/ticket office, including any waiting facilities and toilets/baby change facilities within these areas;
3. Platforms, including waiting rooms/shelters and toilets/baby change facilities (separate platforms facing each other (not island platforms) shall be classed together as one ‘area’; each individual island platform shall be classed as one ‘area’);
4. Lifts/escalators and footbridges/underpasses/mezzanine areas (each footbridge/underpass/mezzanine to be classed as its own ‘area’, with any access lifts/escalators classed as part of that ‘area’. Lifts/escalators directly from concourse to platform will be classed as part of the concourse); and
5. Car parks (each car park classed as its own ‘area’, except multi-storey car parks, where each level is its own ‘area’).

These categories may need to be amended to reflect the unique footprint of each SQR Station.

<b>Table 1</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<b>Failure Criteria</b> <i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply. Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i>	<b>Reinspection Timescale</b>
Ambience & Assets	Lighting	(a) 10% or more of lighting is missing, broken or defective (including if obscured by vegetation); and/or (b) there are any areas of blackout, within any of the individual customer-facing areas of the station set out in the SQR Register.  <i>For (a), a 'fail' shall only be recorded if the criteria apply to the individual area being assessed, not cumulatively across the whole station.</i>	After 7 days
	Seating <i>(including Priority Seats)</i>	(a) Any seats are not present where they are intended to be as specified in the SQR Register. (b) Any seats, including accessible seats for Disabled Persons where provided, are damaged or unsuitable for use by the public including torn upholstery, splinters, wood or metal likely to cause injury or damage to clothing. (c) Any seats are dirty (includes rust stains and dirt likely to soil clothing). (d) Any seats are unsecure and/or unstable.	(a) Not applicable (b) after 24 hours to identify if made safe and 28 days to identify if rectified, save that if a full replacement of the seat is required, not applicable (c) after 48 hours (d) and (e) after 28 days



<b>Table 1</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<b>Failure Criteria</b> <i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply. Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i>	<b>Reinspection Timescale</b>
		(e) Paintwork is flaking or damaged to a point which is immediately noticeable from a distance of 1 metre.	
	Shelters/Canopies/Waiting Areas	(a) Any shelters, waiting areas or canopies are not present where they are intended to be as specified in the SQR Register. (b) Any shelters, waiting area or canopy (including any such facilities designated for use by passengers with restricted mobility) is not fit for purpose, is inaccessible or is damaged in any way that restricts its use (e.g. holes in panels, missing panels, broken windows, doors are not working, clouded or unclear polycarbonate which significantly restricts visibility, burn marks). (c) Any shelters, waiting rooms or canopies have leaks or are not waterproof where designed to be waterproof. (d) Any heating or cooling unit, which is part of a waiting area, is not safe and operational (providing heat or cooling to the passenger, as necessary). (e) Any shelters or waiting areas are closed when they are advertised to be open, as specified in the SQR Register, and this is not due to the	All failure criteria apart from (a), (b) and (e) after 28 days (a) Not applicable (b) after 28 days unless full replacement of the shelter/waiting room/canopy is required in which case, not applicable (e) after 24 hours

<b>Table 1</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<b>Failure Criteria</b> <i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply. Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i>	<b>Reinspection Timescale</b>
		facility being damaged in way that prevents its use.	
	Lifts, Escalators & Ramps	(a) Any lift or escalator is not working or is not operational when it is supposed to be. (b) The visual and/or aural facilities of any lift are not working. (c) Ramps to assist those with additional needs (e.g. wheelchair users or customers travelling with buggies) are faulty or are not available, as specified in the SQR Register.	(a) and (b) after 96 hours (c) after 48 hours
	Toilet Operation <i>(all toilets, including accessible toilets/Changing Places)</i>	(a) The toilet is not open as specified in the SQR Register. (b) Any cubicles are out of use. (c) Any lavatories or urinals are blocked. (d) Any flush system is not functioning correctly. (e) Any lavatory seats are missing or broken. (f) Accessible toilet facilities are not operational. (g) Baby change facilities are not operational. (h) Hand wash facilities are not operational. (i) Any door locks are not operational. (j) There is no toilet paper available in individual cubicles. (k) Soap is not available.	(a), (i), (j), (k) and (l) after 24 hours (b), (c), (d), (e), (f), (g), (h) after 7 days

<b>Table 1</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<p><b>Failure Criteria</b></p> <p><i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply.</i></p> <p><i>Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i></p>	<b>Reinspection Timescale</b>
		(l) Facilities to dry hands are not operational or available i.e. hand dryers should be present and working and/or paper towels provided.	
	Car Parking/Cycle Parking	<p>(a) Any car parking or waiting bays are not clearly marked (including disabled bays).</p> <p>(b) There is inconsiderate parking and no evidence of management of the issue e.g. cars parked out of bays, across bays, non-'Blue Badge' or other permit holders parked in disabled bays, blocking access routes to the car park or station.</p> <p>(c) Information and signage informing customers about who may park in the car park/terms &amp; conditions of use and payment is not available as specified in the SQR Register, is illegible or is obscured.</p> <p>(d) The minimum number of disabled parking spaces as required by the Design Standards for Accessible Railway stations: Code of Practice are not available for use.</p> <p>(e) Car park ticket machines are not working (where present) or there is no clear instruction about charges and/or payment methods.</p> <p>(f) Car park ticket barriers are left open.</p> <p>(g) Potholes are present.</p>	<p>All criteria except (i) and (j) after 28 days (i), (j) after 7 days</p> <p><i>Where failure criteria (g) and/or (h) apply and car park maintenance is the responsibility of a local council, the Operator shall, within 28 days, record evidence in its SQR Management System that it has reported the issue to the relevant parties. Where the Operator has recorded such evidence, no Service Quality Failure shall occur.</i></p> <p><i>Where the Operator has not recorded such evidence, a Service Quality Failure shall occur and this shall be included in the calculation of the Pass Rate for the Reporting Period in which the Service Quality Failure has been identified.</i></p> <p><i>The Operator shall continue to report these issues to the council every three (3) Reporting Periods until they have been remedied. Where the Operator has not done so, a Rectification Evidence Failure shall occur and the principles of paragraph 4 of Chapter 5.5 shall apply.</i></p>

<b>Table 1</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<b>Failure Criteria</b> <i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply.</i> <i>Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i>	<b>Reinspection Timescale</b>
		(h) There are apparent issues with drainage and standing water is present. (i) Help points are not operational (where present). (j) Help points (where present) are not answered within 30 seconds. (k) Cycle racks/lockers/hoops are broken or damaged to the extent that they cannot be used. (l) Cycle racks/lockers/hoops are not present as specified in the SQR Register. (m) Cycles are parked outside of designated areas/there is evidence of abandoned bicycles (including damaged bikes) and there is no evidence that this is being managed.	
	Vegetation	(a) Any customer-facing area of the station (excluding the track) is blocked by, or suffers encroachment to any material extent from, vegetation. (b) Any growth or overgrowth of vegetation poses a risk of injury to persons or damage (including by staining) to their clothing or articles. (c) Any customer-facing area of the station (excluding the track) intended to be laid out	(a) , (c) After 28 days (b) After 7 days

<b>Table 1</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<b>Failure Criteria</b> <i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply. Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i>	<b>Reinspection Timescale</b>
		with vegetation is not neat and tidy, and/or vegetation is overgrown.	
Cleanliness and Graffiti	General Cleanliness	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Any area or facility that a customer may come into contact with appears unclean (such that a customer would not wish to touch it).</li> <li>(b) When COVID-19 Guidance and Regulation applies, hand sanitiser facilities within the station are damaged or are not replenished (excluding facilities within toilets).</li> <li>(c) There are any patches of ice, snow or other liquids or materials (including fallen leaves) which are slippery underfoot and there is no mitigation (i.e. signage indicating the presence of a slip hazard, or treatment has been applied to remove the danger).</li> <li>(d) There is staining to the floor or walls, or fluid on the floor (excluding standing water).</li> <li>(e) There is evidence of bird roosting which is not being managed.</li> <li>(f) There is noticeable dirt on glass surfaces.</li> <li>(g) Any area has a prolonged/lingering bad smell (which is not perceived to be temporary).</li> <li>(h) There is evidence of unhygienic substances e.g. vomit.</li> <li>(i) Bins are not present in line with the SQR Register.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a), (d), (f), (g), (h), (j) after 48 hours</li> <li>(b), (c) after 24 hours</li> <li>(e) after 14 days</li> <li>(i) after 28 days</li> </ul>

<b>Table 1</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<b>Failure Criteria</b> <i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply. Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i>	<b>Reinspection Timescale</b>
		(j) There is no space in litter bins to place items, and/or bin-liners are not present.	
	Toilets <i>(all toilets, including accessible toilets/Changing Places)</i>	(a) Any lavatory, urinal, sink or baby change facility is soiled. (b) Floors, doors or walls are stained. (c) There are fluids on the floor (not to include mild splashing). (d) There are no litter bins, or bins for sanitary products in cubicles or there is no space in them to place items.	After 24 hours
	Litter	(a) The following quantities of litter are present at the station (excluding any car parks and the track bed), each item being equivalent to or larger than the size of a credit card: (i) Stations with up to 3 platforms in regular passenger use – more than 10 items across the customer-facing areas as a whole; (ii) Stations with 4 or more platforms in regular passenger use – more than 10 items within any individual customer-facing area of the station, such areas being set out in the SQR Register, or more than 25 items across the customer-facing areas as a whole; (b) There are more than 10 items of litter present within any station car park, or if a multi-storey	(a), (b), (c), (e) after 48 hours (d) after 28 days

<b>Table 1</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<b>Failure Criteria</b> <i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply. Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i>	<b>Reinspection Timescale</b>
		car park, more than 10 items of litter on any individual level of that multi-storey car park, each item being equivalent to or larger than the size of a credit card. (c) There is any evidence of fly tipping within the station area. (d) There are significant accumulations of litter on the track bed, or the track bed has effluent discharge. (e) There is evidence of fly posting/unauthorised posters, stickers or fliers.	
	Graffiti & Etching	(a) There is any offensive graffiti/etching of any size or type within any customer-facing area of the station. (b) Any single piece or item of non-offensive graffiti/etching within any customer-facing area of the station (that would be immediately evident to a customer) is greater than an area which can be covered by an A4 sheet of paper. This excludes graffiti/etching which is ingrained and cannot be cleaned off or removed without replacing the item on which the graffiti/etching is administered or without undertaking constructional work, except where the graffiti/etching is located on an item that is easily replaceable (e.g. a Perspex panel).	Offensive graffiti – after 24 hours Non-offensive surface-based graffiti (e.g. painted/pen) – after 7 days Offensive etching – after 7 days Non-offensive etching– after 28 days



<b>Table 1</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<p><b>Failure Criteria</b></p> <p><i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply.</i></p> <p><i>Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i></p>	<b>Reinspection Timescale</b>
		(c) There are more than 10 individual pieces or items of non-offensive graffiti/etching, within any customer-facing area within the station extending to 100 square metres, regardless of the size or area of these items individually or collectively, that would be immediately evident to a customer. This excludes graffiti/etching which is ingrained and cannot be cleaned off/removed without replacing the item on which the graffiti/etching is administered or without undertaking constructional work, except where the graffiti/etching is located on an item that is easily replaceable (e.g. a Perspex panel).	
Information	Customer Information Screens	<p>(a) Any customer information screen is not present as specified in the SQR Register.</p> <p>(b) Any customer information screen is not functioning correctly.</p> <p>(c) Any customer information screen is functional but displaying illegible information.</p> <p>(d) Any customer information screen is showing incorrect information at the time of audit including the expected time of arrival and the destination of services.</p> <p>(e) Any clocks are inaccurate or there are no clocks.</p>	<p>(a) after 14 days</p> <p>(b), (c), (d), (e), (f) after 48 hours</p> <p>(g) after 24 hours</p>

<b>Table 1</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<b>Failure Criteria</b> <i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply. Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i>	<b>Reinspection Timescale</b>
		(f) Any additional information messages are out of date. (g) When COVID-19 Guidance and Regulation applies, appropriate messages are not displayed at appropriate intervals, are not clear and/or up-to-date (this may include, but is not limited to, messages about social distancing and the wearing of face masks).	
	Help Points <i>(including Help Points in Lifts)</i>	(a) Any help point is not present if shown on the SQR Register. (b) Any help point is out of operation, faulty or has poor reception. (c) Any help point is not answered within 30 seconds. (d) Any help point is inaudible and/or unclear.	After 7 days
	Posters and Frames	(a) Any poster or frame is not present where specified in the SQR Register. (b) Any poster frame is damaged, rusting or unsecure. (c) Any information on the poster is not fully visible. (d) Any poster is not in the correct location as specified in the SQR Register. (e) Any poster is showing incorrect or out of date information.	(a), (b) after 28 days (c), (d), (e), (f), (g) after 48 hours

<b>Table 1</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<b>Failure Criteria</b> <i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply.</i> <i>Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i>	<b>Reinspection Timescale</b>
		(f) Any poster is torn, damaged or slipped in the case. (g) Any poster is visibly faded from a distance of one metre.	
	Public Address System	(a) A public address system is not present or not operational where intended to be. (b) The public address system is inaudible or unclear. (c) Announcements are not made when required e.g. on approach of the arrival of services and during disruption. (d) Information is not provided in a timely way or is incorrect at time of audit. (e) When COVID-19 Guidance and Regulation applies, appropriate announcements are not made at appropriate intervals, are not clear and/or up-to-date (this may include, but is not limited to, messages about social distancing and the wearing of face masks).	(a), (b) after 14 days (c), (d) after 48 hours (e) after 24 hours
	Signage & Information <i>(covers all customer-facing signage not within poster frames)</i>	(a) Any signs are not easy to read from 4m. (b) Any signs are missing from those specified in the SQR Register. (c) Any signs are damaged, defaced or illegible.	(a), (b),(c) after 14 days (d), (f), (g), (h), (i), (j) after 7 days (e) after 24 hours

<b>Table 1</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<p><b>Failure Criteria</b></p> <p><i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply.</i></p> <p><i>Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i></p>	<b>Reinspection Timescale</b>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(d) Any signs provide incorrect information.</li> <li>(e) When COVID-19 Guidance and Regulation applies, appropriate messages are not displayed at appropriate locations within the station, or they are not clear and/or up-to-date (this may include, but is not limited to, messages about social distancing and the wearing of face masks).</li> <li>(f) A map or poster is not available showing up to date information on the location and times of onward transport services.</li> <li>(g) There is no wayfinding to onward transport services, where relevant.</li> <li>(h) Any out of date leaflets are present.</li> <li>(i) Up to date "Delay Repay" forms, timetables relevant to the station and customer complaint forms are not available.</li> <li>(j) Leaflets are kept in an untidy manner.</li> </ul>	
	Information During Disruption	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) An audio-visual passenger announcement is not made within 3 minutes where there is a delay of more than 5 minutes, detailing the nature of the delay and anticipated length of delay (or, if any information about the delay is not known the announcement should detail steps being taken to obtain this information).</li> </ul>	N/A

<b>Table 1</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<b>Failure Criteria</b> <i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply. Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i>	<b>Reinspection Timescale</b>
		(b) Information provided through announcements is inconsistent with that provided through social media, the websites and the Smartphone application. (c) Information provided through announcements is unclear and/or contains jargon. (d) Where a delay of over 15 minutes is announced, accurate information is not provided on alternative journey options/next steps. (e) Where a delay occurs, an apology for this delay is not provided. (f) Where a delay of over 15 minutes occurs, no information is given about right to claim compensation.	
Ticketing & Staffing	Ticket Vending Machines	(a) Any ticket machines are not present as specified in the SQR Register. (b) Any ticket machines are not operational. (c) The full functionality of any ticket machine is not available. (d) Any of the following information is missing: brand, name, address of operator, range of fares available, what process passengers should follow in the event of a problem or to obtain a refund and contact details.	After 48 hours

<b>Table 1</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<b>Failure Criteria</b> <i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply. Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i>	<b>Reinspection Timescale</b>
	Ticket Office	(a) The ticket office is not open when it is advertised to be so at the station as set out in the SQR Register. (b) Where speaker/microphone systems and/or hearing aid induction loops are fitted at the ticket office, any of these are not operational (e.g. working and available to the passenger) or do not permit clearly audible conversation.	(a) After 48 hours, except where such failure is the consequence of fault physically preventing the safe opening of the ticket office, in which case after 28 days (b) after 28 days
	Staff Presence	(a) Staff are not available at the station as required pursuant to the SQR Register. (b) Staff are not in full uniform. (c) A member of staff cannot be contacted (either face to face or remotely) by passengers of any train service using that station (regardless of train operator).	After 48 hours
	Ticket Gates	(a) Any ticket gates are out of use due to a fault or are not functioning correctly. (b) Where an excess fares window is available at a station, the excess fares window is not open whilst ticket barriers are in use.	After 7 days

**PART 2 – SQR TRAINS**

Please note that a Service Quality Indicator should only be subject to a Service Quality Inspection if the relevant facility or service is included in the SQR Register for that SQR Train.

<b>Table 2</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<b>Failure Criteria</b> <i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply. Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i>	<b>Rectification Evidence Timescale</b> <i>Note: The timescales specified in this column 4 of this Table 2 will be subject to calibration to be undertaken within the time periods specified in and in accordance with the process set out under limb (F) of the Business Plan Commitment CEX24.</i>
Ambience and Assets	Heating and Lighting	(a) Any light bulb or lighting tube does not illuminate when the power is on (except during load shedding). (b) Any light cover is cracked or broken, is loose or is otherwise unfit for purpose or missing. (c) The temperature is excessively hot or cold.	(a) and (b) after 7 days (c) after 28 days
	Seating <i>(including Priority Seats)</i>	(a) Any seat or seat cushion is missing. (b) Any seat has an assembly which is insecure or unstable or is noticeably damaged. (c) Any seat is damaged or has been contaminated in such a way that it could injure passengers or cause damage to their clothing or articles (including by staining). (d) There are tears in the seat fabric/antimacassar. (e) Any seat cover is worn, visible from 1m.	(a), (b), (c) after 6 Weekdays for Priority Seats, after 28 days for all other types of seat (d) and (e) after 28 days
	Vehicle Interior Condition	(a) There are any unsightly damaged panels or damaged panel trims.	After 28 days



<b>Table 2</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<p><b>Failure Criteria</b></p> <p><i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply.</i></p> <p><i>Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i></p>	<p><b>Rectification Evidence Timescale</b></p> <p><i>Note: The timescales specified in this column 4 of this Table 2 will be subject to calibration to be undertaken within the time periods specified in and in accordance with the process set out under limb (F) of the Business Plan Commitment CEX24.</i></p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(b) There is heavy wear on floor coverings visible from 1m.</li> <li>(c) Any window seals are loose, torn or missing.</li> <li>(d) Any windows are broken, cracked or scratched (not to include etching).</li> <li>(e) There are any holes in the floor vinyl/carpet.</li> <li>(f) Luggage racks are broken, cracked or damaged.</li> <li>(g) There are any broken or missing door buttons.</li> </ul>	
	Accessibility features	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Signage to denote wheelchair space priority is damaged or missing.</li> <li>(b) Signage to denote priority seating is missing or damaged.</li> <li>(c) Passenger call for aid facilities are visibly damaged or not functioning.</li> </ul>	After 48 hours
	Toilet Operation <i>(all toilets, including accessible toilets)</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Any standard toilet is out of use.</li> <li>(b) Any accessible toilet is out of use.</li> <li>(c) The door handle or locking mechanism is not operating correctly.</li> <li>(d) Any toilet seat is not in place.</li> <li>(e) Any toilet is blocked.</li> <li>(f) Any toilet flush system is not in working order.</li> </ul>	After 24 hours

<b>Table 2</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<p><b>Failure Criteria</b></p> <p><i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply.</i></p> <p><i>Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i></p>	<p><b>Rectification Evidence Timescale</b></p> <p><i>Note: The timescales specified in this column 4 of this Table 2 will be subject to calibration to be undertaken within the time periods specified in and in accordance with the process set out under limb (F) of the Business Plan Commitment CEX24.</i></p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(g) The hand wash system is not operating correctly, including water and soap dispensers.</li> <li>(h) The baby change facilities (if present) are not in working order.</li> <li>(i) The disabled access facilities (if present) are not in working order (including if the call for aid facility is visibly damaged or out of order).</li> <li>(j) There is no toilet tissue available.</li> <li>(k) There is no room in litter or disposal bins for additional items.</li> <li>(l) A mirror is not provided.</li> <li>(m) There is no means of hand drying available i.e. the hand dryer is not operational/there are no paper towels.</li> </ul>	
Cleanliness and Graffiti	Exterior	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) There are apparent stains or ingrained dirt on the front, rear and/or sides of the vehicle.</li> <li>(b) The windows are evidently dirty.</li> </ul>	After 7 days except where the temperature is below 4 degrees centigrade for prolonged periods
	Interior	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Any surface in the interior of the vehicle is subject to excessive dust, dirt (that a letter can be written in the dirt or dust and is legible) staining or recent chewing gum.</li> <li>(b) The floor has ingrained dirt excepting recent tracked dirt from people's shoes.</li> </ul>	After 24 hours

<b>Table 2</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<p><b>Failure Criteria</b></p> <p><i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply.</i></p> <p><i>Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i></p>	<p><b>Rectification Evidence Timescale</b></p> <p><i>Note: The timescales specified in this column 4 of this Table 2 will be subject to calibration to be undertaken within the time periods specified in and in accordance with the process set out under limb (F) of the Business Plan Commitment CEX24.</i></p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(c) There is any fly posting or stickers.</li> <li>(d) There are fluids on the floor (not mild splashing).</li> </ul>	
	Graffiti & Etching <i>(vehicle interior and exterior)</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) There is any offensive graffiti/etching of any size or type within any customer-facing area of the vehicle.</li> <li>(b) Any single piece or item of non-offensive graffiti/etching (that is immediately evident to a customer) within any customer-facing area of the vehicle is greater than an area that can be covered by an A4 sheet of paper.</li> <li>(c) There are more than 10 individual pieces or items of non-offensive graffiti/etching (that would be immediately evident to a customer), within any customer-facing area of the vehicle, regardless of the size or area of these items individually or collectively.</li> </ul>	<p>Offensive graffiti – after 24 hours</p> <p>Non-offensive graffiti – after 28 days</p> <p>Offensive etching – after 7 days</p> <p>Non-offensive etching – after 28 days</p>
	Litter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) There are more than six items of litter each equivalent to or larger in size than a credit card in the interior of the vehicle.</li> <li>(b) There is no space to place rubbish in the bins.</li> </ul>	After 24 hours
	Toilets <i>(all toilets, including accessible toilets)</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Any toilet is soiled.</li> <li>(b) Any sink is soiled.</li> <li>(c) Any baby change facility is soiled.</li> </ul>	After 24 hours

<b>Table 2</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<p><b>Failure Criteria</b></p> <p><i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply.</i></p> <p><i>Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i></p>	<p><b>Rectification Evidence Timescale</b></p> <p><i>Note: The timescales specified in this column 4 of this Table 2 will be subject to calibration to be undertaken within the time periods specified in and in accordance with the process set out under limb (F) of the Business Plan Commitment CEX24.</i></p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(d) There is staining on the floor or walls.</li> <li>(e) There are fluids on the floor (not mild splashing).</li> <li>(f) Any fixtures or fittings are unclean.</li> <li>(g) There are no litter bins, or bins for sanitary products in cubicles or there is no space in them to place items.</li> </ul>	
Information	Passenger Information Screens	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Any passenger information display is not working.</li> <li>(b) Any passenger information display is working but not legible.</li> <li>(c) Any passenger information display is showing incorrect information.</li> <li>(d) Any passenger information display is not showing next stop information (internal) and major/final destinations (internal and external).</li> <li>(e) When COVID-19 Guidance and Regulation applies, social distancing messages are not displayed at appropriate intervals, are not clear and/or up-to-date.</li> </ul>	After 48 hours
	Public Announcement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Any announcement is not audible or capable of being understood.</li> </ul>	After 48 hours

<b>Table 2</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<p><b>Failure Criteria</b></p> <p><i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply.</i></p> <p><i>Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i></p>	<p><b>Rectification Evidence Timescale</b></p> <p><i>Note: The timescales specified in this column 4 of this Table 2 will be subject to calibration to be undertaken within the time periods specified in and in accordance with the process set out under limb (F) of the Business Plan Commitment CEX24.</i></p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(b) An announcement of the train destination and major destinations is not made prior to departure of any station allowing sufficient time for people who have boarded an incorrect train to alight.</li> <li>(c) An announcement of the next station is not made between one and five minutes before arrival at the next station.</li> <li>(d) An announcement is not made requesting passengers to move down the train or free up seats from bags, etc. during crowding.</li> <li>(e) Where selective door operation is in operation, passengers are not informed before arrival at each station of the section of the train where doors will not be operational at that station.</li> <li>(f) When COVID-19 Guidance and Regulation applies, social distancing announcements are not made at appropriate intervals, are not clear and/or up-to-date.</li> </ul>	
	Wi-Fi	(a) A Wi-Fi connection to the internet is not possible.	After 7 days
	Catering	(a) The facility is unavailable when it should be available in accordance with the on-board information.	After 14 days

<b>Table 2</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<p><b>Failure Criteria</b></p> <p><i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply.</i></p> <p><i>Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i></p>	<p><b>Rectification Evidence Timescale</b></p> <p><i>Note: The timescales specified in this column 4 of this Table 2 will be subject to calibration to be undertaken within the time periods specified in and in accordance with the process set out under limb (F) of the Business Plan Commitment CEX24.</i></p>
		(b) There is no announcement advising of the location of the catering, the opening times and what is offered.	
	Posters, Frames & Signs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Any poster or frame is missing, in line with the SQR register.</li> <li>(b) Any poster frame is damaged, rusting or unsecure.</li> <li>(c) Any information on the poster is not visible.</li> <li>(d) Any poster is showing incorrect or out of date information.</li> <li>(e) Any poster is torn, damaged or slipped in the case.</li> <li>(f) Any poster is faded, evident from 1m.</li> <li>(g) Any signs fixed to the interior of the train are damaged or illegible.</li> <li>(h) Route diagrams are not available showing train routes and key connection information.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) after 7 days</li> <li>(b), (c), (d), (e),(f), (g),(h) after 48 hours</li> </ul>
	Information During Disruption	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Where a delay has occurred, an announcement was not made following the delay or was made more than two minutes after the delay commenced.</li> <li>(b) Where a delay has occurred, information was not provided about the nature of the delay and</li> </ul>	N/A

<b>Table 2</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<p><b>Failure Criteria</b></p> <p><i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply.</i></p> <p><i>Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i></p>	<p><b>Rectification Evidence Timescale</b></p> <p><i>Note: The timescales specified in this column 4 of this Table 2 will be subject to calibration to be undertaken within the time periods specified in and in accordance with the process set out under limb (F) of the Business Plan Commitment CEX24.</i></p>
		<p>expected duration (or if this is not known, an update on the action being taken to establish the nature of the delay is not provided).</p> <p>(c) Where a delay has occurred, information provided through announcements is unclear and/or contains jargon.</p> <p>(d) Where disruption has occurred, ongoing updates are not provided every three minutes or less for the duration of the disruption.</p> <p>(e) If the train is to terminate before its destination, fails to stop or is going to skip a stop due to disruption, or for delays of over 15 minutes, information on next steps, alternatives and passenger ticket validity on other operators' services is not provided.</p> <p>(f) Where a delay has occurred and is resolved, an update on scheduled arrival times is not provided.</p> <p>(g) Information provided by on train announcement is not consistent with the information provided through social media, the websites and the Smartphone application.</p> <p>(h) Where a delay has occurred, an apology for the delay is not received.</p>	



<b>Table 2</b>			
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<p><b>Failure Criteria</b></p> <p><i>Record a 'fail' for the Service Quality Indicator if any of the individual criteria apply.</i></p> <p><i>Only one 'fail' shall be recorded per Service Quality Indicator, regardless of how many criteria apply or how many 'customer-facing areas' are identified as having failed.</i></p>	<p><b>Rectification Evidence Timescale</b></p> <p><i>Note: The timescales specified in this column 4 of this Table 2 will be subject to calibration to be undertaken within the time periods specified in and in accordance with the process set out under limb (F) of the Business Plan Commitment CEX24.</i></p>
		(i) Where a delay of over 15 minutes occurs, no information is given about right to claim compensation.	

**PART 3 – SQR CUSTOMER SERVICE**

Please note that a Service Quality Indicator should only be subject to a Service Quality Inspection if the relevant facility or service is included in the SQR Register for that SQR Station or SQR Train

<b>Table 3</b>		
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<b>Failure Criteria</b>
Staff Helpfulness	Helpfulness of Staff at Stations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Staff member does not provide a friendly interaction with the mystery shopper.</li> <li>(b) Staff member does not have the correct information to hand when responding to a mystery shopper question.</li> <li>(c) Staff member gives incorrect information in response to a mystery shopper question.</li> <li>(d) The staff member's behaviour and/or body language reflects poorly on the Operator.</li> <li>(e) If so required, the staff member does not recognise or acknowledge the mystery shopper's disability or additional needs.</li> <li>(f) If so required, the staff member does not attend to the mystery shopper at a Passenger Assist meeting point or provide the required pre-booked assistance.</li> </ul>
	Helpfulness of Staff on Trains	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Staff member does not provide a friendly interaction with the mystery shopper.</li> <li>(b) Staff member does not have the correct information to hand when responding to a mystery shopper question.</li> <li>(c) Staff member gives incorrect information in response to a mystery shopper question.</li> <li>(d) The staff member's behaviour and/or body language reflects poorly on the Operator.</li> <li>(e) If so required, the staff member does not recognise or acknowledge the mystery shopper's disability or additional needs;</li> <li>(f) If requested, the staff member does not attend to the mystery shopper's additional needs.</li> </ul>
Online Information	Social Media Mystery Shopper Question	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) No response within 30 minutes.</li> <li>(b) The response did not answer the question or advise to where additional information could be found.</li> </ul>
	Planned and Unplanned Disruption ( <i>website, app and social media, where applicable</i> )	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Information about unplanned disruption is not provided within 10 minutes of the occurrence of such disruption.</li> <li>(b) Information about planned disruption is not provided at least 7 days prior to commencement of such works.</li> <li>(c) Any information about planned or unplanned disruption is inaccurate, contradictory or unclear (including due to use of jargon). Such information includes (but is not limited to) the services affected, expected duration of the disruption, alternative travel arrangements, ticket acceptance and advice for passengers with additional needs.</li> <li>(d) Any information about planned or unplanned disruption is not easy to find on the relevant site/app.</li> </ul>

<b>Table 3</b>		
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicator</b>	<b>Failure Criteria</b>
		(e) Information about unplanned disruption is not updated at regular intervals (as appropriate to the situation) and passengers are being provided with out-of-date advice. (f) Information about planned disruption is out-of-date.

**Appendix 2 to Part 1 of Chapter 5.5  
Service Quality Areas/Service Quality Indicators/Weightings**

**PART 1 – SQR STATIONS**

Where no Service Quality Inspections are conducted of the “Information During Disruption” Indicator during a Reporting Period, the weightings in column 4 shall apply in place of the weightings in column 3 for those Indicators relating to the Service Quality Area “Information”, when conducting the calculations referred to in paragraph 8 of this Part 1 of Chapter 5.5.

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicators</b>	<b>Weighting</b>	<b>Alternative Weighting</b>
Ambience and Assets	Lighting	20%	N/A
	Seating	20%	
	Shelters and Waiting Rooms	20%	
	Lifts, Escalators and Ramps	10%	
	Toilet Operation	15%	
	Car Parking/Cycle Parking	10%	
	Vegetation	5%	
Cleanliness and Graffiti	General Cleanliness	30%	N/A
	Toilets	25%	
	Litter	30%	
	Graffiti and Etching	15%	
Information	CIS	20%	20%
	PA	20%	20%
	Help Points	20%	20%
	Posters and Frames	10%	13%
	Signage and Information	20%	27%
	Information During Disruption	10%	N/A
Ticketing and Staffing	TVMs	25%	N/A
	Ticket Offices	25%	
	Staff Presence	30%	
	Ticket Gates	20%	

**PART 2 – SQR TRAINS**

Where no Service Quality Inspections are conducted of the “Information During Disruption” Indicator during a Reporting Period, the weightings in column 4 shall apply in place of the weightings in column 3 for those Indicators relating to the Service Quality Area “Information”, when conducting the calculations referred to in paragraph 8 of this Part 1 of Chapter 5.5.

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicators</b>	<b>Weighting</b>	<b>Alternative Weighting</b>
Ambience and Assets	Heating and Lighting	20%	N/A
	Seating	20%	
	Vehicle Interior Condition	20%	
	Accessibility Features	20%	
	Toilet Operation	20%	
Cleanliness and Graffiti	Interior	30%	N/A
	Exterior	10%	
	Litter	20%	
	Toilets	25%	
	Graffiti and Etching	15%	
Information	PIS	20%	24%
	PA	20%	23%
	Wi-fi	25%	23%
	Catering	10%	15%
	Posters, Frames and Signs	10%	15%
	Information During Disruption	15%	N/A

**PART 3 – SQR CUSTOMER SERVICE**

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>
<b>Service Quality Area</b>	<b>Service Quality Indicators</b>	<b>Weighting</b>
Staff Helpfulness	Helpfulness of Staff at Stations	40%
	Helpfulness of Staff on Trains	60%
Online Information	Social Media Question	40%
	Planned and Unplanned Disruption	60%

**Part 2: NRPS and Wavelength****19. Conduct of National Rail Passenger Surveys**

19.1 The Operator agrees with the Secretary of State that:

- (a) the Passengers' Council may measure the level of passenger satisfaction with the Rail Services through National Rail Passenger Surveys;
- (b) the Passengers' Council and/or the Secretary of State may, from time to time, publish the results of each National Rail Passenger Survey.

19.2 The Secretary of State shall ensure or shall procure that the findings of any National Rail Passenger Survey are made available by the Passengers' Council to the Operator within a reasonable period of time after the completion of each survey.

19.3 The Operator shall, as soon as reasonably practicable after such information is made available to the Operator in accordance with paragraph 19.2, publicise its performance against the NRPS Benchmarks by including such information in its Customer Report and displaying such information at all of the Stations and on its website.

19.4 It is agreed by the Operator that, subject to paragraph 19.5, the methodology to be adopted by the Passengers' Council in conducting any such National Rail Passenger Survey shall be as described in the document in the agreed terms marked **PSM** (the "**Passenger Survey Methodology**").

19.5 If:

- (a) at any time during the Contract Term the methodology adopted in conducting any National Rail Passenger Survey is, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, materially inconsistent with the Passenger Survey Methodology; and
- (b) the Secretary of State reasonably determines that in consequence a revision to the NRPS Benchmark and/or the NRPS Expected Range is required in order to hold constant the risk of the Operator failing to satisfy the NRPS Benchmark and/or perform within the NRPS Expected Range,

then the Secretary of State shall make such revisions to such NRPS Benchmarks and/or the NRPS Expected Range as the Secretary of State reasonably considers appropriate to hold constant such risk, subject always to paragraph 2.8 of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*).

19.6 If:

- (a) National Rail Passenger Surveys are replaced by an alternative survey; or
- (b) the Secretary of State after consultation with the Operator, reasonably determines that an alternative passenger survey would be more appropriate,

then in each case the provisions of this Chapter 5.5 and/or the relevant provisions of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*) relating to the results of National Rail Passenger Surveys shall apply in respect of any alternative survey (the "**Alternative Survey**") and for these purposes Passengers' Council shall be replaced with such other entity that is responsible for conducting such Alternative Survey.

**20. Performance Review**

20.1 It is agreed by the Secretary of State and the Operator that, subject to paragraph 19.6, the results of the National Rail Passenger Survey(s) published by the Passengers' Council in any Contract Year should be used to determine the Operator's performance against the NRPS Benchmarks for that Contract Year. If in any Contract Year the Passengers' Council has published:

- (a) only one (1) National Rail Passenger Survey in that Contract Year then the performance of the Operator against the NRPS Benchmarks shall be measured on the basis of such National Rail Passenger Survey; or
- (b) more than one (1) National Rail Passenger Survey in that Contract Year then the performance of the Operator against the NRPS Benchmarks shall be measured on the basis of the average of the results of all of the National Rail Passenger Surveys published by the Passengers' Council in that Contract Year.



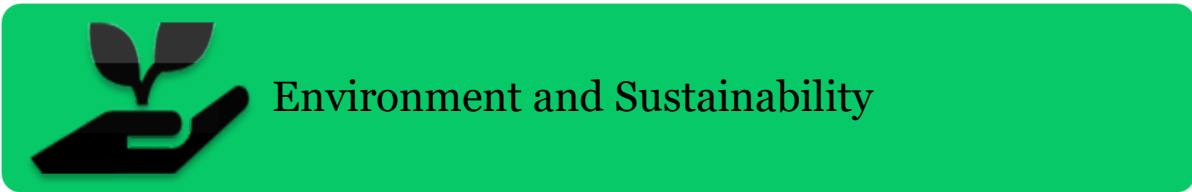
- (c) For the purposes of undertaking the comparison pursuant to this paragraph 20.1, the results referred to in paragraph 20.1(a) or paragraph 20.1(b) (as the case may be) shall be rounded up to one (1) decimal place with the midpoint (that is, 4.45) rounded upwards (that is, 4.5).
- 20.2 In the event that the Passengers' Council determine that the total number of respondents relating to any NRPS Measure is too low to enable a meaningful statistical analysis the Secretary of State after consultation with the Operator, shall reasonably determine any amended or alternative NRPS Measures, and any consequential revisions to the NRPS Benchmarks and/or NRPS Expected Range, subject always to paragraph 2.8 of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*).
- 21. NRPS Improvement Proposals**
- 21.1 In the event that the Operator fails to achieve a NRPS Benchmark, or the Secretary of State, acting reasonably, believes that the Operator will fail to achieve a NRPS Benchmark, the Secretary of State may require that the Operator submit a proposal for the Secretary of State's consideration which shall:
- (a) contain specific tangible action points and indicate in the case of each action point:
- (i) how that action will contribute to meeting the relevant NRPS Benchmark;
  - (ii) where the action is to be implemented;
  - (iii) the proposed timescales for implementing such action and, where any action is expressed to be ongoing, proposed review dates; and
  - (iv) how the Operator proposes to measure the performance of the action; and
- (b) the additional expenditure associated with each action,
- being the **"NRPS Improvement Proposal"**.
- 21.2 The Secretary of State shall be entitled to:
- (a) request further information from the Operator with respect to its NRPS Improvement Proposal, and the Operator shall submit such further information to the Secretary of State within the timescales as reasonably requested by the Secretary of State; and/or
  - (b) propose amendments to the NRPS Improvement Proposal and the Parties shall agree and, in the absence of agreement, the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine the amendments to the NRPS Improvement Proposal, in which case paragraph 21.3 shall apply; or
  - (c) accept the NRPS Improvement Proposal, in which case paragraph 21.3 shall apply; or
  - (d) not accept the NRPS Improvement Proposal, in which case the Operator shall not be obliged to undertake any further action with respect to its NRPS Improvement Proposal.
- 21.3 The NRPS Improvement Proposal as agreed, determined or accepted by the Secretary of State (as the case may be) in accordance with paragraph 21.2 shall be referred to as the **"NRPS Improvement Plan"**. The Operator shall implement the NRPS Improvement Plan in accordance with its terms and the provisions of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) shall apply.
- 22. Wavelength**
- 22.1 For the purpose of this paragraph:
- (a) **"Wavelength Programme"** means the programme of work being developed by the rail industry which involves collecting a wide range of information about the customer experience by tracking, amongst other things, the Operator's performance against certain journey touchpoints (as specified in the Wavelength Survey) and certain key commitments based on core passenger priorities; and
  - (b) **"Wavelength Survey"** means the weekly survey relating to the Passenger Services (in such form as may be agreed from time to time), which is undertaken as part of the Wavelength Programme to monitor, amongst other things, the Operator's

performance against certain journey touchpoints (as specified in the Wavelength Survey) and certain key commitments based on core passenger priorities.

22.2 Unless otherwise directed by the Secretary of State, the Operator shall:

- (a) fully and effectively engage with the Wavelength Programme;
- (b) subject to the relevant information being made available to the Operator via the Wavelength portal, provide to the Secretary of State by no later than seven (7) Weekdays following the end of each Reporting Period, a report setting out the results of the Wavelength Survey undertaken during that Reporting Period, such results to be presented in such aggregated or disaggregated format as the Secretary of State may specify from time to time; and
- (c) subject to the relevant information being made available to the Operator via the Wavelength portal, provide to the Secretary of State by no later than fourteen (14) Weekdays following the end of each Quarter, a report detailing:
  - (i) how the Operator has used the full range of Wavelength Programme insights (including the analysis of data received through the Wavelength Survey) to implement and/or invest in:
    - (A) customer-focused initiatives; and/or
    - (B) tangible benefits or improvements for customers; and
  - (ii) whether such initiatives, benefits or improvements referred to in paragraph 22.2(c)(i) have:
    - (A) resulted in any improvement in the Wavelength Survey scores collected to date; and/or
    - (B) any other improvements or benefits to the Operator.

## Chapter 6 – Environment and Sustainability



**CHAPTER 6****ENVIRONMENT AND SUSTAINABILITY**

1	Environmental Information
2	Air Quality Monitoring and Improvement
3	Sustainability
4	Measurement of Traction Energy Usage
	Appendix 1 to Chapter 6 – Environmental Information

## Chapter 6

### Environment and Sustainability

#### 1. Environmental Information

##### 1.1 Data Sharing

- (a) Within three (3) months following the end of each Contract Year, the Operator shall report to the Secretary of State and the RSSB the Initial Dataset corresponding to the previous Contract Year by completing the RSSB's online "Environmental Reporting Tool".
- (b) The Operator shall share all available environmental data with the Secretary of State and/or RSSB as requested from time to time by the Secretary of State and/or RSSB, each acting reasonably, including in relation to:
  - (i) air pollution emissions referenced in the Clean Air Strategy 2019 (including nitrogen oxides and particulate matter);
  - (ii) emissions of Greenhouse Gases (as defined in the Kyoto Protocol to the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change); and
  - (iii) energy usage.
- (c) The Secretary of State and/or (with the prior approval of the Secretary of State) RSSB, each acting reasonably, may instruct the Operator to collect and share with the Secretary of State and/or RSSB (as applicable) such additional environmental data as the Secretary of State and/or RSSB (as applicable) may require from time to time.

##### 1.2 Environmental Information Data Collection Plan

- (a) If the Operator is unable to provide the Initial Dataset in respect of any Contract Year they will promptly inform the Secretary of State and RSSB with a written explanation of why they are unable to provide such data.
- (b) The Operator shall cooperate with the Secretary of State and/or RSSB to seek to identify improvements in type of data to be collected, the method of collection and the efficiency and cost effectiveness of collection.
- (c) The Operator shall ensure that the form of measurement of the Initial Dataset for each Contract Year enables it to report a consolidated periodic or annual usage figure to the Secretary of State and RSSB as specified for each measure in Table 1 in paragraph 1 (*Environmental Impact Monitoring Dataset*) of Appendix 1 (*Environmental Information*) to this Chapter 6.
- (d) In addition to paragraph 1.2(c) above and in complying with its obligations in paragraph 1.1(a) above, the Operator shall deliver the information for each measure in Table 1 in paragraph 1 (*Environmental Impact Monitoring Dataset*) of Appendix 1 (*Environmental Information*) to this Chapter 6 in the units, with the granularity and in respect of the regularity required for each measure as indicated in that Table 1.

##### 1.3 Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit

The Operator shall procure a suitably qualified independent body (such independent body to be appointed only with the prior written approval of the Secretary of State) to undertake an independent audit of the data provided to RSSB and/or the Secretary of State and the collection methodology of the Initial Dataset in respect of the first Contract Year then as requested by the Secretary of State (the "**Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit**"). The scope of the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit shall be agreed in advance with the Secretary of State.

##### 1.4 Remedial Actions

National Rail Contract Version 1.1X - TransPennine Express	Page 159 of 500	Chapter 6
---	-----------------	-----------

- (a) In the event that an Environmental Impact Target is not met in any Contract Year, the Operator shall as soon as reasonably practicable produce and provide to the Secretary of State a revised Environmental Impact Targets Plan which, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, is capable of achieving the Environmental Impact Targets.
- (b) The Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to implement the revised Environmental Impact Targets Plan, which shall be the Environmental Impact Targets Plan for the purposes of the National Rail Contract.

## 1.5 **Publication**

The Operator shall publish (in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require) details of its performance against the Environmental Impact Targets in widely accessible forms including, as a minimum, publishing them on its website and in each Customer Report (excluding the first (1st) Customer Report).

## 2. **Air Quality Monitoring and Improvement**

- 2.1 The Operator shall for the purposes of air quality monitoring at Stations or depots under its control:
- (a) provide to the Secretary of State all existing data in relation to air quality and measures that the Operator is implementing to improve air quality at Stations or depots under its control;
  - (b) provide to the Secretary of State, RSSB, or any person whom the Secretary of State might reasonably specify, access to any sites, power supplies and telemetry under its control as requested by the Secretary of State or RSSB from time to time, including for the purpose of installing air quality monitors; and
  - (c) assist the Secretary of State, RSSB or any person whom the Secretary of State might reasonably specify in the placement, replacement and dispatch of diffusion tubes.
- 2.2 The Operator shall for the purposes of air quality monitoring on rolling stock vehicles:
- (a) provide to the Secretary of State, RSSB or any person whom the Secretary of State might reasonably specify during the Contract Term, free-of-charge access to rolling stock vehicles and on board power supplies whilst in or out of service;
  - (b) consent for equipment to be installed on rolling stock vehicles for the purposes of air quality monitoring;
  - (c) provide available on-train air quality data, train management system data and/or OTMR data as the Secretary of State may require from time to time.
- 2.3 The Operator shall for the purposes of monitoring and reducing air pollutant emissions from traction:
- (a) through an industry-led industry working group, support the development and delivery of a policy in relation to the maximum time for which a train's engine may be kept idling while stationary;
  - (b) use all reasonable endeavours to work with the fleet owner to develop an air pollution emissions reduction pathway for all diesel rolling stock vehicles;
  - (c) consider cost-effective opportunities to reduce air pollution emissions through operational or maintenance changes and, where reasonable and with the agreement or direction of the Secretary of State, make changes to rolling stock vehicles to reduce their impact on air quality emissions and/or on-board air quality; and
  - (d) provide to the Secretary of State such information and/or data in relation to exhaust emissions from rolling stock vehicles comprised within the Train Fleet as the Secretary of State may reasonably require from time to time for the purposes of data collection and analysing the consequent impact of such emissions on air quality in Depots and Stations and along the Routes on which such rolling stock vehicles are deployed.

- 2.4 The Operator shall for the purposes of supporting wider industry approaches to air pollution emissions reduction:
- (a) consider the impact of any rolling stock vehicle, operational or infrastructure changes on emissions; and
  - (b) provide to the Secretary of State and RSSB, and update as necessary, a named contact as a point of enquiry in relation to air quality.

### 3. **Sustainability**

#### 3.1 Environmental Management and Sustainability Accreditation

- (a) The Operator shall, at all times maintain certification pursuant to ISO14001:2015 and ISO50001:2011 or equivalent standards.
- (b) The Operator shall provide the Secretary of State with copies of the certification audit reports and a copy of their ISO50001 Energy Review within four (4) weeks of each subsequent recertification during the Contract Period.

#### 3.2 **Sustainable Construction**

For construction projects (including building refurbishment or fit out):

- (a) which are either being funded by the Operator or in respect of which the Operator has design responsibility; and
- (b) in respect of which the total capital cost exceeds £1,000,000 (pounds sterling one million),

the Operator shall use reasonable endeavours to achieve at least an “**excellent**” rating from an accredited assessor using BREEAM (or a rating equivalent to “**excellent**” in an equivalent recognised standard such as the SKA Rating Standard as appropriate) at both the design stage and the post-construction stage unless the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) agrees that the relevant project is not of a suitable scale or type to be so assessed and the Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State such information in relation to any construction project as the Secretary of State may reasonably request.

### 4. **Measurement of Traction Energy Usage**

- 4.1 The Operator shall ensure that all rolling stock units that form part of the Train Fleet are able to measure and monitor fuel use as soon as reasonably practicable, and in the case of electric traction, enable the Operator to be a “**Metered Train Operator**” as defined by Network Rail’s Traction Electricity Rules.
- 4.2 Not Used.



**Appendix 1 to Chapter 6**  
**Environmental Information**

**1. Environmental Impact Monitoring Dataset**

<b>Table 1</b>			
<b>Subject</b>	<b>Unit</b>	<b>Granularity</b>	<b>Regularity</b>
<b>TRACTION</b>	EC4T (kWh)	Breakdown per distinct fleet - metered	Four (4) week period
	EC4T (kWh)	Breakdown per distinct fleet - unmetered	Four (4) week period
	Gas-oil (litres)	Breakdown per distinct fleet	Four (4) week period
<b>NONTRACTION</b>	Electricity (kWh)	Total	Four (4) week period or monthly
	Gas (kWh)	Total	Four (4) week period or monthly
	Gas-oil (litres)	Total	Four (4) week period or monthly
<b>CARBON</b>	Scope 1 emissions (tonnes)	Total	Annual
	Scope 2 emissions (tonnes)	Total	Annual
	Embodied carbon in new infrastructure projects over the amount set out in paragraph 3.2(b) (Sustainable Construction) of Chapter 6 (Environment and Sustainability)	Total	Per project
<b>WATER</b>	Mains Water consumption (m <sup>3</sup> )	Total	Annual
	Water recycling initiatives	Narrative	Annual
<b>WASTE</b>	Waste generated (tonnes)	Total	Annual
	Waste recycled (tonnes)	Total	Annual
	Waste subject to other recovery (tonnes)	Total	Annual
	Waste to landfill (tonnes)	Total	Annual
	Hazardous waste	Total	Annual
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT SYSTEM (EMS)</b>	Enforcement/information Notices	Total	Annual
	Environmental fines or prosecutions	Total	Annual
	Environmental incidents reported through the EMS	Total	Annual
	Environmental training records % personnel briefed/trained	Total	Annual

**Chapter 7 – Financial Obligations, Incentives and Scorecards****Chapter 7.1 - Contract Payments****Chapter 7.2 - Performance Based Fee****Chapter 7.3 - Management Information****Chapter 7.4 - Financial Covenants and Bonds****Chapter 7.5 - Variations, Changes and Amendments****Chapter 7.6 - Railways Pension Scheme****Chapter 7.7 - Business Plan**

**CHAPTER 7****FINANCIAL OBLIGATIONS, INCENTIVES AND SCORECARDS**

Chapter 7.1	Contract Payments
	Appendix 1: Calculation of Periodic Contract Payments (PCP)
	Appendix 2: Disallowable Costs
Chapter 7.2	Performance Based Fee
	Appendix 1: PBF Assessment Review
	Appendix 2: PBF Assessment Review Checklist
	Appendix 3: Scorecard Criteria
	Appendix 4: Scorecard Methodology
	Appendix 5: Quantified Target Methodology
	Appendix 6: Combined Methodology
Chapter 7.3	Management Information
Chapter 7.4	Financial Covenants and Bonds
Chapter 7.5	Variations, Changes and Amendments
	Appendix 1: Trigger Events
Chapter 7.6	Railway Pensions Scheme
	Appendix 1: List of Shared Costs Sections
Chapter 7.7	Business Plan

## Chapter 7.1

### Contract Payments

#### 1. Contract Payments

1.1 The Contract Payment (£CP) for each Reporting Period shall be an amount equal to:

<b>£CP =</b>	<b>PCP + WCP – WCR + FFPBF + FWCP – FWCA + ICA+ FCA+ ASCP</b>
--------------	---

**where:**

<b>PCP</b>	means the amount of Periodic Contract Payment as calculated pursuant to the provisions of Appendix 1 ( <i>Calculation of Periodic Contract Payments (PCP)</i> ) of this Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> ) to be made on that Reporting Period's Payment Date. PCP may be a positive or negative number. PCP may be payable by the Secretary of State or the Operator;
<b>WCP</b>	means any Working Capital Payment to be made on that Reporting Period's Payment Date. WCP may only be a positive number;
<b>WCR</b>	means any Working Capital Repayment to be made on that Reporting Period's Payment Date. WCR may only be a positive number;
<b>FFPBF</b>	means the Fixed Fee and the Performance Based Fee for the applicable Contract Year, determined in accordance with paragraph 12.1 and to be paid in accordance with paragraph 12.2. FFPBF may only be a positive number;
<b>FWCP</b>	means an amount equal to the First Working Capital Payment and FWCP may be only be a positive number;
<b>FWCA</b>	means the Final Working Capital Adjustment, determined in accordance with paragraph 11.1 to be made on that Reporting Period's Payment Date. FWCA may be a positive or negative number
<b>ICA</b>	means the Interim Closing Adjustment, determined in accordance with paragraph 17.1 and to be paid in accordance with paragraph 17. ICA may be a positive or negative number;
<b>FCA</b>	means the Final Closing Adjustment, determined in accordance with paragraph 17.2 and to be paid in accordance with paragraph 17. FCA may be a positive or negative number; and
<b>ASCP</b>	means the Advisory Support Costs Payment, determined in accordance with paragraph 18.1 and to be paid in accordance with paragraph 18.2. ASCP may only be a positive number;

1.2 The Parties agree that:

- (a) where **£CP is a positive number**, the Secretary of State shall pay that amount to the Operator on the Payment Date for that Reporting Period;
- (b) where **£CP is a negative number**, the Operator shall pay the corresponding positive amount to the Secretary of State on the Payment Date for that Reporting Period.

1.3 The Parties shall at all times act in good faith, reasonably and in a timely manner in relation to the calculation of the Contract Payment (£CP) (including each element thereof) for each Reporting Period.

- 1.4 Subject to the provisions of paragraphs 1.5 and 1.6, if the Parties have not agreed the amount of the Contract Payment (£CP) for a Reporting Period within fifteen (15) Weekdays of the beginning of such Reporting Period, the Secretary of State may (but shall not be obliged to) reasonably determine it on the basis of the information then available to the Secretary of State.
- 1.5 If the Parties have not agreed the amount of the relevant Annual Adjustment (AADJ) for a Contract Year within six (6) Reporting Periods after the end of that Contract Year:
- (a) the Secretary of State may (but shall not be obliged to) determine AADJ for the relevant Contract Year on the basis of the information then available to the Secretary of State; or
  - (b) the Secretary of State may (but shall not be obliged to) make an interim determination of AADJ for the relevant Contract Year on the basis of the information then available to the Secretary of State; and/or
  - (c) if the Secretary of State makes an interim determination under paragraph (b) then, unless the Parties agree the amount of the relevant AADJ, the Secretary of State may (but shall not be obliged to) make a further determination of AADJ for the relevant Contract Year taking account of information available to the Secretary of State as at the date of such further determination.
- 1.6 Provided that the Operator has submitted the Management Accounts to the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 1.3(a) of Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*), the Secretary of State shall not be entitled to withhold payment of any undisputed amounts of the Contract Payment (£CP) for the relevant Reporting Period, which amounts shall be paid by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 2 of this Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*).

## **2. Payment of Contract Payments**

- 2.1 The Secretary of State shall notify the Operator, no less than five (5) Weekdays prior to the start of each Reporting Period, of the amount of the Contract Payment payable in respect of that Reporting Period.
- 2.2 Each such notification shall set out in reasonable detail how the Contract Payment has been calculated.
- 2.3 The Payment Date for a Reporting Period shall be the first Weekday of that Reporting Period.
- 2.4 Each Contract Payment shall be payable by the Operator or, as the case may be, the Secretary of State in the amount notified by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 2.1 of this Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) on the Payment Date of the Reporting Period to which it relates.
- 2.5 Each Contract Payment shall be made:
- (a) by automatic electronic funds transfer in pounds sterling to such bank account in the United Kingdom as the payee of such payment may have previously specified to the payer in writing; and
  - (b) so that cleared funds are received in that account on or before the due date for payment.
- 2.6 References in this Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) to Reporting Period or Contract Year are deemed amended to the extent necessary to allow:
- (a) any components of the Contract Payment for the final Contract Year (including any AADJ) which have not been calculated and/or paid prior to the expiry of this Contract; or
  - (b) any Interim Closing Adjustments or Final Closing Adjustment, to be calculated and paid after the date of termination or expiry of this Contract in accordance with the provisions of this Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*).

## **3. Interest**

- 3.1 If:

- (a) the Operator fails to pay any amount to the Secretary of State on its due date,
- (b) the Secretary of State fails to pay to the Operator the Fixed Fee and Performance Based Fee on its due date,

that Party which has failed to pay shall in addition pay interest on such amount at the Interest Rate, calculated on a daily basis, from the due date for payment to the date on which payment is made.

#### **4. Contract Payment Adjustments and Disputes**

4.1 If either Party (acting reasonably) considers that the amount of any Contract Payment paid was incorrectly assessed or calculated that Party shall immediately notify the other and shall meet (at the next Periodic Finance Review Meeting in the case of Contract Payments relating to the Contract Period) to discuss and seek to agree an appropriate adjustment to ensure that if:

- (a) either Party has made a payment to the other Party which is greater than it would have made if the amount of the Contract Payment had been correct, then the recipient shall repay the excess in accordance with paragraph 4.3; or
- (b) either Party has made a payment to the other Party which is less than it would have made if the amount of the Contract Payment had been correct, then the payer shall pay the amount of any shortfall to the payee in accordance with paragraph 4.3,

4.2 If the Parties do not agree the amount of any excess or shortfall referred to in paragraph 4.1 at that Periodic Finance Review Meeting (or other meeting as applicable), the Secretary of State may (but shall not be obliged to) reasonably determine it on the basis of the information then available to the Secretary of State.

4.3 Payments due pursuant to the provisions of paragraph 4.1 shall be paid:

- (a) in the case of adjustments agreed or determined during or within 6 months after the end of the Contract Period, within three (3) Weekdays of the agreement or determination of the same; and
- (b) adjustments agreed or determined after such date, as part of the next Interim Closing Adjustment or Final Closing Adjustment (as applicable),

together, in each case, with interest on the amount payable at the Interest Rate, calculated on a daily basis from the date on which the Contract Payment was paid until the date on which such excess amount or shortfall is paid.

4.4 If the Operator disputes that amounts were reasonably determined pursuant to paragraph 4.2, the dispute shall, unless the Operator and the Secretary of State otherwise agree, be resolved in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 8 (*Governing Law and Jurisdiction*) of Chapter 9.7 (*Miscellaneous Legal Terms*) of this Contract. Any such dispute shall not affect the obligation of either Party to pay a Contract Payment notified in accordance with this Chapter 7.1.

#### **5. No Double Recovery**

5.1 Neither Party shall be entitled to recover (by way of an adjustment to Contract Payment, Cost Budget or otherwise) more than once in respect of the same amount.

5.2 The Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to avail itself of, including applying for, any governmental support or support from any local authority or other such body that:

- (a) is offered to it;
- (b) the details of which are notified to it by the Secretary of State; or
- (c) which a Good and Efficient Operator should have been reasonably aware of,

in relation to the impact of and/or recovery from the impacts of COVID-19 from time to time.

5.3 If and to the extent that the Operator is successful in receiving any such support described in paragraph 5.2, this shall be taken into account in relation to the relevant payment and adjustments in this Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) such that the Operator does not benefit from double recovery or double counting.

## 6. Force Majeure and Payments

6.1 Following the occurrence of a Force Majeure Event, the payment of Contract Payments shall continue to be calculated in accordance with this Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) and the payment of such Contract Payments shall continue unaffected.

## 7. Format and Content of the Cost Budget and Forecast Revenue

7.1 Each Cost Budget and Forecast Revenue shall:

- (a) adopt a format and structure which facilitates the easy comparison of costs and revenue with the definitions of Actual Cost and Actual Revenue and with the information reported in the Management Accounts and the Annual Management Accounts;
- (b) in the case of:
  - (i) the Cost Budget and associated Record of Assumptions, make no assumptions or include any costs or adjustments which would not fall within the definition of Actual Costs or which (unless otherwise expressly agreed in writing with or required by the Secretary of State) would not be included by a Good and Efficient Operator; and
  - (ii) Forecast Revenue and associated Record of Assumptions, make assumptions and include all revenue and adjustments which would fall within the definition of Actual Revenue or which (unless otherwise agreed in writing with or required by the Secretary of State) would be included by a Good and Efficient Operator;
- (c) adopt:
  - (i) the same format and structure and line by line entries as was used for the most recent Cost Budget and Forecast Revenue (as Placed in Escrow) or as otherwise from time to time specified by the Secretary of State;
  - (ii) the same accounting principles and standards as set out in the Record of Assumptions (as most recently Placed in Escrow) (as these may be varied by agreement between the Parties or, in the case of accounting standards, as these may be reasonably revised by the Secretary of State to take account of changes to GAAP);
- (d) identify any proposed:
  - (i) payments to an Affiliate of the Operator (including management fees, royalty fees and any commission); and
  - (ii) payment of any fees, remuneration and/or pension contributions in respect of any director or officer of the Operator,
 in each case by reference to each Reporting Period of the relevant Contract Year; and
- (e) demonstrate compliance with the Procurement Policy (save to the extent expressly agreed otherwise by the Secretary of State (in the Secretary of State's absolute discretion)).

## 8. Periodic Finance Review Meetings

8.1 Without limiting the requirement for any other meeting, the Parties shall hold (subject to paragraph 8.5) a finance review meeting at least once in every Reporting Period (other than the First Reporting Period) up to and including the third Reporting Period following the end of the Contract Period ("**Periodic Finance Review Meeting**") at such time(s) and location(s) notified to the Operator by the Secretary of State and:

- (a) the purpose of the Periodic Finance Review Meeting shall be to review the financial performance of the Operator. This shall include:
  - (i) a review and discussion of variances arising in the Contract Year to date between Actual Costs, Actual Revenues and the Cost Budget, Record of Assumptions and Forecast Revenue respectively and confirmation of the value of the periodic revenue and cost adjustments to be applied to the



Contract Payment to be paid in the subsequent Reporting Period to the Reporting Period in which the Periodic Finance Review Meeting is taking place;

- (ii) a review and discussion regarding any costs with respect to payments made by the Operator under Approved Affiliate Contracts which exceed the budgeted costs in the relevant Cost Category as stated in the Cost Budget most recently Placed in Escrow with respect to the payments to be made under such contracts;
- (iii) a review of fees and payments (including bonuses) actually paid by the Operator to its directors and officers during the preceding Reporting Period as against the budgeted costs for such fees and payments as stated in relevant Cost Category in the Cost Budget most recently Placed in Escrow;
- (iv) a review and discussion of the Operator's management of its working capital and the Operator's Forecast Closing Cash Position for that Reporting Period in which the Periodic Finance Review Meeting is taking place and any Working Capital Payment or Working Capital Repayment to be applied to the Contract Payment to be paid in that Reporting Period in which the Periodic Finance Review Meeting is taking place;
- (v) actions to be taken in respect of the Operator's financial performance;
- (vi) any proposed contracts or arrangements with Affiliates of the Operator as referred to in paragraph 8.6;
- (vii) a review and discussion of:
  - (A) any potential Agreed Updates;
  - (B) the Potential Annual Losses (including the Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone and SoS Claims) to the end of the previous Reporting Period;
  - (C) any Required PCG Amounts or Potential Annual Losses Decrease Amounts (each as defined in the Funding Deed) which are required to be drawn or repaid under the Funding Deed in relation to the Potential Annual Losses to the end of the previous Reporting Period; and
  - (D) any potential excess or shortfall amounts as referred to in paragraph 4.1,

and the Parties shall seek to agree the amount of each such item. If the Parties do not agree such items at that Periodic Finance Review Meeting, the Secretary of State may (but shall not be obliged to) reasonably determine any that are not so agreed on the basis of the information then available to the Secretary of State;

- (viii) at the next Periodic Finance Review Meeting held after the delivery of the Audited Accounts Reconciliation for that Contract Year:
  - (A) the Fixed Fee and Performance Based Fee for that Contract Year;
  - (B) the Actual Annual Losses (including Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone and SoS Claims) for the Contract Year;
  - (C) any Required PCG Amounts or Actual Annual Losses Decrease Amounts (each as defined in the Funding Deed) which are required to be drawn or repaid under the Funding Deed in relation to such Actual Annual Losses,

and the Parties shall seek to agree the amount of each such item. If the Parties do not agree such items at that Periodic Finance Review Meeting, the Secretary of State may (but shall not be obliged to) reasonably determine any that are not so agreed on the basis of the information then available to the Secretary of State; and

- (ix) identification of any contracts or arrangements to which paragraph 8.6 of this Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) or paragraph 1.4(a)(iii) (*Quarterly Financial Information*) of Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*) will apply in the current or the next six (6) Reporting Periods.
  - (b) The Operator shall ensure that the representatives of the Operator at the meeting shall include the finance director of the Operator or a suitable representative of the finance director as may reasonably be approved for this purpose by the Secretary of State.
- 8.2 The Operator shall, prior to the date of each Periodic Finance Review Meeting have provided to the Secretary of State the relevant information required pursuant to paragraph 1.3 (*Reporting Period Financial Information*) of Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*) together with a statement of the Operator's Forecast Closing Cash Position applicable to that Reporting Period, in accordance with the timescales set out therein, and shall provide the Secretary of State with all further information as the Secretary of State may request from time to time for the purposes of the operation of paragraph 8.1, within such time as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify for that purpose (and this paragraph shall continue to apply such that the number of requests which the Secretary of State may make is not limited).
- 8.3 The Secretary of State shall be entitled to consider any information provided to the Secretary of State by the Operator and any other sources of information which the Secretary of State considers to be relevant and the Secretary of State shall be entitled to request such information from the Operator as the Secretary of State requires for the purposes of the operation of this Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*). The Operator shall provide the information within such time as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify for the purpose (and this paragraph shall continue to apply such that the number of requests which the Secretary of State may make is not limited).
- 8.4 Any Periodic Finance Review Meeting (or part thereof) may be held remotely with the prior agreement of the Parties.
- 8.5 The Secretary of State shall have the discretion (acting reasonably) to decrease (and subsequently increase) the required frequency of the Periodic Finance Review Meetings, provided they shall be no more frequent than once a Reporting Period.

#### **Affiliate Trading**

- 8.6 Without limiting paragraph 8.7, and unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State by reference to this paragraph, the Operator shall:
- (a) not rely on a Group Contract entered into by an Affiliate Counterparty on or after the Start Date unless:
    - (i) the Operator has rights of enforcement under that Group Contract against each Group Contract Supplier; and/or
    - (ii) the Group Contract is expressed such that rights and other benefits enjoyed by the Operator under that Group Contract can be assigned, novated or otherwise made available to any Public Sector Operator (including by way of Transfer Scheme) on the same terms (including as to price) as enjoyed by the Operator as a beneficiary of the Group Contract, following the termination of this Contract on the occurrence of an Event of Default or a Termination Event; and
  - (b) procure that any Affiliate Contract entered into on or after the Start Date (including a renewal of any such contract or arrangement (including the continuation of any such Affiliate Contract beyond its original term) and/or the variation of any Affiliate Contract):
    - (i) complies with the following requirements (each a "**Minimum Requirement**"), such that any Affiliate Contract, as a minimum:
      - (A) is on terms which ensure that:
        - (1) all rights and other benefits enjoyed by the Operator under that Affiliate Contract can be assigned, novated or otherwise made available to any Public Sector Operator (including by

- way of Transfer Scheme) following the termination of this Contract on the occurrence of an Event of Default or a Termination Event; and
- (2) the assignment, novation or other transfer of such Affiliate Contract to a Public Sector Operator (including under a Transfer Scheme) does not, except as permitted under this paragraph 8.6(b), trigger a change to the rights and obligations of the parties under such Affiliate Contract or otherwise result in the Public Sector Operator being subject to different terms than those which would have applied if the Affiliate Contract had not been assigned, novated or otherwise transferred to the Public Sector Operator (including under a Transfer Scheme);
- (B) includes an unlimited warranty that the Affiliate Counterparty has and will continue to have (including upon the transfer of the Affiliate Contract to a Public Sector Operator) all rights (including contractual rights and Intellectual Property Rights) which are necessary for the:
- (1) performance by the Affiliate Counterparty of its obligations under that Affiliate Contract; and
- (2) Operator to receive the benefit of, and exercise the Operator's rights under, that Affiliate Contract without infringing the rights of the Affiliate Counterparty or any third party (and provides for the grant to the Operator of such rights as are required for that purpose);
- (C) unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State, includes a restriction on any right for the Affiliate Counterparty to terminate for convenience the Affiliate Contract or any third party contract(s) necessary for the performance by the Affiliate Counterparty of its obligations under that Affiliate Contract such that the right to terminate for convenience can only be exercised by the Affiliate Counterparty on giving no less than twelve (12) months' notice. For this purpose, "**termination for convenience**" means a right for the Affiliate Counterparty to terminate the relevant contract for any reason other than on the basis permitted by the relevant contract as a result of a breach or insolvency of the other party;
- (D) is procured, arranged and entered into in compliance with Procurement Policy; and
- (E) is capable of being terminated by the Operator upon giving notice of no less than seven (7) Reporting Periods and includes terms that the Operator shall not incur any penalty or be required to make any termination payment to the relevant Affiliate Counterparty if the Operator elects to exercise any such termination right; and
- (ii) complies with the following further requirements (each an "**Additional Requirement**"), such that any Affiliate Contract:
- (A) includes provisions which require the Affiliate Counterparty to ensure that following any transfer of the Affiliate Contract to a Public Sector Operator:
- (1) the level of service to the Public Sector Operator is to no less a standard than provided to the Operator in the twelve (12) months preceding the transfer (without limiting any provision which provides for a higher standard); and
- (2) as regards any contractual term which permits a discretion to the Affiliate Counterparty (including as to price), the Public Sector Operator shall be treated by the Affiliate Counterparty

no less favourably than the Affiliate Counterparty treats any other Affiliate of the Affiliate Counterparty;

- (B) includes provisions which require that on the expiry or earlier termination of an Affiliate Contract which has been transferred to a Public Sector Operator, the Affiliate Counterparty will provide reasonable co-operation to the Public Sector Operator and/or its replacement provider. Reasonable cooperation will include, if and as requested by the Public Sector Operator, acting reasonably in facilitating and implementing data transfer (in a reasonably required format), knowledge transfer, the delivery up of any other Public Sector Operator assets and the return or deletion of data from the Affiliate Counterparty's systems if requested by the Public Sector Operator; and
- (C) is entered into, renewed or varied only if the goods and/or services to be purchased from the Affiliate Counterparty are at competitive rates, on an arm's length basis, are in all ways appropriate, comply with this Contract and there is a sound business case for contracting with, or entering into an arrangement with, the Affiliate Counterparty.

8.7 The Operator shall not enter into any Affiliate Contract (including the renewal of any such contract or arrangement (including the continuation of any such Affiliate Contract beyond its original term) and/or the variation of any Affiliate Contract) unless the Secretary of State has, in the absolute discretion of the Secretary of State, first consented to the terms of such Affiliate Contract and to it being entered into, varied or renewed on those terms, whether at or following a Periodic Finance Review Meeting (where such Affiliate Contract forms part of the agenda for that meeting) or otherwise, or Qualified Consent has been granted or deemed in respect of such Affiliate Contract pursuant to paragraph 8.8 below. In connection with any permission sought by the Operator in connection with this paragraph, the Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State:

- (a) evidence demonstrating that it has complied with the Minimum Requirements and the Additional Requirements set out in paragraph 8.6(b) above, which in relation to paragraph 8.6(b)(ii)(C), may include quotations and prices from other suppliers or providers for comparison and commercially challenging the price(s) quoted by the Affiliate Counterparty;
- (b) details of any management charges or management overheads forming part of such proposed Affiliate Contract; and
- (c) together with the evidence required pursuant to this paragraph 8.7, a certificate signed by a statutory director of the Operator confirming that the proposed Affiliate Contract complies with the requirements of paragraphs 8.6(b) and 8.7.

8.8 Where the Operator has provided the evidence and the statutory director certificate set out in paragraph 8.7 to the Secretary of State and:

- (a) the Secretary of State is not, at such time, able to properly evaluate such evidence in order to consent to the entry into (or variation) of any Affiliate Contract then the Secretary of State, at the Secretary of State's absolute discretion, shall be entitled to grant consent to the entry into (or variation) of such Affiliate Contract subject to:
  - (i) the Operator's compliance with any condition or conditions that the Secretary of State considers appropriate; and/or
  - (ii) the Secretary of State retaining at all times the right to withdraw that consent, by notice to the Operator, where the Secretary of State having evaluated the evidence provided by the Operator in accordance with paragraph 8.7 is not or is no longer satisfied with the evidence provided by the Operator in relation to such Affiliate Contract ("**Qualified Consent**"); or
- (b) the Secretary of State has not, within twenty eight (28) days of receipt of such evidence and the statutory director's certificate, responded to the Operator by granting consent, granting Qualified Consent or refusing consent, in each case, to the entry into (or variation) of any Affiliate Contract then the Secretary of State shall be

deemed to have granted Qualified Consent (on the same basis as set out in paragraph 8.8(a)(ii)) to the entry into (or variation) of such Affiliate Contract.

- 8.9 In the event that the Qualified Consent is granted or deemed in accordance with any of paragraphs 8.8(a) or 8.8(b) (as the case may be) then any payments made or costs or other liabilities incurred by the Operator in accordance with the terms of the relevant Affiliate Contract shall not be a Disallowable Cost, unless and until such Qualified Consent is withdrawn and the Operator has not complied with its obligations under paragraph 8.10 (within the timescales stipulated by the Secretary of State in that paragraph), to vary such Affiliate Contract or enter into a replacement agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement.
- 8.10 If Qualified Consent is withdrawn then the Operator shall, within such timescale as the Secretary of State may reasonably require:
- (a) vary such Affiliate Contract as required by and to the satisfaction of the Secretary of State for the purposes of securing compliance with the Minimum Requirements and the Additional Requirements and the Operator shall ensure the process set out in paragraph 8.7 is followed in respect of any such variation; or
  - (b) terminate such Affiliate Contract and enter into a replacement agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement. To the extent that such replacement contract is an Affiliate Contract, the Operator shall ensure that the process set out in paragraph 8.7 is followed in respect of the re-procurement of any replacement agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement,
- and the timescale to be required by the Secretary of State under this paragraph 8.10 shall be no less than:
- (i) twenty eight (28) days from the date upon which such Qualified Consent is withdrawn, in circumstances where Qualified Consent is withdrawn due to the Affiliate Contract not complying with any Minimum Requirement; and
  - (ii) six (6) months from the date upon which such Qualified Consent is withdrawn, in circumstances where Qualified Consent is withdrawn due to the Affiliate Contract not complying with any Additional Requirement.
- 8.11 Any costs, expenses, and liabilities whatsoever incurred by the Operator in complying with the requirements of paragraph 8.10 and 8.13 shall be borne by the Operator as a Disallowable Cost and:
- (a) such costs shall include any legal, management and procurement costs, any termination costs and liabilities and any costs or expenses (including payments in the nature of a one off or upfront payment such as licence fees) associated with transitioning from any agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement to another, including facilitating and implementing data transfer (in a reasonably required format), knowledge transfer, the delivery up of any Operator assets and (where applicable) the return or deletion of data from the Affiliate Counterparty's systems; but
  - (b) if and to the extent that the payments to be made or any costs or other liabilities to be incurred by the Operator in accordance with the terms of a varied Affiliate Contract or a replacement agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement (as the case may be) that is procured in accordance with any of paragraphs 8.10(a), 8.10(b) or 8.13 (as applicable) are (in aggregate) higher than those which would otherwise have been payable or incurred under the applicable preceding Affiliate Contract then the resulting increase in cost shall not be a Disallowable Cost except that, to the extent that, in the Secretary of State's opinion (acting reasonably), such payments, costs or other liabilities include costs which might reasonably have been expected to be incurred under or in connection with the termination of or transition of the applicable preceding Affiliate Contract, then such costs will be Disallowable Costs.
- 8.12 If:
- (a) consent to enter into, or vary, an Affiliate Contract is refused by the Secretary of State; or



- (b) in respect of an Affiliate Contract in which Qualified Consent is withdrawn by the Secretary of State, the Operator has failed to comply with the requirements of paragraph 8.10 within the timescales stipulated by the Secretary of State in that paragraph,

then, in each case, without limiting any other rights the Secretary of State may have, any payments made or costs or liabilities incurred by the Operator under any such Affiliate Contract subsequent to any refusal of consent or expiry of such relevant timescales shall be a Disallowable Cost.

8.13 If the Operator is, at the Start Date, a party to an Affiliate Contract and such Affiliate Contract does not comply with the Minimum Requirements and Additional Requirements then the Operator shall, within such timescales as may be reasonably specified by Secretary of State, use all reasonable endeavours to vary or replace such Affiliate Contract so as to incorporate the Minimum Requirements and Additional Requirements. Paragraph 8.11 above shall apply in relation to any costs, expenses, and other liabilities whatsoever incurred by the Operator in complying with the requirements of this paragraph 8.13.

8.14 The Operator shall:

- (a) attend any additional meetings requested by the Secretary of State for the purposes of agreeing or determining any Contract Payments (if any) which are required to be calculated and paid pursuant to this Chapter 7.1 (Contract Payments) between the end of the Contract Period until the date of payment of the Final Closing Adjustments. Any relevant provisions in paragraphs 8.1 to 8.12 to such Contract Payments in question shall apply mutatis mutandis to any such meetings; and
- (b) within ten (10) days of the start of each Contract Year provide to the Secretary of State a document which lists:
  - (i) all the Affiliate Contracts which, as at the date upon which such list is provided, do not comply with the Minimum Requirements and Additional Requirements. The list shall, as a minimum, include a description of the goods and services supplied under such Affiliate Contract, the name of the Affiliate Counterparty, the commencement date and date of expiry of such Affiliate Contract and the details of all third party arrangements relied on by an Affiliate Counterparty for the purposes of delivering the goods and services under the Affiliate Contract); and
  - (ii) all the Group Contracts that the Operator has, as at the date upon which such list is provided, relied on for the provision of the Rail Services and which do not comply with the requirements of paragraph 8.6(a).

At the request of the Secretary of State, the Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State a copy of all Affiliate Contracts (including all third party arrangements relied on by an Affiliate Counterparty for the purposes of delivering the goods and services under the Affiliate Contract) and Group Contracts, in each case, as listed in the document supplied by the Operator under this paragraph 8.14(b).

**9. Working Capital Payments**

9.1 A Working Capital Payment shall become payable to the Operator as part of a Reporting Period’s Contract Payment where the Forecast Closing Cash Position for that Reporting Period is less than the Floor Cash Position. The value of the Working Capital Payment shall be calculated in accordance with paragraph 9.2 below.

9.2 The Working Capital Payment, if payable in respect of any Reporting Period, shall be equal to the following:

<b>WCP =</b>	<b>BCP – FCCP</b>
--------------	-------------------

**Where:**

<b>BCP</b>	the Base Cash Position.
------------	-------------------------

<b>FCCP</b>	the Forecast Closing Cash Position applicable to that Reporting Period.
-------------	---

- 9.3 If during a Reporting Period, the Operator becomes aware that in its reasonable opinion the Operator’s available Cash Balance will be insufficient to meets its liabilities that will fall due prior to the payment of the next Contract Payment (the “**Working Capital Shortfall**”), the Operator shall immediately:
- (a) notify the Secretary of State that a Working Capital Shortfall is likely to occur during that Reporting Period; and
  - (b) provide in or with that notice supporting information (including relevant accounts and calculations) evidencing the likely Working Capital Shortfall and the amount of additional working capital that the Operator considers it will require to ensure that the Working Capital Shortfall is remedied; and
  - (c) provide such further supporting information as the Secretary of State shall reasonably require.
- 9.4 The Parties acknowledge and agree that the payment of any amounts to remedy a Working Capital Shortfall shall be at the Secretary of State’s sole discretion. Where the Secretary of State elects to make a payment to remedy a Working Capital Shortfall, the Parties shall agree or where the Parties fail to agree, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine the amount required to remedy such Working Capital Shortfall (an “**Emergency Working Capital Payment**”) and when such Emergency Working Capital Payments are to be paid.
- 9.5 The Secretary of State shall pay to the Operator any Emergency Working Capital Payment in accordance with the timescales agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 9.4.
- 9.6 If the Operator fails to provide any information required by this paragraph 9, or any information in accordance with its obligations in Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*) or as otherwise reasonably required to enable the Secretary of State to calculate the amount of any Working Capital Payment or Emergency Working Capital Payment the Secretary of State shall (without prejudice to the Secretary of State’s other rights) be entitled (but not obliged) to determine the amount of WCP in accordance with this paragraph 9 by reference to the relevant information available to the Secretary of State at the time of such determination.
- 9.7 The Secretary of State shall at any time on reasonable prior notice to the Operator be entitled to adjust the value of the Ceiling Cash Position, the Base Cash Position and/or the Floor Cash Position provided that the Secretary of State shall have first consulted the Operator as to any such adjustments that the Secretary of State is considering making.

**10. Working Capital Repayment**

- 10.1 Subject to paragraph 11.3, a Working Capital Repayment shall become payable by the Operator as part of a Reporting Period’s Contract Payment where the Operator’s Forecast Closing Cash Position in that Reporting Period is greater than the Ceiling Cash Position. The value of the Working Capital Repayment shall be calculated in accordance with paragraph 10.2.
- 10.2 A Working Capital Repayment, if payable in any Reporting Period, shall be equal to the following:

<b>WCR =</b>	FCCP – BCP
--------------	------------

**Where:**

<b>FCCP</b>	the Forecast Closing Cash Position applicable to that Reporting Period.
<b>BCP</b>	the Base Cash Position.

**11. Final Working Capital Adjustment**

- 11.1 The value of FWCA shall equal:



<b>FWCA =</b>	<b>FWCP + TotalWCP – TotalWCR</b>
---------------	-----------------------------------

**Where:**

<b>FWCP</b>	First Working Capital Payment
<b>TotalWCP</b>	the aggregate of all Working Capital Payments and all Emergency Working Capital Payments paid to the Operator during the Contract Period
<b>TotalWCR</b>	the aggregate of all Working Capital Repayments paid by the Operator during the Contract Period

- 11.2 The value of FWCA shall be payable as an adjustment to the Contract Payment payable in the Reporting Period in which the Final Balance Sheet is delivered to the Secretary of State, provided that if the Final Balance Sheet is delivered more than ten (10) Weekdays after the first day of that Reporting Period, the value of FWCA shall become payable in the immediately following Reporting Period.
- 11.3 If the Operator fails to provide any information in accordance with its obligations in Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*) to enable the Secretary of State to calculate any Working Capital Repayment or the Final Working Capital Adjustment the Secretary of State shall (without prejudice to the Secretary of State's other rights) be entitled (but not obliged) to determine the amount of WCR or FWCA (as the case may be) in accordance with this paragraph 11 but by reference to the relevant information available to the Secretary of State at the time of such determination.

**12. Fixed Fee and Performance Based Fee**

- 12.1 Subject to paragraphs 12.2 to 12.4 (inclusive), the value of FFPBF shall equal:

<b>FFPBF =</b>	<b>FF + PBF</b>
----------------	-----------------

**Where:**

<b>FF</b>	means the value of the Fixed Fee for the relevant Contract Year being: $N \times V$ where <b>N</b> means the number of Reporting Periods that fall within that Contract Year; and <b>V</b> means £173,076.92 FF may only be a positive number.
<b>PBF</b>	means (subject to paragraph 12.4) the value of the Performance Based Fee for the relevant Contract Year calculated in accordance with Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> ). PBF may only be a positive number.

- 12.2 Subject to paragraph 12.4 and paragraph 12.5, the value of FFPBF shall be made as an adjustment to the next Contract Payment payable after the value of the Fixed Fee and Performance Based Fee for the relevant Contract Year has been finally (subject only to paragraph 2.3 (*Operational Performance*) of Appendix 5 (*Quantified Target Methodology*) of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*)) calculated pursuant to Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*).
- 12.3 FFPBF shall be calculated on the basis that no interest is due pursuant to paragraph 3 of this Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*).

- 12.4 Where a PBF Assessment Period has been extended pursuant to Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*) and such PBF Assessment Period extends across two Contract Years, when calculating FFBPF:
- (a) the value of PBF for the first of those Contract Years shall be zero and the FFBPF for that first Contract Year shall be made as an adjustment to the next Contract Payment payable after the Actual Annual Losses for that Contract Year have been agreed between the Parties or determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 8.1(a)(viii); and
  - (c) the value of PBF for the second of those Contract Years shall be the value of the PBF for the extended PBF Assessment Period and the FFBPF for that second Contract Year shall payable as an adjustment to the next Contract Payment payable after the value of the Fixed Fee and Performance Based Fee has been finally (subject only to paragraph 2.3 (*Operational Performance*) of Appendix 5 (*Quantified Target Methodology*) of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*)) calculated pursuant to Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*).
- 12.5 Nothing in this paragraph 12 shall limit the rights and remedies of the Secretary of State in respect of any Potential Annual Losses or Actual Annual Losses. The Secretary of State's rights and remedies in respect of any Potential Annual Losses and/or Actual Annual Losses shall include claims pursuant to and in accordance with the Funding Deed.

### **13. Further Secretary of State's Rights in relation to Accounting Matters**

- 13.1 Where the Secretary of State reasonably considers that in calculating any matter which impacts the calculation of a Contract Payment Component, any particular item or transaction has not been accounted for on a reasonable basis (including where the accounting treatment looks to the form rather than the substance, of the item or transaction) and having regard to all circumstances, including GAAP (as may be amended from time to time), the Secretary of State shall be entitled to require it to be accounted for on such other basis as the Secretary of State may reasonably determine and notify to the Operator provided that the Secretary of State shall not be entitled pursuant to this paragraph 13 to alter the accounting policies of the Operator from those set out in the Record of Assumptions and applied through the Financial Cost Model.
- 13.2 Where the Annual Audited Accounts and consequently the Audited Accounts Reconciliation in relation to any previous Contract Year are subject to adjustment or restatement the Secretary of State shall have a discretion to require the recalculation of any affected Contract Payment Component for the relevant Contract Year and to require that the Operator shall pay to the Secretary of State the amount which is the difference between:
- (a) any amount actually paid to the Secretary of State or adjusted in favour of the Secretary of State and the amount that would have been paid or adjusted had the affected Contract Payment Component been originally calculated on the basis that such adjustment or revision was included in the Annual Audited Accounts and Audited Accounts Reconciliation; and/or
  - (b) any amount actually paid by the Secretary of State or adjusted in favour of the Operator and the amount that would have been paid or adjusted had the affected Contract Payment Component been originally calculated on the basis that such adjustment or revision was included in the Annual Audited Accounts and Audited Accounts Reconciliation.
- 13.3 Any payment due to the Secretary of State shall be paid by the Operator within thirty (30) days of the Secretary of State notifying the Operator that the Secretary of State requires a payment to be made pursuant to this paragraph 13.

### **14. Indexation**

- 14.1 For the purposes of calculating the Contract Payment or any other payment under this Chapter 7.1 only, it is agreed that the Contract Payment and its components, any sum shown in any Cost Budget for any given Contract Year (or other period) and any sum shown in any Amendable Financial Target shall not, as part of such calculation, be subject to indexation or adjustment to take into account the effect of inflation.

### **15. Further Obligations of the Operator**

- 15.1 Except to the extent otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State, the Operator will act as a Good and Efficient Operator in all respects in connection with the operation of this Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*).
- 15.2 The Operator shall not, without the consent of the Secretary of State, at any time be a party to any arrangement of any kind whatsoever under which:
- (a) any amounts which the Operator might otherwise have received from a third party are reduced, waived or otherwise suppressed; and/or
  - (b) any amounts which the Operator might otherwise be properly obliged to pay or be liable are increased,
- in either case for or in connection with any benefit or advantage of any kind being obtained by any Affiliate of the Operator from that third party.
- 15.3 Without limiting any other constraints which operate by virtue of any other part of this Contract or otherwise, no application shall be made or other step taken by or on behalf of the Operator in respect of the winding up or striking off of the Operator (or any similar or analogous process) and nor shall the Operator permit or facilitate the same:
- (a) until all the adjustments and payments for which this Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) provides have been made and discharged in full; and/or
  - (b) without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State.
- 15.4 The Operator shall, in the performance of its obligations under, and when incurring any expenditure in connection with, this Contract comply with the requirements of the Procurement Policy and the Operator's Expenses Policy.
- 15.5 The Secretary of State shall be entitled to notify the Operator of any future initiatives or proposals that the Secretary of State considers may have the potential to reduce certain Actual Costs below the costs in the Cost Budget as most recently Placed in Escrow and the Operator shall, acting reasonably and in good faith discuss with the Secretary of State all such matters as are relevant to the possible implementation of such initiatives.
- 15.6 The Operator shall, consistent with its obligation to act as a Good and Efficient Operator, generally use all reasonable endeavours to:
- (a) maximise revenue and minimise or mitigate the impacts of any factors leading to revenue being reduced or increasing less quickly than the Operator had forecast; and
  - (b) reduce costs and minimise or mitigate the impacts of any factors leading to costs being increased or decreasing less quickly than the Operator had forecast,
- unless otherwise directed in writing by the Secretary of State, provided that where compliance with paragraph (a) in relation to revenue will have consequential impacts on costs and/or compliance with (b) in relation to costs will have consequential impacts on revenue, the Operator's obligation will be to use all reasonable endeavours to optimise in combination the revenue and cost position.
- 15.7 The Operator shall proactively consider and implement actions to meet its obligations pursuant to paragraph 15.6 above, provided that where the consent of the Secretary of State is required to any action pursuant to the terms of this Contract, the Operator shall seek the Secretary of State's consent as soon as reasonably practicable and shall only pursue such action once consent has been provided.
- 15.8 The Secretary of State shall have the right to propose to the Operator measures that the Operator could take to maximise revenue and minimise or mitigate the impacts of any factors leading to revenue being reduced or increasing less quickly than the Operator had forecast, such measures being consistent with a train operator bearing revenue risk in relation to its rail services and acting in an economical and efficient manner. The Operator shall give reasonable consideration to any such measures proposed by the Secretary of State and shall either implement such actions or shall explain why in its reasonable opinion such measures would not be appropriate.

## 16. Relevant Contracts

- 16.1 For the purposes of this paragraph 16, a "**Relevant Contract**" shall mean:

- (a) any Key Contract; or
- (b) any contract with a value in excess of [REDACTED<sup>4</sup>],  
to which the Operator is a party as at the expiry date of the Previous Agreement.
- 16.2 Subject to paragraph 16.3, the Operator shall indemnify the Secretary of State against any costs, expenses or liabilities that the Secretary of State incurs (including by way of any increase to the amounts which the Secretary of State is liable to pay under this Contract) arising from the termination of a Relevant Contract and/or any variation to the terms of a Relevant Contract in either case as a consequence of the exercise of any rights that the counterparty to that Relevant Contract may have to require the termination or variation of that Relevant Contract on termination or expiry of the Previous Agreement.
- 16.3 The Operator shall not be liable to the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 16.2 if the Operator has, prior to the date of this Contract, provided to the Secretary of State (with specific reference to this paragraph 16) full details regarding the rights, referred to in paragraph 16.2, of a counterparty to a Relevant Contract and the Secretary of State expressly agrees that the Operator is not required to indemnify the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 16.2
- 16.4 The Operator shall indemnify the Secretary of State against any costs, expenses or liabilities that the Secretary of State incurs (including by way of any increase to the amounts which the Secretary of State is liable to pay under this Contract) as a result of the termination of a contract:
- (a) to which the Operator is a party;
- (b) having a term which exceeds the Contract Term; and
- (c) which does not provide a right for the Operator to terminate that contract on termination or expiry of this Contract, without costs or other liabilities accruing,
- provided that in respect of any such contract to which the Operator is a party as at the date of this Contract, the Operator shall not be liable to the Secretary of State pursuant to this paragraph 16.4 if the Operator has, prior to the date of this Contract, provided to the Secretary of State full details of such contract and the costs and liabilities arising thereunder and the Secretary of State expressly agrees that the Operator is not required to indemnify the Secretary of State in accordance with this paragraph 16.4.
- 16.5 Subject to paragraph 16.6, the Operator shall ensure that any agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement entered into on or after the Start Date to which it is a party and which incorporates provisions that provide that expiry or earlier termination of this Contract shall be an event of default shall be expressed such that the counterparty under such agreement, contract, licence or arrangement shall only be entitled to terminate if the future rights, obligations and liabilities of the Operator under such agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement are not transferred by the Secretary of State to a Successor Operator under the Transfer Scheme.
- 16.6 Paragraph 16.5 shall not apply in respect of Rolling Stock Related Contracts, Access Agreements and/or any other contracts, licences and arrangements in relation to which the Secretary of State has expressly agreed that paragraph 16.5 will not apply.

## 17. Closing Adjustments

### Interim Closing Adjustment

- 17.1 Following the delivery of each Interim Closing Accounts Reconciliation the Parties shall seek to agree any amounts payable by the Secretary of State to the Operator or the Operator to the Secretary of State relating to this Contract that have not been taken account of in any previous Contract Payments or any previous Interim Closing Adjustment. If the Parties do not agree

---

<sup>4</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

such amounts, the Secretary of State may (but shall not be obliged to) reasonably determine any amounts not so agreed on the basis of the information then available to the Secretary of State. The amounts agreed or determined pursuant to this paragraph 17.1 shall be the Interim Closing Adjustment.

#### **Final Closing Adjustment**

- 17.2 Following the delivery of the Final Closing Accounts Reconciliation the Parties shall seek to agree any amounts payable by the Secretary of State to the Operator or the Operator to the Secretary of State relating to this Contract that have not been taken account of in any previous Contract Payments or any previous Interim Closing Adjustment. If the Parties do not agree such items, the Secretary of State may (but shall not be obliged to) reasonably determine any that are not so agreed on the basis of the information then available to the Secretary of State. The amounts agreed or determined pursuant to this paragraph 17.2 shall be the Final Closing Adjustment.

#### **Miscellaneous**

- 17.3 If the Operator fails to provide information in accordance with its obligations in Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*) or as otherwise reasonably required to enable the Secretary of State to calculate the amount of any Interim Closing Adjustment or the Final Closing Adjustment, the Secretary of State shall (without prejudice to the Secretary of State's other rights) be entitled (but not obliged) to determine the amount of the relevant Interim Closing Adjustment or the Final Closing Adjustment by reference to the relevant information available to the Secretary of State at the time of such determination.
- 17.4 The Parties acknowledge that the agreement or determination of each Interim Closing Adjustment and the Final Closing Adjustment will occur after the end of the Contract Period and the provisions of paragraph 2.6 shall apply.
- 17.5 Each ICA and the FCA shall be made as an adjustment to the next Contract Payment payable after the agreement or determination of each ICA and the FCA pursuant to this paragraph 17.
- 17.6 Subject to paragraphs 17.8 and 17.9 and the Operator's compliance with its obligations pursuant to paragraph 1.1 and 1.2 of Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*) in relation to the period following expiry of this Contract, the Parties agree that any Actual Costs incurred by the Operator following expiry of this Contract and recorded pursuant to paragraph 1.1 and 1.2 of Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*) shall be amounts payable by the Secretary of State to the Operator for the purposes of paragraph 17.
- 17.7 The Parties agree that any Actual Revenue received or receivable by the Operator following expiry of this Contract shall be amounts payable by the Operator to the Secretary of State for the purposes of paragraph 17.
- 17.8 Prior to incurring any Actual Costs in any year following the expiry of this Contract, the Operator shall provide an expenditure plan to the Secretary of State which sets out the Actual Costs which the Operator expects to incur in such year and the Parties shall meet to discuss such expenditure plan.
- 17.9 If at any point during any year following expiry of this Contract, the Operator foresees that the Actual Costs to be incurred by the Operator during such year will be or are reasonably likely to be in excess of the Actual Costs set out in the expenditure plan for such year submitted pursuant to paragraph 17.8, the Operator shall notify the Secretary of State and the Parties shall meet to discuss the relevant expenditure.

#### **18. Advisory Support Costs Payment**

- 18.1 The Parties shall seek to agree the amount of the Advisory Support Costs payable by the Secretary of State. If the Parties fail to agree all or any part of the Advisory Support Costs, the Secretary of State may (but shall not be obliged to) reasonably determine any that are not so agreed on the basis of the information then available to the Secretary of State. The value of the Advisory Support Costs agreed or determined pursuant to this paragraph 18.1 shall be the ASCP.
- 18.2 The value of ASCP shall be made as an adjustment to the next Contract Payment payable after the value of the ASCP has been agreed or determined pursuant to paragraph 18.1.



**APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 7.1**

**Calculation of Periodic Contract Payments (PCP)**

**1. Periodic Contract Payments**

1.1 This Appendix 1 (*Calculation of Periodic Contract Payments (PCP)*) to Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) sets out how the Periodic Contract Payment (PCP) shall be calculated.

1.2 In carrying out the calculations in this Appendix 1 (*Calculation of Periodic Contract Payments (PCP)*):

- (a) Actual Costs and the Cost Budget shall be expressed as positive numbers where they are paid or payable by the Operator; and
- (b) Actual Revenue and Forecast Revenue shall be expressed as positive numbers where they are received or receivable by the Operator

1.3 In this Appendix 1 (*Calculation of Periodic Contract Payments (PCP)*) to Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*):

<b>“Current Reporting Period”</b>	means the Reporting Period for which the Periodic Contract Payment (PCP) calculation is being made;
<b>“Preceding Reporting Period”</b>	means the Reporting Period immediately before the Current Reporting Period;
<b>“Current Year”</b>	means the Contract Year which contains the Current Reporting Period;
<b>“Preceding Year”</b>	means the Contract Year immediately before the Current Year; and
<b>“YT2PP”</b>	means calculated for all Reporting Periods in the Current Year up to and including the Reporting Period that is two Reporting Periods before the Current Reporting Period.

**2. Calculation of Periodic Contract Payment**

2.1 The Periodic Contract Payment (PCP) (which may be a positive or a negative number and therefore may be payable by the Secretary of State or the Operator) shall be calculated in relation to each Reporting Period after the Start Date as follows:

<b>PCP =</b>	<b>ICP + CostADJ – IRP – RevADJ + AADJ</b>
--------------	--

<b>ICP</b> (initial cost payment)*	means the initial costs payment being an amount equal to the budgeted costs for the Current Reporting Period as shown in the Cost Budget as most recently Placed in Escrow.
<b>CostADJ</b> (periodic cost adjustment) (i.e. the adjustment for the difference between the initial cost payment and	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) for the first and second Reporting Periods of the first Contract Year, £0 (zero);</li> <li>(b) for the <u>first and second</u> Reporting Period of the <u>second and subsequent</u> Contract Years; <math>CAC_{py}</math>, <u>minus</u> <math>PICP_{py}</math>, <u>minus</u> <math>PCostADJ_{py}</math> i.e.:  <math display="block">CostADJ = CAC_{py} - PICP_{py} - PCostADJ_{py}</math> </li> </ul>

<p>the relevant costs actually incurred, in the relevant period)</p>	<p>(c) for the <u>third and subsequent</u> Reporting Periods in each Contract Year; <b>CAC<sub>cy</sub> minus PICP<sub>cy</sub> minus PCostADJ<sub>cy</sub></b> i.e.:</p> $CostADJ = CAC_{cy} - PICP_{cy} - PCostADJ_{cy}$
<p><b>PICP<sub>cy</sub></b> (previous initial cost payments (current year to two reporting periods before the current reporting period))</p>	<p>means the sum of the initial cost payments (calculated as <b>ICP</b>) YT2PP. For the avoidance of doubt, in calculating <b>PICP<sub>cy</sub></b>, each <b>ICP</b> is the amount as at the date of its original calculation (i.e. each <b>ICP</b> shall not be recalculated to take account of any Cost Budget Changes).</p>
<p><b>PICP<sub>py</sub></b> (previous initial cost payments (previous year))</p>	<p>means :</p> <p>(a) for the <u>first</u> Reporting Period of the <u>second and subsequent</u> Contract Years the sum of the initial cost payments (calculated as <b>ICP</b>) for all Reporting Periods <u>other than the final</u> Reporting Period of the <u>Preceding Year</u>; and</p> <p>(b) for the <u>second</u> Reporting Period of the <u>second and subsequent</u> Contract Years the sum of the initial cost payments (calculated as <b>ICP</b>) for <u>all</u> Reporting Periods of the <u>Preceding Year</u>.</p> <p>For the avoidance of doubt, in calculating <b>PICP<sub>py</sub></b>, each <b>ICP</b> is the amount as at the date of its original calculation (i.e. each <b>ICP</b> shall <u>not</u> be recalculated to take account of any Cost Budget Changes).</p>
<p><b>CAC<sub>cy</sub></b> (cumulative actual costs (current year to two reporting periods before the current reporting period))</p>	<p>means the sum of <b>CAC<sub>cyCCat</sub></b> for all Cost Categories <b>CCat</b>, <i>where CAC<sub>cyCCat</sub> means, for each and every Cost Category CCat, the lower of:</i></p> <p>(a) the sum of Actual Costs for Cost Category <b>CCat</b>, YT2PP; and</p> <p>(b) the sum of budgeted costs for Cost Category <b>CCat</b>, YT2PP, as shown in the Cost Budget (as most recently <u>Placed in Escrow</u>).</p>
<p><b>CAC<sub>py</sub></b> (cumulative actual costs (preceding year))</p>	<p>means the sum of <b>CAC<sub>pyCCat</sub></b> for all Cost Categories <b>CCat</b>, <i>where CAC<sub>pyCCat</sub> means, for each and every Cost Category CCat:</i></p> <p>(a) for the <u>first</u> Reporting Period of the <u>second and subsequent</u> Contract Years the <u>lower of:</u></p> <p>(i) the sum of Actual Costs for Cost Category <b>CCat</b>, in the Reporting Periods <u>other than the final</u> Reporting Period of the <u>Preceding Year</u>; and</p> <p>(ii) the sum of budgeted costs for Cost Category <b>CCat</b>, for the Reporting Periods <u>other than the final</u> Reporting Period of the <u>Preceding Year</u>, as shown in the Cost Budget (as most recently Placed in Escrow for that <u>Preceding Year</u>); and</p> <p>(b) for the <u>second</u> Reporting Period of the <u>second and subsequent</u> Contract Years the <u>lower of:</u></p> <p>(i) the sum of Actual Costs for Cost Category <b>CCat</b> in <u>all</u> Reporting Periods in the <u>Preceding Year</u>; and</p> <p>(ii) the sum of budgeted costs for Cost Category <b>CCat</b>, for all Reporting Periods in the <u>Preceding Year</u>, as shown in the Cost</p>



	Budget (as most recently <u>Placed in Escrow</u> for that <u>Preceding Year</u> ).
<b>CCat</b> (Cost Category)	means each and every Cost Category in the Cost Budget as most recently Placed in Escrow.
<b>PCostADJ<sub>cy</sub></b> (previous periodic cost adjustments (current year))	means: (a) for the third Reporting Period of each Contract Year, £0 (zero); (b) for the fourth and subsequent Reporting Periods of each Contract Year, the sum of all previous periodic cost adjustments (calculated as <b>CostADJ</b> ) calculated for the third and subsequent Reporting Periods in the Current Year up to and including the Preceding Reporting Period.  For the avoidance of doubt, in calculating <b>PCostADJ<sub>cy</sub></b> : (i) each <b>CostADJ</b> is the amount as at the date of its original calculation (i.e. each <b>CostADJ</b> shall not be recalculated to take account of any Cost Budget Changes); and (ii) the calculation of <b>PCostADJ<sub>cy</sub></b> does not include the periodic cost adjustment <b>CostADJ</b> calculated for the first or second Reporting Period of the Current Year.
<b>PCostADJ<sub>py</sub></b> (previous periodic cost adjustments (preceding year excluding RP 1 and 2))	means: (a) for the first Reporting Period of the <u>second and subsequent</u> Contract Years the sum of all periodic cost adjustments (calculated as <b>CostADJ</b> ) calculated for the <u>third and subsequent</u> Reporting Periods of the <u>Preceding Year</u> (if any); and (b) for the <u>second</u> Reporting Period of the <u>second and subsequent</u> Contract Years the sum of all periodic cost adjustments (calculated as <b>CostADJ</b> ) calculated for the <u>third and subsequent</u> Reporting Periods of the <u>Preceding Year</u> (if any) PLUS the plus the cost adjustment (calculated as <b>CostADJ</b> ) calculated for the <u>first</u> Reporting Period of the <u>Current Year</u> (if any).  For the avoidance of doubt, in calculating <b>PCostADJ<sub>py</sub></b> : (i) each <b>CostADJ</b> is the amount as at the date of its previous calculation (i.e. each <b>CostADJ</b> shall not be recalculated to take account of any Cost Budget Changes); (ii) the calculation of <b>PCostADJ<sub>py</sub></b> does not include the periodic cost adjustment <b>CostADJ</b> calculated for the first or second Reporting Period of the Preceding Year; (iii) for the first Reporting Period of the second and subsequent Contract Years if there was only one or two Reporting Periods in the previous Contract Year, then <b>PCostADJ<sub>py</sub></b> shall be £0 (zero); and (iv) for the second Reporting Period of the second and subsequent Contract Years if there was only one Reporting Periods in the previous Contract Year, then <b>PCostADJ<sub>py</sub></b> shall be £0 (zero).
<b>IRP</b> (initial revenue payment)	means the initial revenue payment being an amount equal to the Forecast Revenue for the Current Reporting Period as most recently Placed in Escrow.
<b>RevADJ</b>	means the periodic revenue adjustment, being:

<p>(periodic revenue adjustment)</p>	<p>(a) for the first and second Reporting Period of the first Contract Year, £0 (zero); or</p> <p>(b) for all subsequent Reporting Periods, the Actual Revenue for the Reporting Period that is two Reporting Periods before the Current Reporting Period <u>minus</u> Forecast Revenue for the Reporting Period that is two Reporting Periods before the Current Reporting Period. For the avoidance of doubt:</p> <p>(i) in the first Reporting Period of each Contract Year after the first Contract Year, the relevant Reporting Period will be the penultimate Reporting Period of the Preceding Contract Year; and</p> <p>(ii) in the second Reporting Period of each Contract Year after the first Contract Year, the relevant Reporting Period will be the final Reporting Period of the Preceding Contract Year.</p> <p>(Without prejudice to the provisions applying to the calculation of <b>AADJRev</b>), in calculating <b>RevADJ</b>, each amount of Forecast Revenue is the amount as at the date of its original calculation (i.e. each <b>RevADJ</b> shall not be recalculated to take account of any revised Forecast Revenue).</p>
<p><b>AADJ</b> (annual adjustment (costs and revenue))</p>	<p>means for the Current Year <math>AADJCost</math> <u>minus</u> <math>AADJRev</math>:</p> $AADJ = AADJCost - AADJRev$ <p>where</p> <p><b>AADJCost</b> means:</p> <p>(a) an amount equal to what <b>CACpy</b> would have been, had it been calculated using Actual Costs as shown in the Audited Accounts Reconciliation for the Preceding Year (to be provided pursuant to paragraph 1.5(b) of Chapter 7.3 (<i>Management Information</i>));</p> <p><u>minus</u></p> <p>(b) <b>CACpy</b> as most recently calculated for the Preceding Year (i.e. as calculated in the second Reporting Period after the end of the Preceding Year); and</p> <p><b>AADJRev</b> means:</p> <p>(a) the total Actual Revenue as shown in the Audited Accounts Reconciliation for the Preceding Year (to be provided pursuant to paragraph 1.5(b) of Chapter 7.3 (<i>Management Information</i>));</p> <p><u>minus</u></p> <p>(b) the total Actual Revenue as taken into account when calculating <b>RevADJ</b> for the Preceding Year (i.e. as calculated by taking the sum of the <b>RevADJ</b> values calculated from the third Reporting Period of the Preceding Year to the second Reporting Period after the end of the Preceding Year).</p> <p>Provided always that for the First Year (where there is no Preceding Year) <b>AADJ</b> shall be £0 (zero).</p> <p>For the avoidance of doubt:</p> <p>(i) in calculating <math>AADJCost</math>, account shall be taken of any costs which were included in <b>CACpy</b> as last calculated but which have since been identified as Disallowable Costs or as not being Actual Costs;</p> <p>(ii) in calculating <math>AADJRev</math>, account shall be taken of any Revenue Foregone which was not included in the total Actual Revenue as last calculated but which have since been identified; and</p>

	(iii) in calculating AADJ, account shall be taken of any amounts agreed or determined pursuant to the provisions of paragraph 3.1 of this Chapter 7.1 (Contract Payments) which have not already been reflected in Contract Payments made.
--	--

\* Explanatory note: The descriptions in parenthesis in column one of this table are included to assist the reader only and shall not affect the meaning of these definitions.

**3. Annual Adjustment (AADJ)**

3.1 The Annual Adjustment (AADJ) shall be included in the next calculation of the Periodic Contract Payment (PCP) which is made after the agreement or determination of the amount of the Annual Adjustment For any other Reporting Period, AADJ shall equal zero (£0).

3.2 For the avoidance of doubt:

- (a) it is not intended that the calculation of AADJ will be carried out sooner than the third Reporting Period of the Current Year; and
- (b) it is intended that the final calculation of AADJ will be carried out after the end of the Contract Period.

**APPENDIX 2 TO CHAPTER 7.1****Disallowable Costs**

The following shall be Disallowable Costs:

1. Any costs that were incurred otherwise than in accordance those expected to be incurred by a Good and Efficient Operator. Costs likely to be considered to be inconsistent with those expected of a Good and Efficient Operator include:
  - (a) costs that do not reflect the contracted position under:
    - (i) existing contracts as at the Start Date;
    - (ii) new contracts entered in compliance with the Procurement Policy or
    - (iii) variations in existing contracts made in accordance with the Procurement Policy;
  - (b) “arrangement fees” (or similar) paid or payable to Affiliates of the Operator for or in relation to availability of working capital or any other lending or financial support;
  - (c) interest paid or payable to the extent in excess of a market rate that an Good and Efficient Operator would pay;
  - (d) the amount by which the Purchase Price payable by the Operator to the Successor Operator under the Supplemental Agreement at the end of the Contract Period is higher than it would have been but for the Operator:
    - (i) incurring Disallowable Costs; or
    - (ii) otherwise acting other than as Good and Efficient Operator; and
  - (e) any costs where the Operator has been unable to provide evidence to the satisfaction of the Secretary of State that such costs or expenditure have been properly incurred and are consistent with the Operator acting as a Good and Efficient Operator.
2. Any bonuses, rewards or discretionary benefits paid to any staff, directors or officers under any schemes which have not previously been approved by the Secretary of State (in the absolute discretion of the Secretary of State) in writing.
3. Any expenses, disbursements or equivalent costs (to which the Operator’s Expenses Policy would apply) which are incurred other than in compliance with the Operator’s Expenses Policy.
4. Costs incurred or to be incurred by the Operator in relation to:
  - (a) developing any Remedial Plan;
  - (b) implementing any Remedial Plan or any other plans to remedy performance shortfalls (including Action Plans, NRPS Improvement Plans, TT Actions Plans, Service Quality Improvement Proposals, Remedial Agreements and/or Business Plan KPI Improvement Plans), but notwithstanding paragraph 1 above only to the extent that the total costs incurred by the Operator relating to the relevant obligations (including any costs incurred prior to or during the course of implementing the Remedial Plan or other plan) exceed those that a Good and Efficient Operator would have incurred in connection with complying with the obligation to which the Remedial Plan or other plan relates.
5. Costs incurred or to be incurred by the Operator (including where payment is made to a Successor Operator) in removing Transitory Branding under paragraph 2 (*Removal of Branding*) of Chapter 9.3 (*Branding and Intellectual Property*) if and to the extent that the Transitory Branding in question was applied (i) during the Contract Term and (ii) without the express written prior consent of the Secretary of State.
6. Costs incurred or to be incurred by the Operator in relation to the audit costs referred to in paragraph 4.4 (*Right to Inspect*) of Chapter 1.1 (*Organisation and Management*).

7. Costs incurred or to be incurred by the Operator in meeting FirstGroup plc audit requirements to the extent these are additional to audit costs which would otherwise be incurred by the Operator.
8. Costs incurred or to be incurred by the Operator in relation to any reasonable enforcement costs incurred by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 5.7 (*Enforcement Costs*) of Chapter 9.7 (*Miscellaneous Legal Terms*).
9. Any cost that the Operator may incur as a result of:
  - (a) it failing to comply with its obligations under or in connection with this Contract (including the grant thereof) or the Previous Agreement;
  - (b) it failing to comply with its obligations under or in connection with any agreements which are ancillary to this Contract, including the Supplemental Agreement and/or the Direct Award Collateral Agreement (and/or a Transfer Agreement pursuant to (and as defined in) the Direct Award Collateral Agreement);
  - (c) it failing to comply with any applicable Laws, to the extent this gives rise to a criminal liability. Paragraph (a) above shall apply in respect of any other consequence of a failure by the Operator to comply with any applicable Laws; or
  - (d) indemnifying the Secretary of State for any matter which the Operator is obliged to indemnify the Secretary of State pursuant to this Contract, the Previous Agreement or any agreements which are ancillary to this Contract, including the Supplemental Agreement and/or the Direct Award Collateral Agreement (and/or a Transfer Agreement pursuant to (and as defined in) the Direct Award Collateral Agreement).
10. Any Facilitation Fee or Administration Fee pursuant to paragraph 2 (*Change of Control and Facilitation Fee*) of Chapter 1.1 (*Organisation and Management*).
11. Any costs incurred by the Operator arising out of or in connection with a lawful demand by the Secretary of State under Early Termination Indemnity Agreement, Season Ticket Bond or under the Funding Deed or under the Funding Deed Bond (as defined in the Funding Deed) or the Early Termination Indemnity Agreement Bond (as defined in the Early Termination Indemnity Agreement).
12. Costs of developing and protecting any intellectual property rights which are not owned by the Secretary of State or the Operator or are so owned, but where the costs are not ancillary to an activity included in the Cost Budget.
13. Except with the prior agreement of the Secretary of State, marketing or advertising costs incurred.
14. Fines imposed by government or regulatory bodies.
15. Costs of financial hedging, or gains/losses from hedging activity except with prior agreement from the Secretary of State.
16. Any costs incurred by the Operator in pursuing or defending any claim against the Secretary of State in respect of or in connection with this Contract or the Previous Agreement or otherwise.
17. Except with the prior agreement of the Secretary of State (not to be unreasonably withheld), any costs, charges, penalties, compensation or similar payments that the Operator may incur as a result of the termination of any contract or other arrangement, other than any costs, charges, penalties, compensations or similar payments the Operator may incur as a result of termination of any Rolling Stock Related Contract due to:
  - (a) expiry of this Contract on the Expiry Date; or
  - (b) early termination of this Contract where such early termination is as a result of an annulment, setting aside or declaration of ineffectiveness in relation to this Contract following a successful Challenge (as defined in the Direct Award Collateral Agreement).
18. Except with the prior agreement of the Secretary of State, losses on disposals of Fixed or Non-Current Assets.

19. Capital expenditure to the extent that the capital cost of acquisition of the relevant assets was (or was assumed in the Modelling Suite) to be funded by a third party.
20. Costs of any audit pursuant to paragraph 1.9 (*Secretary of State Audit*) of Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*).
21. Any costs and expenses (including legal and accountancy costs) incurred in connection with the process pursuant to which this Contract was entered into and/or the process of bidding to become, or becoming, a Successor Operator in relation to any subsequent procurement, other than any Advisory Support Costs agreed or determined pursuant to paragraph 18 of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*).
22. Compensating the Secretary of State for all reasonable costs incurred by the Secretary of State in carrying out enhanced monitoring of the Operator's performance of any relevant obligations pursuant to paragraph 6.1 of Chapter 9.4.3 (*Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the National Rail Contract*).
23. Interest paid or payable on negative cash balances unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State.
24. Any costs incurred in connection with discharging its obligations following an early termination of this Contract in accordance with Chapter 9.5 (*Exit Management*) other than where such early termination is as a result of the occurrence of a Termination Event under paragraphs 2.1 or 2.5 of Chapter 9.4.1 (*Events of Default and Termination Events*) or as a result of an annulment, setting aside or declaration of ineffectiveness in relation to this Contract following a successful Challenge (as defined in the Direct Award Collateral Agreement).
25. Any increase in pensions contributions required to be made by the Operator as a result of any breach by the Operator of its obligations under Chapter 7.6 (*Railways Pension Scheme*).
26. Any reimbursement of the costs of an SoS Audit under paragraph 14.2(a) (*Consequences of a Failed Audit*) of Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*).
27. The costs of any additional Service Quality Inspections under paragraph 14.2(b)(i) (*Consequences of a Failed Audit*) of Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*).
28. The costs of a further Independent Service Quality Audit or a further SoS Audit under paragraph 14.2(b)(ii) (*Consequences of a Failed Audit*) of Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*).
29. Any reimbursement of the costs of a SoS Service Quality Inspection under paragraph 14.2(b)(iii)(C) (*Consequences of a Failed Audit*) of Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*).
30. Any payments, costs or other liabilities owed to Affiliates of the Operator, unless under an Approved Affiliate Contract and provided that, with regard to any Affiliate Contract in respect of which Qualified Consent has been granted or deemed such Qualified Consent has not been withdrawn and the Operator has failed to comply with its obligations under paragraph 8.10 (*Affiliate Trading*) of this Chapter 7.1.
31. Any legal costs incurred in relation to any negotiation between the Operator and the Secretary of State in connection with the agreement of:
  - (a) the Business Plan for any Subsequent Business Plan Year; or
  - (b) the Escrow Documents during the Contract Term.
32. Any costs incurred in connection with the variation, termination or replacement (as applicable) of any Affiliate Contract pursuant to paragraph 8.10 and/or paragraph 8.13 (*Affiliate Trading*) of this Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) (including such costs referenced in paragraph 8.11(a) and any other costs stated to be Disallowable Costs in paragraph 8.11(b) of this Chapter 7.1), other than any costs which are expressed to not be Disallowable Costs in accordance with paragraph 8.11(b) of this Chapter 7.1.

- 33. Any other costs, payments, expenses, fees, liabilities or other amounts expressly identified as Disallowable Costs in this Contract and any other costs which this Contract provides shall be at the Operator's cost (including any amounts which the Operator is required to pay or reimburse to the Secretary of State).



## Chapter 7.2

### Performance Based Fee

#### 1. Maximum Fee

The Performance Based Fee attributable to any given PBF Assessment Period shall not exceed  $£M*N$  (the “**Maximum Performance Based Fee**” or “**MPBF**”), where:

<b>M</b>	means £403,846.15; and
<b>N</b>	means the number of Reporting Periods that fall within the relevant PBF Assessment Period.

#### 2. Calculation of the Performance Based Fee

2.1 The Performance Based Fee in relation to any given PBF Assessment Period shall be calculated in accordance with this paragraph 2.

2.2 The Performance Based Fee for each PBF Assessment Period shall be calculated as the sum of the individual PBF Components calculated and weighted in accordance with the relevant Applicable Assessment Methodologies, in accordance with the following formula:

$£PBF =$	$OP + CS + SQ + FIN + BM$
----------	---------------------------

where:

<b>£PBF</b>	shall have a value between zero and the Maximum Performance Based Fee in relation to the relevant PBF Assessment Period;
<b>OP</b>	means the sum (in pounds sterling) that is zero or a positive number representing the Operational Performance Fee calculated in accordance with the Applicable Assessment Methodology;
<b>CS</b>	means the sum (in pounds sterling) that is zero or a positive number representing the Customer Satisfaction Fee calculated in accordance with the Applicable Assessment Methodology;
<b>SQ</b>	means the sum (in pounds sterling) that is zero or a positive number representing the Service Quality Standards Fee calculated in accordance with the Applicable Assessment Methodology;
<b>FIN</b>	means the sum (in pounds sterling) that is zero or a positive number representing the Financial Performance Fee determined in accordance with paragraph 2.3; and
<b>BM</b>	means the sum (in pounds sterling) that is zero or a positive number representing the Business Management Fee calculated in accordance with the Applicable Assessment Methodology.

2.3 For each relevant PBF Assessment Period the Secretary of State shall calculate the value of the Performance Based Fee attributable to the Financial Performance Fee in accordance with the formula set out below, provided that:

- (a) the values of FIN(Cost), FIN(Revenue), FIN(Profit), and FIN(TT) (as applicable) shall each be determined in accordance with the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee; and

- (b) if the FP TT QTM is not applied pursuant to the relevant Applicable Assessment Methodology then the value attributable to FIN(TT) shall be zero and such component shall be removed from the relevant formula.

Applicable Assessment Methodology	£FIN =
FP Scorecard Methodology, FP Cost QTM or FP Revenue QTM	FIN(Cost) + FIN(Revenue) + FIN(TT)
FP Profit QTM	FIN(Profit) + FIN(TT)

2.4 Unless otherwise agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 2.7 or paragraph 6 (*Exceptional Events*), the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to each PBF Component shall be as specified in the then applicable Business Plan.

2.5 In accordance with the process set out in paragraphs 2 (*Initial Business Plan*) and 3 (*Annual Business Plan Process*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*), and subject always to paragraph 2.8 below, the Secretary of State shall propose in each Request for Business Plan:

- (a) the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to each PBF Component; ,

- (b) each of the applicable:
  - (i) QTM Targets;
  - (ii) Benchmark Levels; and
  - (iii) NRPS Expected Range,

or, to the extent that the Secretary of State considers that it is not reasonably practicable to specify any of these items, a description of the approach to be taken to set each of them;

- (c) the values for each of  $W_{OP}$ ,  $W_{CE}$ ,  $W_{FIN}$ ;  $W_{BM}$ ,
- (d) the values for each of  $W_{OPC}$ ,  $W_{OPMD}$ ,  $W_{OPSF}$ ,  $W_{OPT3}$ ,  $W_{OPT15}$ , and  $W_{OPAC}$ ;
- (e) the values for each of  $W_{FINC}$ ,  $W_{FINR}$  and  $W_{FINTT}$  ;
- (f) any amendments to:
  - (i) any PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist set out in Appendix 2 (PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist) of this Chapter 7.2; and/or
  - (ii) any Scorecard Criterion set out in Appendix 3 (*Scorecard Criteria*) of this Chapter 7.2;
- (g) Not used; and/or
- (h) any associated or consequential changes to any other matter set out in this Chapter 7.2 as may be necessary or desirable as a result of any of the specification of the items set out in paragraphs 2.5(a) to 2.5(f) above,

(together, the “**Annual PBF Specifications**”) in each case, to apply in respect of the Business Plan Year to which the Request for Business Plan relates.

2.6 The Parties shall comply with the process set out in paragraph 3 (*Annual Business Plan Process*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*), and the Business Plan agreed or determined in accordance with such process for the relevant Business Plan Year shall include:

- (a) the Annual PBF Specifications as agreed or determined in accordance with the process set out in paragraph 3 (*Annual Business Plan Process*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*); and
- (b) the Amendable Financial Targets agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 3).

2.7 **Changes to the Applicable Assessment Methodology**

- (a) Without prejudice to the Secretary of State's rights in relation to the agreement or determination of the Business Plan, from time to time, the Secretary of State shall consult with the Operator to determine, and following such consultation shall have reasonable regard to the Operator's views in determining, whether:
- (i) the Quantified Target Methodology shall apply to the calculation of one or more of the QTM PBF Components; and/or
  - (ii) Customer Satisfaction Scorecard B shall apply to the calculation of the Customer Satisfaction Fee,

and if the Secretary of State so determines, the Secretary of State shall give notice to the Operator which, without prejudice to the Secretary of State's rights under paragraphs 4 (*Target Amendments*), 5 (*Effect of Extended Term and Alterations to the PBF Assessment Period*) and 6 (*Exceptional Events*) of this Chapter 7.2:

- (A) confirms that the Quantified Target Methodology or Customer Satisfaction Scorecard B shall apply for calculation of the relevant Non-Financial PBF Component(s) for the period commencing on the first day of any Quarter, as specified in such notice, and ending with the expiry of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, provided that the Operator has at least two full Reporting Periods' notice of such change taking effect; and
- (B) sets out the information that the Secretary of State requires the Operator to provide (and the date by which the Secretary of State requires the Operator to provide such information) to enable the Parties to agree (or the Secretary of State to reasonably determine taking into account the reasonable views of the Operator, as the case may be) the applicable matters set out in paragraph 2.7(c) below,

(an "**Assessment Methodology Notification**").

- (b) After the Secretary of State issues an Assessment Methodology Notification to the Operator, the Operator shall provide the information required to be provided pursuant to the Assessment Methodology Notification by the relevant date specified in the Assessment Methodology Notification, and the Parties shall seek to agree the applicable matters set out in paragraph 2.7(c) below, each acting reasonably and in a timely manner. If the Parties have agreed any of the matters in accordance with paragraph 2.7(c) below prior to the date falling ten (10) Weekdays before the commencement of the relevant Quarter, then such agreed matters shall apply from the commencement of the relevant Quarter until the end of the relevant PBF Assessment Period. If, by the date falling ten (10) Weekdays prior to the commencement of the relevant Quarter in which the changes to the Applicable Assessment Methodology as specified in the Assessment Methodology Notification are to take effect, the Parties have not agreed the matters set out in paragraph 2.7(c) below, the Secretary of State may, subject always to paragraph 2.8 below:
- (i) reasonably determine such matters in relation to any or all of the QTM PBF Components and/or the Customer Satisfaction Fee, and notify the Operator accordingly prior to the commencement of the relevant Quarter, in which case such determined matters shall apply from the commencement of the relevant Quarter until the end of the relevant PBF Assessment Period; and/or
  - (ii) in the Secretary of State's sole discretion, notify the Operator prior to the commencement of the relevant Quarter that the then current Applicable Assessment Methodology will continue to apply to:
    - (A) any or all of the QTM PBF Components; and/or
    - (B) the Customer Satisfaction Fee.
- (c) The Parties shall seek to agree (each acting reasonably and in a timely manner), not later than ten (10) Weekdays before the commencement of the relevant Quarter prior to which the Secretary of State has issued an Assessment Methodology Notification to the Operator pursuant to and in accordance with paragraph 2.7(a)(i) above, as applicable, and subject always to paragraph 2.8 below:

- (i) whether the Quantified Target Methodology shall be applied to any or all of the QTM PBF Components, and if so, the relevant:
    - (A) QTM Targets;
    - (B) Benchmark Levels; and
    - (C) values for each of  $W_{OPC}$ ,  $W_{OPMD}$ ,  $W_{OPSF}$ ,  $W_{OPT3}$ ,  $W_{OPT15}$ , and  $W_{OPAC}$ ; (as applicable in relation to such QTM PBF Component) that shall apply during the relevant PBF Assessment Period from the commencement of the relevant Quarter; and
  - (ii) whether Customer Satisfaction Scorecard B shall apply to the calculation of the Customer Satisfaction Fee and, if so, the applicable NRPS Expected Range and NRPS Benchmarks.
- (d) In the event that the Parties agree or the Secretary of State reasonably determines any changes to the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to any PBF Component in accordance with paragraph 2.7(b) above, or the Parties agree any alternative Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee pursuant to paragraph 2.7(g) below:
- (i) such PBF Component shall be calculated by applying the relevant Applicable Assessment Methodologies on a pro rata basis with respect to the number of Reporting Periods in the relevant PBF Assessment Period for which such Applicable Assessment Methodologies respectively apply;
  - (ii) the Parties may, acting reasonably, agree to conduct an early determination of the portion of any such PBF Component attributable to the number of Reporting Periods in the relevant PBF Assessment Period prior to the effective date of the change to the relevant Applicable Assessment Methodology (an “**Interim PBF Component Determination**”); and
  - (iii) the Parties acknowledge and agree that any Interim PBF Component Determination shall be conducted on an equivalent basis to the process and principles set out in Appendix 1 to this Chapter 7.2, subject to such modifications as may be agreed with or determined by the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) and as may be necessary for any Interim PBF Component Determination to be effective.
- (e) The Business Management Fee shall, at all times and in each PBF Assessment Period, be assessed in accordance with the Scorecard Methodology, save that the Parties acknowledge and agree that Collaboration may be assessed in accordance with any revised assessment methodology agreed between the Parties and implemented by the Operator in accordance with paragraph 7 (*Incentive Regimes*) of this Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*).
- (f) Unless otherwise agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 2.7(g) or paragraph 6 (*Exceptional Events*), the Financial Performance Fee shall, at all times in any one PBF Assessment Period, be assessed in accordance with the Applicable Assessment Methodology as specified in the applicable Business Plan for such PBF Assessment Period.
- (g) Without prejudice to the Secretary of State’s rights under paragraphs 4 (*Target Amendments*), 5 (*Effect of Extended Term and Alterations to the PBF Assessment Period*) and 6 (*Exceptional Events*) of this Chapter 7.2, the Secretary of State may at any time during any PBF Assessment Period give notice to the Operator indicating the Secretary of State is minded to apply an alternative Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee for any remaining part of such PBF Assessment Period (an “**FP In-Year Change Notice**”). In the event that the Secretary of State issues an FP In-Year Change Notice to the Operator, the Parties shall seek to agree (each acting reasonably and in a timely manner) the changes proposed in the FP In-Year Change Notice and the basis on which such changes shall be implemented.

## 2.8 Parameters for targets, weightings and performance levels

National Rail Contract Version 1.1X - TransPennine Express	Page 193 of 500	Chapter 7.2
---	-----------------	-------------

Notwithstanding any other provision of this Chapter 7.2 or the provisions relating to amendments to any Amendable Target in accordance with paragraph 2 of Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*), the Parties acknowledge and agree that, at all times during the Contract Term:

- (a) each SQR Expected Fee Performance Level and the TT Expected Fee Performance Level and shall be expressed as a value that:
  - (i) a competent Train Operator, acting efficiently, can reasonably be expected to achieve in the circumstances that are prevailing for the relevant PBF Assessment Period; and
  - (ii) a high-performing Train Operator could have a realistic prospect of outperforming;
- (b) each Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Range and the NRPS Expected Range shall comprise a range that:
  - (i) the performance of a competent Train Operator, acting efficiently, can reasonably be expected to fall within, in the circumstances that are prevailing for the relevant PBF Assessment Period; and
  - (ii) a high-performing Train Operator could have a realistic prospect of outperforming,

and in relation to each Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Range, having regard to normal seasonal variability of operating performance;
- (c) each Relevant OP Component Maximum Fee Performance Level, each SQR Maximum Fee Performance Level and the TT Maximum Fee Performance Level shall be expressed as a value that a high-performing Train Operator could have a realistic prospect of achieving;
- (d) each Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level, each SQR Nil Fee Performance Level and the TT Nil Fee Performance Level shall be expressed as a value that a Train Operator, acting efficiently and performing at a broadly acceptable level, can reasonably be expected not to perform worse than;
- (e) the value of:
  - (i) the Breach Performance Level with respect to each of TOC on Self Cancellations, TOC Minutes Delay and Short Formations, each SQR Benchmark, each NRPS Benchmark and the Breach Ticketless Travel Benchmark shall be set at a level that a competent Train Operator, acting efficiently, can reasonably be expected not to perform at or worse than (and in relation to such Breach Performance Levels, having regard to normal seasonal variability of operating performance); and
  - (ii) the Default Performance Level with respect to each of TOC on Self Cancellations, TOC Minutes Delay and Short Formations shall be set at a level that affords a reasonable opportunity for a competent Train Operator, having performed worse than the Breach Performance Level, to implement any necessary remedial actions to avoid performance deteriorating to that Default Performance Level (having regard to normal seasonal variability of operating performance);
- (f) the weightings of each of  $W_{OP}$ ,  $W_{CE}$ ,  $W_{FIN}$  and  $W_{BM}$  shall not fall below the minimum value or exceed the maximum value specified in the table below, the aggregate weighting to be applied to the PBF Components shall equal one hundred per cent (100%), and the value of  $W_{FIN}$  shall never be lower than the value of  $W_{BM}$ :

Weighting	Minimum Weighting	Maximum Weighting
$W_{OP}$	15%	25%
$W_{CE}$	15%	25%

$W_{FIN}$	25%	40%
$W_{BM}$	25%	35%

- (g) the values of  $W_{FINC}$ ,  $W_{FINTT}$  and  $W_{FINR}$  shall at all times equal one hundred per cent (100%) in aggregate;
- (h) the values for each of:
  - (i)  $W_{OPC}$ ,  $W_{OPMD}$ ,  $W_{OPSF}$  shall at all times equal sixty per cent (60%) in aggregate; and
  - (ii)  $W_{OPT3}$ ,  $W_{OPT15}$ , and  $W_{OPAC}$  shall at all times equal forty per cent (40%) in aggregate;
- (i) Not Used; and
- (j) any amendments to any Scorecard Criterion set out in Appendix 3 (*Scorecard Criteria*) of this Chapter 7.2 may amend, insert or remove requirements but shall not materially:
  - (i) change the overall purpose of the relevant Scorecard Criterion; and/or
  - (ii) improve or impede the ability of the Operator (acting as a Good and Efficient Operator) to achieve any particular score in accordance with the Scorecard Criteria.

**3. Financial Targets**

**3.1 Target Cost**

- (a) If the Secretary of State notifies the Operator in any Request for Business Plan that the Secretary of State is minded to apply the FP Cost QTM as the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee in relation to any PBF Assessment Period pursuant to paragraph 2.7(a)(i) of this Chapter 7.2, the Operator shall deliver to the Secretary of State (as a separate tab to the Financial Cost Model within the draft Escrow Documents to be provided alongside the draft Business Plan with respect to such PBF Assessment Period in accordance with paragraph 3.4 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*)) a spreadsheet setting out the Operator’s proposed:
  - (i) Target Cost; and
  - (ii) Target Cost Maximum Fee Performance Level and Target Cost Nil Fee Performance Level (in each case consistent with the principles set out in paragraphs (d)(ii) and (e)(ii) below),

each based on benchmarking evidence gathered by the Operator as part of the Cost Efficiency Analysis included in the Financial Plan for the relevant Business Plan Year pursuant to paragraph 1.3(k)(iii) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*), with Cost Category lines of forecast expenditure for each Reporting Period of the relevant PBF Assessment Period in at least the level of disaggregation of the costs shown in, and consistent with, the Cost Budget (the “**Target Cost Template**”). The Target Cost Template shall allocate forecast expenditure in a format consistent with the Cost Budget with no netting off between lines.
- (b) The Parties shall seek to agree (each acting reasonably, in a timely manner and through sufficiently senior representatives) the Target Cost, Target Cost Maximum Fee Performance Level and Target Cost Nil Fee Performance Level for the relevant PBF Assessment Period, taking into account the Cost Budget.
- (c) The Target Cost shall be set at a value the Parties agree (or, if the Parties are unable to agree such value by the 28 February falling prior to the start of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine) represents a central case forecast of Actual Costs falling within the relevant PBF Assessment Period (excluding any forecast Disallowable Costs), expressed as a positive number.



For the avoidance of any doubt, the Target Cost may be set at a value lower than the aggregate Costs in the Cost Budget.

- (d) The Target Cost Maximum Fee Performance Level shall be set at a value:
  - (i) lower than the value of the Target Cost; and
  - (ii) that the Parties agree (or, if the Parties are unable to agree such value by the 28 February falling prior to the start of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine) that a highly efficient Train Operator would have a realistic prospect of achieving.
- (e) The Target Cost Nil Fee Performance Level shall be set at a value:
  - (i) greater than the value of the Target Cost; and
  - (ii) that the Parties agree (or, if the Parties are unable to agree such value by the 28 February falling prior to the start of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine) that a broadly competent Train Operator would be likely to achieve or improve upon.
- (f) Within five (5) Weekdays of the Target Cost, the Target Cost Maximum Fee Performance Level and the Target Cost Nil Fee Performance Level being agreed or determined in accordance with this paragraph 3.1, the Operator shall apply the Target Cost, the Target Cost Maximum Fee Performance Level and the Target Cost Nil Fee Performance Level to the Target Cost Template within a tab of the Financial Cost Model, which shall then be Placed in Escrow at the same time as the other Escrow Documents pursuant to paragraph 5 of Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*).

### 3.2 Target Revenue

- (a) If the Secretary of State notifies the Operator in any Request for Business Plan that the Secretary of State is minded to apply the FP Revenue QTM as the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee in relation to any PBF Assessment Period pursuant to paragraph 2.7(a)(i) of this Chapter 7.2, the Operator shall deliver to the Secretary of State (as a separate tab to the Financial Cost Model within the draft Escrow Documents to be provided alongside the draft Business Plan with respect to such PBF Assessment Period in accordance with paragraph 3.4 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*)) a spreadsheet setting out the Operator's proposed:
  - (i) Target Revenue; and
  - (ii) Target Revenue Maximum Fee Performance Level and Target Revenue Nil Fee Performance Level (in each case consistent with the principles set out in paragraphs 3.2(d)(ii) and 3.2(e)(ii) below),

each based on benchmarking evidence and other explanation included by the Operator as part of the Cost Efficiency Analysis included in the Financial Plan for the relevant Business Plan Year pursuant to paragraph 1.3(k)(iii) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*), with lines of forecast revenue and expenditure for each Reporting Period of the relevant PBF Assessment Period in at least the level of disaggregation of the Forecast Revenue (the "**Target Revenue Template**"). The Target Revenue Template shall allocate forecast revenue and expenditure in a format consistent with the Forecast Revenue with no netting off between lines.
- (b) The Parties shall seek to agree (each acting reasonably, in a timely manner and through sufficiently senior representatives) the Target Revenue, Target Revenue Maximum Fee Performance Level and Target Revenue Nil Fee Performance Level for the relevant PBF Assessment Period, taking into account the Forecast Revenue.
- (c) The Target Revenue shall be set at a value the Parties agree (or, if the Parties are unable to agree such value by the 28 February falling prior to the start of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine) represents a central case forecast of Actual Revenue falling within the relevant PBF Assessment Period, expressed as a positive number.
- (d) The Target Revenue Maximum Fee Performance Level shall be set at a value:



- (i) greater than the value of the Target Profit; and
  - (ii) that the Parties agree (or, if the Parties are unable to agree such value by the 28 February falling prior to the start of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine) that a high performing Train Operator would have a realistic prospect of achieving.
- (e) The Target Revenue Nil Fee Performance Level shall be set at a value:
- (i) lower than the value of the Target Revenue; and
  - (ii) that the Parties agree (or, if the Parties are unable to agree such value by the 28 February falling prior to the start of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine) that a broadly competent Train Operator would be likely to improve upon.
- (f) Within five (5) Weekdays of the Target Revenue, the Target Revenue Maximum Fee Performance Level and the Target Revenue Nil Fee Performance Level being agreed or determined in accordance with this paragraph 3.2, the Operator shall apply the Target Revenue, the Target Revenue Maximum Fee Performance Level and the Target Revenue Nil Fee Performance Level to the Target Revenue Template within a tab of the Financial Cost Model which shall then be Placed in Escrow at the same time as the other Escrow Documents pursuant to paragraph 5 of Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*).

### 3.3 Target Profit

- (a) If the Secretary of State notifies the Operator in any Request for Business Plan that the Secretary of State is minded to apply the FP Profit QTM as the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee in relation to any PBF Assessment Period pursuant to paragraph 2.7(a)(i) of this Chapter 7.2, the Operator shall deliver to the Secretary of State (as a separate tab to the Financial Cost Model within the draft Escrow Documents to be provided alongside the draft Business Plan with respect to such PBF Assessment Period in accordance with paragraph 3.4 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*)) a spreadsheet setting out the Operator's proposed:
- (i) Target Profit; and
  - (ii) Target Profit Maximum Fee Performance Level and Target Profit Nil Fee Performance Level (in each case consistent with the principles set out in paragraphs 3.3(c)(ii) and 3.3(d)(ii) below),
- each based on benchmarking evidence and other explanation included by the Operator as part of the Cost Efficiency Analysis included in the Financial Plan for the relevant Business Plan Year pursuant to paragraph 1.3(k)(iii) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*), with lines of forecast revenue and Cost Category lines of forecast expenditure for each Reporting Period of the relevant PBF Assessment Period in at least the level of disaggregation of the costs shown in, and consistent with, the Forecast Revenue and the Cost Budget (the "**Target Profit Template**"). The Target Profit Template shall allocate forecast revenue and expenditure in a format consistent with the Forecast Revenue and the Cost Budget, with no netting off between lines.
- (b) The Parties shall seek to agree (each acting reasonably, in a timely manner and through sufficiently senior representatives) the Target Profit, Target Profit Maximum Fee Performance Level and Target Profit Nil Fee Performance Level for the relevant PBF Assessment Period, taking into account the Cost Budget and the Forecast Revenue.
- (c) The Target Profit shall be set at a value that the Parties agree (or, if the Parties are unable to agree such value by the 28 February falling prior to the start of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine) represents a central case forecast of:
- (i) Actual Revenue falling within the relevant PBF Assessment Period, expressed as a positive number; and
  - (ii) Actual Costs falling within the relevant PBF Assessment Period (excluding any forecast Disallowable Costs), expressed as a negative number.

- (d) The Target Profit Maximum Fee Performance Level shall be set at a value:
  - (i) greater than the value of the Target Profit; and
  - (ii) that the Parties agree (or, if the Parties are unable to agree such value by the 28 February falling prior to the start of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine) that a highly efficient Train Operator maximising its financial return would have a realistic prospect of achieving.
- (e) The Target Profit Nil Fee Performance Level shall be set at a value:
  - (i) lower than the value of the Target Profit; and
  - (ii) that the Parties agree (or, if the Parties are unable to agree such value by the 28 February falling prior to the start of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine) that a broadly competent Train Operator would be likely to improve upon.
- (f) Within five (5) Weekdays of the Target Profit, the Target Profit Maximum Fee Performance Level and the Target Profit Nil Fee Performance Level being agreed or determined in accordance with this paragraph 3.3, the Operator shall apply the Target Profit, the Target Profit Maximum Fee Performance Level and the Target Profit Nil Fee Performance Level to the Target Profit Template within a tab of the Financial Cost Model which shall then be Placed in Escrow at the same time as the other Escrow Documents pursuant to paragraph 5 of Chapter 7.6 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*).

#### 3.4 **Continued application of Scorecard Methodology**

If the Parties have not agreed (or, if applicable, the Secretary of State has not determined) any or all of the Target Cost, Target Cost Maximum Fee Performance Level, Target Cost Nil Fee Performance Level, Target Profit, Target Profit Maximum Fee Performance Level, Target Profit Nil Fee Performance Level, Target Revenue, Target Revenue Maximum Fee Performance Level and/or Target Revenue Nil Fee Performance Level in accordance with paragraph 3.1 (*Target Cost*), 3.2 (*Target Revenue*) or 3.3 (*Target Profit*), as applicable, then the Secretary of State may notify the Operator that the FP Scorecard Methodology shall apply in relation to the Financial Performance Fee.

#### 4. **Target Amendments**

Any Amendable Target may be amended from time to time in accordance with paragraph 2 (*How any adjustments to the Cost Budget, Record of Assumptions, Amendable Financial Target(s) and Operational Performance Target(s), will be established*) of Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*).

#### 5. **Effect of Extended Term and alterations to the PBF Assessment Period**

##### 5.1 If:

- (a) the Secretary of State elects to extend the term of this Contract pursuant to clause 2 (*Duration of the National Rail Contract*), the Secretary of State shall promptly notify the Operator whether:
  - (i) the final originally scheduled PBF Assessment Period shall be replaced by an extension of the preceding PBF Assessment Period;
  - (ii) the duration of the final originally scheduled PBF Assessment Period shall be extended; or
  - (iii) any additional PBF Assessment Period(s) shall apply (and if so, of how many Reporting Periods each additional PBF Assessment Period shall comprise);
- (b) the deadline for the Secretary of State electing to extend the term of this Contract pursuant to clause 2 (*Duration of the National Rail Contract*) passes without the Secretary of State having elected to do so, the Secretary of State shall promptly notify the Operator whether:

- (i) the final originally scheduled PBF Assessment Period shall be replaced by an extension of the preceding PBF Assessment Period; or
- (ii) the final PBF Assessment Period shall remain as originally scheduled (commencing on 1 April 2023 at 02.00 and ending on 28 May 2023 at 01.59).

5.2 Following an alteration to the duration of a PBF Assessment Period for any reason, the Parties shall seek to agree (each acting reasonably, in a timely manner and through sufficiently senior representatives):

- (a) any necessary additions and/or alterations (as appropriate) to the QTM Targets, NRPS Expected Range and applicable Amendable Financial Targets in respect of the relevant PBF Assessment Period; and
- (b) the Benchmark Levels (as applicable) for the relevant PBF Assessment Period in respect of each of the additional Reporting Periods,

taking into consideration the alteration to the duration of the relevant PBF Assessment Period. If the Parties have agreed any additions and/or alteration(s) to the QTM Targets, NRPS Expected Range, applicable Amendable Financial Targets and/or Benchmark Levels within twenty (20) Weekdays of the alteration to the duration of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, then such agreed matters shall apply in accordance with paragraph 5.4 below.

5.3 If the Parties have not agreed any necessary additions and/or alterations to the QTM Targets, NRPS Expected Range, applicable Amendable Financial Targets and/or Benchmark Levels for the relevant PBF Assessment Period within twenty (20) Weekdays of the alteration to the duration of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, then the Secretary of State:

- (a) may reasonably determine any necessary additions and/or alterations to the QTM Targets, NRPS Expected Range and/or applicable Amendable Financial Targets for the relevant PBF Assessment Period;
- (b) may reasonably determine the Benchmark Levels (as applicable) for the relevant PBF Assessment Period; and
- (c) shall promptly notify the Operator of such decision, in which case the additions and/or alteration(s) to the QTM Targets, NRPS Expected Range, applicable Amendable Financial Targets and/or Benchmark Levels (as applicable) determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with this paragraph 5.3 shall apply in accordance with paragraph 5.4 below.

5.4 Any additions and/or alteration(s) to the QTM Targets, NRPS Expected Range, applicable Amendable Financial Targets and/or any new Benchmark Levels (as applicable) shall apply retrospectively from the date on which the alteration to the duration of a PBF Assessment Period occurred and shall continue to apply until the end of the relevant PBF Assessment Period.

5.5 If the Secretary of State:

- (a) elects to extend the term of this Contract pursuant to clause 2 (*Duration of the National Rail Contract*); and
- (b) intends to notify the Operator that one or two additional PBF Assessment Period(s) shall apply pursuant to paragraph 5.1(b) above,

then, subject to paragraph 5.2 above, the Applicable Assessment Methodologies, Annual PBF Specifications and Amendable Financial Targets with respect to such additional PBF Assessment Period(s) shall be agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 2.5 above.

## 6. Exceptional Events

Following the occurrence of an Exceptional Event, the Secretary of State may, acting reasonably (and as applicable with respect to effect of the relevant Exceptional Event):

- (a) if the Quantified Target Methodology is the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to any QTM PBF Component, notify the Operator that from the date of such notification (or such alternative date as may be specified in the notification) the Scorecard Methodology shall apply in lieu of the Quantified Target Methodology in

- relation to any or all of the QTM PBF Components during the relevant PBF Assessment Period;
- (b) if Customer Satisfaction Scorecard B is the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Customer Satisfaction Fee, notify the Operator that from the date of such notification (or such alternative date as may be specified in the notification) Customer Satisfaction Scorecard A shall apply in lieu of Customer Satisfaction Scorecard B in relation to the Customer Satisfaction Fee during the relevant PBF Assessment Period;
- (c) if the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee is the FP Cost QTM, the FP Revenue QTM or the FP Profit QTM, notify the Operator that from the date of such notification (or such alternative date as may be specified in the notification) the FP Scorecard Methodology shall apply in lieu of the previous Applicable Assessment Methodology in relation to the Financial Performance Fee during the relevant PBF Assessment Period;
- (d) if the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee is the FP Profit QTM, notify the Operator that from the date of such notification (or such alternative date as may be specified in the notification) the Secretary of State is minded to apply the FP Cost QTM in lieu of the previous Applicable Assessment Methodology in relation to the Financial Performance Fee during the relevant PBF Assessment Period, and the Parties shall seek to agree (each acting reasonably and in a timely manner) the basis on which the FP Cost QTM shall be implemented for such period (including any relevant Amendable Financial Targets, a Target Cost Template and any other required updates to the Escrow Documents), provided that in the absence of such agreement the Secretary of State may at any time notify the Operator that from the date of such notification (or such alternative date as may be specified in the notification) the FP Scorecard Methodology shall apply in lieu of the previous Applicable Assessment Methodology in relation to the Financial Performance Fee during the relevant PBF Assessment Period;
- (e) if the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee applies the FP TT QTM, notify the Operator that from the date of such notification (or such alternative date as may be specified in the notification), the FP TT QTM shall no longer apply during the relevant PBF Assessment Period (in which case, with effect from such date, the weighting attributable to  $W_{FINTT}$  shall be reduced to zero and the weighting attributable to  $W_{FINR}$  shall be increased by an equivalent amount for the period from such date until the end of the relevant PBF Assessment Period);
- (f) suspend any applicable Amendable Financial Target, OP Targets, SQR Targets and/or TT Targets and apply the Scorecard Methodology in a manner which, as far as is reasonably practicable, aligns with any suspended target which has already been set for that PBF Assessment Period; and/or
- (g) for the relevant PBF Assessment Period calculate the Performance Based Fee attributable to:
- (i) each QTM PBF Component on a pro rata basis according to the duration of the period for which each of the Quantified Target Methodology and the Scorecard Methodology applied to such QTM PBF Component;
  - (ii) the Customer Satisfaction Fee on a pro rata basis according to the duration of the period for which each of Customer Satisfaction Scorecard A and Customer Satisfaction Scorecard B applied to the Customer Satisfaction Fee;
  - (iii) the Financial Performance Fee on a pro rata basis (or such alternative basis as the Parties may agree) according to the duration of the period for which the respective Applicable Assessment Methodologies applied to the Financial Performance Fee; and
  - (iv) the Financial Performance Fee on a pro rata basis according to the duration of the period for which the FP TT QTM was applied pursuant to the Applicable Assessment Methodologies applied to the Financial Performance Fee.

**7. Incentive Regimes**

- 7.1 The Operator shall, as required by the Secretary of State, fully and effectively co-operate with the Secretary of State to design, develop and (as applicable) implement and provide to the Secretary of State such data as the Secretary of State may require in relation to potential new incentive regimes (which may be used in future contracts with Train Operators and/or may be introduced into the National Rail Contract by means of a Variation, provided that no such new incentive regime may be introduced into the calculation of the Performance Based Fee pursuant to this Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*) without the prior written agreement of the Parties), including designing:
- (a) new measures of operational performance;
  - (b) new models for assessing customer satisfaction and sentiment;
  - (c) future regimes for assessing service quality standards delivered by the Operator;
  - (d) alternative cost or other financial incentive mechanisms;
  - (e) a new regime for assessing the Operator's performance in relation to deterring and preventing ticketless travel; and/or
  - (f) new approaches to assessing collaborative behaviours and capability.
- 7.2 The Operator's obligations pursuant to paragraph above may include:
- (a) developing, reviewing and/or commenting on proposals in relation to such new incentive regimes;
  - (b) providing advice on the feasibility, costs and other implications of any such proposals made by the Secretary of State;
  - (c) attending meetings to discuss such proposals and any related matters; and
  - (d) supporting the Secretary of State in preparing to implement such new incentive mechanisms, including by collecting and providing relevant data to the Secretary of State in accordance with any requirements specified by the Secretary of State from time to time.



**Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.2**  
**PBF Assessment Period Review**

**1. Purpose of the PBF Assessment Period Review**

- 1.1 The purpose of a PBF Assessment Period Review is for the Secretary of State to undertake a review of the Operator's performance in relation to all Non-Financial PBF Components and Applicable FP Sub-Components to which, in each case, the Scorecard Methodology or Combined Methodology is applicable, over the course of the relevant PBF Assessment Period.
- 1.2 The Secretary of State shall carry out a PBF Assessment Period Review with respect to each PBF Assessment Period.
- 1.3 At each periodic Contract Performance Meeting, the Parties shall discuss and review:
- (a) without prejudice to the Secretary of State's right to determine each score that the Operator will achieve in accordance with Appendix 3 (*Scorecard Criteria*), the Operator's progress against the Scorecard Criteria and any other assessment criteria implemented pursuant to this Chapter 7.2; and
  - (b) the evidence to be included within an Evidence Report for the Reporting Period to which that Contract Performance Meeting relates and/or for any other Reporting Period.
- 1.4 Each PBF Assessment Period Review shall be carried out in accordance with the process set out in this Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.2.

**2. Evidence Report**

- 2.1 In advance of each Contract Performance Meeting, the Secretary of State shall provide the Operator with a report detailing the information and evidence that the Secretary of State considers to be relevant to the PBF Assessment Period Review and the assessment of the Operator's performance against the Scorecard Criteria (each, an "**Evidence Report**"). Each Evidence Report shall contain only new information and evidence and shall not repeat the information and evidence that was included in a previous Evidence Report, except if that information and evidence has changed.
- 2.2 The Operator shall, following receipt of an Evidence Report, notify the Secretary of State of any information or evidence, in addition to that set out in the Evidence Report, which the Operator considers to be relevant to the PBF Assessment Period Review and the assessment of the Operator's performance against the Scorecard Criteria.
- 2.3 The Secretary of State shall, following receipt of a notice pursuant to paragraph 2.2 of this Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.2, provide written confirmation to the Operator of whether the Secretary of State considers such information or evidence to be relevant to the PBF Assessment Period Review and, where the Secretary of State considers such information or evidence to be relevant, the Secretary of State shall either amend the relevant Evidence Report to include such information or evidence or include the information or evidence in the next, or any subsequent, Evidence Report.
- 2.4 The Parties acknowledge and agree that the Evidence Report is not intended to be the final record of all information or evidence in respect of the Reporting Period to which the Contract Performance Meeting relates and the Parties shall be entitled to agree, at or in advance of any subsequent Contract Performance Meeting, that additional evidence relating to such Reporting Period may be added to that, or any subsequent, Evidence Report.

**3. Notice of PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting**

- 3.1 The Secretary of State shall notify the Operator of the date, time and location for the relevant PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting (or, where the Secretary of State considers that more than one PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting is necessary, each PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting) by no later than the end of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, provided always that any PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting shall take place no earlier than the last day in the relevant PBF Assessment Period and no later than fifty-six (56) Weekdays after the end of the relevant PBF Assessment Period.

3.2 Nothing in this Chapter 7.2 shall prevent the Parties from discussing any matter relevant to a PBF Assessment Period Review outside of any PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting.

#### 4. **PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist**

4.1 Not less than thirty (30) days prior to the end of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State, acting reasonably, shall notify the Operator in writing of any additional evidence or information that the Operator is required to submit at the same time as the completed PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist.

4.2 Not less than fifteen (15) days prior to the end of each PBF Assessment Period, the Operator shall notify the Secretary of State in writing of any evidence or information in addition to that set out in the PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist, each Evidence Report or the information notified to the Operator by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 4.1 of this Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.2, which the Operator considers to be relevant for the PBF Assessment Period Review. The Secretary of State shall, within ten (10) days of receiving such notice, provide written confirmation to the Operator of whether the Secretary of State considers such matters to be relevant to the PBF Assessment Period Review.

4.3 As soon as reasonably practicable after the end of each PBF Assessment Period, and in any event no later than fifteen (15) Weekdays after the end of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Operator shall deliver to the Secretary of State a duly completed copy of the PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist in respect of that PBF Assessment Period.

4.4 The PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist delivered by the Operator pursuant to paragraph 4.3 of this Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.2 shall include written commentary from the Operator in respect of the PBF Assessment Period covering:

- (a) each of the matters listed in the PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist;
- (b) the evidence and information included in the Evidence Reports;
- (c) any other matter notified by the Secretary of State to the Operator pursuant to paragraph 4.1 of this Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.2; and
- (d) any other matter which the Secretary of State has confirmed as relevant for the PBF Assessment Period Review in accordance with paragraph 4.2 of this Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.2.

4.5 The Secretary of State shall provide the Operator with:

- (a) a written commentary on the completed PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist and the evidence and information included in the Evidence Reports (including any commentary provided by the Operator under paragraph 4.4 of this Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.2); and
- (b) any evidence or information additional to that:
  - (i) contained in the Evidence Reports; or
  - (ii) contained in or submitted by the Operator at the same time as the PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist (in accordance with paragraph 4.1 of this Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.2),

which the Secretary of State has used or intends to use to assess the Operator's performance,

in each case, no later than ten (10) days prior to the relevant PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting.

#### 5. **PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting**

5.1 The PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting shall take place at the date, time and location notified by the Secretary of State to the Operator in accordance with paragraph 3.1 of this Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.2 and shall be attended by representatives of each of the Secretary of State and the Operator.

5.2 The Operator shall ensure that the representatives of the Operator at the PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting include such:



- (a) appropriate and qualified personnel of the Operator;
  - (b) directors and/or senior managers of the Operator; and
  - (c) directors and/or senior managers of the Parent,
- as the Secretary of State may reasonably require.
- 5.3 At the PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting, the Parties shall discuss the Operator's performance by reference to the PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist and each Evidence Report, together with any supporting commentary, documents or evidence submitted by the Operator to the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraphs 4.3 and 4.4 of this Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.2 and any commentary and/or information provided by the Secretary of State to the Operator in accordance with paragraph 4.5 of this Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.2.
- 6. PBF Assessment Period Review Scoring**
- 6.1 The Secretary of State may take such steps as the Secretary of State considers (acting reasonably) to be necessary or appropriate to take into consideration any representations or evidence provided by Network Rail and/or any other relevant third party to the extent relevant to the Scorecard Criteria, including:
- (a) procuring views or evidence from Network Rail and/or other relevant stakeholders;
  - (b) directing the Operator to procure such views or evidence, which shall be submitted with the Operator's own information and evidence pursuant to paragraph 2 (Evidence Report) of this Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.2; and/or
  - (c) subject to any requirements in relation to confidentiality, sharing extracts (on an anonymised or redacted basis, if required) of evidence supplied by the Operator with Network Rail and/or other relevant stakeholders.
- 6.2 The Secretary of State shall provide to the Operator, no later than fifty-six (56) Weekdays after the end of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, a duly completed PBF Assessment Period Scorecard setting out the Operator's performance in each of the Scorecard Criteria and any other assessment criteria implemented pursuant to this Chapter 7.2 for the PBF Assessment Period.
- 6.3 The Operator shall be scored three (3), two (2) or one (1) in relation to the Scorecard Criteria with respect to:
- (a) each Non-Financial PBF Component to which the Scorecard Methodology is to be applied (other than in relation to each Scorecard Criteria with respect to Customer Satisfaction Scorecard B, with respect to which the Operator shall be scored four (4), three (3), two (2) or one (1)); and
  - (b) (subject to paragraph 2.1 of Appendix 6 (Combined Methodology) of this Chapter 7.2 (Performance Based Fee)) each of the FP Cost Sub-Component and the FP Revenue Sub-Component,
- and, in relation to any other assessment criteria implemented pursuant to this Chapter 7.2, shall be assessed or scored (as applicable) in accordance with such assessment criteria.
- 6.4 Scores in the PBF Assessment Period Scorecard shall be awarded by the Secretary of State having regard to the matters set out in the PBF Assessment Period Scorecard. One single, integer, overall score shall be awarded in relation to each Scorecard Criterion based on the Secretary of State's assessment of the Operator's performance in respect of that Scorecard Criterion and taking into account:
- (a) each Evidence Report;
  - (b) the PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist provided to the Secretary of State by the Operator in accordance with paragraphs 4.3 and 4.4 of this Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.2;
  - (c) any commentary provided to the Operator by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 4.5 of this Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.2;
  - (d) any discussions between the Operator and the Secretary of State at the PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting(s); and

- (e) any representations or evidence provided by Network Rail and/or any other relevant third party pursuant to paragraph 6.1 of this Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.2.
- 6.5 The PBF Assessment Period Review shall be complete once the Secretary of State has sent a duly completed PBF Assessment Period Scorecard to the Operator in accordance with paragraph 6.2 of this Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.2.
- 6.6 If the Operator:
- (a) is operating at a level that would, or would likely, be scored “one (1)”; or
  - (b) has received a score of “one (1)”,
- in relation to any of the Scorecard Criteria during a PBF Assessment Period, then the Secretary of State may require a Remedial Plan and the provisions of Chapter 9.4.3 (*Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the National Rail Contract*) of this Contract shall apply.

**Appendix 2 to Chapter 7.2**  
**PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist**

**1. Operational Performance**

A report on the Operator's delivery of the operational performance elements of the Train Service Operations Plan Business Plan Component over the previous year, including evidence of:

- (a) the delivery of the relevant Business Plan Commitments, including delivery to time and delivery of expected outputs and outcomes;
- (b) Performance against each of the relevant Business Plan KPIs in the Business Plan;
- (c) an explanation of the level of performance achieved during the PBF Assessment Period and the underlying drivers of that performance, including evidence of the impacts of any significant actions the Operator has undertaken during the PBF Assessment Period to improve performance or to reduce the impacts of incidents;
- (d) in respect of significant or repeated failures to deliver the Enforcement Plan of the Day, an explanation of the underlying causes of those failures setting out (if relevant) any act, omission or failure of a third party which has impacted performance and the extent of that impact;
- (e) a summary of the Operator's approaches to service recovery, Depot and Train Fleet management and train crew management during the PBF Assessment Period, including any significant actions take to improve those approaches, supported by evidence of their effectiveness; and
- (f) evidence of how the ratio of Reactionary Delay to Direct Delay, and incidences of delay attributable to Depot, Train Fleet and train crew related causes, compare with historic trends.

**2. Customer Satisfaction**

**2.1 Checklist for Customer Satisfaction Scorecard A**

If Customer Satisfaction Scorecard A was the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Customer Satisfaction Fee for some or all of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, a report on how the Operator has improved customer satisfaction, including:

- (a) a summary of customer feedback obtained during the PBF Assessment Period, including insights gathered through the Wavelength Programme, National Rail Passenger Survey (if available), complaints, feedback from passengers using the Passenger Assistance service, other surveys where relevant, social media and any other relevant sources;
- (b) a summary of how the Operator has used these customer insights to identify and address customer needs, and to deliver the Wavelength Customer Promises;
- (c) a summary of how the Operator has collaborated with persons with disabilities and their representative bodies in particular, and how this has directly improved outcomes for such passengers; and
- (d) the results of any research or assessments undertaken by the Passengers' Council, the ORR or any other independent bodies which demonstrate the Operator's compliance with any of the Scorecard Criteria.

**2.2 Checklist for Customer Satisfaction Scorecard B**

If Customer Satisfaction Scorecard B was the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Customer Satisfaction Fee for some or all of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, a report on how the Operator has used insights to improve customer satisfaction, including:

- (a) the Operator's calculation of the Overall NRPS Score for the relevant PBF Assessment Period;

- (b) a summary of customer feedback obtained during the PBF Assessment Period, including insights gathered through the Wavelength Programme, complaints, feedback from passengers using the Passenger Assistance service, other surveys where relevant, social media and any other relevant sources;
- (c) a summary of how the Operator has used these customer insights and National Rail Passenger Survey results to identify and address customer needs, and to deliver the Wavelength Customer Promises;
- (d) a summary of how the Operator has collaborated with persons with disabilities and their representative bodies in particular, and how this has directly improved outcomes for such passengers; and
- (e) the results of any research or assessments undertaken by the Passengers' Council, the ORR or any other independent bodies which demonstrate the Operator's compliance with any of the Scorecard Criteria.

### 3. **Service Quality Standards**

A report on the service quality standards delivered by the Operator, including:

- (a) all available Service Quality Regime outputs;
- (b) for areas or time periods where Service Quality Regime outputs are not available or are incomplete, tables, charts and other data (as appropriate) showing, for the PBF Assessment Period:
  - (i) delivery of Station and train cleans against the planned programme;
  - (ii) level of adherence to staffing rosters;
  - (iii) a summary of the availability of key assets such as Station and train toilets and ticket vending machines, and the length of time taken to remedy any faults; and
  - (iv) a summary of how the Operator has provided consistently accurate, timely and relevant information to customers at stations, on rolling stock used to deliver the Passenger Services and online (including via relevant social media, mobile apps and websites, as appropriate);
- (c) a summary of passenger complaints about service quality and how these were addressed;
- (d) an explanation of the level of performance achieved during the PBF Assessment Period in respect of each of the above and the underlying drivers of that performance, including evidence of the impacts of any significant actions the Operator has undertaken during the PBF Assessment Period to improve performance; and
- (e) the results of any research or assessments undertaken by the Passengers' Council, the ORR or any other independent bodies which demonstrate the Operator's compliance with any of the Scorecard Criteria.

### 4. **Financial Performance**

With respect to both of the FP Cost Sub-Component and the FP Revenue Sub-Component, the Operator shall deliver:

- (a) the agreed Business Plan and the Escrow Documents (both: (i) as first delivered by the Operator pursuant to paragraph 3.4 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*); and (ii) as agreed or determined pursuant to paragraphs 3.5 to 3.9 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*)) for the Subsequent Business Plan Year immediately following the relevant PBF Assessment Period;
- (b) a report detailing the extent to which the Operator has acted as a Good and Efficient Operator, including evidence of:
  - (i) the actions which the Operator has taken to drive the recovery of revenue and demand, and the effect those actions have had on revenue and passenger demand;

- (ii) the actions the Operator has taken during the year to maximise cost efficiency, and the effect those actions have had on costs;
- (iii) the approach the Operator has taken to balancing the Secretary of State's short, medium and long term financial interest in the operation of the Rail Services (both within and beyond the Contract Term); and
- (iv) appropriate revenue protection being applied to reduce ticketless travel or travel with invalid tickets to the greatest extent reasonably practicable with the intention of maximising revenue while also treating passengers fairly and reasonably (and/or otherwise evidence that the Operator has followed government guidance prevailing at the time regarding revenue collection).

## 5. **Business Management**

### 5.1 **Business Plan Quality**

- (a) A report detailing the Operator's performance in working with the Secretary of State, Network Rail and (where requested by the Secretary of State) other parties to develop and agree the Business Plan with respect to the Subsequent Business Plan Year immediately following the PBF Assessment Period which is the subject of the PBF Assessment Period Review.
- (b) The draft Business Plan provided by the Operator in response to the Request for Business Plan, and the final agreed or determined Business Plan, in each case with respect to such Subsequent Business Plan Year.

### 5.2 **Business Plan Delivery**

- (a) A report detailing the Operator's performance in delivering the Business Plan with respect to the Business Plan Year corresponding to the relevant PBF Assessment Period which is the subject of the PBF Assessment Period Review, including evidence of:
  - (i) the delivery of the Business Plan Commitments, including delivery to time and delivery of expected outputs and outcomes;
  - (ii) performance against each of the Business Plan KPIs in the Business Plan;
  - (iii) any risk mitigation or other measures the Operator has taken in order to protect passenger outcomes, financial sustainability or other public policy objectives where any Business Plan Commitments or Business Plan KPIs have not been achieved
- (b) The report should not address any issues otherwise reflected in the Service Quality Standards Scorecard Criteria, Customer Satisfaction Scorecard Criteria, Operational Performance Scorecard Criteria, Collaboration Scorecard Criteria, Financial Performance Scorecard Criteria or assessment through the Quantified Assessment Methodology of any of the Operational Performance Fee, Service Quality Standards Fee or Financial Performance Fee (as applicable).

### 5.3 **Collaboration**

A report detailing the Operator's delivery of the Collaboration Plan Business Plan Component over the Business Plan Year corresponding to the relevant PBF Assessment Period which is the subject of the PBF Assessment Period Review, including evidence of:

- (a) the delivery of the relevant Business Plan Commitments, including delivery to time and delivery of expected outputs and outcomes;
- (b) performance against each of the relevant Business Plan KPIs with respect to the Collaboration Plan Business Plan Component;
- (c) examples of where positive collaborative behaviours have improved working relationships with Network Rail, the Secretary of State, other operators, suppliers and other industry partners;
- (d) how the operator's collaborative behaviours and capabilities have supported the delivery of a "one-industry" approach to delivering a high-quality service for all users

of the railway, maximised value for money for taxpayers, and maximised the railway's contribution to meeting local and regional priorities and objectives;

- (e) the organisation's overall approach to developing, embedding and continuing to improve a collaborative culture.

### **Appendix 3 to Chapter 7.2 Scorecard Criteria**

#### **1. Operational Performance**

##### **1.1 One (1): Below acceptable standard**

The Operator has failed in any material respect to demonstrate that it has met the standard required to score a “two (2)”.

##### **1.2 Two (2): Acceptable**

- (a) The Operator has delivered most of the operational performance-related Business Plan Commitments in the Train Service Operations Plan Business Plan Component on time and with the outputs and outcomes specified in the Business Plan.
- (b) The Operator has met most of the operational performance-related Business Plan KPIs in the Train Service Operations Plan Business Plan Component.
- (c) The Operator has generally delivered the Passenger Services in accordance with the applicable Enforcement Plan of the Day, such that where there have been significant or repeated failures to deliver the applicable Enforcement Plan of the Day:
  - (i) these have typically been due to external factors and/or incidents beyond the reasonable control of the Operator;
  - (ii) the Operator has taken reasonable steps to recover the Passenger Services as quickly as possible so as to minimise passenger inconvenience and delay, regardless of whether or not the root cause was within the Operator’s reasonable control; and
  - (iii) the Operator has undertaken reviews of the root cause(s) of such failure(s) to deliver the applicable Enforcement Plan of the Day and the effectiveness of the Operator’s actions to deal with the incident and recover the Passenger Services.
- (d) The Operator has in place and has implemented appropriate Depot and Train Fleet management plans that have been generally effective in minimising the number of instances of insufficient rolling stock vehicles being available to resource the applicable Enforcement Plan of the Day.
- (e) The Operator has in place and has implemented appropriate plans for train crew management (including to mitigate risks relating to COVID-19), recruitment, training, succession and contingency management that have generally been effective in minimising the number of instances of insufficient train crew being available to resource the applicable Enforcement Plan of the Day.

##### **1.3 Three (3): Good**

- (a) The Operator has fully met the criteria for a “two (2)” and in addition:
  - (i) has delivered better outcomes from some of the operational performance-related Business Plan Commitments than specified in the Train Service Operations Plan Business Plan Component;
  - (ii) has exceeded some of the operational performance-related Business Plan KPIs in the Train Service Operations Plan Business Plan Component;
  - (iii) where any operational performance-related Business Plan Commitment has not been met, the Operator has implemented mitigating actions or alternative initiatives to deliver better passenger outcomes, financial sustainability or other public policy objectives;
  - (iv) there have been very few, if any, significant or repeated failures to deliver the applicable Enforcement Plan of the Day that have been due to factors and/or incidents within the reasonable control of the Operator;
  - (v) the Operator’s approach to service recovery has been particularly robust and, as a result, the ratio of Reactionary Delay to Direct Delay in respect of the



Passenger Services has been low by historical standards (taking account of all Direct Delay, whether attributed to the Operator or not);

- (vi) the reviews referred to in paragraph 1.2(c)(iii) of this Appendix 3 to Chapter 7.2 have been particularly thorough and, as a result of those reviews, the Operator has identified and implemented significant actions that have minimised (or will minimise) the likelihood and the impacts on passengers of similar incidents occurring in future; or
- (vii) the Operator's Depot, Train Fleet and train crew management has been particularly robust and, as a result, the number of instances of insufficient rolling stock or train crew being available to deliver the Enforcement Plan of the Day have been low by historical standards.

## 2. **Customer Satisfaction – Scorecard A**

### 2.1 **One (1): Below acceptable standard**

The Operator has failed in any material respect to demonstrate that it has met the standard required to score a “two (2)”.

### 2.2 **Two (2): Acceptable**

- (a) The Operator has taken a proactive approach to customer satisfaction for customers by:
  - (i) achieving improvements across all passenger groups or markets served by the Rail Services; and
  - (ii) improving the experience during perturbation, including caring for customers when things go wrong;
- (b) the Operator has used some survey results and other relevant data and information (including Wavelength Programme and National Rail Passenger Survey data, where available) to:
  - (i) review customer needs and the extent to which they are being met; and
  - (ii) understand the impact of COVID-19 on customer priorities and expectations; and
- (c) where needs are not being met, the Operator has (where consistent with the requirement to act as a Good and Efficient Operator, or where the Secretary of State has otherwise consented) taken action to address them, including by implementing some initiatives designed to respond to changes in customer expectations during and after the COVID-19 pandemic. These actions have demonstrably resulted in meaningful improvements in outcomes for customers including in relation to the Wavelength Customer Promises and in relation to disabled passengers and other passengers with accessibility needs (or, in the opinion of the Secretary of State (acting reasonably), will result in such improvements, either during the Contract Term or in the long term).

### 2.3 **Three (3): Good**

The Operator has fully met the criteria for a “two (2)” and in addition:

- (a) the Operator's plans and processes for managing customer experience have been particularly thorough and, as a result, any potential issues have consistently been identified and resolved in a swift and effective manner. Any actual issues have also been few in number and low in impact, and the Operator has taken prompt and effective remedial action when they have occurred;
- (b) the Operator has regularly used a range of different survey results and other relevant data and information (including Wavelength Programme and National Rail Passenger Survey data, where available) to:
  - (i) review customer needs and the extent to which they are being met; and
  - (ii) understand the impact of COVID-19 on customer priorities and expectations; and

- (c) the Operator has taken prompt action to address these needs, including by proactively implementing initiatives designed to respond to changes in customer expectations during and after the COVID-19 pandemic. These actions have demonstrably resulted in substantial improvements in outcomes for customers, including in relation to each of the Wavelength Customer Promises and in relation to disabled passengers and other passengers with accessibility needs.

### 3. **Customer Satisfaction – Scorecard B**

3.1 The Operator will achieve an Acceptable Insight Rating where:

- (a) the Operator has used some survey results and other relevant data and information (including Wavelength Programme and National Rail Passenger Survey data, where available) to:
  - (i) review customer needs and the extent to which they are being met; and
  - (ii) understand the impact of COVID-19 on customer priorities and expectations; and
- (b) where needs are not being met, the Operator has (where consistent with the requirement to act as a Good and Efficient Operator, or where the Secretary of State has otherwise consented) taken action to address them, including by implementing some initiatives designed to respond to changes in customer expectations during and after the COVID-19 pandemic. These actions have demonstrably resulted in meaningful improvements in outcomes for customers including in relation to the Wavelength Customer Promises and in relation to disabled passengers and other passengers with accessibility needs (or, in the opinion of the Secretary of State (acting reasonably), will result in such improvements, either during the Contract Term or in the long term).

3.2 The Operator will achieve a Good Insight Rating where:

- (a) the Operator's plans and processes for managing customer experience have been particularly thorough and, as a result, any potential issues have consistently been identified and resolved in a swift and effective manner. Any actual issues have also been few in number and low in impact, and the Operator has taken prompt and effective remedial action when they have occurred;
- (b) the Operator has regularly used a range of different survey results and other relevant data and information (including Wavelength Programme and National Rail Passenger Survey data, where available) to:
  - (i) review customer needs and the extent to which they are being met; and
  - (ii) understand the impact of COVID-19 on passenger priorities and expectations; and
- (c) the Operator has taken prompt action to address those needs, including by proactively implementing initiatives designed to respond to changes in customer expectations during and after the COVID-19 pandemic. These actions have demonstrably resulted in substantial improvements in outcomes for customers, including in relation to each of the Wavelength Customer Promises and in relation to disabled passengers and other passengers with accessibility needs.

### 3.3 **One (1): Below acceptable standard**

The Operator has:

- (a) not achieved an Acceptable Insight Rating or a Good Insight Rating; and/or
- (b) has achieved an Overall NRPS Score lower than the NRPS Expected Range.

### 3.4 **Two (2): Acceptable**

The Operator has achieved:

- (a) an Acceptable Insight Rating; and
- (b) an Overall NRPS Score within the NRPS Expected Range.

### 3.5 **Three (3): Improving**

- (a) Either the Operator has achieved:
  - (i) an Acceptable Insight Rating; and
  - (ii) an Overall NRPS Score higher than the NRPS Expected Range; or
- (b) the Operator has achieved:
  - (i) a Good Insight Rating; and
  - (ii) an Overall NRPS Score within the NRPS Expected Range.

### 3.6 **Four (4): Good**

The Operator has achieved:

- (a) a Good Insight Rating; and
- (b) an Overall NRPS Score higher than the NRPS Expected Range.

## 4. **Service Quality Standards**

### 4.1 **One (1): Below acceptable standard**

The Operator has failed in any material respect to demonstrate that it has met the standard required to score a “two (2)”.

### 4.2 **Two (2): Acceptable**

- (a) The Operator has taken a proactive approach to managing service quality for all customers, with appropriate plans and processes in place that have been generally effective in:
  - (i) providing information on rolling stock used to deliver the Passenger Services (where appropriate), online and at stations at which the Passenger Services call that is accurate, timely and easy for customers to understand, taking account of the needs of different customers and which covers (but is not limited to):
    - (A) the timetable being operated;
    - (B) planned and unplanned disruption;
    - (C) fares, ticketing and retail;
    - (D) passenger rights (including compensation and redress);
    - (E) the availability of station and train facilities;
    - (F) the accessibility of stations, trains, and other customer-facing services; and
    - (G) (when appropriate) COVID-19 Guidance and Regulation;
  - (ii) ensuring that all customer contact surfaces are cleaned regularly and keeping Stations and rolling stock used to deliver the Passenger Services free from litter, dirt and other unhygienic substances;
  - (iii) ensuring that all Stations, rolling stock used to deliver the Passenger Services and online services have been staffed as required to provide a visible, helpful, accessible and proactive customer-facing service; and
  - (iv) maintaining all Station and train facilities so that they are fully functional, available for use and presented in good condition, with any non-availability of facilities for repair or maintenance being kept to the minimum necessary.
- (b) The Operator has regularly and at an appropriate frequency monitored compliance with those plans and processes and has taken prompt remedial action when they have been found not to be working.

- (c) The Operator has worked constructively with the Secretary of State to develop and implement a Service Quality Regime that meets the requirements and standards in Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*).

#### 4.3 **Three (3): Good**

The Operator has fully met the criteria for a “two (2)” and in addition:

- (a) the Operator’s plans and processes described in paragraph 4.2(a) of this Appendix 3 to Chapter 7.2 have been particularly robust, such that there have been very few, if any, repeated or systemic failures to:
- (i) provide timely, accurate and relevant information in the manner described in paragraph 4.2(a)(i) of this Appendix 3 to Chapter 7.2;
  - (ii) undertake cleaning activities and maintain high levels of cleanliness at Stations and on rolling stock used to deliver the Passenger Services;
  - (iii) staff Stations, rolling stock used to deliver the Passenger Services and online services to provide a proactive and accessible customer-facing service; and
  - (iv) maintain Station and train facilities so that they are fully functional and well-presented,
- that have been due to factors and/or incidents within the reasonable control of the Operator.
- (b) The Operator’s plans and processes for managing service quality standards have been particularly thorough and, as a result, any *potential* issues have consistently been identified and resolved in a swift and effective manner. Any *actual* issues have also been few in number and low in impact, and the Operator has taken prompt and effective remedial action when they have occurred.

#### 5. **FP Cost Sub-Component**

##### 5.1 **One (1): Below acceptable standard**

The Operator has failed in any material respect to demonstrate that it has met the standard required to score a “two (2)”.

##### 5.2 **Two (2): Acceptable**

The Operator has consistently acted as a Good and Efficient Operator and has been effective in optimising the financial prospects of its business over the short, medium and long term by driving continuous improvement in cost efficiency and in doing so:

- (a) the Operator has, as part of developing the Business Plan and Escrow Documents for the Subsequent Business Plan Year immediately following the relevant PBF Assessment Period:
- (i) worked collaboratively within the industry to identify innovation, technological advances and other key enablers of cost efficiency;
  - (ii) established and updated a long-term plan for continuous cost efficiency improvement, taking advantage of key enablers;
  - (iii) reasonably demonstrated that the Cost Budget and (if required pursuant to the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee in relation to the relevant PBF Assessment Period) proposed Target Cost or Target Profit for the coming year (in each case, both as included in the Escrow Documents: (i) as first delivered by the Operator pursuant to paragraph 3.4 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*); and (ii) to the extent agreed pursuant to paragraphs 3.5 and 3.6 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*)) maintains existing cost efficiency levels in all areas and represents improvement in cost efficiency in a number of key areas that are material to the overall budget; and
  - (iv) where reductions in outputs have been planned in conjunction with the Secretary of State, demonstrated that optimal cost reductions have been reflected in the Cost Budget and (if required pursuant to the Applicable

Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee in relation to the relevant PBF Assessment Period) proposed Target Cost or Target Profit for the coming year (in each case, both as included in the Escrow Documents: (i) as first delivered by the Operator pursuant to paragraph 3.4 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*); and (ii) to the extent agreed pursuant to paragraphs 3.5 and 3.6 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*)),

provided that the Scorecard Criteria in this paragraph 5.2(a) shall not apply if a Business Plan has not been agreed or determined (in accordance with paragraph 3 (*Annual Business Plan Process*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*)) for the Subsequent Business Plan Year immediately following the relevant PBF Assessment Period;

- (b) there has not been any Cost Budget Change in relation to the Cost Budget Change Event described at paragraph 1.23 of Part 1 (*Cost Budget Change Events*) of Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*), or the extent of any such Cost Budget Changes is consistent with what would reasonably be expected of a competent Train Operator, acting efficiently, having regard to the frequency and quantum of any such Cost Budget Changes over the whole relevant PBF Assessment Period, as well as over the full Contract Term to date. For this purpose, any Cost Budget Changes shall be disregarded to the extent that these have been resolved by a net-neutral revision to the overall Cost Budget (the total of all Cost Categories) pursuant to paragraph 2.8(b)(ii) of Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*), provided that Business Plan outcomes and core contractual commitments pursuant to this Contract are unaffected by such Cost Budget Change. In addition, there has not been a Cost Budget Change at all in the circumstances described at paragraph 2.9 of Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*);
- (c) in relation to any Cost Budget Change Events, the Operator has consistently presented viable options for mitigation of the impact of such Cost Budget Change Events on the Cost Budget, and on delivery of the Business Plan outcomes and core contractual commitments pursuant to this Contract, and has worked collaboratively with the Secretary of State to agree the most appropriate resolution; and
- (d) other than where the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee is either of the FP Cost QTM or the FP Profit QTM (in which case the Scorecard Criteria in this paragraph 5.2(b) shall not apply), the Operator has:
  - (i) put in place appropriate internal processes which have been effective in managing the Operator's expenditure across all areas of the business, so as to improve efficiency and guard against unnecessary or excessive spend; and
  - (ii) implemented such further actions as may have been directed by the Secretary of State with a view to controlling costs,

while also continuing to incur such expenditure as is reasonably necessary to meet the Operator's obligations under this Contract and to protect the long-term financial interests of the UK rail industry both during the Contract Term and in the longer term, and to the extent that there are any specific instances where the Operator has not fully complied with requirements (i) and (ii) described above, such instances have been few in number and limited in impact, and the Operator has taken prompt and effective remedial action following any such instances.

### 5.3 **Three (3): Good**

The Operator has fully met the criteria for a "two (2)" and in addition has:

- (a) as part of developing the Business Plan and Escrow Documents for the Subsequent Business Plan Year immediately following the relevant PBF Assessment Period, demonstrated conclusively that the Cost Budget and (if required pursuant to the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee in relation to the relevant PBF Assessment Period) proposed Target Cost or Target Profit for the coming year (in each case, both as included in the Escrow Documents: (i) as first delivered by the Operator pursuant to paragraph 3.4 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*); and (ii) to the extent agreed pursuant to paragraphs 3.5 and 3.6 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*)) for the coming year maintains existing cost efficiency levels in all

areas, represents improvement in cost efficiency in most areas that are material to the overall budget, overall representing market-leading levels of cost efficiency, provided that the Scorecard Criterion in this paragraph 5.3(a) shall not apply if a Business Plan has not been agreed or determined (in accordance with paragraph 3 (*Annual Business Plan Process*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*)) for the Subsequent Business Plan Year immediately following the relevant PBF Assessment Period; and

- (b) demonstrably responded to unexpected changes in circumstances during the year in a cost efficient manner, provided that the Scorecard Criterion in this paragraph 5.3(b) shall not apply if the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee is either the FP Cost QTM or the FP Profit QTM,

provided that in circumstances in which neither of the Scorecard Criteria in paragraphs 5.3(a) or 5.3(b) are applicable, a score of "three (3)" shall be awarded where the Operator has fully met the criteria for a "two (2)".

## 6. **FP Revenue Sub-Component**

### 6.1 **One (1): Below acceptable standard**

The Operator has failed in any material respect to demonstrate that it has met the standard required to score a "two (2)".

### 6.2 **Two (2): Acceptable**

The Operator has consistently acted as a Good and Efficient Operator and has been effective in optimising the financial prospects of its business over the short, medium and long term by driving the recovery and future growth of passenger demand and revenue and in doing so (where appropriate within the limits arising from COVID-19 Guidance and Regulation):

- (a) other than where a Business Plan has not been agreed or determined (in accordance with paragraph 3 (*Annual Business Plan Process*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*)) for the Subsequent Business Plan Year immediately following the relevant PBF Assessment Period (in which case the Scorecard Criteria in this paragraph 6.2(a) shall not apply), the Operator has:
- (i) worked with industry partners as appropriate to take a cross-industry approach to promoting rail travel;
  - (ii) as part of developing the Business Plan and Escrow Documents for the coming year:
    - (A) undertaken an analysis of market trends and identified opportunities to grow revenue; and
    - (B) planned revenue growth initiatives accordingly, which are value for money and are reflected in the Cost Budget and Forecast Revenue for the coming year (in each case, both as included in the Escrow Documents: (i) as first delivered by the Operator pursuant to paragraph 3.4 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*); and (ii) to the extent agreed pursuant to paragraphs 3.5 and 3.6 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*)); and
  - (iii) implemented such further actions as may have been directed by the Secretary of State with a view to promoting demand and revenue growth;
- (b) other than where the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee is either of the FP Revenue QTM or the FP Profit QTM (in which case the Scorecard Criteria in this paragraph 6.2(b) shall not apply) the Operator has:
- (i) taken effective action to promote rail as a safe mode of transport and to raise public awareness of the steps taken by the Operator and the wider rail industry to minimise public health risks;
  - (ii) delivered any value for money initiatives, as included within the agreed Business Plan, to drive and accommodate recovery and growth in patronage,



and to the extent that there are any specific instances where the Operator has not fully complied with requirements (i) and (ii) above, such instances have been few in number and limited in impact, and the Operator has taken prompt and effective remedial action following any such instances, and

- (c) monitored ticketless travel and taken appropriate, value for money measures to deter ticketless travel, consistent with those that a Good and Efficient Operator would be expected to take, provided that the Scorecard Criterion in this paragraph 6.2(c) shall not apply if:
  - (i) the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee applies the FP TT QTM; or
  - (ii) the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee is either of the FP Revenue QTM or the FP Profit QTM and a Business Plan has not been agreed or determined (in accordance with paragraph 3 (*Annual Business Plan Process*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*)) for the Subsequent Business Plan Year immediately following the relevant PBF Assessment Period (in which case the Operator's performance in relation to delivery of Business Plan Commitments and achievement of Business Plan KPIs which in each case relate to ticketless travel shall be assessed pursuant to the Scorecard Criteria relating to Business Plan Delivery as set out in paragraph 8 below).

### 6.3 **Three (3): Good**

The Operator has fully met the criteria for a "two (2)" and in addition has (where appropriate within the limits arising from COVID-19 Guidance and Regulation):

- (a) as part of developing the Business Plan and Escrow Documents for the coming year:
  - (i) identified market changes, trends and potential opportunities for maximizing revenue across all relevant markets; and
  - (ii) planned a comprehensive range of value for money initiatives to maximise revenue accordingly,

provided that the Scorecard Criterion in this paragraph 6.3(a) shall not apply if a Business Plan has not been agreed or determined (in accordance with paragraph 3 (*Annual Business Plan Process*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*)) for the Subsequent Business Plan Year immediately following the relevant PBF Assessment Period; and

- (b) identified emerging market trends during the year and optimised delivery to maximise passenger revenue opportunities, provided that where the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee is either of the FP Revenue QTM or the FP Profit QTM, the Scorecard Criterion in this paragraph 6.3(b) shall not apply).

## 7. **Business Plan Quality**

### 7.1 **One (1): Below acceptable standard**

The Operator has failed in any material respect to demonstrate that it has met the standard required to score a "two (2)".

### 7.2 **Two (2): Acceptable**

- (a) The draft Business Plan submitted by the Operator in response to the Request for Business Plan:
  - (i) includes Business Plan Commitments that cover all of the principal actions the Operator is proposing to take and that are specific, measurable and described clearly; and
  - (ii) substantially meets the requirements of the Secretary of State as set out in the Request for Business Plan.
- (b) The Parties agree the Business Plan without the Secretary of State determining any material matters.



- (c) During the development and finalisation of the Business Plan, the Operator:
  - (i) worked effectively with the Secretary of State, Network Rail and (where requested by the Secretary of State) other parties to refine and agree the Secretary of State's requirements and the Business Plan where necessary;
  - (ii) responded in a timely way to requests from the Secretary of State for clarification and further information.

### 7.3 **Three (3): Good**

The Operator has fully met the criteria for a "two (2)" and in addition:

- (a) The final agreed Business Plan demonstrates innovation and ambition through high quality, credible and affordable proposals that deliver substantial improvement in passenger outcomes or other public policy objectives in relation to at least one of the Business Plan Components over the coming year, including as measured through forecast improvement in a number of Business Plan KPIs.
- (b) The proposals covered in (a):
  - (i) have wider benefits beyond the Contract Term or for the wider rail industry; and
  - (ii) are supported by credible delivery plans and clear, robust analysis of the financial and practical consequences, associated risks and other implications.

## 8. **Business Plan Delivery**

### 8.1 **One (1): Below acceptable standard**

The Operator has failed in any material respect to demonstrate that it has met the standard required to score a "two (2)".

### 8.2 **Two (2): Acceptable**

- (a) The Operator has delivered most of the Business Plan Commitments on time and with the outputs and outcomes specified in the Business Plan.
- (b) The Operator has met most of the Business Plan KPIs specified in the Business Plan.
- (c) Where any Business Plan Commitment or Business Plan KPI has not been met, the Operator has demonstrated that:
  - (i) this was primarily due to factors outside its control; and
  - (ii) the Operator has implemented mitigating actions to protect passenger outcomes, financial sustainability or other public policy objectives.

### 8.3 **Three (3): Good**

The Operator has fully met the criteria for a "two (2)" and in addition:

- (a) has delivered all or nearly all Business Plan Commitments on time and with the expected outputs and outcomes;
- (b) has delivered better outcomes from some of the Business Plan Commitments than specified in the Business Plan;
- (c) has exceeded some of the Business Plan KPIs; and
- (d) where any Business Plan Commitment has not been met, the Operator has implemented mitigating actions or alternative initiatives (where consistent with the requirement to act as a Good and Efficient Operator, or where the Secretary of State has otherwise consented) to deliver better passenger outcomes, financial sustainability or other public policy objectives and to learn lessons for the future.

- 8.4 The scorecard will not take into account any issues otherwise reflected in the Service Quality Standards Scorecard Criteria, Customer Satisfaction Scorecard Criteria, Operational Performance Scorecard Criteria, Collaboration Scorecard Criteria, Financial Performance Scorecard Criteria or assessment through the Quantified Assessment Methodology of any of

the Operational Performance Fee, Service Quality Fee or Financial Performance Fee (as applicable).

9. **Collaboration**

9.1 **One (1): Below acceptable standard**

The Operator has failed in any material respect to demonstrate that it has met the standard required to score a “two (2)”.

9.2 **Two (2): Acceptable**

- (a) The Operator has delivered most of the Business Plan Commitments in the Collaboration Plan Business Plan Component on time and with the outputs and outcomes specified in the Business Plan.
- (b) The Operator has met most of the Business Plan KPIs with respect to the Collaboration Plan Business Plan Component specified in the Business Plan.
- (c) The Operator has demonstrated some examples where its collaborative behaviour has improved outcomes for users, value for money or the railway’s contribution to local and regional priorities and objectives.

9.3 **Three (3): Good**

The Operator has fully met the criteria for a “two (2)” and in addition:

- (a) has demonstrated leadership in improving collaborative behaviours and developing competencies and capabilities through all levels of the business;
- (b) has embedded good practice and experience in collaborative behaviour into its business to provide long-term benefits through sustained higher performance;
- (c) has delivered all or nearly all Business Plan Commitments in the Collaboration Plan Business Plan Component on time and with the expected outputs and outcomes;
- (d) has delivered better outcomes from some of the Business Plan Commitments in the Collaboration Plan Business Plan Component than specified in the Business Plan;
- (e) has exceeded some of the Business Plan KPIs with respect to the Collaboration Plan Business Plan Component; and
- (f) where any Business Plan Commitment has not been met, the Operator has implemented mitigating actions or alternative initiatives (where consistent with the requirement to act as a Good and Efficient Operator, or where the Secretary of State has otherwise consented) to deliver better passenger outcomes, financial sustainability or other public policy objectives and to learn lessons for the future.

### Appendix 4 to Chapter 7.2 Scorecard Methodology

#### 1. Application of the Scorecard Criteria and calculation of Performance Based Fee

Each PBF Component and Applicable FP Sub-Component to be calculated in accordance with the Scorecard Methodology shall be assessed with respect to the Operator's PBF Assessment Period Review score for the relevant PBF Assessment Period (pursuant to paragraph 6 (*PBF Assessment Period Review Scoring*) of Appendix 1 (*PBF Assessment Period Review*)) by reference to the Scorecard Criteria, then the score shall be used to calculate the value of the Performance Based Fee attributable to that PBF Component or Applicable FP Sub-Component, as applicable, as set out below:

PBF Component	PBF Assessment Period Scorecard score for relevant Scorecard Criterion	PBF £
Operational Performance Fee	Three (3)	£ MPBF * W <sub>OP</sub>
	Two (2)	£ MPBF * W <sub>OP</sub> * [REDACTED <sup>5</sup> ]
	One (1)	Zero pound (£0)
Customer Satisfaction Fee  (to the extent that Customer Satisfaction Scorecard A is the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Customer Satisfaction Fee in the PBF Assessment Period)	Three (3)	£ MPBF * W <sub>CE</sub> * W <sub>CS</sub>
	Two (2)	£ MPBF * W <sub>CE</sub> * W <sub>CS</sub> * [REDACTED <sup>6</sup> ]
	One (1)	Zero pound (£0)
Customer Satisfaction Fee  (to the extent that Customer Satisfaction Scorecard B is the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Customer Satisfaction Fee)	Four (4)	£ MPBF * W <sub>CE</sub> * W <sub>CS</sub>
	Three (3)	£ MPBF * W <sub>CE</sub> * W <sub>CS</sub> * [REDACTED <sup>7</sup> ]

<sup>5</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>6</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>7</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

PBF Component	PBF Assessment Period Scorecard score for relevant Scorecard Criterion	PBF £
in the PBF Assessment Period)	Two (2)	£ MPBF * W <sub>CE</sub> * W <sub>CS</sub> * [REDACTED <sup>8</sup> ]
	One (1)	[REDACTED <sup>9</sup> ]
Service Quality Standards Fee	Three (3)	£ MPBF * W <sub>CE</sub> * W <sub>SQ</sub>
	Two (2)	£ MPBF * W <sub>CE</sub> * W <sub>SQ</sub> * [REDACTED <sup>10</sup> ]
	One (1)	Zero pound (£0)
FP Cost Sub-Component	Three (3)	<i>For the first Contract Year only:</i>  £ MPBF * W <sub>FIN</sub> * W <sub>FINC</sub> * one hundred per cent (100%)
		<i>For all Contract Years (excluding the first Contract Year):</i>  £ MPBF * W <sub>FIN</sub> * W <sub>FINC</sub> * [REDACTED <sup>11</sup> ]

<sup>8</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>9</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>10</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>11</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

PBF Component	PBF Assessment Period Scorecard score for relevant Scorecard Criterion	PBF £
	Two (2)	£ MPBF * W <sub>FIN</sub> * W <sub>FINC</sub> * [REDACTED <sup>12</sup> ]
	One (1)	Zero pound (£0)
FP Revenue Sub-Component	Three (3)	<i>For the first Contract Year only:</i>  £ MPBF * W <sub>FIN</sub> * W <sub>FINR</sub> * one hundred per cent (100%)
		<i>For all Contract Years (excluding the first Contract Year):</i>  £ MPBF * W <sub>FIN</sub> * W <sub>FINR</sub> * [REDACTED <sup>13</sup> ]
	Two (2)	£ MPBF * W <sub>FIN</sub> * W <sub>FINR</sub> * [REDACTED <sup>14</sup> ]
	One (1)	[REDACTED <sup>15</sup> ]
Business Plan Quality	Three (3)	£ MPBF * W <sub>BM</sub> * W <sub>BPQ</sub>

<sup>12</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>13</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>14</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>15</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

PBF Component	PBF Assessment Period Scorecard score for relevant Scorecard Criterion	PBF £
	Two (2)	£ MPBF * W <sub>BM</sub> * W <sub>BPQ</sub> * [REDACTED <sup>16</sup> ]
	One (1)	Zero pound (£0)
Business Plan Delivery	Three (3)	£ MPBF * W <sub>BM</sub> * W <sub>BPD</sub>
	Two (2)	£ MPBF * W <sub>BM</sub> * W <sub>BPD</sub> * [REDACTED <sup>17</sup> ]
	One (1)	Zero pound (£0)
Collaboration	Three (3)	£ MPBF * W <sub>BM</sub> * W <sub>C</sub>
	Two (2)	£ MPBF * W <sub>BM</sub> * W <sub>C</sub> * [REDACTED <sup>18</sup> ]
	One (1)	Zero pound (£0)

where:

“W <sub>BPQ</sub> ”	means the weighting to be applied to Business Plan Quality when calculating the amount of the Business Management Fee for that PBF Assessment Period, being [REDACTED <sup>19</sup> ], provided that if a Business Plan has not been agreed or determined (in accordance with paragraph 3 ( <i>Annual Business Plan Process</i> ) of Chapter 7.7 ( <i>Business Plan</i> )) for the Subsequent Business Plan Year immediately following the relevant PBF Assessment Period, such weighting shall be [REDACTED <sup>20</sup> ];
---------------------	---

<sup>16</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>17</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>18</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>19</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>20</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<p>“W<sub>BPD</sub>”</p>	<p>means the weighting to be applied to Business Plan Delivery when calculating the amount of the Business Management Fee for that PBF Assessment Period, being [REDACTED<sup>21</sup>], provided that if a Business Plan has not been agreed or determined (in accordance with paragraph 3 (<i>Annual Business Plan Process</i>) of Chapter 7.7 (<i>Business Plan</i>)) for the Subsequent Business Plan Year immediately following the relevant PBF Assessment Period, such weighting shall be [REDACTED<sup>22</sup>]; and</p>
<p>“W<sub>C</sub>”</p>	<p>means the weighting to be applied to Collaboration when calculating the amount of the Business Management Fee for that PBF Assessment Period, being [REDACTED<sup>23</sup>], provided that if a Business Plan has not been agreed or determined (in accordance with paragraph 3 (<i>Annual Business Plan Process</i>) of Chapter 7.7 (<i>Business Plan</i>)) for the Subsequent Business Plan Year immediately following the relevant PBF Assessment Period, such weighting shall be [REDACTED<sup>24</sup>].</p>

---

<sup>21</sup> **2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.**

<sup>22</sup> **2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.**

<sup>23</sup> **2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.**

<sup>24</sup> **2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.**



**Appendix 5 to Chapter 7.2  
Quantified Target Methodology**

**1. Application of the Quantified Target Methodology**

- 1.1 If the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Operational Performance Fee is the Quantified Target Methodology, paragraph 2 (Operational Performance) of this Appendix 5 to Chapter 7.2 shall apply in respect of the value of the Performance Based Fee attributable to the Operational Performance Fee.
- 1.2 If the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Service Quality Standards Fee is the Quantified Target Methodology, paragraph 3 (Service Quality Standards) of this Appendix 5 to Chapter 7.2 shall apply in respect of the value of the Performance Based Fee attributable to the Service Quality Standards Fee.
- 1.3 If the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee applies the FP TT QTM, paragraph 4 (*Ticketless Travel*) of this Appendix 5 to Chapter 7.2 shall apply in respect of the value of the Performance Based Fee attributable to the FP TT Sub-Component.

**2. Operational Performance**

- 2.1 The value of OP for the purposes of the formula set out in paragraph 2.2 of Chapter 7.2 shall be calculated as the aggregate of the calculations performed with respect to each Reporting Period in the relevant PBF Assessment Period pursuant to paragraphs 2.2 to 2.4 of this Appendix 5 to Chapter 7.2 (as applicable), in respect of each of:
  - (a) TOC on Self Cancellations;
  - (b) TOC Minutes Delay;
  - (c) Short Formations;
  - (d) T-3;
  - (e) T-15; and
  - (f) All Cancellations.
- 2.2 Subject to paragraph 2.3 below, for each Reporting Period within the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State shall calculate a financial sum in respect of each of TOC on Self Cancellations, TOC Minutes Delay, Short Formations and All Cancellations in accordance with the applicable formula set out below based on whether the Operator's Actual All Cancellations Performance Level or the Operator's Actual Performance Level in relation to TOC on Self Cancellations, TOC Minutes Delay and Short Formations is:
  - (a) greater than or equal to the Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level;
  - (b) less than the Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level but greater than the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level B;
  - (c) equal to or less than the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level B but greater than or equal to the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level A;
  - (d) less than the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level A but greater than the Relevant OP Component Maximum Fee Performance Level; or
  - (e) equal to or less than the Relevant OP Component Maximum Fee Performance Level,
 in each case for the applicable Operational Performance Component in the relevant Reporting Period:

<b>TOC on Self Cancellations, TOC Minutes Delay, Short Formations and All Cancellations Performance</b>	<b>Fee for the applicable Operational Performance Component</b>
---	---

Greater than or equal to the Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level	[REDACTED <sup>25</sup> ]
Less than the Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level but greater than the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level B	$W_{ROPC} * W_{OP} * \left(\frac{MPBF}{N}\right) * [REDACTED^{26}] * \left(\frac{NIL - ACTUAL}{NIL - EXPECTED B}\right)$
Equal to or less than the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level B but greater than or equal to the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level A	$W_{ROPC} * W_{OP} * \left(\frac{MPBF}{N}\right) * [REDACTED^{27}]$
Less than the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level A but greater than the Relevant OP Component Maximum Fee Performance Level	$W_{ROPC} * W_{OP} * \left(\frac{MPBF}{N}\right) * \left[ [REDACTED^{28}] + ([REDACTED^{29}] * \frac{EXPECTED A - ACTUAL}{EXPECTED A - MAX}) \right]$
Equal to or less than the Relevant OP Component Maximum Fee Performance Level	$W_{ROPC} * W_{OP} * \left(\frac{MPBF}{N}\right)$

where:

Actual	means (as applicable to the relevant Operational Performance Component):  (i) the Actual All Cancellations Performance Level; or  (ii) the Operator’s Actual Performance Level in relation to TOC on Self Cancellations, TOC Minutes Delay or Short Formations
Max	means the Relevant OP Component Maximum Fee Performance Level
Nil	means the Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level
Expected A	means the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level A

<sup>25</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>26</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>27</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>28</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>29</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

Expected B	means the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level B
$W_{ROPC}$	means (as applicable to the relevant Operational Performance Component), $W_{OPC}$ , $W_{OPMD}$ , $W_{OPSF}$ or $W_{OPAC}$
N	means the number of Reporting Periods in the relevant PBF Assessment Period

- 2.3 If, upon the resolution of any claim with respect to any Force Majeure Event relating to TOC on Self Cancellations, TOC Minutes Delay and/or Short Formations (as applicable) in any Reporting Period(s), it is determined that the Operator is entitled to relief in respect of its performance in relation to such Operational Performance Component(s) in the relevant Reporting Period(s):
- (a) the Secretary of State shall calculate a revised financial sum in respect of the relevant Operational Performance Component(s) for any relevant Reporting Period(s) in accordance with paragraph 2.2 of this Appendix 5 to Chapter 7.2, provided that for such purpose, references to “Actual Performance Level” shall be construed as being to the “FM Adjusted Performance Level”;
  - (b) the Secretary of State shall calculate the difference between:
    - (i) the amount of the Operational Performance Fee for the relevant PBF Assessment Period attributable to such Operational Performance Components(s) in the relevant Reporting Period(s), as originally determined in accordance with paragraph 2.2 of this Appendix 5 to Chapter 7.2 or as previously determined in accordance with paragraph 2.3(a) of this Appendix 5 to Chapter 7.2; and
    - (ii) the revised financial sum calculated in accordance with paragraph 2.3(a) of this Appendix 5 to Chapter 7.2; and
  - (c) the Secretary of State shall pay the amount of such difference (expressed as a positive number) to the Operator by way of an adjustment to the next following Contract Payment following its determination (or if there are no further Contract Payments to be paid at the time of such determination, by way of a separate payment to the Operator within 30 days of such determination).
- 2.4 For each Reporting Period within the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State shall calculate a financial sum in respect of each of T-3 and T-15 in accordance with the applicable formula set out below based on whether the Operator’s Actual T-3 Performance Level or Actual T-15 Performance Level is:
- (a) less than or equal to the Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level;
  - (b) greater than the Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level but less than the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level B;
  - (c) equal to or greater than the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level B but less than or equal to the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level A;
  - (d) greater than the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level A but less than the Relevant OP Component Maximum Fee Performance Level; or
  - (e) equal to or greater than the Relevant OP Component Maximum Fee Performance Level,
- in each case for the applicable Operational Performance Component in the relevant Reporting Period:

T-3 or T-15 Performance	Fee for the applicable Operational Performance Component
Less than or equal to the Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level	[REDACTED <sup>30</sup> ]
Greater than the Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level but less than the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level B	$W_{ROPC} * W_{OP} * \left(\frac{MPBF}{N}\right) * [REDACTED^{31}] * \left(\frac{ACTUAL-NIL}{EXPECTED B-NIL}\right)$
equal to or greater than the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level B but less than or equal to the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level A	$W_{ROPC} * W_{OP} * \left(\frac{MPBF}{N}\right) * [REDACTED^{32}]$
Greater than the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level A but less than the Relevant OP Component Maximum Fee Performance Level	$W_{ROPC} * W_{OP} * \left(\frac{MPBF}{N}\right) * \left[ [REDACTED^{33}] + \left( [REDACTED^{34}] * \frac{ACTUAL-EXPECTED A}{MAX-EXPECTED A} \right) \right]$
Equal to or greater than the Relevant OP Component Maximum Fee Performance Level	$W_{ROPC} * W_{OP} * \left(\frac{MPBF}{N}\right)$

where:

Actual	means the Operator’s Actual T-3 Performance Level or Actual T-15 Performance Level (as applicable)
Max	means the Relevant OP Component Maximum Fee Performance Level
Nil	means the Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level
Expected A	means the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level A

<sup>30</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>31</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>32</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>33</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>34</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

Expected B	means the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level B
$W_{ROPC}$	means (as applicable to the relevant Operational Performance Component), $W_{OPT3}$ , or $W_{OPT15}$
N	means the number of Reporting Periods in the relevant PBF Assessment Period

3. **Service Quality Standards**

3.1 **Calculation of Service Quality Standards Fee (“SQ”)**

- (a) Within ten (10) Weekdays after the end of each PBF Assessment Period, the Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State its calculation of:
  - (i) the mean average of the four Pass Rates calculated pursuant to paragraph 8.2 (*Calculation of Pass Rates*) of Part 1 (*Service Quality Regime*) Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*) in relation to the SQR Stations Component (the “**Overall Station Pass Rate**”), being:
    - (A) Ambience and Assets;
    - (B) Cleanliness and Graffiti;
    - (C) Information; and
    - (D) Ticketing & Staffing;
  - (ii) the mean average of the three Pass Rates calculated pursuant to paragraph 8.2 (*Calculation of Pass Rates*) of Part 1 (*Service Quality Regime*) Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*) in relation to the SQR Trains Component (the “**Overall Trains Pass Rate**”), being:
    - (A) Ambience and Assets;
    - (B) Cleanliness and Graffiti; and
    - (C) Information; and
  - (iii) the mean average of the two Pass Rates calculated pursuant to paragraph 8.2 (*Calculation of Pass Rates*) of Part 1 (*Service Quality Regime*) Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*) in relation to the SQR Customer Service Component the “**Overall Customer Service Pass Rate**”), being:
    - (A) Staff Helpfulness; and
    - (B) Online Information.
- (b) Subject to paragraphs 14.2 (*Consequences of a Failed Audit*) of Part 1 (*Service Quality Regime*) Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*) and paragraph 3.2 (*Material Discrepancies*) of this Appendix 5 (*Quantified Target Methodology*) to Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*), within twenty eight (28) days following the later of:
  - (i) receipt of the calculations from the Operator pursuant to paragraph 3.1(a) above; and
  - (ii) the findings of any SoS Audit or Independent Service Quality Audit undertaken in respect of the relevant Contract Year pursuant to Part 1 (*Service Quality Regime*) of Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*),

the Secretary of State shall calculate the Operator’s performance against each of the SQR Targets pursuant to and in accordance with the applicable formula set out below based on whether the Operator’s performance against the applicable SQR Target is:

  - (iii) less than or equal to the SQR Nil Fee Performance Level;

- (iv) greater than the SQR Nil Fee Performance Level but less than the SQR Expected Fee Performance Level but;
  - (v) equal to or greater than the SQR Expected Fee Performance Level but less than the SQR Maximum Fee Performance Level; or
  - (vi) equal to or greater than the SQR Maximum Fee Performance Level,
- in each case for each SQR Component:

SQR Component Performance (Overall Station Pass Rate / Overall Trains Pass Rate / Overall Customer Service Pass Rate)	Fee for the applicable SQR Component (S/T/C)
Less than or equal to the SQR Nil Fee Performance Level	[REDACTED <sup>35</sup> ]
Greater than the SQR Nil Fee Performance Level but less than the SQR Expected Fee Performance Level	$\left(\frac{WSQ}{3}\right) * W_{CE} * MPBF * [REDACTED^{36}] * \left(\frac{PASS\ RATE - SQR\ NIL}{SQR\ EXPECTED - SQR\ NIL}\right)$
Equal to or greater than the SQR Expected Fee Performance Level but less than the SQR Maximum Fee Performance Level	$\left(\frac{WSQ}{3}\right) * W_{CE} * MPBF * \left[ [REDACTED^{37}] + [REDACTED^{38}] * \frac{PASS\ RATE - SQR\ EXPECTED}{SQR\ MAX - SQR\ EXPECTED} \right]$
Equal to or greater than the SQR Maximum Fee Performance Level	$\left(\frac{WSQ}{3}\right) * W_{CE} * MPBF$

where:

Pass Rate	means the Operator’s Overall Station Pass Rate, Overall Trains Pass Rate or Overall Customer Service Pass Rate (as applicable)
SQR Max	means the SQR Maximum Fee Performance Level
SQR Expected	means the SQR Expected Fee Performance Level
SQR Nil	means the SQR Nil Fee Performance Level

<sup>35</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>36</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>37</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>38</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

- (c) For each relevant PBF Assessment Period the Secretary of State shall calculate the value of the Performance Based Fee attributable to SQ for the purposes of paragraph 2.2 of this Chapter 7.2 in accordance with the formula set out below.

$£SQ =$	$S + T + C$
---------	-------------

where:

<b>S</b>	means the value attributable to the Stations SQR Component calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.1(b) above;
<b>T</b>	means the value attributable to the Trains SQR Component calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.1(b) above; and
<b>C</b>	means the value attributable to the Customer Service SQR Component calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.1(b) above.

**3.2 Material Discrepancies**

If, in any PBF Assessment Period, an Independent Service Quality Audit or SoS Audit (as the case may be) reveals:

- (a) any Material Discrepancies, the Overall SQR Component Pass Rate(s) in respect of each SQR Component affected by the Material Discrepancies shall be deemed to be equal to the SQR Nil Fee Performance Level for the purposes of calculating the Service Quality Standards Fee pursuant to paragraph 3.1 (*Service Quality Standards*) of this Appendix 5 (*Quantified Target Methodology*) to Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*) and the element of the Service Quality Standards Fee attributable to the applicable SQR Component(s) shall be zero; and/or
- (b) any Material Discrepancies which are so significant as to indicate in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State wilful misconduct by the Operator or a material or persistent disregard by the Operator of its obligations under Part 1 to Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*), then, notwithstanding paragraph 3.1 (*Service Quality Standards*) of this Appendix 5 (*Quantified Target Methodology*) to Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*), the Service Quality Standards Fee shall be zero.

**4. Ticketless Travel**

**4.1 Calculation of FIN(TT)**

In relation to any PBF Assessment Period, where the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee includes the application of the FP TT QTM, the element of the Financial Performance Fee attributable to the FP TT Sub-Component shall be determined in accordance with this paragraph 4.

- (a) The TT Expected Fee Performance Level, TT Maximum Fee Performance Level and TT Nil Fee Performance Level as specified as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan shall apply to the relevant PBF Assessment Period.
- (b) The Secretary of State shall undertake any calculations required to be performed pursuant to this paragraph 4 by reference to the Ticketless Travel Rate(s) identified by the Ticketless Travel Survey(s) undertaken during the relevant PBF Assessment Period in accordance with Chapter 8.1 (*Marketing and Revenue Growth*).
- (c) If the duration of the relevant PBF Assessment Period:
  - (i) includes only one Ticketless Travel Survey Period, the Overall PBF TTR with respect to the relevant PBF Assessment Period shall be the Ticketless Travel Rate for such Ticketless Travel Survey Period; or
  - (ii) includes more than one Ticketless Travel Survey Period, the Overall PBF TTR with respect to the relevant PBF Assessment Period shall be calculated as the



sum of the weighted Ticketless Travel Rate (“**WTTR**”) in respect of each such Ticketless Travel Survey Period, where each WTTR is calculated in accordance with the formula below.

<b>WTTR =</b>	$TTR_x * [N_x/N_y]$
---------------	---------------------

where:

<b>N<sub>x</sub></b>	means the number of Reporting Periods to which Period X relates (as referred to in the definition of Ticketless Travel Survey Period), which also fall during the relevant PBF Assessment Period;
<b>N<sub>y</sub></b>	means the aggregate number of Reporting Periods to which any applicable Ticketless Travel Survey Periods relate (as referred to in the definition of Ticketless Travel Survey Period), which also fall during the relevant PBF Assessment Period;
<b>Period X</b>	means each applicable Ticketless Travel Survey Period; and
<b>TTR<sub>x</sub></b>	means the Ticketless Travel Rate during Period X.

- (d) The Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State all financial information required for the purposes of making each of the calculations required pursuant to this paragraph 4 in accordance with paragraph 1.1 (*Accounting Records*) to paragraph 1.5 (*Annual Financial Information*) of Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*).
- (e) Within twenty eight (28) days of receipt of all financial information required for the purposes of making the relevant calculations, the Secretary of State shall calculate the value of the element of the Financial Performance Fee attributable to the FP TT Sub-Component in accordance with the applicable formula set out below based on whether the Overall PBF TTR is:
  - (i) greater than or equal to the TT Nil Fee Performance Level;
  - (ii) less than the TT Nil Fee Performance Level but greater than the TT Expected Fee Performance Level;
  - (iii) equal to or less than the TT Expected Fee Performance Level but greater than the TT Maximum Fee Performance Level; or
  - (iv) equal to or less than the TT Maximum Fee Performance Level:

<b>Overall PBF TTR</b>	<b>£ FIN(TT)</b>
<b>Greater than or equal to the TT Nil Fee Performance Level</b>	[REDACTED <sup>39</sup> ]

<sup>39</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<p><b>Less than the TT Nil Fee Performance Level but greater than the TT Expected Fee Performance Level</b></p>	<p><math>[(TT_{Nil} - OPT) / (TT_{Nil} - TTE)] * W_{FIN} * W_{FINTT} * MPBF * [REDACTED^{40}]</math></p>
<p><b>Equal to or less than the TT Expected Fee Performance Level but greater than the TT Maximum Fee Performance Level</b></p>	<p><math>(W_{FIN} * W_{FINTT} * MPBF) - \{[(OPT - TT_{Max}) / (TTE - TT_{Max})] * W_{FIN} * W_{FINTT} * MPBF * [REDACTED^{41}]\}</math></p>
<p><b>Equal to or less than the TT Maximum Fee Performance Level</b></p>	<p><math>W_{FIN} * W_{FINTT} * MPBF</math></p>

---

<sup>40</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>41</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

## Appendix 6 to Chapter 7.2 Combined Methodology

### 1. Application of the Combined Methodology

- 1.1 If the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee requires that any Applicable FP Sub-Component is to be calculated in accordance with the Combined Methodology, this Appendix 6 to Chapter 7.2 shall apply in respect of the value of the element of the Financial Performance Fee attributable to such Applicable FP Sub-Component, and such amount shall be calculated in accordance with the following process:
- (a) the Operator's performance with respect to such Applicable FP Sub-Component shall be assessed through the Operator's PBF Assessment Period Review score(s) for the relevant PBF Assessment Period (pursuant to paragraph 6 (*PBF Assessment Period Review Scoring*) of Appendix 1 (*PBF Assessment Period Review*)) by reference to the relevant Scorecard Criteria in accordance with paragraph 2 of this Appendix 6;
  - (b) subject to paragraph 2.1, the score(s) determined in accordance with paragraph 2 of this Appendix 6 shall be used to calculate the value of the Maximum Combined Methodology Fee with respect to the relevant Applicable FP Sub-Component in accordance with paragraph 3 of this Appendix 6; and
  - (c) the value of the element of the Financial Performance Fee attributable to such Applicable FP Sub-Component shall be calculated in accordance with paragraph 4 of this Appendix 6.

### 2. Application of Scorecard Criteria

- 2.1 If, by the end of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, a Business Plan has not been agreed or determined (in accordance with paragraph 3 (*Annual Business Plan Process*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*)) for the Subsequent Business Plan Year immediately following such PBF Assessment Period, and the FP Revenue QTM or the FP Profit QTM is the Applicable Assessment Methodology:
- (a) where the FP Revenue QTM is the Applicable Assessment Methodology, the Maximum Combined Methodology Fee shall be equal to  $MPBF * W_{FIN} * W_{FINR}$ , and paragraphs 2.2 and 3 of this Appendix 6 shall not apply; and
  - (b) where the FP Profit QTM is the Applicable Assessment Methodology, the Maximum Combined Methodology Fee shall be equal to the sum of:
    - (i) the Maximum Combined Methodology Fee with respect the FP Cost Sub-Component, calculated in accordance with the relevant formula set out in the table at paragraph 3.1(b), by reference to the relevant score determined in accordance with this paragraph 2 for the FP Cost Sub-Component; and
    - (ii)  $MPBF * W_{FIN} * W_{FINR}$ .
- 2.2 Subject to paragraph 2.1, if the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee is:
- (a) the FP Cost QTM, the Operator's performance with respect to the FP Cost Sub-Component shall be assessed by determination of the Operator's PBF Assessment Period Review score (pursuant to paragraph 6 (*PBF Assessment Period Review Scoring*) of Appendix 1 (*PBF Assessment Period Review*)) for the relevant PBF Assessment Period by reference to the relevant Scorecard Criteria with respect to the FP Cost Sub-Component;
  - (b) the FP Revenue QTM, the Operator's performance with respect to the FP Revenue Sub-Component shall be assessed by determination of the Operator's PBF Assessment Period Review score (pursuant to paragraph 6 (*PBF Assessment Period Review Scoring*) of Appendix 1 (*PBF Assessment Period Review*)) for the relevant PBF Assessment Period by reference to the relevant Scorecard Criteria with respect to the FP Cost Sub-Component; or
  - (c) the FP Profit QTM, the Operator's performance with respect to each of the FP Cost Sub-Component and the FP Revenue Sub-Component shall be assessed by

determination of the Operator’s PBF Assessment Period Review scores (pursuant to paragraph 6 (*PBF Assessment Period Review Scoring*) of Appendix 1 (*PBF Assessment Period Review*)) for the relevant PBF Assessment Period by reference to the relevant Scorecard Criteria with respect to the FP Cost Sub-Component and FP Revenue Sub-Component, respectively.

**3. Determination of Maximum Combined Methodology Fee**

3.1 Subject to paragraph 2.1, if the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee is:

- (a) the FP Cost QTM or the FP Revenue QTM, the Maximum Combined Methodology Fee shall be calculated in accordance with the relevant formula set out in the below table, by reference to the relevant score determined in accordance with paragraph 2 for the relevant Applicable FP Sub-Component; or
- (b) the FP Profit QTM, the Maximum Combined Methodology Fee shall be calculated as the sum of the Maximum Combined Methodology Fees with respect to each of the FP Cost Sub-Component and the FP Revenue Sub-Component, in each case calculated in accordance with the relevant formulae set out in the below table, by reference to the relevant scores determined in accordance with paragraph 2 for the FP Cost Sub-Component and the FP Revenue Sub-Component, respectively.

	<b>PBF Assessment Period Scorecard score for relevant Scorecard Criterion</b>	<b>MCMF £</b>
FP Cost Sub-Component	Three (3)	$£ MPBF * W_{FIN} * W_{FINC}$
	Two (2)	$£ MPBF * W_{FIN} * W_{FINC} * [REDACTED^{42}]$
	One (1)	$[REDACTED^{43}]$
FP Revenue Sub-Component	Three (3)	$£ MPBF * W_{FIN} * W_{FINR}$
	Two (2)	$£ MPBF * W_{FIN} * W_{FINR} * [REDACTED^{44}]$
	One (1)	$[REDACTED^{45}]$

**4. Application of Quantified Target Element**

4.1 For each relevant PBF Assessment Period, if the Combined Methodology is to be applied to:

<sup>42</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>43</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>44</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>45</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

- (a) the FP Cost Sub-Component, paragraph 4.2 shall apply;
- (b) the FP Revenue Sub-Component, paragraph 4.3 shall apply; or
- (c) the FP Profit Sub-Component, paragraph 4.4 shall apply,

and in each case, the value of the Maximum Combined Methodology Fee shall be as determined pursuant to paragraphs 2 and 3 above, as applicable.

**4.2 Calculation of FIN(Cost)**

- (a) Subject to paragraphs 4 (*Target Amendments*) 5 (*Effect of Extended Term and Alterations to the PBF Assessment Period*) and 6 (*Exceptional Events*) of Chapter 7.2, each of the Target Cost, Target Cost Nil Fee Performance Level and Target Cost Maximum Fee Performance Level agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 3.1 (*Target Cost*) of Chapter 7.2 shall apply to the relevant PBF Assessment Period.
- (b) The Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State all financial information required for the purposes of making each of the calculations required pursuant to this paragraph 4.2 in accordance with paragraph 1.1 (*Accounting Records*) to paragraph 1.5 (*Annual Financial Information*) of Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*).
- (c) Within twenty eight (28) days of receipt of all financial information required for the purposes of making the relevant calculations, the Secretary of State shall calculate the value of the element of the Financial Performance Fee attributable to the FP Cost Sub-Component in accordance with the applicable formula set out below based on whether the Actual Cost in respect of such PBF Assessment Period is:
  - (i) greater than or equal to the Target Cost Nil Fee Performance Level;
  - (ii) less than the Target Cost Nil Fee Performance Level but greater than the Target Cost;
  - (iii) equal to or less than the Target Cost but greater than the Target Cost Maximum Fee Performance Level; or
  - (iv) equal to or less than the Target Cost Maximum Fee Performance Level.

<b>Actual Cost</b>	<b>£FIN(Cost)</b>
<b>Greater than or equal to TCNil</b>	Zero (£0)
<b>Less than TCNil but greater than Target Cost</b>	$[(TCNil - AC)/(TCNil - TC)] * MCMF * [REDACTED^{46}]$
<b>Equal to or less than Target Cost, but greater</b>	$MCMF - \{[(AC - TCM_{max})/(TC - TCM_{max})] * MCMF * [REDACTED^{47}]\}$

<sup>46</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>47</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<b>than TCMax</b>	
<b>Equal to or less than TCMax</b>	MCMF

where:

AC	means the Actual Cost
TC	means the Target Cost
TCNil	means the Target Cost Nil Fee Performance Level
TCMax	means the Target Cost Maximum Fee Performance Level

**4.3 Calculation of FIN(Revenue)**

- (a) Subject to paragraphs 4 (*Target Amendments*) 5 (*Effect of Extended Term and Alterations to the PBF Assessment Period*) and 6 (*Exceptional Events*) of Chapter 7.2, the Target Revenue, Target Revenue Nil Fee Performance Level and Target Revenue Maximum Fee Performance Level agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 3.2 (*Target Revenue*) of Chapter 7.2 shall apply to the relevant PBF Assessment Period.
- (b) The Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State all financial information required for the purposes of making each of the calculations required pursuant to this paragraph 4.3 in accordance with paragraph 1.1 (*Accounting Records*) to paragraph 1.5 (*Annual Financial Information*) of Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*).
- (c) Within twenty eight (28) days of receipt of all financial information required for the purposes of making the relevant calculations, the Secretary of State shall calculate the value of the Performance Based Fee attributable to the FP Revenue Sub-Component in accordance with the applicable formula set out below based on whether the Actual Revenue in respect of such PBF Assessment Period is:
  - (i) greater than or equal to the Target Revenue Maximum Fee Performance Level;
  - (ii) less than the Target Revenue Maximum Fee Performance Level but greater than or equal to the Target Revenue;
  - (iii) less than the Target Revenue but greater than the Target Revenue Nil Fee Performance Level; or
  - (iv) equal to or less than the Target Revenue Nil Fee Performance Level:

Actual Revenue	£FIN(Revenue)
Greater than or equal to TRMax	MCMF
Less than TRMax but greater than or equal to Target Revenue	$MCMF - \{[(TRMax - AR)/(TRMax - TR)] * MCMF * [REDACTED^{48}]\}$
Less than Target Revenue but greater than TRNil	$[(AR - TRNil)/(TR - TRNil)] * MCMF * [REDACTED^{49}]$
Equal to or less than TRNil	$[REDACTED^{50}]$

where:

AR	means the Actual Revenue
TR	means the Target Revenue
TRNil	means the Target Revenue Nil Fee Performance Level
TRMax	means the Target Revenue Maximum Fee Performance Level

4.4 **Calculation of FIN(Profit)**

- (a) Subject to paragraphs 4 (*Target Amendments*) 5 (*Effect of Extended Term and Alterations to the PBF Assessment Period*) and 6 (*Exceptional Events*) of Chapter 7.2, the Target Profit, Target Profit Nil Fee Performance Level and Target Profit Maximum Fee Performance Level agreed or determined in accordance with

<sup>48</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>49</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>50</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.



paragraph 3.3 (*Target Profit*) of Chapter 7.2 shall apply to the relevant PBF Assessment Period.

- (b) The Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State all financial information required for the purposes of making each of the calculations required pursuant to this paragraph 4.4 in accordance with paragraph 1.1 (*Accounting Records*) to paragraph 1.5 (*Annual Financial Information*) of Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*).
- (c) Within twenty eight (28) days of receipt of all financial information required for the purposes of making the relevant calculations, the Secretary of State shall calculate the value of the Performance Based Fee attributable to the FP Profit Sub-Component in accordance with the applicable formula set out below based on whether the Actual Profit in respect of such PBF Assessment Period is:
  - (i) greater than or equal to the Target Profit Maximum Fee Performance Level;
  - (ii) less than the Target Profit Maximum Fee Performance Level but greater than or equal to the Target Profit;
  - (iii) less than the Target Profit but greater than the Target Profit Nil Fee Performance Level; or
  - (iv) equal to or less than the Target Profit Nil Fee Performance Level:

<b>Actual Profit</b>	<b>£FIN(Profit)</b>
<b>Greater than or equal to TPMax</b>	MCMF
<b>Less than TPMax but greater than or equal to Target Profit</b>	$MCMF - \{[(TPMax - AP)/(TPMax - TP)] * MCMF * [REDACTED^{51}]\}$
<b>Less than Target Profit but greater than TPNil</b>	$[(AP - TPNil)/(TP - TPNil)] * MCMF * [REDACTED^{52}]$
<b>Equal to or less than TPNil</b>	$[REDACTED^{53}]$

where:

AP	means the Actual Profit
----	-------------------------

<sup>51</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>52</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>53</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

TP	means the Target Profit
TPNil	means the Target Profit Nil Fee Performance Level
TPMax	means the Target Profit Maximum Fee Performance Level

## Chapter 7.3

### Management Information

#### 1. Financial Information

##### 1.1 Accounting Records

The Operator shall prepare and at all times during the Contract Term and until the date of payment of the Final Closing Adjustment, maintain true, up to date and complete accounting records as are required to be kept under section 386 of the Companies Act 2006. Such records shall be prepared on a consistent basis for each Reporting Period of the Contract Year. The Operator shall ensure that such accounting records are produced and maintained in a form which distinguishes between transactions which reasonably and properly relate, on the accruals basis, to:

- (a) the period prior to 1 March 2020;
- (b) the period from 1 March 2020 to the Start Date;
- (c) the Contract Period; and
- (d) the period from the end of the Contract Period until the date of payment of the Final Closing Adjustment.

1.2 The Operator shall record all balances and transactions relating to this Contract within an accounting system, or a clearly distinguishable and separate section of an accounting system, entirely separate from transactions and balances relating to the Previous Agreement. At all times this separation of transactions and balances shall be maintained such that receipts, payments, the reversal of accounting transactions and any other accounting adjustments relating to the Previous Agreement are entirely separately identifiable and capable of aggregation into a separate balance sheet, on demand by the Secretary of State, which exclusively contains information in relation to Previous Agreement.

In winding down the balance sheets and settling transactions relating to: (1) any Previous Agreement until its Final Settlement Date (as defined in the Previous Agreement); and (2) the period from the end of the Contract Period until the date of payment of the Final Closing Adjustment, the Operator shall act as a Good and Efficient Operator including by:

- (a) making payments to third parties only where there is compelling evidence that such payments are required to be made by contract or statute, permitted by the Funding Deed (as defined in the Previous Agreements) or the Funding Deed, or are at the direction of the Secretary of State;
- (b) not writing off, forgoing, failing to correct or otherwise not pursuing third parties which the Operator believes owe the Operator cash or other consideration, whether as settlement of debtors, claims or otherwise, and whether recorded as a debtor or accrued income in the Operator's accounts or otherwise;
- (c) actively and frequently reviewing provisions and other liabilities to consider the likelihood of cash payments being required to be made to settle these, and only writing off any such balances where there is a highly remote chance of the Operator being required to settle these balances;
- (d) actively and frequently reviewing debtor and accrued income balances to consider whether there are opportunities to bring forward receipt and settlement of such debts;
- (e) seeking to settle balances with third parties at values and within timescales which a Good and Efficient Operator seeking to maximise revenue and minimise cost would seek to do (unless otherwise directed by the Secretary of State);
- (f) matching the receipt of cash or the payment of cash against accounting balances, and where such payments and receipts occur, seeking to adjust any remaining balances relating to such transactions so that once settled in full, residual debtors and creditors are nil;

- (g) reviewing, analysing and, as required by the Secretary of State from time to time, reporting the residual balances relating to the Previous Agreement, sufficient to be capable of providing an accurate, true and fair balance sheet, restated as necessary to take account of subsequent events, in accordance with GAAP as at:
  - (i) 1 March 2020;
  - (ii) 20 September 2020;
  - (iii) the Start Date; and
  - (iv) the date of payment of the Final Closing Adjustment;
- (h) otherwise maintaining records sufficient to provide the Secretary of State with any of the equivalent applicable reporting requirements of paragraph 1.3 of this Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*) for transactions and balances in relation to Previous Agreements;
- (i) Promptly updating the Secretary of State when material transactions occur relating to the Previous Agreement at any time, or occur relating to this contract after the Expiry Date, providing sufficient information for the Secretary of State to consider the requirement to make, and value of, transactions between the Secretary of State and the Operator in order to comply with the obligation of this Contract or the Previous Agreement;
- (j) reviewing, analysing and, as required by the Secretary of State from time to time, reporting the residual balances relating to this Contract, sufficient to be capable of providing an accurate, true and fair balance sheet, restated as necessary to take account of subsequent events, in accordance with GAAP as at:
  - (i) the Start Date;
  - (ii) the end of the Contract Period; and
  - (iii) the date of payment of the Final Closing Adjustment; and
- (k) otherwise maintaining records sufficient to provide the Secretary of State with any of the equivalent applicable reporting requirements of paragraph 1.3 of this Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*) for transactions and balances in relation this Contract.

### 1.3 Reporting Period Financial Information

- (a) The Operator shall deliver to the Secretary of State, within ten (10) Weekdays of the end of each Reporting Period:
  - (i) Management Accounts for such Reporting Period, setting out a cash flow statement, profit and loss account and balance sheet for each of:
    - (aa) that Reporting Period; and
    - (bb) cumulatively for the Contract Year to date; and,
 in respect of the Management Accounts produced in relation to the first Contract Year only,
    - (cc) the ERMA Extension Period; and
    - (dd) cumulatively for the period from 1 April 2021 to date,
 ensuring that:
    - (A) costs within the profit and loss account shall adopt, be allocated to and be presented in the same format and structure as those shown in the Cost Budget as most recently Placed in Escrow, sufficient to allow for an accurate and consistent comparison between Cost Categories shown in the Cost Budget and costs actually incurred in relation to those Cost Categories;
    - (B) revenues within the profit and loss account shall be reported in sufficient detail to allow for an understanding of revenue from Fare

- revenue (including from different ticket types, flow groups and sources to be obtained) and other revenue;
- (C) there shall be no netting off between costs and revenues reported, or between individual Cost Categories, with all transactions shown on a gross basis;
- (D) the Management Accounts clearly and separately identify each of:
- (1) Actual Costs and Actual Revenues;
  - (2) any Disallowable Costs and Revenue Foregone); and
  - (3) any other accounting debits and credits which are not Actual Costs or Actual Revenue clearly and separately identifying:
    - (aa) any Actual Costs and Actual Revenue (each as defined in the Previous Agreement);
    - (bb) any Disallowable Costs and Revenue Foregone (each as defined in the Previous Agreement);
    - (cc) any other accounting debits and credits which relate to the period from 20 September 2020 to the Start Date;
    - (dd) any Actual EMA Costs and Actual EMA Revenue (each as defined in the Previous Agreement);
    - (ee) any EMA Disallowable Costs and EMA Revenue Foregone (each as defined in the Previous Agreement);
    - (ff) any other account debits and credits which relate to the period from 1 March 2020 to 20 September 2020; and
    - (gg) any costs, revenues, debits and credits which relate to the period prior to 1 March 2020; and
- (E) in respect of the Management Accounts which relate to the first Contract Year, such Management Accounts clearly and separately identify:
- (1) any Actual Costs, Actual Capex and Actual Revenue (each as defined in the Previous Agreement);
  - (2) any Disallowable Costs and Revenue Foregone (each as defined in the Previous Agreement); and
  - (3) any other accounting debits and credits,
 

in each case, which relate to the ERMA Extension Period;
- (ii) written confirmation that the Management Accounts, to the best of the knowledge, information and belief of the board of directors of the Operator, contain a true and accurate reflection of the Actual Revenue, Actual Costs, Potential Annual Losses (including Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone and SoS Claims and all other limbs of the definition of Potential Annual Losses) and other relevant profit and loss transactions), assets and liabilities of the Operator and, to the extent that they do not, identify in a written report relevant issues in reasonable detail and provide such further information that the Secretary of State shall reasonably require;
- (iii) written confirmation from a statutory director of the Operator that the Operator has complied with the restrictions applicable during the Lock-up Period pursuant to paragraph 2 of Chapter 7.4 (*Financial Covenants and Bonds*);
- (iv) any further information the Secretary of State reasonably requests for the purpose of calculating the Contract Payment; and
- (v) the amount and details of any additional Potential Annual Losses (and the constituent elements thereof) incurred in the Reporting Period and the amount

of Potential Annual Losses (and the constituent elements thereof) for the Contract Year to date.

- (b) The Management Accounts shall also set out:
- (i) the Operator's forecast of:
    - (A) the Operator's daily Cash Balance for the period of the three (3) Reporting Periods following the Reporting Period to which the Management Accounts relate, inclusive of the Forecast Closing Cash Position for each Reporting Period;
    - (B) the amount of Working Capital Payment or Working Capital Repayment (if any) that the Operator forecasts that it will require or be capable or repaying pursuant to paragraph 9 or 10 of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) (as applicable) in respect of the three (3) Reporting Periods following the Reporting Period to which the Management Accounts relate; and
    - (C) payments to and from Affiliates of the Operator, disaggregated between each individual Affiliate entity, in respect of the three (3) Reporting Periods following the Reporting Period to which the Management Accounts relate;
  - (ii) a detailed statement of the Operator's actual payments to and from Affiliates of the Operator in that Reporting Period and the Contract Year to date and, for the first Contract Year only, in relation to the period from 1 April 2021 to date in, and the net balance of such payments, disaggregated between each individual Affiliate entity as at the end of the Reporting Period to which the Management Accounts relate, which shall provide separate identification of:
    - (A) the Affiliate to or from whom each such payment was made; and
    - (B) a description of the nature of the services rendered in relation to each such payment;
  - (iii)
    - (A) a comparison of Actual Revenue in relation to this Contract compared to the Forecast Revenue (as most recently Placed in Escrow):
      - (1) for that Reporting Period; and
      - (2) cumulatively for the Reporting Periods in the Contract Year to date;
    - (B) a comparison of costs actually incurred in relation to this Contract compared to the Cost Categories included within the Cost Budget (as most recently Placed in Escrow):
      - (1) for that Reporting Period; and
      - (2) cumulatively for the Reporting Periods in the Contract Year to date;
    - (C) in respect of the Management Accounts which relate to the first Contract Year, a comparison of costs actually incurred in relation to the ERMA Extension Period compared to the Cost Categories included within the Cost Budget (as most recently Placed in Escrow) including those set out in the Periods 1 and 2 Budget):
      - (1) for that Reporting Period; and
      - (2) cumulatively for the Reporting Periods in the Contract Year to date;

and

- (D) a comparison between the actual payments to and from Affiliates of the Operator and the forecast of such payments included in the Cost Budget and the Forecast Revenue (each as most recently Placed in Escrow):
  - (1) for that Reporting Period; and
  - (2) cumulatively for the Reporting Periods in the Contract Year to date;
- (iv) a detailed and comprehensive written explanation regarding any material variances within the comparative information provided in paragraph 1.3(b)(iii) to this Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*);
- (v) if applicable, a detailed statement and explanation of any PCG Advances (as defined in the Funding Deed) and/or repayments made pursuant to the Funding Deed provided or made during such Reporting Period; and
- (vi) sufficient information, as required, to enable the Secretary of State to calculate the Performance Based Fee, and any other information which the Secretary of State may request (acting reasonably).
- (c) Within fifteen (15) Weekdays after receipt of the Management Accounts for each Reporting Period in accordance with paragraphs (a) and (b) above, the Secretary of State shall notify the Operator of any further information, explanation or analysis which the Secretary of State requires in relation to the Management Accounts (including information in relation to the calculation of the Contract Payment under the provisions of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*)) and the Operator shall promptly provide such further information or analysis.

#### 1.4 **Quarterly Financial Information**

- (a) No later than 20 Weekdays before the start of each Quarter, the Operator shall deliver to the Secretary of State the following information (a “**Quarterly Forecast**”) which, for the avoidance of any doubt, shall in no way be taken to amend the Cost Budget, and delivery of which shall not be deemed a Cost Budget Change Event:
  - (i) a comprehensive updated profit and loss forecast, cash flow forecast and forecast balance sheet (including a comprehensive forecast of Actual Revenue), together with:
    - (A) a detailed and comprehensive written explanation as to any changes in such forecast from any previous forecast provided pursuant to the provisions of this Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*), for each Reporting Period for the then current Contract Year and for and the following three (3) years, which the Secretary of State may (at the absolute discretion of the Secretary of State) take account of to determine any revision to Forecast Revenue; and
    - (B) a forecast of any costs, revenues or other debits and credits which relate to the Previous Agreement, disaggregated between those relating to the period prior to 1 March 2020, those relating to the period from 1 March 2020 to the Start Date and those relating to the period from the Start Date;
  - (ii) a forecast of any Potential Annual Losses (including any Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone, SoS Claims and any other limbs of the definition of Potential Annual Losses) which are considered likely to be incurred for each Reporting Period for the then current Contract Year;
  - (iii)
    - (A) a copy of each new contract or arrangement with an Affiliate of the Operator which the Operator proposes to enter into or renew in the next 6 months;



- (B) a copy of each existing contract or arrangement with an Affiliate of the Operator which the Operator proposes to amend in the next 6 months; and
- (C) details of any potential contract procurement process (pursuant to which the Operator proposes to enter into a contract with the successful bidder) in which the Operator reasonably expects an Affiliate of the Operator to participate in the next 6 months; and
- (iv) a statement from a statutory director of the Operator confirming that the profit and loss forecast delivered pursuant to paragraph 1.4(a)(i) has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of this Contract.

## 1.5 Annual Financial Information

### Annual Management Accounts

- (a) Within fifteen (15) Weekdays after:
  - (1) the end of each Contract Year; and
  - (2) each subsequent 31 March until (and including) the date that the Final Closing Adjustment is paid,
 the Operator shall deliver to the Secretary of State:
  - (i) its Annual Management Accounts for:
    - (1) the period from 1 April 2021 to the end of the first Contract Year; and thereafter
    - (2) for each Contract Year,
 in accordance with the requirements set out in paragraph 1.3(a)(i) (*mutatis mutandis*); and
  - (ii) a supplementary explanation setting out details of any other costs which are not Actual Costs and/or are Disallowable Costs or any Revenue Foregone; and

### Annual Audited Accounts and Audited Accounts Reconciliation

- (b) By no later than 31 July in each year from 31 July 2022 until the date of payment of the Final Closing Adjustment:
  - (i) certified true copies of its annual report and Annual Audited Accounts for:
    - (A) the period from 1 April 2021 to the end of the first Contract Year; and thereafter
    - (B) the preceding Contract Year,
 together with copies of all related directors' and auditors' reports. Additionally, the auditors shall certify that the accounting for and reporting of any annual related bonuses paid to the directors and managers is reasonably consistent with GAAP;
  - (ii) a detailed and comprehensive reconciliation between the Annual Audited Accounts, the Annual Management Accounts and the Management Accounts for the preceding Contract Year (the "**Audited Accounts Reconciliation**"). The Audited Accounts Reconciliation shall:
    - (A) include a detailed reconciliation, disaggregating Actual Costs, Actual Revenues, Actual Annual Losses (including Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone, SoS Claims, and any other limbs of the definition of Actual Annual Losses), costs, revenues or other debits and credits which relate to the Previous Agreement prior to 1 March 2020 and costs, revenues or other debits and credits which relate to the Previous Agreement after 1 March 2020 in the Annual Audited Accounts to: (aa) each of the periodic Management Accounts within such Contract Year and (bb) the Annual Management Accounts in relation to such Contract Year, all in a format

to be from time to time reasonably specified by the Secretary of State. This reconciliation shall:

- (1) disaggregate the Actual Costs and Actual Revenues in the Annual Audited Accounts so as to report against (and show in a format consistent with that used in) the Cost Budget (as most recently Placed in Escrow) and, where relevant, the Target Cost Template and/or the Target Profit Template and/or Target Revenue Template held in Escrow in relation to any PBF Assessment Periods within such Contract Year;
  - (2) facilitate the identification of Actual Costs within their relevant Cost Categories and Actual Revenues as reported in the Annual Audited Accounts; and
  - (3) be disaggregated and reconcile the information specified in paragraph 1.3(a)(i) (*mutatis mutandis*);
- (B) identify any and all Actual Annual Losses (including all Disallowable Costs) or Revenue Foregone which are in the balance sheet of the Annual Audited Accounts, and any Revenue Foregone which is not included in the balance sheet but which existed as at the date of such balance sheet); and
- (C) Identify separately the transactions, accounting adjustments and balances within the Annual Audited Accounts between those which relate to:
- (1) the period prior to 1 March 2020;
  - (2) the period between 1 March 2020 and the Start Date;
  - (3) this Contract; and
  - (4) the period after the end of the Contract Period;
- (iii) a statement from the Operator’s auditors (in a format to be reasonably specified by the Secretary of State from time to time, on the basis of providing the Secretary of State with reasonable assurance) that the Audited Accounts Reconciliation has been undertaken accurately;
- (iv) a statement from the Operator’s auditors confirming that GAAP has been applied in a fair and consistent manner;
- (v) sufficient information for the Secretary of State to calculate the Final Working Capital Adjustment, the Performance Based Fee, the Annual Adjustment, any Interim Closing Adjustment(s) and the Final Closing Adjustment (as applicable); and
- (vi) any further information the Secretary of State reasonably requests for the purpose of calculating the Contract Payment.
- (c) The Operator must continue to comply with:
- (i) paragraph 9.4A of Schedule 11.2 of the Previous Agreement in respect of transactions and balances which relate to Previous Agreement (including (for the avoidance of doubt) those relating to the ERMA Extension Period); and
  - (ii) this paragraph 1.5 until the date of payment of the Final Closing Adjustment (and, for the avoidance of doubt, references to “Reporting Period” and/or “Contract Year” shall, to the extent necessary, be deemed amended accordingly).

## 1.6 Accounting Standards and Practices

- (a) Each set of Management Accounts and Annual Management Accounts shall:
- (i) be in the format as the Secretary of State reasonably specifies from time to time;

- (ii) be prepared:
    - (A) in accordance with the Operator's obligations in clause 3 (*General Obligations*) and paragraph 1 (*All Reasonable Endeavours*) of Chapter 9.7 (*Miscellaneous Legal Terms*); and
    - (B) consistently in accordance with the Operator's normal accounting policies, details of which shall be supplied on request to the Secretary of State; and
  - (iii) not include any changes in such accounting policies from those policies that were applied in preparing each of the profit and loss account, the cash flow projection and the balance sheet contained in the Financial Cost Model most recently Placed in Escrow.
- (b) The Annual Audited Accounts shall:
- (i) be prepared and audited in accordance with GAAP, consistently applied and in accordance with the Companies Act 2006; and
  - (ii) give a true and fair view of:
    - (A) the state of affairs, profits and financial condition of the Operator for the period covered by such accounts; and
    - (B) the amount of its total revenue (being all revenue whatsoever from any source obtained from any commercial or non-commercial activity or undertaking of the Operator, such revenue to be disaggregated by reference to revenue derived by the Operator from:
      - (1) the sale of tickets;
      - (2) income received from Network Rail pursuant to Schedule 4 and Schedule 8 to the Track Access Agreement; and
      - (3) other items of revenue.

#### 1.7 **Changes to Accounting Policies**

The Operator shall not, without the express written consent of the Secretary of State, make any alteration to its accounting policies or basis of preparation in relation to its Management Accounts, Annual Management Accounts, Annual Audited Accounts or Audited Accounts Reconciliation.

#### 1.8 **Parent and Affiliate Accounts and Affiliate Trading**

- (a) The Operator shall, upon the request of the Secretary of State, promptly deliver to, (or procure delivery to), the Secretary of State:
  - (i) certified true copies of the annual reports and audited accounts of each Parent and any Affiliate of the Operator, together with copies of all related directors' and auditors' reports. If the Parent or such Affiliate is domiciled outside England and Wales, the equivalent documents in the jurisdiction of residence of the relevant Parent or Affiliate shall be delivered to the Secretary of State;
  - (ii) certified true copies of and/or details of (as instructed by the Secretary of State) any contracts or non-contractual arrangements with any Affiliate of the Operator, including those which give rise to payments from such Affiliate to the Operator or payments from the Operator to such (including payments or charges in relation to management services);
  - (iii) procurement policies in relation to contracts and non-contractual arrangements with Affiliates of the Operator, including policies in relation to such Affiliates procuring services from third parties on behalf of (or for the benefit of) the Operator;
  - (iv) evidence that each Affiliate Contract:

(A) entered into by the Operator on or after the Start Date in accordance with paragraph 8.7 (*Affiliate Trading*) of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*); or

(B) varied or replaced pursuant to paragraph 8.13 (*Affiliate Trading*) of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*),

complies with the Minimum Requirements and Additional Requirements; and

(v) evidence that each Group Contract entered into by an Affiliate Counterparty on or after the Start Date complies with the requirements of paragraph 8.6(a) (*Affiliate Trading*) of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*).

**1.9 Secretary of State Audit of Calculations and Data provided pursuant to paragraphs 1.3, 1.4 and 1.5**

(a) Without prejudice to Chapter 7.4 (*Financial Covenants and Bonds*) or to any other rights of the Secretary of State under this Contract, the Secretary of State and the Secretary of State's representatives shall be permitted to inspect at any time the books, records and any other material kept by or on behalf of the Operator in order to check or audit any item contained in or relating to the Management Accounts, the Annual Management Accounts, the Annual Audited Accounts, the Audited Accounts Reconciliation, and any information held or provided in connection with the Operator's obligations under Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*), Chapter 7.4 (*Financial Covenants and Bonds*) and/or Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*).

(b) The Operator shall make available to the Secretary of State and the Secretary of State's representatives such information and grant such access or procure the grant of such access (including to or from third parties) as they shall reasonably require in connection with any audit to be carried out pursuant to paragraph 1.9(a). If any audit carried out pursuant to paragraph 1.9(a) reveals, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, any material inaccuracy in the Management Accounts, Annual Management Accounts or Audited Accounts Reconciliation, then:

(i) the Secretary of State may:

(A) reasonably determine any item contained in or relating to the Management Accounts, Annual Management Accounts or Audited Accounts Reconciliation; or

(B) require any item contained in or relating to the Management Accounts, Annual Management Accounts or Audited Accounts Reconciliation to be adjusted in a manner which is fair and reasonable and, so far as reasonably determinable, on the basis on which such particular item should have been accounted for by the Operator as reasonably determined by the Secretary of State,

in either case to the extent that the Secretary of State considers appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of making any such reasonable determination; and

(ii) the Operator shall pay all reasonable costs of any such audit as a monitoring cost pursuant to paragraph 6.4 of Chapter 9.4.3 (*Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the National Rail Contract*). The Operator shall not in any circumstances be entitled to claim back any such costs from the Secretary of State whether pursuant to Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) or otherwise.

(c) Without prejudice to any other provisions of this Contract, if any audit carried out pursuant to paragraph 1.9(a) reveals, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, any material inaccuracy in the Management Accounts, Annual Management Accounts, Annual Audited Accounts and/or the contents or form of the Audited Accounts Reconciliation then the Secretary of State shall have the right to reasonably determine any Contract Payment Components and/or any Interim Closing Adjustment(s) and/or the Final Closing Adjustment for the purposes of correcting the effect of such material inaccuracy.

**1.10 Adjustment and Restatement of the Annual Audited Accounts**

The Operator shall promptly notify the Secretary of State as soon as it becomes aware of any requirement to adjust or restate the Annual Audited Accounts and shall deliver to the Secretary of State any such adjusted or restated Annual Audited Accounts along with an updated Audited Accounts Reconciliation, as soon as such accounts are available.

**1.11 Access to financial information**

The Secretary of State, the Secretary of State's representatives and/or advisors shall be permitted to inspect at any time the books, records and other material kept by or on behalf of the Operator in order to check or audit any item contained in or relating to the financial information provided pursuant to the provisions of this Contract and the Previous Agreement, and to request further information or review of this information, including:

- (a) the use of an external auditor;
- (b) provision of full access to this information by the Secretary of State's officials, representatives and/or advisors on an "open book" basis; and
- (c) provision of full access to this information by the National Audit Office or other equivalent body on an "open book" basis.

## Chapter 7.4

### Financial Covenants and Bonds

#### 1. **Obligations**

- 1.1. Except to the extent that the Secretary of State may otherwise agree from time to time, the Operator shall not:
- (a) incur any liability or financial indebtedness except in the ordinary course of providing and operating the Rail Services;
  - (b) borrow any sum, or enter into any loan or lending agreement for the purpose of borrowing from any person;
  - (c) make any loan or grant any credit, or have or permit to subsist any loan or any credit, to any person (other than the deposit of cash with a Bank as permitted under paragraph 1.1(e) or to an employee in the ordinary course of its business);
  - (d) create or permit to subsist any Security Interest over any of its assets or property or give any guarantee or indemnity to or for the benefit of any person or otherwise assume liability or become obliged (actually or contingently) in respect of any obligation of any other person, in each case other than in the ordinary course of the business of providing and operating the Rail Services; or
  - (e) create or acquire any subsidiary or make or have any investment in any other entity, except for the deposit of cash with a Bank.

#### 2. **Lock-up Restriction**

- 2.1 The Operator shall not during the Lock-up Period, do any of the following without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State:
- (a) declare or pay any dividend (equity or preference) or make any other distribution including surrendering any taxable losses to any Affiliates of the Operator or pay any Affiliates of the Operator in respect of taxable losses that they wish to surrender to the Operator (in relation to a Permitted Dividend, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed and subject to paragraph 2.3);
  - (b) make payments to any Affiliates of the Operator, including payments in respect of management charges or costs for goods or services rendered by or through an Affiliate of the Operator save to the extent such charges or payments (including with respect to the quantum of such charges or payments) have been expressly allocated and approved by the Secretary of State in the Cost Budget;
  - (c) make payment under any intra-group borrowings; or
  - (d) make payment of any fees, remuneration, pension contribution or other payment to or in respect of any director or officer of the Operator or of any Affiliate of the Operator save and only to the extent that the same (including with respect to the quantum of them) have been expressly allocated and approved by the Secretary of State in the Cost Budget.
- 2.2 **“Lock-up Period”** means the period commencing on the date of this Contract and expiring on the date which the Secretary of State confirms by notice in writing to the Operator that:
- (a) the Secretary of State considers that all the obligations of the Parties to account to each other pursuant to Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) have been fully performed and discharged (such confirmation not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed); and
  - (b) by virtue of such notice, the Lock-Up Period has expired.

No such notice shall constitute a waiver of any rights which the Secretary of State may have under or in respect of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*).

- 2.3 Subject to the Operator fully performing and discharging all its obligations under Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*), paragraph 1 (*Financial Information*) of Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*) and the Funding Deed in relation to that Contract Year to the satisfaction of the Secretary of State, the consent of the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 2.1(a) and/or



2.1(b) may be sought annually or, in relation to a Contract Year of less than 13 Reporting Periods, on the expiry or termination of the relevant Contract Year. Any such consent shall be subject to the Operator agreeing to make a repayment under the Funding Deed as the Secretary of State may reasonably require to take account of the proposed payment of Permitted Dividend and the Parties agree that it shall be reasonable for the Secretary of State to require the Operator to use FFPBF included in a Contract Payment to repay any PCG Facility Loan in accordance with the Funding Deed. The Permitted Dividend shall be reduced by the amount of any FFPBF included in a Contract Payment used to repay any PCG Facility Loan pursuant to this paragraph 2.3 and the Funding Deed.

2.4 For the purposes of paragraph 2.3, a “**Permitted Dividend**” shall be an amount in respect of FFPBF (if and to the extent that an amount in respect of FFPBF has been included in a Contract Payment paid in accordance with Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*)), calculated as follows:

PD =	$FFPBF - (FFPBF \times NTR)$
------	------------------------------

where:

PD	means the Permitted Dividend;
FFPBF	means, the amount of FFPBF (as the case may be) that has been included in a Contract Payment paid in accordance with Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> ) as reduced pursuant to paragraph 2.3;
NTR	<p>means the rate of corporation tax (as published by HM Revenue &amp; Customs) applicable at the time at which the Secretary of State determines the value of FFPBF (as applicable) in accordance with Chapter 7.1 (<i>Contract Payments</i>) provided that:</p> <p>(a) NTR shall not be adjusted, revalued or otherwise affected by the application of tax losses or any other reliefs to which the Operator may be entitled; and</p> <p>(b) if a Permitted Dividend has been made in accordance with this paragraph 2.4 and there is a subsequent variation in the rate of corporation tax in the relevant tax year, the Permitted Dividend shall not be recalculated to take account of that variation.</p>

2.5 The Operator shall use reasonable endeavours to plan its business activities and working capital position such that the Forecast Closing Cash Position does not fall below the Floor Cash Position.

**3. Season Ticket Bond**

**3.1 Provision of Season Ticket Bond**

The Operator shall procure that, for each Contract Year throughout the Contract Term and during the relevant call period specified in clauses 4 and 5 of the Season Ticket Bond, there shall be in place a valid and effective Season Ticket Bond substantially in the agreed terms marked STB.

**3.2 Provision of Replacement Season Ticket Bond**

No later than one (1) Reporting Period before the expiry of each Bond Year, the Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State (or procure that the Secretary of State receives) a Season Ticket Bond for the following Bond Year:

- (a) substantially in the agreed terms marked STB (or in any other form acceptable to the Secretary of State in the Secretary of State’s discretion);
- (b) duly executed and delivered by a Bond Provider acceptable to the Secretary of State; and
- (c) in an amount determined in accordance with paragraph 3.3.



**3.3 Amount of Season Ticket Bond**

The amount of any Season Ticket Bond shall vary for each Reporting Period during the Bond Year to which the Season Ticket Bond relates in accordance with the following formula:

$$\text{STBA} = \frac{\text{STL} \times (\text{RPI} \times 100) + \text{k} \times \text{Z}}{100}$$

**where:**

**STBA** equals the amount of the Season Ticket Bond in the relevant Reporting Period;

**STL** equals in respect of such Reporting Period:

- (a) the maximum amount which would be payable by the Operator in respect of Season Ticket Fares under and in accordance with a Supplemental Agreement and paragraph 3.3 (*Payment of Estimated Transfer Price*) of Chapter 9.5.3 (*Provisions applying on and after Termination*) and the rights and liabilities of the Operator relating to an obligation of carriage under the terms of any Season Ticket Fares which were transferred under a Transfer Scheme relating to that Supplemental Agreement to a Successor Operator at that time; and
- (b) the Stored Credit Balance which would be held by the Operator,

if the National Rail Contract were to terminate on any day during the Reporting Period (the “**Relevant Reporting Period**”) falling thirteen (13) Reporting Periods before such Reporting Period,

provided that for these purposes only:

- (i) Season Ticket Fares shall mean any Season Ticket Fare which expires more than seven (7) days after it first comes into effect;
- (ii) the Start Date shall be assumed, where relevant, to have occurred before the commencement of the Relevant Reporting Period; and
- (iii) if STL cannot reasonably be determined at the time at which the Operator is required under paragraph 3.4 to provide its estimate of the amount of the relevant Season Ticket Bond (including because the Relevant Reporting Period has not yet occurred), the Relevant Reporting Period shall be the Reporting Period falling twenty six (26) Reporting Periods before the Reporting Period in the relevant Bond Year;

**RPI** equals the quotient of the Retail Prices Index for the month for which the Retail Prices Index has most recently been determined at the time the Operator is required under paragraph 3.4 to provide its estimate of the amount of the relevant Season Ticket Bond divided by the Retail Prices Index for the month falling twelve (12) months before such month;

**k** has the value attributed to it in Chapter 8 (*Fares and Revenue*) for the Fare Year in which the Reporting Period in the relevant Bond Year falls; and

**Z** equals **+1 or**, if the Relevant Reporting Period falls twenty six (26) Reporting Periods before such Reporting Period, an amount equal to:

$$\frac{(\text{RPI} \times 100) + \text{k}}{100}$$

where **RPI** and **k** are determined for the twelve (12) months and the Fare Year preceding the twelve (12) months and the Fare Year for which **RPI** and **k** are respectively determined above.

**3.4** The Operator shall supply to the Secretary of State, not later than three (3) Reporting Periods before the end of each Bond Year, its estimate of the amount of the Season Ticket Bond for

each Reporting Period during the following Bond Year and shall supply such details as the Secretary of State may request in connection therewith.

- 3.5 The Operator and the Secretary of State shall endeavour to agree the amount of such Season Ticket Bond by no later than two (2) Reporting Periods before the end of each Bond Year. If the Parties are unable to agree the amount of the Season Ticket Bond in respect of any Reporting Period during the following Bond Year, the matter shall be resolved in accordance with the Dispute Resolution Rules.
- 3.6 If the amount of the Season Ticket Bond for each Reporting Period during a Bond Year has not been agreed two (2) Reporting Periods before the end of the preceding Bond Year, then, until the amount is agreed or determined in accordance with the Dispute Resolution Rules, the amount thereof shall be the amount determined by the Secretary of State.
- 3.7 The Secretary of State and the Operator may agree to increase or reduce the amount covered or required to be covered under a Season Ticket Bond from time to time and the Secretary of State may direct the Operator to amend the amount covered or required to be covered under a Season Ticket Bond when, in the Secretary of State's sole discretion, the STBA calculated pursuant to paragraph 3.3 above may not accurately represent the value of the Season Ticket suspense liabilities held by the Operator.

**3.8 Demands under the Season Ticket Bond**

- (a) The Season Ticket Bond shall be on terms that it is payable without further enquiry by the Bond Provider to the Secretary of State in full in London on first written demand by the Secretary of State on the Bond Provider, certifying as to any one or more of the following:
- (i) that the National Rail Contract has terminated or expired;
  - (ii) that a railway administration order has been made in relation to the Operator pursuant to sections 60 to 62 of the Act; or
  - (iii) that an Event of Default:
    - (A) under paragraph 1.11(a) (*Season Ticket Bond(s)*) of Chapter 9.4.1 (*Events of Default and Termination Events*) in relation to the Season Ticket Bond; or
    - (B) under paragraph 1.11(b) (*Season Ticket Bond(s)*) of Chapter 9.4.1 (*Events of Default and Termination Events*),
 has occurred (whether or not the National Rail Contract is, or is to be, terminated as a result thereof).
- (b) If the Secretary of State makes a demand under the Season Ticket Bond, the Secretary of State shall account to the Operator for the proceeds of such Season Ticket Bond remaining following settlement of all liabilities or obligations of the Operator in respect of any Season Ticket Fares and/or Stored Credit Balance that may be transferred or is transferred whether under a Transfer Scheme (or otherwise) to a Successor Operator.

**3.9 Characteristics of Season Ticket Bond Provider**

- (a) In determining whether a Bond Provider under any replacement Season Ticket Bond is acceptable, the Secretary of State may exercise the Secretary of State's discretion and shall not be obliged to accept a Bond Provider accepted under any previous Season Ticket Bond.
- (b) The Operator shall provide such information relating to any Bond Provider or proposed Bond Provider as the Secretary of State may require from time to time.
- (c) The Secretary of State agrees that, subject to receipt of a Season Ticket Bond in an amount determined in accordance with paragraph 3.3 in respect of any Bond Year, the Secretary of State shall release the relevant Bond Provider from any liability under the Season Ticket Bond provided in relation to the preceding Bond Year on the expiry of such Bond Year, provided that no Event of Default has occurred and is unremedied or continuing.

**3.9A Provision of more than one Season Ticket Bond**

The Operator shall be permitted subject to the prior consent of the Secretary of State (such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) to meet its obligations to provide a valid and effective Season Ticket Bond by providing up to three (3) valid and effective Season Ticket Bonds, the aggregate value of which at all times is equal to the value determined under paragraph 3.3. With the exception of the value of each individual Season Ticket Bond the provisions of the National Rail Contract in relation to the Season Ticket Bond shall be deemed to apply separately in relation to each such Season Ticket Bond. Where more than one (1) Season Ticket Bond is provided the Secretary of State shall have a discretion as to whether to make a demand under one or more of such Season Ticket Bonds and the extent to which the Secretary of State accounts to the Operator for the proceeds of each such Season Ticket Bond in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 3.8(b).

**3.10 Meaning of “Reporting Period”**

References in this paragraph 3 to a “**Reporting Period**” shall be construed, where the Operator so requests and the Secretary of State consents (such consent not to be unreasonably withheld), to be references to each consecutive seven (7) day period (or such other period as may be agreed) during such Reporting Period. The Operator may only make such a request in respect of a maximum of two (2) Reporting Periods in each Bond Year and only where the amount of the Season Ticket Bond over any such period would, in the reasonable opinion of the Operator, differ materially if determined by reference to such seven (7) day periods.

**Chapter 7.5**  
**Variations, Changes and Amendments**

**1. Purpose and Application of Chapter**

1.1 This Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*) sets out:

- (a) the circumstances which will result in an adjustment to the Cost Budget, the Record of Assumptions, the Modelling Suite, and/or the Escrow Documents, the Amendable Financial Targets (if applicable) and/or the Operational Performance Targets;
- (b) the process by which the Operational Performance Target(s) will be adjusted to reflect any Operational Performance Target Amendment Event; and
- (c) the process by which the Amendable Financial Target(s) will be adjusted to reflect any Financial Amendment Event.

**2. How any adjustments to the Cost Budget, Record of Assumptions, Amendable Financial Target(s) and Operational Performance Target(s), will be established**

2.1 Each Party shall notify the other promptly on becoming aware that any Trigger Event has occurred or is likely to occur and in particular the Operator shall notify the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable after the date that Operator becomes so aware (or if earlier, that date that a Good and Efficient Operator should have been reasonably aware).

2.2 Any notice under paragraph 2.1:

- (a) in the case of a notice of a Cost Budget Change Event or a Financial Target Amendment Event served by the Operator shall be accompanied by such information as will enable the Secretary of State to determine the financial effect of such Cost Budget Change Event or Financial Target Amendment Event (including, where appropriate, the proposed updates to the applicable Cost Category, and if applicable to the Amendable Financial Target and/or the Record of Assumptions to reflect the financial effect of the Cost Budget Change Event or Financial Target Amendment Event);
- (b) in the case of a notice of a Cost Budget Change Event or a Financial Target Amendment Event served by the Secretary of State, the Operator shall supply to the Secretary of State such information within such period as the Secretary of State may reasonably require for the purposes of determining the financial effect of such Cost Budget Change Event or Financial Target Amendment Event (including, where appropriate, the proposed updates to the applicable Cost Category in the Cost Budget and the Record of Assumptions to reflect the financial effect of the Cost Budget Change Event or Financial Target Amendment Event);
- (c) in the case of a notice of an Operational Performance Target Amendment Event served by the Operator, shall be accompanied by such information as will enable the Secretary of State to determine the operational effect of such Operational Performance Target Amendment Event (including the proposed updates to the applicable Operational Performance Target(s) to reflect the operational effect of the Operational Performance Target Amendment Event); and
- (d) in the case of a notice of an Operational Performance Target Amendment Event served by the Secretary of State, the Operator shall supply to the Secretary of State such information within such period as the Secretary of State may reasonably require for the purposes of determining the operational effect of such Operational Performance Target Amendment Event (including the proposed updates to the applicable Operational Performance Target(s) to reflect the operational effect of the Operational Performance Target Amendment Event).

2.3 The Parties shall act in good faith, reasonably and in a timely manner in considering the effects of any Trigger Event notified under paragraph 2.1 or in any discussions pursuant to paragraph 1.23 of Appendix 1 to this Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*).

**Cost Budget Changes**

**Periods 1 and 2 Budget Change**

- 2.4 A Cost Budget Change will occur to reflect the difference between:
- (a) the Operator's outturn costs for each Cost Category for the ERMA Extension Period; and
  - (b) each of the Cost Categories for the Periods 1 and 2 Budget,
- as calculated in accordance with paragraph 2.5.

2.5 The ERMA Extension Outturn (**EXO**) for each Cost Category shall be calculated as follows:

$$EXO = \text{Periods 1 and 2 Budget} - EXPActuals$$

where

<b>Periods 1 and 2 Budget</b>	means in relation to each Cost Category, an amount equal to the total costs included in the Periods 1 and 2 Budget; and
<b>EXPActuals</b>	means in relation to each Cost Category, an amount equal to the ERMA Extension Actual Costs plus the ERMA Extension Actual Capex adjusted as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) by excluding any Aggregated Costs and Revenues Liabilities (as defined in paragraph 9.11 of Schedule 8.1A of the Previous Agreement) for the ERMA Extension Period;</li> <li>(b) by excluding any depreciation; and</li> <li>(c) by applying such other adjustments as the Parties agree or the Secretary of State reasonably determines are appropriate to achieve a "like-for-like" comparison between the ERMA Extension Period outturn costs and (disaggregated) costs in the Periods 1 and 2 Budget for the ERMA Extension Period.</li> </ul>

If EXO:

- (a) equals **zero**, there will be no Cost Budget Change under this paragraph 2.5;
- (b) is a **positive number**, the Cost Budget for the first Contract Year shall be increased by that amount;
- (c) is a **negative number**, the Cost Budget for the first Contract Year shall be reduced by that amount,

and the Parties shall seek to agree the Agreed Updates to reflect such financial impact (including discussing the reasons for the overspends and/or underspends). If the Secretary of State and the Operator are unable to agree such Agreed Updates, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine them.

2.6 If the Final Audited Accounts Reconciliation (as defined in the Previous Agreement) indicates that the ERMA Extension Outturn amount was incorrect or if the Final Accounts (as defined in the Previous Agreement) are subject to adjustment or restatement, the Secretary of State shall have a discretion to require the recalculation of the ERMA Extension Outturn amount, and the Parties shall seek to agree the Agreed Updates. If the Secretary of State and the Operator are unable to agree such Agreed Updates, the Secretary of State may (but shall not be obliged to) reasonably determine them.

### Cost Budget Change Events

- 2.7 If a Cost Budget Change Event occurs, (save to the extent that any mitigation measures and/or amended outputs agreed or determined following discussions under paragraph 2.8, result in the Cost Budget Change Event having no financial impact on any of the Cost Categories) a Cost Budget Change will occur and the Parties shall seek to agree the Agreed Updates (if any) to reflect the financial impact of the Cost Budget Change Event and of such mitigation measures and amended outputs (if any) as may be agreed or determined. If the Secretary of State and the Operator are unable to agree such mitigation measures and/or Agreed Updates (if any), the Secretary of State may reasonably determine them (if any).
- 2.8 When considering the financial impact of a Cost Budget Change Event:
- (a) the Parties shall discuss the reasons for any actual or anticipated overspend or underspend;
  - (b) if the Cost Budget Change Event causes an increase in costs, the Operator shall promptly propose and the Parties shall consider proposals for mitigating any increase in cost in any Cost Category resulting from (or otherwise associated with) the Cost Budget Change Event, including whether any such increase can be:
    - (i) absorbed (in whole or part) by being offset by actual or anticipated underspend on other cost items within the relevant Cost Category;
    - (ii) absorbed (in whole or part) within the overall Cost Budget (including by offsetting (in whole or part) the increase in cost in a Cost Category by reducing the costs in another Cost Category to reflect actual or anticipated underspend); and/or
    - (iii) offset (in whole or part) by a Business Plan Revision pursuant to the provisions of paragraph 6 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*) or by a Variation;
  - (c) if the Cost Budget Change Event causes a decrease in costs, the Operator shall promptly propose and the Parties shall consider options for the application of the reduction in costs resulting from the Cost Budget Change Event to deliver additional or improved outputs including through a Business Plan Revision or Variation; and
  - (d) in relation to a Cost Budget Change Event pursuant to paragraph 1.23 of Appendix 1 to this Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*) only, the Parties shall take account of any relevant discussions held between the parties pursuant to paragraph 1.23 of Appendix 1 to this Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*).
- 2.9 If there is no relevant Trigger Event as referred to in paragraphs 1.1 to 1.22 of Appendix 1 to this Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*) but:
- (a) the Actual Costs, incurred or expected to be incurred in relation to a Cost Category exceed the level in the Cost Budget as most recently Placed in Escrow; and
  - (b) the Secretary of State is not satisfied that that the provisos in paragraph 1.23 of Appendix 1 to this Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*) have been met,
- the Secretary of State (at the Secretary of State's sole discretion) may determine that a Cost Budget Change Event shall occur in which case the updated Cost Budget shall not include any costs to the extent arising from the Operator's failure to act as a Good and Efficient Operator.
- 2.10 Any Cost Budget Change shall take effect when the updated Cost Budget and associated updated Escrow Documents are Placed in Escrow. For the avoidance of doubt, although a Cost Budget Change takes effect from the Placed in Escrow date, the Parties acknowledge that it may have a retrospective impact on the Cost Budget.
- 2.11 If the Cost Budget has been agreed or determined before the start of the relevant Contract Year and a Cost Budget Change Event occurs after the relevant Escrow Documents are updated which will affect it, the provisions of paragraph 2.4 shall apply in relation to the impact that such Cost Budget Change Event has on the Cost Budget Placed in Escrow.



### **Financial Target Amendments**

- 2.12 A Financial Target Amendment will occur if:
- (a) a Financial Target Amendment Event occurs; and
  - (b) such Financial Target Amendment Event requires the relevant Amendable Financial Target(s) for that Contract Year to be amended by a net financial value which is equal to or greater than the Relevant Threshold Amount for that Amendable Financial Target,
- and the Parties shall seek to agree the financial impact of a Financial Target Amendment Event and if applicable shall seek to agree the Agreed Updates (if any) to reflect the financial impact of the Financial Target Amendment Event. If the Secretary of State and the Operator are unable to agree whether the Relevant Threshold Amount has been met (or exceeded) and/or such Agreed Updates (if any), the Secretary of State may reasonably determine such matters.
- 2.13 Any Financial Target Amendment shall take effect when the updated relevant Escrow Documents are Placed in Escrow. For the avoidance of doubt, although a Financial Target Amendment takes effect from the Placed in Escrow date, the Parties acknowledge that it may have a retrospective impact on the Amendable Financial Target(s).
- 2.14 If an Amendable Financial Target has been agreed or determined before the start of the relevant Contract Year and a Financial Target Amendment Event occurs after the relevant Escrow Documents are updated which will affect it, the provisions of paragraph 2.7, shall apply in relation to the impact that such Financial Target Amendment Event has on the relevant Amendable Financial Targets Placed in Escrow.

### **Operational Performance Target Amendments**

- 2.15 If an Operational Performance Target Amendment Event occurs, an Operational Performance Target Amendment will occur and the Parties shall seek to agree the impact of the Operational Performance Target Amendment Event and updates (if any) to the applicable Operational Performance Target(s) to reflect the Operational Performance Target Amendment Event. If the Secretary of State and the Operator are unable to agree such updates (if any), the Secretary of State may reasonably determine them (if any).
- 2.16 Any Operational Performance Target Amendment shall take effect on and from the date that the relevant updated Operational Performance Target(s) is agreed or determined. For the avoidance of doubt, although an Operational Performance Target Amendment takes effect from date agreed or determined, the Parties acknowledge that it may have a retrospective impact on the Operational Performance Target(s).

### **3. Other impacts of Trigger Events and Agreed Updates**

- 3.1 Where the Secretary of State reasonably considers that the assumptions contained in the Record of Assumptions, are ambiguous or that additional assumptions are required in relation to circumstances not dealt with by the assumptions in the Record of Assumptions, the Parties shall agree or the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine the assumptions or additional assumptions to be utilised for this purpose.
- 3.2 In considering or determining the impact of any Trigger Event, the Secretary of State shall (inter alia) take account of:
- (a) the Operator's obligations to perform the Rail Services in accordance with the provisions of this Contract; and
  - (b) whether (in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State) in relation to the Trigger Event, the Operator has acted as a Good and Efficient Operator.
- 3.3 Within five (5) Weekdays after the start of the second and each subsequent Quarter in each Contract Year, the Operator shall make the relevant adjustment to the Escrow Documents to implement:
- (a) any Agreed Updates which were agreed or determined in the previous Quarter; and
  - (b) any updates to the Forecast Revenue which were notified by the Secretary of State,



and submit drafts of the updated Escrow Documents to the Secretary of State. The Operator shall give notice to the Secretary of State of the time and location any adjustments to the Escrow Documents are to be processed and allow representatives of the Secretary of State to attend when these adjustments are processed. The impacts of the Agreed Updates will not be processed until the Secretary of State has confirmed that the adjusted updated document(s) are ready to be Placed in Escrow in accordance with paragraph 5 of this Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*).

- 3.4 Within five (5) Weekdays after the start of the second and each subsequent Quarter, the Operator shall submit to the Secretary of State draft updates:
- (a) to the Business Plan if and as required to reflect any Agreed Updates and/or any updates to the Forecast Revenue as referred to in paragraph 3.3;
  - (b) to the Annual PBF Specification if and as required to reflect any Financial Target Amendment which occurred during the previous Quarter; and
  - (c) any other updates to the Business Plan if and as required to reflect any other impact of a Trigger Event having occurred during the previous Quarter.

If the Secretary of State and the Operator are unable to agree such updates (or whether any updates are needed), the Secretary of State may reasonably determine such matters.

#### **4. Information**

- 4.1 The Operator shall promptly, having regard to the other timescales anticipated in this Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*) provide to the Secretary of State such information as the Secretary of State may request for the purpose of enabling the Secretary of State to exercise the Secretary of State's rights and comply with the Secretary of State's obligations pursuant to this Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*).

#### **5. Operator's Escrow Obligations**

- 5.1 The Operator shall deliver a copy of the Escrow Documents to the Secretary of State (in electronic format which is non-rewritable and password protected) via such electronic (or other) medium as from time to time specified by the Secretary of State:
- (a) no later than the date of this Contract;
  - (b) no later than the Start Date, revised to reflect:
    - (i) any updates required by the Secretary of State arising from the independent model audit completed by the date of this Contract;
    - (ii) revisions that are required by the Secretary of State and which have been notified to the Operator by the date of this Contract; and
    - (iii) matters which arise from the checking by the Secretary of State of the Escrow Documents Placed in Escrow on the date of this Contract and are notified to the Operator by 17:00 on 24 May 2021; and
  - (c) within five (5) Weekdays of any revisions to the Escrow Documents being agreed or determined in accordance with the provisions of this Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*) (including paragraph 3.3 (*Other impacts of Trigger Events and Agreed Updates*)), paragraphs 3.1(f), 3.2(f) or 3.3(f) of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*), or paragraph 3 (*Annual Business Plan Process*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*).
- 5.2 The Operator shall deliver with each such deposit of the Escrow Documents all of the following information to the extent that it is relevant:
- (a) details of the Escrow Documents deposited (including full filename and version details, any details required to access the Escrow Documents including media type, backup command/software used, compression used, archive hardware and operating system details);
  - (b) the names and contact details of persons who are able to provide support in relation to accessing and interpreting the Escrow Documents; and

- (c) if required by the Secretary of State, a certificate from independent auditors approved by the Secretary of State, confirming that the deposited version of the Escrow Documents is as agreed as at the date of this Contract or is as agreed or determined accordance with the provisions of this Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*) (as the case may be) and is in accordance with paragraphs 5.2(a) and (b).
- 5.3 As soon as possible on or after the date of this Contract, the Operator shall store a copy of all Escrow Documents and updated Escrow Documents in the Secretary of State's contract management system.
- 6. Secretary of State's Escrow Obligations**
- 6.1 The Secretary of State shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that each copy of the Escrow Documents that the Operator deposits in the Secretary of State's contract management system is at all times kept in a safe and secure environment.
- 6.2 The Secretary of State shall:
- (a) have no obligation or responsibility to any person whatsoever to determine the existence, relevance, completeness, accuracy, effectiveness or any other aspect of the Escrow Documents; and
- (b) not be liable for any loss, damage or destruction caused to the Operator arising from any loss of, damage to or destruction of the Escrow Documents.
- 7. Errors in Escrow Documents**
- 7.1 Any feature of the Escrow Documents which is in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State an error will be rectified as soon as reasonably practicable and the Operator shall deliver to the Secretary of State such rectified documents within seven (7) days of such rectification. In such circumstances, paragraphs 5.2 and 5.3 above shall apply.
- 8. Variations**
- 8.1 The terms of this Contract may be varied as follows but not otherwise:
- (a) by the Secretary of State in relation to:
- (i) any aspect of the Rail Services; and/or
- (ii) any provision of this Contract other than those provisions specified in paragraph 8.2,
- by service of a notice on the Operator referring to this paragraph 8.1(a) and setting out the variation to the terms of this Contract; and
- (b) in relation to any other provision of this Contract, by agreement in writing between the Parties to that effect,
- (each a "**Variation**").
- 8.2 Without prejudice to the Secretary of State's rights under paragraph 8.1(a), the terms of each of:
- (a) clause 2 (*Duration of the National Rail Contract*), paragraph 2 (*Assignment*) of Chapter 9.7 (*Miscellaneous Legal Terms*), Chapter 9.4.2 (*Dispute Resolution Procedures*), clause 5 (*Notices*), paragraph 4 (*Set-Off*) of Chapter 9.7 (*Miscellaneous Legal Terms*) and paragraph 5 (*Miscellaneous Provisions*) of Chapter 9.7 (*Miscellaneous Legal Terms*);
- (b) Chapters 7.1 (*Contract Payments*), 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*), 7.4 (*Financial Covenants and Bonds*), 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*), Chapter 9.2.1 (*Key Contracts*), Chapter 9.2.2 (*Key Assets - Designation of Assets*), Chapter 9.3 (*Branding and Intellectual Property*), Chapter 9.4.1 (*Events of Default and Termination Events*), Chapter 9.4.3 (*Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the National Rail Contract*), Chapter 9.4.4 (*Force Majeure*), Chapter 9.4.5 (*Liability*) and Chapter 9.5.3 (*Provisions applying on and after Termination*) of this Contract; and

- (c) the definitions set out at Chapter 10 (*Definitions and Interpretation*) of this Contract insofar as such affect the respective rights and obligations of the Secretary of State and the Operator pursuant to the provisions referred to at (a) and (b) above, shall not be varied at any time other than in accordance with the terms of this Contract or with the agreement of the Parties.
- 8.3 The Secretary of State shall, to the extent reasonably practicable, allow the Operator a reasonable opportunity to make representations to the Secretary of State concerning any Variation to be made in accordance with paragraph 8.1(a), prior to making any such Variation.
- 8.4 The Secretary of State may:
- (a) issue, revise and withdraw from time to time procedures that the Secretary of State requires to be followed for the purposes of orderly consideration of Variations; and
  - (b) require the Operator to provide any information that the Secretary of State reasonably requires for this purpose (including in relation to prospective change to costs (including for the avoidance of doubt, capital expenditure) and revenue as a consequence of proceeding with the Variation).
- 8.5 Procedures issued pursuant to paragraph 8.4 shall have contractual effect between the Parties in accordance with their terms.
- 8.6 The Operator may notify the Secretary of State of any proposal for a Variation by notice setting out the proposed method of implementing such Variation including:
- (a) the timescale for doing so;
  - (b) the effect (if any) on the timing of the performance of its other obligations under this Contract;
  - (c) the impact of effecting the proposed Variation on the provision of the Rail Services and the Operator's proposals as to how to minimise such impact; and
  - (d) the financial consequences of implementing the Variation proposed by the Operator in terms of the revisions to the Cost Budget that the Operator considers the Variation would require.
- 9. Increased Level of Services**
- 9.1 The Operator acknowledges that the Secretary of State may, as a Variation, require special measures, in the form of increased co-operation or additional services, to be implemented during the Contract Term and the Operator shall use its best endeavours to accommodate such requests and act in the national interests.
- 9.2 The Operator, if requested by the Secretary of State as a Variation, shall use its best endeavours to provide additional services, such as enhanced cleaning regimes to a standard reasonably proposed by the Secretary of State.
- 9.3 The reasonable and proper costs incurred by the Operator in performing its obligations under this paragraph 1 shall be recoverable from the Secretary of State as Actual Costs, subject to the provisions of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) to the National Rail Contract.

**APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 7.5****Trigger Events****PART 1 – Cost Budget Change Events****1. Automatic Cost Budget Change Events**

A **Cost Budget Change Event** shall automatically occur if any of the following events occurs:

- 1.1 Any variation in the rate of employer pension contributions (or, to the extent applicable, the amount of any lump sum employer deficit contributions) payable to an Operator Pension Section from the rate (or amount) set out in the Assumed Schedule of Contributions applicable to that Operator Pension Section which is not already provided for in the applicable Cost Category in the Cost Budget provided that, to the extent the Operator's consent or permission was required for that variation, the Operator has complied with its obligations pursuant to Chapter 7.6 (*Railways Pension Scheme*), including the obligations to:
  - (a) obtain the Secretary of State's prior written consent in respect of any such variation; and
  - (b) act in a Reasonable Commercial Manner.
- 1.2 Either:
  - (a) the Secretary of State designates the occurrence of Industrial Action as a Cost Budget Change Event pursuant to paragraph 5.3 (*Industrial Action*) of Chapter 2.2 (*Rail Workforce*); or
  - (b) the occurrence of Industrial Action in the circumstances set out in paragraph 5.4 (*Industrial Action*) of Chapter 2.2 (*Rail Workforce*).
- 1.3 A Variation which either results in the Operator being required to incur additional expenditure acting as a Good and Efficient Operator or would reasonably result in the Operator incurring lower expenditure than if the Variation had not been implemented.
- 1.4 A Charge Variation.
- 1.5 A Change of Law.
- 1.6 The circumstances contemplated in paragraph 4.8(b) or 4.9(b) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*) occur.
- 1.7 A change to the Train Service Requirement previously in force pursuant to the issue of an amended or new Train Service Requirement in accordance with paragraph 8 (*Development of Proposals for Passenger Service Enhancements*) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*).
- 1.8 The Operator being required to take any action pursuant to paragraph 11.1(a) and/or paragraph 11.1(b) (*Provisions relating to Access Agreements and Property Leases*) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*).
- 1.9 Either:
  - (a) the Operator demonstrates to the satisfaction of the Secretary of State that the requirements of paragraph 2.4 (*Physical Alterations and Accessibility Of Stations*) of Chapter 5.3 (*Accessibility and Inclusivity*) have been satisfied; or
  - (b) the imposition, subject to the provisions of paragraph 2.6 (*Physical Alterations and Accessibility Of Stations*) of Chapter 5.3 (*Accessibility and Inclusivity*), of any increased access charges in respect of EA Requirements at Operator Access Stations.
- 1.10 The circumstances contemplated in paragraph 3.1(b) or 3.4 of Chapter 5.3 (*Accessibility and Inclusivity*) occur.
- 1.11 The Parties agree to vary the contents of the Service Quality Regime in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 18.1 (*Variations to the Service Quality Regime*) of Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*).
- 1.12 The Operator is required to implement any Remedial Plan or any other plans to remedy performance shortfalls (including Action Plans, D&I Improvement Plans, NRPS Improvement Proposals, TT Actions Plans, Service Quality Improvement Proposals and/or a Business Plan

- KPI Improvement Plans) but only to the extent that any additional costs incurred by the Operator in that respect are not Disallowable Costs.
- 1.13 A Business Plan Revision is agreed or determined under paragraph 6 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*).
- 1.14 The introduction of a Flexible Ticket results in the Operator being required to incur additional expenditure not otherwise envisaged by the Operator's Cost Budget most recently Placed in Escrow as referred to in paragraph 3.1 of Chapter 8.2.2 (*Operator's Obligation to Create Fares*), or the circumstances referred to in paragraph 3.2 of Chapter 8.2.2 (*Operator's Obligation to Create Fares*) occur.
- 1.15 The Secretary of State effects an amendment to a Discount Fare Scheme, introduces a new Discount Fare Scheme or ceases to approve a Discount Fare Scheme for the purposes of section 28 of the Act as referred to in paragraph 3 (*Discount Fare Schemes*) of Chapter 8.2.8 (*Transport, Travel and Other Schemes*).
- 1.16 The Secretary of State approves an amendment or proposed amendment to an Inter-Operator Scheme, as referred to in paragraph 4.5 (*Inter-Operator Schemes*) of Chapter 8.2.8 (*Transport, Travel and Other Schemes*).
- 1.17 The Secretary of State issues a direction to the Operator under paragraph 10.1(b) (*Cascaded Rolling Stock and Delayed Cascade Mitigation Plan*) of Chapter 9.1 (*Fixed Assets*).
- 1.18 The Secretary of State or Network Rail requires the Operator to operate the Passenger Services to a specification that is materially different compared to the specification that was assumed when the applicable Cost Category in the Cost Budget was established.
- 1.19 The delay or non-delivery of an item of expenditure or a group of items of similar expenditure where the timing of expenditure is materially different from that assumed in the applicable Cost Category in the Cost Budget (and Record of Assumptions as applicable).
- 1.20 The Secretary of State issuing any guidance or instruction which could reasonably be expected to have a material impact on the Operator's ability to deliver the relevant contractual obligation within the amounts set out in the applicable Cost Category including where such guidance or instruction causes the Operator to incur costs in a different Cost Category to that envisaged in the Cost Budget in order to deliver such obligation.
- 1.21 The Secretary of State requires the use of a different or amended rolling stock fleet for delivering the Rail Services.
- 1.22 An event or other significant factor occurs:
- (a) which is outside the control of the Operator and/or any of its Affiliates;
  - (b) the full costs of which were not allowed for in the applicable Cost Category in the Cost Budget as most recently Placed in Escrow (e.g. due to low likelihood of occurrence) and (except and to the extent that the relevant item in Cost Category was determined by the Secretary of State) it was reasonable for the Operator not to have included those costs within the Cost Category; and
  - (c) which causes a requirement to amend the applicable Cost Category to ensure that the Operator is no more and no less likely to deliver the relevant contractual obligation within the applicable Cost Category than if such event or factor had not occurred.
- 1.23 No Trigger Event under paragraphs 1.1 to 1.22 above applies but the Actual Costs, incurred or expected to be incurred in relation to a Cost Category are expected to exceed the level in Cost Budget as most recently Placed in Escrow, provided that the Secretary of State (acting reasonably and having discussed the relevant circumstances with the Operator) is satisfied that:
- (a) the Operator has notified the Secretary of State of the anticipated overspend as soon as reasonably practicable after the date that the Operator becomes aware of it (or if earlier, that date that a Good and Efficient Operator should have been reasonably aware of it) and in any event, before incurring or committing to incur the overspend;
  - (b) the notice under paragraph (a) has set out the reasons for the anticipated overspend and the steps taken by the Operator to minimise the amount of anticipated overspend;



- (c) a Good and Efficient Operator would not be able to absorb the impact of the anticipated overspend within the relevant Cost Category;
  - (d) the Operator has used all reasonable endeavours to mitigate the anticipated overspend; and
  - (e) the overspend would be incurred by a Good and Efficient Operator.
- 1.24 The Secretary of State (at the Secretary of State's sole discretion) determines that there is a Cost Budget Change Event under the provisions of paragraph 2.9 of this Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*).
- 2. Other Cost Budget Change Events**
- A **Cost Budget Change Event** shall also occur if:
- (a) either Party notifies the other of an event listed in paragraphs 2.1 to 2.2 below; and
  - (b) the Parties agree or the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) (taking into account the information available to the Secretary of State including any evidence provided by the Operator) determines that such occurrence shall be a Cost Budget Change Event.
- 2.1 The Operator proposes a material change to its planned delivery method, which will cause no net increase to the total Cost Budget as most recently Placed in Escrow and which will have no adverse impact on the relevant Business Plan outcomes, provided that the Operator's notice, identifies the specific increases and decreases to each affected Cost Category in the Cost Budget, provides a commentary explaining the reasons for and implications of the proposed change in method of delivery and where applicable, sets out the proposed amendments to the Record of Assumptions.
- 2.2 The Operator proposes a contractually committed opportunity for additional revenue for the sale of goods and/or services to another party on a profitable basis, which would require an increase in Actual Costs and therefore an adjustment to the applicable Cost Categories to ensure that the Operator is no more and no less likely to deliver the additional revenue within the applicable Cost Category in the Cost Budget.

## **PART 2 – Operational Performance Target Amendment Events**

- 3. Operational Performance Target Amendment Events**
- An **Operational Performance Target Amendment Event** shall automatically occur if any of the following events occurs provided always that such event has a material impact on the likelihood of the Operator achieving the Operational Performance Target(s):
- 3.1 The Secretary of State or Network Rail requires the Operator to operate the Passenger Services to a specification that is materially different compared to the specification that was assumed when the Operational Performance Target(s) was established.
  - 3.2 The circumstances contemplated in paragraph 4.8(b) or 4.9(b) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*) occur.
  - 3.3 A change to the Train Service Requirement previously in force pursuant to the issue of an amended or new Train Service Requirement in accordance with paragraph 8 (*Development of Proposals for Passenger Service Enhancements*) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*).
  - 3.4 The Operator being required to take any action pursuant to paragraph 11.1(a) and/or paragraph 11.1(b) (*Provisions relating to Access Agreements and Property Leases*) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*).
  - 3.5 The Secretary of State requires the use of a different or amended rolling stock fleet for delivering the Rail Services.
  - 3.6 A Change of Law.
- 4. Other Operational Performance Target Amendment Events**
- An **Operational Performance Target Amendment Event** shall also occur if:

- (a) either Party notifies the other of an event within paragraph 4.1 below; and
  - (b) the Parties agree or the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) (taking into account the information available to the Secretary of State including any evidence provided by the Operator) determines that such occurrence shall be an Operational Performance Target Amendment Event.
- 4.1 The Secretary of State issues any guidance or instruction which could reasonably be expected to have a material impact on the Operator's ability to achieve, exceed or fail to achieve the relevant Operational Performance Target(s).

### **PART 3 – Financial Target Amendment Events**

#### **5. Cost Financial Target Amendment Events**

A Financial Performance Target Amendment Event shall occur in relation to a **Target Cost, a Target Cost Maximum Fee Performance Level and/or a Target Cost Nil Fee Performance Level** if any of the following events occurs:

- 5.1 Any variation in the rate of employer pension contributions (or, to the extent applicable, the amount of any lump sum employer deficit contributions) payable to an Operator Pension Section from the rate (or amount) set out in the Assumed Schedule of Contributions applicable to that Operator Pension Section which is not already provided for in the applicable Target Cost Template provided that, to the extent the Operator's consent or permission was required for that variation, the Operator has complied with its obligations pursuant to Chapter 7.6 (*Railways Pension Scheme*), including the obligations to:
- (a) obtain the Secretary of State's prior written consent in respect of any such variation; and
  - (b) act in a Reasonable Commercial Manner.
- 5.2 Either:
- (a) the Secretary of State designates the occurrence of Industrial Action as a Financial Target Amendment Trigger Event pursuant to paragraph 5.3 (*Industrial Action*) of Chapter 2.2 (*Rail Workforce*); or
  - (b) the occurrence of Industrial Action in the circumstances set out in paragraph 5.4 (*Industrial Action*) of Chapter 2.2 (*Rail Workforce*).
- 5.3 A Variation which either results in the Operator incurring additional expenditure or would reasonably result in the Operator incurring lower expenditure than if the Variation had not been implemented.
- 5.4 A Charge Variation.
- 5.5 A Change of Law.
- 5.6 The circumstances contemplated in paragraph 4.8(b) or 4.9(b) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*) occur.
- 5.7 A change to the Train Service Requirement previously in force pursuant to the issue of an amended or new Train Service Requirement in accordance with paragraph 8 (*Development of Proposals for Passenger Service Enhancements*) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*).
- 5.8 The Operator being required to take any action pursuant to paragraph 11.1(a) and/or paragraph 11.1(b) (*Provisions relating to Access Agreements and Property Leases*) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*).
- 5.9 The imposition, subject to the provisions of paragraph 2.6 (*Physical Alterations and Accessibility Of Stations*) of Chapter 5.3 (*Accessibility and Inclusivity*), of any increased access charges in respect of EA Requirements at Operator Access Stations.
- 5.10 The Parties agree to vary the contents of the Service Quality Regime in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 18.1 (*Variations to the Service Quality Regime*) of Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*).



- 5.11 The Secretary of State effects an amendment to a Discount Fare Scheme, introduces a new Discount Fare Scheme or ceases to approve a Discount Fare Scheme for the purposes of section 28 of the Act as referred to in paragraph 3 (*Discount Fare Schemes*) of Chapter 8.2.8 (*Transport, Travel and Other Schemes*).
- 5.12 The Secretary of State approves an amendment or proposed amendment to an Inter-Operator Scheme, as referred to in paragraph 4.5 (*Inter-Operator Schemes*) of Chapter 8.2.8 (*Transport, Travel and Other Schemes*).
- 5.13 The Secretary of State issues a direction to the Operator under paragraph 10.1(b) (*Cascaded Rolling Stock and Delayed Cascade Mitigation Plan*) of Chapter 9.1 (*Fixed Assets*) occur.
- 5.14 The delay or non-delivery of an item of expenditure or a group of items of similar expenditure where the timing of expenditure is materially different from that included in the Modelling Suite used to derive the contents of the Target Cost Template most recently Placed in Escrow.
- 5.15 The Secretary of State requires the use of a different or amended rolling stock fleet for delivering the Rail Services.
- 5.16 The Secretary of State or Network Rail requires the Operator to operate the Passenger Services to a specification that is materially different compared to the specification that was assumed when the relevant Amendable Financial Target was established.
- 5.17 A Business Plan Revision is agreed or determined under paragraph 6 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*).

## 6. **Other Cost Financial Target Amendment Events**

A **Cost Financial Target Amendment Event** shall also occur if:

- (a) either Party notifies the other of an event listed in paragraphs 6.1 or 6.2 below; and
- (b) the Parties agree or the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) (taking into account the information available to the Secretary of State including any evidence provided by the Operator) determines that such occurrence shall be a Cost Financial Target Amendment Event.
- 6.1 An event or other significant factor (which is not listed in paragraph 5 of Appendix 1 to this Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*)) occurs:
- (a) which is outside the control of the Operator and/or any of its Affiliates;
- (b) which causes a requirement to amend the applicable Amendable Financial Target to ensure that the Operator is no more and no less likely to achieve the applicable Amendable Financial Target than if such event or factor had not occurred.
- 6.2 The Operator proposes a contractually committed opportunity for additional revenue for the sale of goods and/or services to another party on a profitable basis, which would require an increase in the Cost Budget and an associated amendment to the applicable Amendable Financial Target to ensure that the Operator is no more and no less likely to achieve the Amendable Financial Target than if such event had not occurred.

## 7. **Revenue Financial Target Amendment Events**

A Financial Performance Target Amendment Event shall occur in relation to a **Target Revenue, a Target Revenue Maximum Fee Performance Level and/or a Target Revenue Nil Fee Performance Level** if any of the following events occurs:

- 7.1 Either:
- (a) the Secretary of State designates the occurrence of Industrial Action as a Financial Target Amendment Event pursuant to paragraph 5.3 (*Industrial Action*) of Chapter 2.2 (*Rail Workforce*); or
- (b) the occurrence of Industrial Action in the circumstances set out in paragraph 5.4 (*Industrial Action*) of Chapter 2.2 (*Rail Workforce*).
- 7.2 A Variation which:
- (a) results in the Operator earning less Actual Revenue; or

- (b) would reasonably result in the Operator earning greater Actual Revenue, than if the Variation had not been implemented.
- 7.3 A Change of Law.
- 7.4 The circumstances contemplated in paragraph 4.8(b) or 4.9(b) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*) occur.
- 7.5 A change to the Train Service Requirement previously in force pursuant to the issue of an amended or new Train Service Requirement in accordance with paragraph 8 (*Development of Proposals for Passenger Service Enhancements*) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*).
- 7.6 The Operator being required to take any action pursuant to paragraph 11.1(a) and/or paragraph 11.1(b) (*Provisions relating to Access Agreements and Property Leases*) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*).
- 7.7 The Secretary of State effects an amendment to a Discount Fare Scheme, introduces a new Discount Fare Scheme or ceases to approve a Discount Fare Scheme for the purposes of section 28 of the Act as referred to in paragraph 3 (*Discount Fare Schemes*) of Chapter 8.2.8 (*Transport, Travel and Other Schemes*).
- 7.8 The Secretary of State approves an amendment or proposed amendment to an Inter-Operator Scheme, as referred to in paragraph 4.5 (*Inter-Operator Schemes*) of Chapter 8.2.8 (*Transport, Travel and Other Schemes*).
- 7.9 The Secretary of State exercises the Secretary of State's power pursuant to paragraph 5 (*Changes to Fares Regulation*) of Part B to Chapter 8.2.5 (*Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation*) to alter the obligations of and restrictions on the Operator under Chapter 8.2 (*Fares*).
- 7.10 The Operator is obliged to charge Value Added Tax on a Fare or there is an increase or decrease in the rate of Value Added Tax which it must charge on such Fare, in either case due to a change in the Value Added Tax treatment.
- 7.11 The Secretary of State issues a direction to the Operator under paragraph 10.1(b) (*Cascaded Rolling Stock and Delayed Cascade Mitigation Plan*) of Chapter 9.1 (*Fixed Assets*) occur.
- 7.12 The delay or non-delivery of an item of revenue or a group of items of similar revenue where the timing of revenue being recognised is materially different from that included in the Modelling Suite used to derive the contents of the Target Revenue Template most recently Placed in Escrow.
- 7.13 The Secretary of State or Network Rail requires the Operator to operate the Passenger Services to a specification that is materially different compared to the specification that was assumed when the relevant Amendable Financial Target was established.
- 7.14 The Secretary of State issuing any guidance or instruction which could reasonably be expected to have a material impact on the Operator's ability to achieve, exceed or fail to achieve the applicable Amendable Financial Target.
- 7.15 A Business Plan Revision is agreed or determined under paragraph 6 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*).
- 7.16 An event or other significant factor that is outside the control of the Operator and/or its Affiliates, which was not foreseen in the Modelling Suite used to derive the contents of the Target Revenue Template (as most recently Placed in Escrow).
- 8. Other Revenue Financial Target Amendment Events**
- A Revenue Financial Target Amendment Event** shall also occur if:
- (a) either Party notifies the other of an event listed in paragraphs 8.1 or 8.2 below; and
- (b) the Parties agree or the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) (taking into account the information available to the Secretary of State including any evidence provided by the Operator) determines that such occurrence shall be a Revenue Financial Target Amendment Event.

- 8.1 An event or other significant factor (which is not listed in paragraph 7 of Appendix 1 to this Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*)) occurs:
- (a) which is outside the control of the Operator and/or any of its Affiliates; and
  - (b) which causes a requirement to amend the applicable Amendable Financial Target to ensure that the Operator is no more and no less likely to achieve the applicable Amendable Financial Target than if such event or factor had not occurred.
- 8.2 The Secretary of State identifies a contractually committed opportunity for additional revenue for the sale of goods and/or services to another party on a profitable basis, which would require an amendment to the applicable Amendable Financial Target to ensure that the Operator is no more and no less likely to achieve the Amendable Financial Target than if such event had not occurred.
9. **Profit Financial Target Amendment Events**
- A Financial Performance Target Amendment Event shall occur in relation to a **Target Profit, a Target Profit Maximum Fee Performance Level and/or a Target Profit Nil Fee Performance Level** if any of the following events occurs:
- 9.1 Any variation in the rate of employer pension contributions (or, to the extent applicable, the amount of any lump sum employer deficit contributions) payable to an Operator Pension Section from the rate (or amount) set out in the Assumed Schedule of Contributions applicable to that Operator Pension Section which is not already provided for in the applicable Target Profit Template provided that, to the extent Operators consent or permission was required for that variation, the Operator has complied with its obligations pursuant to Chapter 7.6 (*Railways Pension Scheme*), including the obligations to:
- (a) obtain the Secretary of State's prior written consent in respect of any such variation; and
  - (b) act in a Reasonable Commercial Manner.
- 9.2 Either:
- (a) the Secretary of State designates the occurrence of Industrial Action as a Financial Target Amendment Event pursuant to paragraph 5.3 (*Industrial Action*) of Chapter 2.2 (*Rail Workforce*); or
  - (b) the occurrence of Industrial Action in the circumstances set out in paragraph 5.4 (*Industrial Action*) of Chapter 2.2 (*Rail Workforce*).
- 9.3 A Variation which:
- (a) results in the Operator incurring additional expenditure;
  - (b) would reasonably result in the Operator incurring lower expenditure;
  - (c) results in the Operator earning less revenue; or
  - (d) would reasonably result in the Operator earning greater revenue, than if the Variation had not been implemented.
- 9.4 A Charge Variation.
- 9.5 A Change of Law.
- 9.6 The circumstances contemplated in paragraph 4.8 or 4.9(b) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*) occur.
- 9.7 A change to the Train Service Requirement previously in force pursuant to the issue of an amended or new Train Service Requirement in accordance with paragraph 8 (*Development of Proposals for Passenger Service Enhancements*) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*).
- 9.8 The Operator being required to take any action pursuant to paragraph 11.1(a) and/or paragraph 11.1(b) (*Provisions relating to Access Agreements and Property Leases*) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*).

- 9.9 The Parties agree to vary the contents of the Service Quality Regime in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 18.1 (*Variations to the Service Quality Regime*) of Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*).
- 9.10 The Secretary of State effects an amendment to a Discount Fare Scheme, introduces a new Discount Fare Scheme or ceases to approve a Discount Fare Scheme for the purposes of section 28 of the Act as referred to in paragraph 3 (*Discount Fare Schemes*) of Chapter 8.2.8 (*Transport, Travel and Other Schemes*).
- 9.11 The Secretary of State approves an amendment or proposed amendment to an Inter-Operator Scheme, as referred to in paragraph 4.5 (*Inter-Operator Schemes*) of Chapter 8.2.8 (*Transport, Travel and Other Schemes*).
- 9.12 The imposition, subject to the provisions paragraph 2.6 (*Physical Alterations and Accessibility Of Stations*) of Chapter 5.3 (*Accessibility and Inclusivity*), of any increased access charges in respect of EA Requirements at Operator Access Stations.
- 9.13 A Business Plan Revision is agreed or determined under paragraph 6 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*).
- 9.14 The Secretary of State exercises the Secretary of State's power pursuant to paragraph 5 (*Changes to Fares Regulation*) of Part B to Chapter 8.2.5 (*Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation*) to alter the obligations of and restrictions on the Operator under Chapter 8.2 (*Fares*).
- 9.15 The Operator is obliged to charge Value Added Tax on a Fare or there is an increase or decrease in the rate of Value Added Tax which it must charge on such Fare, in either case due to a change in the Value Added Tax treatment.
- 9.16 The Secretary of State issues a direction to the Operator under paragraph 10.1(b) (*Cascaded Rolling Stock and Delayed Cascade Mitigation Plan*) of Chapter 9.1 (Fixed Assets) occur.
- 9.17 The delay or non-delivery of an item of expenditure or a group of items of similar expenditure where the timing of expenditure or revenue being recognised is materially different from that included in the Modelling Suite used to derive the contents of the Target Profit Template most recently Placed in Escrow.
- 9.18 The Secretary of State requires the use of a different or amended rolling stock fleet for delivering the Services.
- 9.19 The Secretary of State or Network Rail requires the Operator to operate the Passenger Services to a specification that is materially different compared to the specification that was assumed when the relevant Amendable Financial Target was established.
10. **Other Profit Financial Target Amendment Events**
- 10.1 A **Profit Financial Target Amendment Event** shall also occur if:
- (a) either Party notifies the other of an event listed in paragraphs 10.2 to 10.3 below; and
  - (b) the Parties agree or the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) (taking into account the information available to the Secretary of State including any evidence provided by the Operator) determines that such occurrence shall be a Profit Financial Target Amendment Event.
- 10.2 An event or other significant factor (which is not listed in paragraph 9 of Appendix 1 to this Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*)) occurs:
- (a) which is outside the control of the Operator and/or any of its Affiliates; and
  - (b) which causes a requirement to amend the applicable Amendable Financial Target to ensure that the Operator is no more and no less likely to achieve the amend the applicable Amendable Financial Target than if such event or factor had not occurred.
- 10.3 Either Party identifies a contractually committed opportunity for additional revenue for the sale of goods and/or services to another party on a profitable basis, which would require an amendment to the applicable Amendable Financial Target to ensure that the Operator is no

more and no less likely to achieve the Amendable Financial Target than if such event had not occurred.

## Chapter 7.6

### Railways Pension Scheme

#### 1. Definitions

Unless otherwise defined in the National Rail Contract, terms used in this Chapter 7.6 shall have the meanings given to them in the Railways Pension Scheme.

#### 2. Operator Pensions Sections

The Operator shall participate in and become the Designated Employer in relation to the Shared Cost Sections of the Railways Pension Scheme as specified in Appendix 1 to this Chapter 7.6 (together the “**Operator Pension Sections**”) in respect of the Rail Services. Subject to paragraphs 3 and 4.2(d) membership of an Operator Pension Section will be offered to each employee of the Operator only.

#### 3. Closed Schemes

3.1 Subject to any requirements of Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs, the Operator shall take any necessary steps (including entering into any relevant deed of participation) to allow Closed Scheme Employees to continue in membership of the British Railways Superannuation Fund or the BR (1974) Pension Fund in accordance with their terms during the Contract Period.

3.2 For the purposes of this paragraph 3, “**Closed Scheme Employees**” means such of the employees of the Operator who were, immediately prior to the commencement of their employment with the Operator, members of either of the British Railways Superannuation Fund or the BR (1974) Pension Fund.

#### 4. Variations in benefits, contributions and investment

4.1 If the Operator is considering making a proposal that falls within the scope of paragraphs 4.2(a) to 4.2(g) inclusive, it shall promptly consult with the Secretary of State in relation to that proposal prior to putting such a proposal to the Pensions Committee of any Operator Pension Section, the Trustee of the Railways Pension Scheme (the “**Trustee**”), or to any trade union. The Operator must otherwise consult in good time with the Secretary of State in relation to any proposal falling within the scope of paragraphs 4.2(a) to 4.2(g) inclusive.

4.2 Separately and in addition to complying with its obligations under paragraph 4.1, the Operator shall not, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State (which may be given on such terms and subject to such conditions as the Secretary of State thinks fit):

- (a) restructure or change the composition of the earnings of employees of the Operator in such a way as to increase the part of those earnings which qualifies as pensionable earnings under the rules of the Railways Pension Scheme applicable to any Operator Pension Section (the “**Operator Pension Section Rules**”) or take any action (or consent to the taking of any action) which could detrimentally affect the funding of any Operator Pension Section, including varying or providing different or additional benefits under that Operator Pension Section or promising to do so, unless this change:
  - (i) is required by Law; or
  - (ii) only affects benefits payable in respect of past service of members of that Operator Pension Section and on or prior to the effective date of the change the Operator pays an additional cash payment to the Trustee which, in the opinion of the Actuary, meets in full the additional funding cost imposed on that Operator Pension Section; or
  - (iii) would not lead to substantial changes in the funding of any Operator Pension Section and is the result of the normal application of the Operator Pension Section Rules in the ordinary day to day running of the business of the Rail Services, for example, where individual employees are, from time to time promoted or transferred to higher paid or different employment which has a different composition of earnings;



- (b) make or consent to any proposal to change any of the provisions of the Pension Trust in respect of the Operator Pension Sections unless the change is required by Law;
  - (c) provide retirement, death or life assurance benefits in respect of any of its employees other than under any Operator Pension Section or as provided in paragraph 3;
  - (d) omit to provide the above-mentioned benefits in respect of its employees save that, without prejudice to any rights which any such employee may otherwise have, the Operator shall not under this Chapter 7.6 be obliged for the purposes of the National Rail Contract to offer such benefits to any employee employed on a fixed term contract of twelve (12) months or less;
  - (e) take any action (or consent to the taking of any action) which could affect the contributions payable by Participating Employers under any Operator Pension Section, including exercising any discretion allowed to the Operator as Designated Employer arising out of any actuarial valuation of an Operator Pension Section, and varying or providing different or additional benefits under the Operator Pension Sections in respect of future service, unless such action is required by Law;
  - (f) close an Operator Pension Section to new members; or
  - (g) take (or omit to take) any action which could result in any Operator Pension Section being wound up, in whole or in part.
- 4.3 The Operator shall consult with the Secretary of State on:
- (a) any proposal made by the Trustee to change the statement of investment principles applicable to any Operator Pension Section; and
  - (b) any proposal to alter the rate of contributions payable by the Operator or its employees under a new schedule of contributions for the Operator Pension Section.
- 4.4 With respect to any proposal falling within the scope of paragraph 4.3(a) or 4.3(b), the Operator shall also consult with the Trustee on the basis of any response it receives from the Secretary of State in relation to any such proposal.
- 5. Funding Liabilities**
- 5.1 The Operator shall pay the employer contributions required under the schedule of contributions applicable to each Operator Pension Section (or either of the British Railways Superannuation Fund or the BR (1974) Pension Fund in which it participates) in respect of the Contract Term subject to the provisions of paragraph 5.2 below.
- 5.2 Where, during the Contract Term, Rail Services are aggregated or disaggregated by the Secretary of State (for example, as a result of remapping) and, as a consequence, an Operator Pension Section of which the Operator is the Designated Employer is required to accept a transfer in or to make a transfer out of members, the Secretary of State shall ensure that the Operator has no liability for any resulting deterioration immediately arising in the funding level of the Operator Pension Section measured in accordance with the Operator Pension Sections' technical provisions in Part 3 of the Pensions Act 2004, or for any amount arising under Article 7(4) of the Railway Pensions (Protection and Designation of Schemes) Order 1994. Notwithstanding the above the Secretary of State shall have no liability for any future deterioration in the funding levels of the Operator Pension Section linked to such transfer in or out of members.
- 6. Discharge of Obligations**
- 6.1 The Secretary of State may at any time during the Contract Term seek information from the Trustee with a view to satisfying himself that the Operator and the other Participating Employers (if any) have fully discharged their respective obligations under the Railways Pension Scheme, including their obligations in respect of the payment of contributions to any Operator Pension Section.
- 6.2 The Operator shall promptly provide such information in relation to any Operator Pension Section, including actuarial advice and information, as the Secretary of State may from time to time request and shall authorise and consent to the Trustee doing so.



6.3 The Operator shall, in respect of the Contract Term, use all reasonable endeavours to provide to the Secretary of State:

- (a) within one (1) month of the expiry of each Contract Year; and
- (b) at other times as soon as practicable following a request by the Secretary of State, a certificate signed by the Trustee in relation to the Operator Pension Sections stating either that the Operator has fully complied with its obligations under the Railways Pension Scheme, including its obligation to contribute to the Operator Pension Sections or, if it has not so complied, stating the extent to which it has not done so. Where the certificate is given pursuant to paragraph 6.3(a), it shall cover the relevant Contract Year. Where the certificate has been given pursuant to paragraph 6.3(b), it shall cover such period as the Secretary of State shall specify.

## 7. **Termination of National Rail Contract**

The Secretary of State shall at the end of the Contract Period ensure that the Operator has no liability for any deficit in the Operator Pension Sections (other than for contributions due and payable by the Operator to the Operator Pension Sections for any period prior to the end of the Contract Term) and shall have no right to benefit from any surplus which may exist in the Operator Pension Sections. For the avoidance of doubt, this paragraph 7 shall apply where the Rail Services are either aggregated or disaggregated (for example, as a result of remapping).

## 8. **Operator Obligations to Participate in any Investigation and Reform**

8.1 The Operator shall:

- (a) act in good faith and in a Reasonable Commercial Manner at all times; and
- (b) engage appropriately with the RDG, the Pensions Regulator and the relevant trade unions,

in discharging its obligations under paragraph 8.2 of this Chapter 7.6.

8.2 The Operator shall take all reasonable steps to participate in:

- (a) the development and implementation of the RDG's response to the current and any future Investigation and the associated concerns raised by the Pensions Regulator regarding those sections of the Railways Pension Scheme for which a Train Operator is the designated employer;
- (b) any Investigation concerning one or more of the Operator Pension Sections, in which case the Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to achieve an outcome from that Investigation with which a reasonable Train Operator, who was in the position of the Operator and acting in a Reasonable Commercial Manner, would be satisfied; and
- (c) any industry wide efforts to reform the pension arrangements or benefits payable under the Railways Pension Scheme or offered to employees of Train Operators, recognising the need for the British passenger rail industry to be affordable and offer value for money in the interests of relevant stakeholders including taxpayers.

## 9. **Information Powers**

Where required by the Secretary of State, the Operator agrees to allow the Secretary of State or the Secretary of State's representatives to attend any meeting between the Operator and the Trustee and/or the Pensions Regulator where the meeting in whole or part relates to matters to which paragraph 8 or 10 of this Chapter 7.6 applies.

## 10. **Pension Directions by the Secretary of State**

10.1 The Secretary of State may, at any time, by written notice to the Operator, direct that the Operator take such action in relation to pensions for employees and workers of the Operator as the Secretary of State may in its sole discretion determine. The Secretary of State may consult with the Operator before issuing any such direction under this paragraph 10. The Secretary of State may issue more than one direction to the Operator under this paragraph 10.

10.2 Without limiting the generality of paragraph 10.1, such directions may include:

- (a) directing the Operator to propose a schedule of contributions or recovery plan to the Trustee of the Railways Pension Scheme incorporating such employer and employee contributions and over such period as the Secretary of State may determine;
  - (b) directing the Operator to offer such alternative pension arrangements to employees or workers of the Operator as the Secretary of State may determine; and
  - (c) directing the Operator to make proposals to the Trustee of the Railways Pension Scheme in relation to benefits, contributions or investments.
- 10.3 Where the Operator receives a direction under paragraph 10.1, the Operator will use all reasonable endeavours to implement the direction and to work in good faith and act in a Reasonable Commercial Manner with other parties to give effect to the direction.
- 10.4 To the extent that the terms of any direction given under paragraph 10.1 conflict with any of the other terms of this Chapter 7.6, the terms of the direction shall prevail to the extent of that inconsistency.
- 10.5 The Operator will provide the Secretary of State with any documents or information which it may reasonably request in connection with any matter which is relevant to the subject of any direction given under paragraph 10.1 or its implementation.
- 10.6 Nothing in this paragraph 10 shall require the Operator to breach any legal obligation to which it is subject. Where the Operator reasonably considers that the implementation of any aspect of the direction will cause it to breach any legal obligation of the Operator the Secretary of State shall work in cooperation with the Operator with a view to agreeing an approach to discuss changes to avoid or otherwise mitigate the risk of such breach.

**APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 7.6**

**List of Shared Costs Sections**

<b>Shared Costs Sections</b>	
<b>section</b>	<b>employer</b>
TransPennine Express (former ATN) Section	Operator
TransPennine Express (former NWT) Section	Operator

## Chapter 7.7

### Business Plan

#### 1. Contents of the Business Plan

##### 1.1 Each Business Plan shall include:

(a) the following seven (7) components (the “**Business Plan Components**”):

- (i) Leadership, Management and Resourcing Plan;
- (ii) People Plan;
- (iii) Collaboration Plan;
- (iv) Train Service Operations Plan;
- (v) Customer & Communities Plan;
- (vi) Revenue Plan; and
- (vii) Environment and Sustainability Plan;

(b) the Financial Plan; and

(c) the Annual PBF Specifications,

and shall otherwise be in such form as may be specified in the relevant Request for Business Plan.

##### 1.2 Each Business Plan Component shall include:

(a) an Outline Business Plan with respect to such Business Plan Component in relation to the relevant Business Plan Period; and

(b) clearly identified:

- (i) Business Plan Commitments;
- (ii) Business Plan KPIs,

together with the Business Plan Approach, in each case with respect to such Business Plan Component.

##### 1.3 The Financial Plan shall include:

(a) evidence and explanation of the analysis carried out by the Operator (including appropriate benchmarking evidence and identification of efficiencies) to support the content of the Escrow Documents with respect to the relevant Business Plan Year to which the Business Plan relates;

(b) a statement from a statutory director of the Operator confirming that the Escrow Documents delivered pursuant to paragraph 3.4 of this Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*) have been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Contract and the Request for Business Plan;

(c) a statement from each of a statutory director of the Operator and a statutory director of the Parent confirming that the Cost Budget has been provided to, considered and endorsed by the board of directors of the Parent and that the board of directors of the Parent is not aware of any other plan which may alter, vary or impact on the Business Plan and shall at any time during the following twelve (12) months notify the Secretary of State should any of them become aware of any such plan;

(d) a forecast of the Operator’s Forecast Closing Cash Position for the last day of each of the Reporting Periods in the relevant Business Plan Year;

(e) a statement demonstrating how the Operator intends to ensure that at the end of each of the Reporting Periods in the relevant Business Plan Year it will have an available Forecast Closing Cash Position which is not less than the Floor Cash Position;

(f) a forecast of the amount of Working Capital Payment or Working Capital Repayment (if any) that the Operator forecasts that it will require or be capable or repaying pursuant to

paragraphs 10 (*Working Capital Payments*) or 11 (*Working Capital Repayment*) of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) in the relevant Business Plan Year;

- (g) details of any new technologies, processes, developments and/or proposals which could improve the provision of the Rail Services, reduce the cost of providing the Rail Services or enable the Rail Services to be provided more efficiently together with confirmation that the implementation of any such new technologies, processes, developments and proposals would comply with all the requirements of this Contract (including, where applicable, the requirements of paragraphs 8.6 and 8.7 (*Affiliate Trading*) of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*);
- (h) an analysis of the impact of any technologies, processes, developments and/or proposals that are proposed in relation to the Rail Services, including analyses of the costs of and timescale for effecting such changes and the impact on the provision of the Rail Services;
- (i) details of those technologies, processes, developments and/or proposals which the Operator proposes to implement during that Business Plan Year together with confirmation that such technologies, processes, developments and/or proposals will comply with all the requirements of this Contract (including, where applicable, the requirements of paragraphs 8.6 and 8.7 (*Affiliate Trading*) of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*);
- (j) an analysis of the technologies, processes, developments and/or proposals which the Operator implemented in the previous Business Plan Year, including details of any cost reductions and/or efficiency gains arising from the same and a reconciliation to the annual improvement plan for the previous Business Plan Year;
- (k) A “**Cost Efficiency Analysis**”, including:
  - (i) A year-to-year bridge bar chart analysis showing the trend in costs for each Cost Category identifying the differences between:
    - (A) the previous Business Plan Year’s Actual Costs; and
    - (B) the Quarterly Forecast as at the end of the 9th Reporting Period for current Business Plan Year forecast costs; and
    - (C) the proposed Cost Budget for the Business Plan Year for which the Financial Plan applies; and
    - (D) if applicable, any proposed Target Cost or any cost component of the Target Profit, for the Business Plan Year for which the Financial Plan applies;
  - (ii) an analysis of each Cost Category in the proposed Cost Budget for the Business Plan Year for which the Financial Plan applies, explaining the trends in each area by attributing them to:
    - (A) changes in required or business plan outputs;
    - (B) changes in the efficiency of resource volumes; or
    - (C) changes in market prices for materials, services and human resources;
  - (iii) benchmarking research and analysis of all key resource volumes in each cost category against other relevant businesses in the UK and overseas, key operational/output metrics. This should not be limited to the other operations of the Operator or its Affiliates, and the Operator should make all reasonable effort to gain intelligence on other rail, bus and transit operations to the extent relevant;
  - (iv) market testing and research on the prevailing market prices for all key categories of materials, services and human resources to be employed in delivering the Business Plan;
  - (v) conclusions on current and potential future cost efficiency in each Cost Category, envisaging opportunities arising from emerging innovations, technological advancement and changes to industry practices, as well as seeking to re-optimize cost efficiency where the level of outputs is changed;

- (vi) a strategic plan for maintaining / improving cost efficiency over the long term. This should set out target efficiency trends for the Business Plan Year for which the Financial Plan applies and the following three (3) years and approaches to meeting those targets with evidence that these are realistic and deliverable. It should include a demonstration that the proposed Target Cost and Cost Budget are consistent with this plan in terms of progress for the Business Plan Year for which the Financial Plan applies;
  - (vii) an explanation of costs included in the Cost Budget for planned revenue growth initiatives, as well as benchmarking and other analysis of how these initiatives represent value for money by delivering a positive revenue return, which is reflected in the Forecast Revenue and (if applicable) the proposed Target Revenue; and
  - (viii) an explanation (using benchmarking and other analysis required in the Financial Plan) of the rationale for each of the proposed Target Cost Maximum Fee Performance Level, Target Cost Nil Fee Performance Level, Target Revenue Maximum Fee Performance Level, Target Revenue Nil Fee Performance Level, Target Profit Maximum Fee Performance Level and Target Profit Nil Fee Performance Level, as applicable pursuant to paragraph 3 (*Financial Targets*) of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*); and
- (l) information in relation to arrangements with Affiliates, including:
- (A) a forecast of payments to or from any Affiliate, crossed referenced to the relevant Cost Categories in the Cost Budget where such forecast payments are shown;
  - (B) a forecast of fees, remuneration, pension contributions or any other payment to or in respect of any director or officer of the Operator, crossed referenced to the relevant Cost Categories in the Cost Budget where such forecast payments are shown; and
  - (C) evidence that all such payments are compliant with the terms of this Contract, including the provisions of paragraphs 8.6 (*Affiliate Trading*) of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*).
- 1.4 For the avoidance of doubt, the Escrow Documents shall not form part of the Business Plan.
- 1.5 For the avoidance of doubt, to the extent that the Escrow Documents for a relevant Business Plan Year cover any period of time following the expiry of this Contract, such parts of the Escrow Documents shall be for information purposes only and shall not in any circumstances be used in the calculation of the Contract Payment pursuant to Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*).
- 2. Initial Business Plan**
- 2.1 Prior to the date of this Contract, the Secretary of State issued a Request for Business Plan to the Operator, and the Parties agreed the Business Plan with respect to the Initial Business Plan Year.
- 3. Annual Business Plan Process**
- 3.1 By no later than the 30 September falling prior to the commencement of each Subsequent Business Plan Year, the Secretary of State shall provide the Operator with a Request for Business Plan with respect to such Subsequent Business Plan Year.
- 3.2 In the event that the due date for expiry of the Contract Term (subject to any extension in accordance with clause 2 (*Duration of the National Rail Contract*)) falls between (and including) any 30 September and the following 1 April, the Secretary of State may (at the Secretary of State's discretion) nevertheless require the Operator to produce a draft Business Plan and accompanying draft versions of the Escrow Documents in respect of the Extension Business Plan Year. If the Secretary of State so requires, the Secretary of State shall provide the Operator with a Request for Business Plan by no later than the 30 September falling prior to the commencement of the Extension Business Plan Year.
- 3.3 Following the Secretary of State's provision of any Request for Business Plan in accordance with paragraphs 3.1 or 3.2 above, such Request for Business Plan may be updated or revised from time to time by agreement between the Parties (each acting reasonably and in a timely manner) or as reasonably directed by the Secretary of State.

- 3.4 Following receipt of the Request for Business Plan with respect to any Subsequent Business Plan Year, the Operator shall deliver to the Secretary of State a draft Business Plan and draft versions of the Escrow Documents in respect of such Subsequent Business Plan Year on or before the 15 December falling prior to the commencement of such Subsequent Business Plan Year, which:
- (a) comply with the requirements of such Request for Business Plan;
  - (b) ensure that, by the end of such Subsequent Business Plan Year, the Operator would be in a position to be able to meet the requirements of the Outline Business Plan (as set out in such draft Business Plan); and
  - (c) in respect of the Cost Budget and the Forecast Revenue, complies with the requirements set out in paragraph 7 (*Format and Content of the Cost Budget and Forecast Revenue*) of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*),

provided that, where such Request for Business Plan is provided under paragraph 3.2 in respect of an Extension Business Plan Year, the Operator must instead deliver the draft Business Plan and draft versions of the Escrow Documents by the later of (a) the 15 December falling prior to the commencement of such Extension Business Plan Year and (b) the date falling five (5) days after the Operator's receipt of any notice of extension of the Contract Term from the Secretary of State pursuant to clause 2 (*Duration of the National Rail Contract*), unless the Secretary of State notifies the Operator (at the Secretary of State's discretion) that it no longer requires the Operator to provide the draft Business Plan in relation to such Extension Business Plan Year.

- 3.5 The Parties, each acting reasonably and through sufficiently senior representatives, shall each use reasonable endeavours to agree the Business Plan and the Escrow Documents with respect to each Subsequent Business Plan Year in a timely manner and, in any event, on or before the 28 February falling prior to the commencement of such Subsequent Business Plan Year. During such period, the Operator shall comply, within a reasonable amount of time, with any written requests made by the Secretary of State that the Operator:
- (i) provide further detail or evidence in relation to the draft Business Plan and/or draft Escrow Documents delivered in accordance with paragraph 3.4; and/or
  - (ii) amend the draft Business Plan and/or draft Escrow Documents in accordance with the Secretary of State's requirements and provide the amended draft(s) to the Secretary of State.
- 3.6 In the event that (pursuant to paragraph 3 (*Financial Targets*) of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*) any Amendable Financial Targets are to be agreed as part of the Escrow Documents, the relevant provisions of paragraph 3 (*Financial Targets*) of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*) shall apply in respect of the agreement or determination of such Amendable Financial Targets, in addition to the provisions of this paragraph 3 (*Annual Business Plan Process*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*).
- 3.7 To the extent that the Parties do not agree the Business Plan and/or Escrow Documents with respect to any Subsequent Business Plan Year on or before the 28 February falling prior to the commencement of such Subsequent Business Plan Year, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine the content of such Business Plan and/or Escrow Documents, and provide the Operator with written notice of the determined Business Plan and/or Escrow Documents.
- 3.8 In considering or determining the draft Business Plan or Escrow Documents, the Secretary of State shall (inter alia) take account of:
- (a) the Operator's obligations to perform the Rail Services in accordance with the provisions of the Contract; and
  - (b) the ability of a Good and Efficient Operator to deliver the Business Plan Commitments, having regard to the associated Cost Budget with respect to the relevant Business Plan Year.
- 3.9 Once agreed or determined in accordance with this paragraph 3 (*Annual Business Plan Process*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*), such Business Plan and Escrow Documents shall apply in respect of the relevant Subsequent Business Plan Year to which they relate.

#### 4. **Business Plan Commitments**



- 4.1 In each Business Plan Year, the Operator shall deliver the Business Plan Commitments in accordance with the Business Plan with respect to such Business Plan Year.
- 4.2 If the Secretary of State reasonably considers that the Operator is likely to fail to deliver any Business Plan Commitment, the Secretary of State may give notice to the Operator requiring the Operator to perform or deliver such relevant requirements of the Business Plan Approach as the Secretary of State may reasonably determine (to the extent that the Business Plan Approach relates to the performance of the relevant Business Plan Commitment).
- 4.3 If the Operator fails to perform or deliver any relevant requirement of the Business Plan Approach as the Secretary of State may specify in a notice to the Operator in accordance with paragraph 4.2, this shall constitute a contravention of the Contract.
- 4.4 Any requirement for the Operator to perform or deliver relevant requirements of the Business Plan Approach pursuant to paragraph 4.2 shall not entitle the Operator to any adjustment to the Cost Budget.

**4.5 Continuation of Availability**

(a) Where the Operator is obliged pursuant to any Business Plan Commitment for any Business Plan Year to provide, implement or install something (whether a service, facility or otherwise) the Operator shall ensure that once the same is provided, implemented or installed that it continues to be provided and made available (and where relevant, effectively maintained) for the remainder of the Contract Term unless the contrary is instructed by the Secretary of State or expressly stated.

(b) Where the Business Plan Commitments include a commitment:

(i) regarding the maintenance of certain facilities or activities or other similar analogous matters which are the subject of the Business Plan Commitments, the Operator shall not be regarded as having contravened the relevant obligation due to any temporary non-availability of the facility or activity (as the case may be) due to accidental damage or vandalism or maintenance, repair or replacement activities; or

(ii) regarding staffing requirements or particular appointments the Operator is required to make and maintain, the obligation of the Operator shall not be regarded as being contravened by:

(A) temporary absences (for example for sickness or holiday); or

(B) temporary non-fulfilment of a relevant post whilst the Operator is recruiting for that post,

providing always that the Operator is using all reasonable endeavours to keep the duration of any (x) non-availability of a facility or activity or (y) vacant or unfulfilled post or appointment (as the case may be) as short as reasonably practicable.

**4.6 Expenditure Commitment**

(a) Annual Expenditure

Where a Business Plan Commitment provides for the expenditure of an annual amount (or an amount over some other period) by the Operator, that amount:

(i) is assessed net of Value Added Tax; and

(ii) is the amount required to be expended by the Operator itself or procured by the Operator to be expended.

(b) Expenditure Commitments in nominal amounts

All Business Plan Commitments related to expenditure shall be expressed in nominal terms with respect to the relevant Business Plan Year in which such Business Plan Commitments are to be delivered.

**4.7 Nature of Business Plan Commitment**

(a) Any Business Plan Commitment shall be in addition to any obligation of the Operator elsewhere in this Contract and nothing in this Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*) or in any

Business Plan Commitment shall limit or restrict an obligation imposed on the Operator elsewhere in this Contract.

- (b) Save as expressly provided in the relevant Business Plan, each Business Plan Commitment is a separate obligation from any other Business Plan Commitment and satisfaction of or steps taken towards the satisfaction of one Business Plan Commitment will not amount to or contribute towards satisfaction of any other Business Plan Commitment.
- (c) Where in the relevant Business Plan, references are made to particular:
  - (i) manufacturers or suppliers of equipment or services, the Operator may fulfil its relevant commitment by using reasonable equivalents; or
  - (ii) stakeholders, the Operator may fulfil its relevant commitment with reference to reasonable successor bodies to the relevant stakeholder.

#### 4.8 **Consequences of Late Completion or Non-Delivery of Business Plan Commitments**

If the Operator fails to deliver in full a Business Plan Commitment in accordance with, and by the timeframe specified for its delivery in, the relevant Business Plan, such late, partial or non-delivery shall constitute a contravention of the Contract.

#### 4.9 **Obligations on Delivery of a Business Plan Commitment**

By no later than thirty (30) days after the date of delivery of a Business Plan Commitment the Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State a certificate (in such form as may be specified by the Secretary of State from time to time) signed by a statutory director of the Operator confirming that such Business Plan Commitment has been delivered in full and in accordance with its terms. Any supporting information as may be requested by the Secretary of State from time to time shall be provided by the Operator as soon as practicable, and in any event within such period as the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) may specify.

### 5. **Business Plan KPIs**

- 5.1 In each Business Plan Year, the Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to achieve the Business Plan KPIs set out in the Business Plan with respect to such Business Plan Year.

#### 5.2 **Business Plan KPI Performance Review**

- (a) The Operator shall report on its performance against the Business Plan KPIs to the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 5 (*Periodic Update Reports*) of Chapter 1.1 (*Organisation and Management*).
- (b) At each Contract Performance Meeting during each Business Plan Year, the Secretary of State and the Operator shall discuss the Operator's performance against the Business Plan KPIs set out in the Business Plan with respect to such Business Plan Year.
- (c) If the Operator has failed (or the Secretary of State reasonably considers that the Operator is likely to fail) to meet any relevant target for any Business Plan KPI then the Secretary of State shall notify the Operator of such failure and shall be entitled to:
  - (i) request from the Operator a Business Plan KPI Improvement Plan in order to enable the Operator to meet such Business Plan KPIs; and/or
  - (ii) require that the Operator performs or delivers any relevant requirements of the Business Plan Approach as the Secretary of State may reasonably determine (to the extent that the Business Plan Approach relates to the performance of the relevant Business Plan KPI), during such time as the plan referred to under paragraph 5.2(c)(i) is developed and implemented, and/or for the remainder of the Business Plan Year. Any such requirement for the Operator to perform or deliver relevant requirements of the Business Plan Approach shall not entitle the Operator to any adjustment to the Cost Budget.

#### 5.3 **Business Plan KPI Improvement Plan**

As soon as reasonably practicable following receipt of the Secretary of State's request pursuant to paragraph 5.2(c)(i) (or within such longer period as may be agreed by the Secretary of State),

the Operator shall prepare and deliver to the Secretary of State its draft improvement plan for meeting the Business Plan KPIs which shall:

- (a) contain specific tangible action points and indicate in the case of each action point:
    - (i) how that action will contribute to meeting the relevant Business Plan KPI;
    - (ii) where the action is to be implemented;
    - (iii) the proposed timescales for implementing such action and, where any action is expressed to be ongoing, proposed review dates; and
    - (iv) how the Operator proposes to measure the performance of the action; and
  - (b) the additional expenditure associated with each action.
- 5.4 The Parties shall seek to agree the draft improvement plan for meeting the Business Plan KPIs as soon as reasonably practicable. In the event that the Parties are unable to agree such draft improvement plan by such time as the Secretary of State may reasonably require, the Secretary of State shall be entitled to determine (acting reasonably) the content of the draft improvement plan.
- 5.5 The draft improvement plan as agreed or determined by the Secretary of State (as the case may be) in accordance with paragraph 5.4 shall be referred to as the “**Business Plan KPI Improvement Plan**”. The Operator shall implement the Business Plan KPI Improvement Plan in accordance with its terms and the agreement or determination of the Business Plan KPI Improvement Plan shall be a Cost Budget Change Event, provided that any action point that would require the Operator to perform or deliver relevant requirements of the Business Plan Approach shall not entitle the Operator to any adjustment to the Cost Budget.
- 6. Business Plan Revisions**
- 6.1 Subject always to the provisions relating to Cost Budget Changes, Financial Target Amendments and Operational Performance Amendments set out in Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*) (including any changes to the methodologies, targets and criteria applicable to calculation of the Performance Based Fee in Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*):
- (a) at the first Periodic Finance Review Meeting in each Quarter, the Parties shall seek to agree (each acting reasonably and in a timely manner) any revisions to the then current Business Plan as may be necessary in order to properly reflect the impact of any Cost Budget Changes, Financial Target Amendments and Operational Performance Amendments as may be agreed or determined in accordance with Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*); and
  - (b) either Party may from time to time propose, by notice to the other Party, that revisions may be made to the then current Business Plan.
- 6.2 If and to the extent that any revision to the then current Business Plan is:
- (a) agreed between the Parties; or
  - (b) determined at the Secretary of State’s discretion, provided that (to the extent practicable) the Secretary of State shall act reasonably and shall not make such a determination without first consulting with, and taking due regard of any views of, the Operator,
- such revision shall be a “**Business Plan Revision**” for the purposes of this Contract.
- 6.3 The Operator’s performance and progress against the Business Plan will be reviewed in particular at each Contract Performance Meeting and in the first Periodic Finance Review Meeting in each Quarter. Prior to each the first Periodic Finance Review Meeting in each Quarter, the Operator shall:
- (a) provide an updated version of the Quarterly Forecast for the then current Business Plan Year and for and the following three (3) years, which would not automatically override any Amendable Financial Targets (if used) or the Cost Budget;
  - (b) set out the progress it has made against its obligations under this Contract, Business Plan Commitments and Business Plan KPIs; and
  - (c) outline any material deviations from the Business Plan Approach.

## 7. Industry Change Projects

- 7.1 Without prejudice to paragraph 3 (*Annual Business Plan Process*) of this Chapter 7.7, the Operator may give notice to the Secretary of State from time to time of any proposed Industry Change Project, together with the Operator's proposals as to any ICP Incentivisation and/or ICP Relief with respect to such Industry Change Project.
- 7.2 Following receipt of any proposal of an Industry Change Project by the Operator, the Secretary of State shall notify the Operator whether (in the Secretary of State's absolute discretion):
- (a) the Secretary of State wishes the parties to seek to agree the terms of such Industry Change Project pursuant to paragraph 7.3 below;
  - (b) the Secretary of State wishes the Operator to amend its proposal with respect to such Industry Change Project, and/or provide further information as the Secretary of State may request in relation to such Industry Change Project (and following the submission of any such amended Industry Change Project proposal and/or additional information, the Secretary of State shall notify the Operator whether (in the Secretary of State's absolute discretion) the Secretary of State is then minded to apply limb (a), (b) or (c) of this paragraph 7.2 in relation to such Industry Change Project); or
  - (c) the Secretary of State does not wish to proceed with such Industry Change Project.
- 7.3 Following any notification from the Secretary of State to the Operator pursuant to paragraph 7.2(a) above, the Parties shall each act reasonably and in a timely manner to seek to agree the terms of such Industry Change Project, together with any associated ICP Incentivisation and/or ICP Relief, such that the Operator is enabled to deliver such Industry Change Project under this Contract, provided that in all circumstances:
- (a) any ICP Incentivisation shall be commensurate with the increased risk to be adopted by the Operator as a result of the relevant Industry Change Project, taking into account:
    - (i) any other incentives and rewards available to the Operator pursuant to this Contract;
    - (ii) the scale and nature of the relevant Industry Change Project;
    - (iii) the extent of any increased requirements for the Operator to deploy or draw on the input and expertise of senior employees of any Parent or Affiliate of the Operator in excess of what would reasonably be expected to be required for the purposes of the day to day management of the Operator and the performance of its obligations under this Contract;
    - (iv) the levels of return that could reasonably be expected in relation to projects of a similar nature (whether within the rail industry or otherwise);
    - (v) the extent to which the Secretary of State is likely to benefit from the Operator's transfer, grant or licensing of Intellectual Property Rights relating solely to the relevant Industry Change Project; and
    - (vi) the terms and effect of any applicable ICP Relief;
  - (b) any ICP Relief shall not exceed the relief necessary in order to account for any adverse effect on the Operator's performance of its obligations under this Contract (or other adverse impact on the Operator pursuant to the provisions of this Contract) which would otherwise arise as a direct result of the Operator's performance or delivery of the associated Industry Change Project; and
  - (c) the Secretary of State considers (in the Secretary of State's absolute discretion), that the Industry Change Project meets any affordability criteria as the Secretary of State may be minded to apply in relation to consideration of any proposed Industry Change Project from time to time; and
  - (d) the terms of any Industry Change Project, together with any associated ICP Incentivisation and/or ICP Relief are consistent with the Procurement Policy, Subsidies Rules, Regulation 1370, and all applicable Laws (including all applicable

requirements therein relating to the correspondence between compensation and net financial effect (including a reasonable profit) and the avoidance of overcompensation or a lack of compensation).

## 8. **Conflicts between this Contract and the Business Plan**

8.1 In the event of any conflict between this Contract and any Business Plan Commitment or other element of the Operator's then current Business Plan:

- (a) each Party shall notify the other promptly on becoming aware of any such conflict; and
- (b) subject to paragraph 8.2 below, the provisions of this Contract shall prevail.

8.2 If at any time there is a conflict between this Contract and any Business Plan Commitment or other element of the Operator's then current Business Plan, the Parties may agree or the Secretary of State may give notice to vary this Contract in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 8 (*Variations*) of Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*).

## 9. **Business Plan Intellectual Property Rights**

### ***Ownership of Business Plan IP***

9.1 Nothing in this Contract shall transfer or assign any title, interest of either the Operator or the Secretary of State in any Background IP comprised, described or subsisting in, or incorporated into, any draft Business Plan or preparatory materials relating to any Business Plan, any Business Plan or any Business Plan Component ("**BP Background**").

9.2A As between the Parties, the Operator shall own any Foreground IP created or developed by or on behalf of the Operator comprised, described or subsisting in, or incorporated into, any draft Business Plan or preparatory materials relating to any Business Plan, any Business Plan or any Business Plan Component ("**BP Foreground**"), and such BP Foreground will immediately vest in the Operator.

9.2B Neither BP Background nor BP Foreground shall encompass Intellectual Property Rights in individual physical items or specific items of software that may be mentioned or referred to in any draft Business Plan or preparatory materials relating to any Business Plan, any Business Plan or any Business Plan Component.

### ***Cross-licensing of Business Plan IP***

9.3 Subject to paragraph 9.5 below, the Secretary of State hereby grants (or shall procure the grant of) to the Operator:

- (a) a non-exclusive, sub-licensable, royalty free, paid-up licence to use, copy, maintain and modify the Secretary of State's BP Background during the Contract Period to the extent necessary and for the purposes of: (i) the performance of the Rail Services under this Contract; and/or (ii) implementing, amending or modifying any Business Plan; and
- (b) a non-exclusive, perpetual, sub-licensable, royalty free, paid-up licence to use and copy the Secretary of State's BP Background for any purpose, but only to the extent that such BP Background is incorporated into or necessary for the use of BP Foreground.

9.4 Subject to paragraph 9.5 below, the Operator hereby grants to the Secretary of State a non-exclusive, perpetual, irrevocable, royalty-free, paid-up licence to use, copy, maintain and modify the Operator's BP Background and the BP Foreground for any purpose related to the provision of rail services on the United Kingdom heavy rail network.

9.5 Prior to any disclosure of any confidential BP Background belonging to the other Party or any confidential BP Foreground to a third party pursuant to any sub-licence permitted under paragraph 9.3 or 9.4 above, the disclosing Party shall ensure that such third party is bound by obligations of confidentiality no less onerous than those contained in this Contract, including relevant obligations set out in Chapter 9.6 (*Confidentiality and Data Protection*). Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this paragraph 9.5, the Operator shall not



disclose any commercially sensitive information to any third party without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State (not to be unreasonably withheld).

## 10. **Industry Change Projects Intellectual Property Rights**

### ***Ownership of Industry Change Project IP***

10.1 Nothing in this Contract shall transfer or assign any title, interest of either the Operator or the Secretary of State in any Background IP used or incorporated in, provided to, or introduced into any Industry Change Project (“**ICP Background**”).

10.2 As between the Parties, the Operator shall own any Foreground IP created or devised by or on behalf of the Operator for the purposes of, or in the course of undertaking any services relating to, or for the planning or implementation of, any Industry Change Project (including any preparatory design work) (“**ICP Foreground**”), and such ICP Foreground will immediately vest in the Operator.

### ***Cross-licensing of Industry Change Project IP***

10.3 Subject to paragraph 10.5 below, the Secretary of State hereby grants (or shall procure the grant of) to the Operator:

- (a) a non-exclusive, sub-licensable, royalty free, paid-up licence to use, copy, maintain and modify the Secretary of State's ICP Background during the Contract Period to the extent necessary and for the sole purpose of undertaking any aspect of an Industry Change Project; and
- (b) a non-exclusive, perpetual, sub-licensable, royalty free, paid-up licence to use and copy the Secretary of State's ICP Background for any purpose, but only to the extent that such ICP Background is incorporated into or necessary for the use of ICP Foreground.

10.4 Subject to paragraphs 10.5 and 10.6 below, the Operator hereby grants (or shall procure the grant of) to the Secretary of State a non-exclusive, perpetual, sub-licensable, royalty-free, paid-up licence to use, copy, maintain and modify ICP Background belonging to the Operator and the ICP Foreground in connection with any heavy rail services in the United Kingdom.

10.5 In the case of any third party Background IP that is embedded in, or is an integral part and/or required for the use of any ICP Foreground IP (“**Embedded ICP Background**”), the Operator shall use all reasonable efforts to procure for the Secretary of State a non-exclusive, perpetual, royalty-free, paid-up licence to use and copy such Embedded ICP Background for any purpose related to the provision of rail services on the United Kingdom heavy rail network, with the right to grant sub-licences to any Successor Operator. Where, having used all reasonable efforts to procure the foregoing licence, the Operator has been unable to do so, and where the Operator intends to proceed with the use of the applicable Embedded ICP Background in relation to the provision of rail services, it shall notify the Secretary of State in writing, providing brief details of: (i) the applicable Embedded ICP Background and the ICP Foreground to which it relates; (ii) the third party owner or licensor of such Embedded ICP Background; and (iii) the terms on which the Operator proposes to licence the Embedded ICP Background from the applicable owner or third party licensor. The Operator may not proceed with the use of such third party Embedded ICP Background IP unless: (i) the Secretary of State provides written consent; or (ii) no response from the Secretary of State has been received within 28 days of providing written notification, which shall constitute deemed consent.

10.6 Prior to any disclosure of any confidential ICP Background of the other Party or any confidential ICP Foreground to a third party pursuant to any sub-licence permitted under paragraph 10.3(b) or 10.4 above, the disclosing Party shall ensure that such third party recipient is bound by obligations of confidentiality no less onerous than those contained in this Contract, including relevant obligations set out in Chapter 9.6 (*Confidentiality and Data Protection*). Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this paragraph 10.5, the Operator shall not disclose any commercially sensitive information to any third party without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State (not to be unreasonably withheld).

## 11. Access to IP Materials and Resources

11.1 The Operator shall upon the reasonable request of the Secretary of State provide access to or copies of all such materials and resources as the Secretary of State requires:

(a) for the purpose of utilising any results, deliverables, facilities, or any other matter resulting from the Industry Change Project; and/or

(b) in connection with any heavy rail services in the United Kingdom,

including provision of copies of software source code and electronic and hard copies of documentation. Upon expiry of the Contract Period, the Operator shall make available any such materials in static form that is not dependent upon access to any systems provided to or via the Operator.

## 12. Contracts Associated with the delivery of Business Plan Commitments

12.1 The provisions of this paragraph 12 shall be without prejudice to the provisions of paragraphs 8.6 to 8.11 (*Affiliate Trading*) of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) to the extent that a contract referred to in this paragraph is also a Group Contract or an Affiliate Contract.

12.2 The Parties agree and acknowledge that where a Business Plan includes:

(a) details of the proposed Business Plan Approach for Subsequent Business Plan Years, any actual implementation and delivery of that approach will be dependent upon the Secretary of State (in the Secretary of State's discretion) deciding to agree such implementation and delivery and related funding as part of the Business Plan for each of the relevant Subsequent Business Plan Years so referred to in the Business Plan Approach; and

(b) Business Plan Commitments that are to continue for Subsequent Business Plan Years, any actual implementation and delivery of that Business Plan Commitment will be dependent upon the Secretary of State (in the Secretary of State's discretion) deciding to agree such implementation and delivery and related funding as part of the Business Plan for each of the relevant Subsequent Business Plan Years to which the continuation of that Business Plan Commitment relates.

12.3 In developing the scope and content of any: (i) proposed Business Plan Commitments set out in a draft Business Plan (pursuant to paragraph 3 (*Annual Business Plan Process*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*), or (ii) any proposed revisions to Business Plan Commitments resulting from proposed Business Plan Revisions (in either case a "**Proposed Business Plan Commitment**"), the Operator shall also provide details to the Secretary of State of any contracts that the Operator considers it will reasonably need to enter into in order to deliver a Proposed Business Plan Commitment and which it considers should:

(a) have a term extending beyond the term of the relevant Business Plan Year to which the draft Business Plan relates (an "**Extended Term Contract**"); and/or

(b) have a term extending beyond the earliest Expiry Date which may occur under this Contract such that the Operator will require such contracts being designated as Primary Assets and subject to a commitment by the Secretary of State not to de-designate in accordance with paragraph 12 (*De-designation of Assets and Primary Assets*) of Chapter 9.2.2 (*Key Assets – Designation of Assets*) (an "**Extended Term Designated Contract**").

In each case the Operator shall specify (i) the preferred term of each relevant contract; (ii) why it believes that such term is optimal by reference to all relevant factors including contract terms, costs and value for money considerations; and (iii) potential breakage and termination costs if any such contract was to be terminated by the Operator prior to the end of the proposed term. The Operator shall also provide by way of comparator details of the contracts that it could obtain for the same outputs terminating as the case may be at the end of the relevant Business Plan Year (where 12.3(a) applies) or the earliest Expiry Date which may occur under this Contract (where 12.3(b) applies).



- 12.4 Following receipt of the information provided by the Operator, the Secretary of State shall be entitled to:
- (a) require revisions to the Proposed Business Plan Commitments as contained in the relevant draft Business Plan or draft Business Plan Revision (as the case may be) so as to avoid the requirement for an Extended Term Contract and/or Extended Term Designated Contract; or
  - (b) confirm to the Operator that it approves the contracting approach proposed by the Operator with respect to such Extended Term Contract and/or Extended Term Designated Contract and that: (i) the Secretary of State consents to the Operator entering into the relevant Extended Term Contract and/ or Extended Term Designated Contract subject to the Secretary of State's approval of the terms of that contract; and (ii) the Secretary of State agrees to designate an Extended Term Designated Contract as a Primary Asset and will not de-designate that Extended Term Designated Contract in accordance with paragraph 12 (*De-designation of Assets and Primary Assets*) of Chapter 9.2.2 (*Key Assets – Designation of Assets*); and
  - (c) reject the requirement for an Extended Term Contract and/or Extended Term Designated Contract and instead specify those terms that the Secretary of State requires to be included in the relevant contract, including provisions allowing for that contract to expire or terminate, without any termination liabilities or breakage costs accruing, at the end of the relevant Business Plan Year (or such other date as the Secretary of State may specify) if the relevant Business Plan Commitment is not to be continued in to Subsequent Business Plan Years. Prior to the Operator entering into any such contract on those terms as specified by the Secretary of State, the Secretary of State shall be entitled to review and propose amendments to or approve the relevant contract.
- 12.5 The Operator shall, in negotiating the terms of any Extended Term Contract, Extended Term Designated Contract or contract referred to in paragraph 12.4(c), acting as a Good and Efficient Operator achieve the most commercially advantageous terms to the Operator (in the context of the position of the Secretary of State under this Contract) and if requested by the Secretary of State, use all reasonable endeavours to obtain terms to a specification requested by him.
- 12.6 If the Secretary of State does not approve:
- (a) the terms of an Extended Term Contract and/or Extended Term Designated Contract; or
  - (b) the terms of a contract in accordance with paragraph 12.4(c),
- the Secretary of State shall be entitled to either (as the case may be): (i) revise a Proposed Business Plan Commitment as set out in a draft Business Plan in accordance with paragraph 3 (*Annual Business Plan Process*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*); or (ii) require revisions to the relevant Business Plan Commitment in accordance with paragraph 6.2 (*Business Plan Revisions*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*).
- 12.7 Where a Business Plan Commitment extends into Subsequent Business Plan Years and that Business Plan Commitment is not included in any relevant Subsequent Business Plan Year, then provided that the Secretary of State has approved the relevant Extended Term Contract applicable to that Business Plan Commitment in accordance with paragraph 12.4(b), the Cost Budget for that Subsequent Business Plan Year will include any such breakage costs and redundancy costs as contained in the relevant Extended Term Contract provided that the Operator has used all reasonable endeavours to minimise and mitigate such costs to the maximum extent reasonably practicable.

## Chapter 8 – Fares and Revenue



### Chapter 8.1 - Marketing and Revenue Growth



### Chapter 8.2 - Fares

**CHAPTER 8**  
**FARES AND REVENUE**

Chapter 8.1	Marketing and Revenue Growth
Chapter 8.2	Fares
Chapter 8.2.1	Purpose, Structure and Construction
Chapter 8.2.2	Operator's Obligation to Create Fares
Chapter 8.2.3	Allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets
Chapter 8.2.4	Regulation of Fares Basket Values and Individual Fares
Chapter 8.2.5	Exceeding the Regulated Value, Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price, and Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation
Chapter 8.2.6	Fares Regulation Information and Monitoring
Chapter 8.2.7	Fare Selling Restrictions
Chapter 8.2.8	Transport, Travel and Other Schemes
	Appendix 1: List Of Transport, Travel And Other Schemes

## Chapter 8.1

### Marketing and Revenue Growth

#### Part A – Marketing And Revenue Growth

##### 1. Ticketless Travel Surveys

- 1.1 The Operator on behalf of the Secretary of State shall carry out Ticketless Travel Surveys in each Ticketless Travel Survey Period in accordance with the Ticketless Travel Survey Methodology.
- 1.2 It is acknowledged and agreed by the Operator that:
- (a) a Ticketless Travel Survey can only be carried out during a Ticketless Travel Survey Period; and
  - (b) nothing in this paragraph 1 shall prevent the Secretary of State from carrying out any other ticketless travel surveys as the Secretary of State may wish to undertake from time to time (such surveys not to be subject to the provisions of this paragraph 1).
- 1.3 Within thirty (30) days of the completion of each Ticketless Travel Survey the Operator shall produce and provide to the Secretary of State a report setting out the results of such Ticketless Travel Survey and detailing how such Ticketless Travel Survey was carried out in accordance with the Ticketless Travel Survey Methodology.

##### 2. Ticketless Travel Performance

###### 2.1 Ticketless Travel Survey Periods Calculations

###### (a) Calculation of “TT Deemed”

At the end of the second and each subsequent Ticketless Travel Survey Period the Secretary of State shall use the Ticketless Travel Rate for such Ticketless Travel Survey Period to calculate the Operator’s performance against the TT Nil Fee Performance Level and/or the Breach Ticketless Travel Benchmark (as applicable) in accordance with the following formula:

$$[TT\ Deemed\ =] \frac{A + B}{2}$$

where:

**TT Deemed** is the Operator’s deemed performance against the TT Nil Fee Performance Level and/or the Breach Ticketless Travel Benchmark (as applicable);

**A** is the Ticketless Travel Rate for that Ticketless Travel Survey Period; and

**B** is the Ticketless Travel Rate for the preceding Ticketless Travel Survey Period.

###### 2.2 Consequences of Poor Performance

- (a) If for any Ticketless Travel Survey Period the TT Deemed as calculated pursuant to paragraph 2.1 above is:
  - (i) more than (that is, is **equal to or worse than**) the TT Nil Fee Performance Level the Operator shall produce a plan intended to ensure that the Ticketless Travel Rates will be below (that is, **better than**) the TT Nil Fee Performance Level (“**TT Action Plan**”);
  - (ii) more than (that is, is **equal or worse than**) the relevant Breach Ticketless Travel Benchmark then a contravention shall occur and the Secretary of State may serve a Remedial Plan Notice in accordance with the provisions of

paragraph 2 of Chapter 9.4.3 (*Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the National Rail Contract*).

- (b) The Operator shall (i) produce, (ii) obtain the Secretary of State's approval of, and (iii) commence the implementation of the TT Action Plan within three (3) months after the TT Deemed is calculated as being more than (that is, is **equal to or worse than**) the TT Nil Fee Performance Level.
- (c) The TT Action Plan shall contain specific tangible action points and indicate in the case of each action point:
  - (i) how that action will contribute to ensuring that the Ticketless Travel Rates will be below (that is, **better than**) the TT Nil Fee Performance Level;
  - (ii) where the action is to be implemented;
  - (iii) when the action is to be commenced and by when it is to be implemented provided always that where any action is expressed to be ongoing the TT Action Plan shall include specific review dates; and
  - (iv) how performance of the action is to be measured.
- (d) The Operator shall, except to the extent otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State in advance, implement each TT Action Plan in accordance with its terms.
- (e) It is acknowledged by the Operator that the approval or lack of approval by the Secretary of State of each TT Action Plan as contemplated in this paragraph shall not relieve the Operator of its obligations in relation to this paragraph 2 or any other provisions of the National Rail Contract.

### 3. **Percentage Allocations**

- 3.1 The Operator shall monitor on an on-going basis the Percentage Allocations in relation to Rail Products.
- 3.2 The Operator shall ensure that it manages and requests changes (including by disputing Percentage Allocations under the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement) to the Percentage Allocations in relation to Rail Products in such manner as would reasonably be expected from a skilled and experienced Train Operator bearing farebox revenue risk in relation to its franchise and seeking to maximise its profit consistent with its other obligations under its National Rail Contract.
- 3.3 Except to the extent that the Secretary of State may consent from time to time the Operator shall not take any action or step which may result in its Percentage Allocation in respect of any Rail Product being reduced.
- 3.4 The Operator shall notify the Secretary of State before taking any such action or step and upon becoming aware of any other person proposing to take any action or step which may have the same effect. The Operator shall take such action as the Secretary of State may reasonably request in order to prevent any such reduction, including submitting any dispute to any relevant dispute resolution procedures. If the Secretary of State does not respond to the Operator's notification within one (1) month of the date of receipt of such notification, the Operator shall be entitled to take the action or step so notified.

### 4. **Yield Management Data**

- 4.1 The Operator shall ensure that any Yield Management Data and Yield Management System are the property of the Operator or are licensed to the Operator on terms which have been approved by the Secretary of State (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed).
- 4.2 The Operator shall notify the Secretary of State in writing of the full names and registered office addresses of the entities which from time to time are hosting or storing any of the Yield Management Data, or which are otherwise holding within their possession or control any of the Yield Management Data, together with the location(s) in which the Yield Management Data is hosted, stored or otherwise held. In cases where the hosting, storage or holding of the Yield Management Data occurs in location(s) which are outside of the United Kingdom the notification shall include details of the relevant country(ies) or territory(ies).

- 4.3 The Operator hereby acknowledges that the Secretary of State legitimately wishes to have knowledge of the locations in which the Yield Management Data is hosted, stored or otherwise held from time to time (whether inside or outside of the United Kingdom) given that all such information would be relevant in the event of any transfer of the Rail Services to a Successor Operator.

## Chapter 8.2.1

### Fares

#### Purpose, Structure and Construction

#### 1. Purpose of provisions relating to Creating Fares

1.1 The purpose of Chapter 8.2.2 (*Operator's Obligation to Create Fares*) is to ensure that Commuter Fares and Protected Fares are Created in accordance with the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement and to place appropriate restrictions on the Operator's ability to Create Fares.

#### 1.2 Purpose of Fares Regulation

(a) The purpose of Chapter 8.2.3 (*Allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets*) to Chapter 8.2.6 (*Fares Regulation Information and Monitoring*) (inclusive) is to provide for the regulation of Fares by the Secretary of State pursuant to section 28 of the Act.

(b) For the purpose of regulating Fares, each Fare that is to be regulated shall be allocated in accordance with this Chapter 8.2 to one of the following Fares Baskets:

- (i) the Commuter Fares Basket; or
- (ii) the Protected Fares Basket.

(c) The Secretary of State's regulation of Fares places a limit on:

(i) the Price of each Fare that is allocated by the Secretary of State to a Fares Basket. The limit on the Price of each Fare is set by reference to:

- (A) the overall increase of the Prices of all Fares in a Fares Basket;
- (B) the individual increase in the Price of each Fare in a Fares Basket; and

(ii) the Child Price of each Fare as specified in paragraph 1.3 of Part B of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Individual Fares*).

(d) Subject to the more detailed provisions of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values and Individual Fares*):

- (i) the overall increase of the Prices of all Fares in a Fares Basket may not exceed the Retail Prices Index + k per cent per annum in respect of each Fare Year; and
- (ii) the increase in the Price of any individual Fare in a Fares Basket may not exceed the Retail Prices Index + k per cent + f per cent per annum in respect of each Fare Year.

For the purposes of paragraph 1.2(d)(i), "k" shall have the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.2 of Part A of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values*) and for the purposes of paragraph 1.2(d)(ii) "k" and "f" shall each have the meaning given to each such term in paragraph 2.2 of Part B of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Individual Fares*).

(e) The Secretary of State may alter these limits, and other aspects of the regulation of Fares, in accordance with the more detailed provisions of Part B of Chapter 8.2.5 (*Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation*).

#### 2. Structure of Chapter 8

2.1 Chapter 8.2.2 (*Operator's Obligation to Create Fares*) sets out or refers to the Operator's obligations to Create Fares.

2.2 Chapter 8.2.3 (*Allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets*) sets out the allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets.

2.3 Part A of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values*) sets out the limits applicable to the overall increase in Prices of all Fares in a Fares Basket.

2.4 Part B of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Individual Fares*) sets out the limits applicable to the increase in the Price of any individual Fare in a Fares Basket and the Child Price of each Fare.



- 2.5 Part A of Chapter 8.2.5 (*Exceeding the Regulated Value, Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price*) sets out the consequences of the Operator exceeding:
- (a) the Regulated Value of any Fares Basket; or
  - (b) the Regulated Price and/or Regulated Child Price of any Fare.
- 2.6 Part B of Chapter 8.2.5 (*Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation*) sets out the Secretary of State's ability to vary the foregoing provisions.
- 2.7 Chapter 8.2.6 (*Fares Regulation Information and Monitoring*) sets out Fares regulation information and monitoring provisions.
- 2.8 Paragraphs 1 and 2 of Chapter 5.4 (*Customer Benefits*) sets out provisions relating to the introduction of smart ticketing, participation in Smart Ticketing Schemes and reporting requirements and ticket retailing standards.
- 2.9 Paragraphs 2.4 to 2.6 of Chapter 5.4 (*Customer Benefits*) sets out provisions relating to the reforms for Fares, ticketing and the retailing of tickets, including the planning and/or development of industry reforms and provision of data relating to Fares, ticketing and the retail of ticket.
- 3. References to "Fare"**
- 3.1 For the purposes of:
- (a) Chapter 8.2.2 (*Operator's Obligation to Create Fares*), Fare shall have the wide meaning given to it in paragraph (a) of that definition; and
  - (b) Chapter 8.2.3 (*Allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets*) to Chapter 8.2.6 (*Fares Regulation Information and Monitoring*) (inclusive), Fare shall have the narrow meaning given to it in paragraph (b) of that definition.
- 3.2 References in this Chapter 8 to a Fare shall, except to the extent the context otherwise requires, be construed as references to the Fare which is or can be Created by the Lead Operator for the Flow to which the Fare relates or, if such Flow is not a Compulsory Inter-available Flow, any Fare which the Operator has Created or can Create in respect of that Flow as the Secretary of State may specify.
- 4. Fares Documents**
- 4.1 In the event that, in the Secretary of State's reasonable opinion, there is an immaterial inconsistency between the Fares or the maximum Price (as the case may be) for any Fare recorded by RSP in 2010 or the 2010 Nominal Ticket Sales:
- (a) described in or determined in accordance with this Chapter 8; and
  - (b) described in the relevant Fares Document,
- the relevant Fares Document shall prevail.
- 4.2 In the event that, in the Secretary of State's reasonable opinion, there is a material inconsistency between the Fares or the maximum Price (as the case may be) for any Fare recorded by RSP in 2010 or the 2010 Nominal Ticket Sales:
- (a) described in or determined in accordance with this Chapter 8; and
  - (b) described in the relevant Fares Document,
- this Chapter 8 shall prevail.
- 5. Setting of Child Prices**
- 5.1 Any requirement under this Chapter 8 to set a Child Price in respect of a Fare shall be satisfied by the Operator Creating either:
- (a) a Fare which is only valid for use by persons under the age of 16; or
  - (b) a Fare which is valid for use:
    - (i) by any person at a price; and

- (ii) by persons under the age of 16 at a discounted price relative to the price set pursuant to paragraph 5.1(b)(i).

6. **New Stations**

6.1 Subject to paragraph 3.2, the Secretary of State may include within the definitions of:

- (a) Fares Basket;
- (b) Commuter Fare; and
- (c) Protected Fare,

Fares to or from any New Station, on such basis as the Secretary of State may, after consultation with the Operator, reasonably determine and references in this Chapter 8 to Fares Basket, Commuter Fare, Protected Fare and Fares and other relevant definitions shall be construed accordingly.

## Chapter 8.2.2

### Operator's Obligation to Create Fares

#### 1. **Creation of Commuter Fares and Protected Fare**

The Operator shall ensure that each Commuter Fare and Protected Fare has been Created, in accordance with the Fares Plan (as the same may be amended from time to time in accordance with a Business Plan Revision pursuant to paragraph 6 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*)) and to the extent it is entitled or obliged to do so under the terms of the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement.

#### 2. **Restrictions on Creation of Fares**

- 2.1 The Operator shall set the Child Price for any Fare that it Creates so that that Fare may be purchased by or for a person under the age of 16 for an amount which is no greater than fifty per cent (50%) of the Price of the relevant Fare.
- 2.2 The Operator shall not Create or agree to Create any Fare or Discount Card with a validity of thirteen (13) or more months without the consent of the Secretary of State (such consent not to be unreasonably withheld).

#### 3. **Flexible Ticket**

- 3.1 At any time on or after the Start Date and/or pursuant to the Previous Agreement (unless otherwise agreed by the Parties), the Secretary of State may give notice to the Operator of the Flexible Ticket Commencement Date. If the Secretary of State issues any notice pursuant to this paragraph 3.1 or pursuant to paragraph 111 (*Flexible Ticket Product*) under Part 1 (*List of Committed Obligations*) to Schedule 6.1 (*Committed Obligations and Franchise Specific Obligations*) of the Previous Agreement, the Operator shall, no later than the date falling five (5) weeks (or such longer period as the Secretary of State may specify) following the issue of such notice (the "**Flexible Ticket Commencement Date**"), make available to passengers a Flexible Ticket on such terms as set out in or as may be specified by the Secretary of State pursuant to the Previous Agreement, unless otherwise directed by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 3.2 below. If the introduction of a Flexible Ticket results in the Operator being required to incur additional expenditure not otherwise envisaged by the Operator's Cost Budget mostly recently Placed in Escrow, there shall be a Cost Budget Change Event.
- 3.2 The Secretary of State may vary the terms on which the Operator shall make the Flexible Ticket available to passengers upon reasonable notice of such variation to the Operator. The issue of any notice by the Secretary of State under this paragraph 3.2 shall be a Cost Budget Change Event and a Financial Target Amendment Event.

### Chapter 8.2.3

#### Allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets

##### 1. Allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets

- 1.1 On or prior to the Start Date the Secretary of State shall allocate each Commuter Fare and Protected Fare to the relevant Fares Basket in accordance with this Chapter 8.2.3.
- 1.2 Subject to paragraph 2, every Commuter Fare shall be allocated by the Secretary of State to the Commuter Fares Basket and every Protected Fare shall be allocated by the Secretary of State to the Protected Fares Basket.

##### 2. Designation of Non Fares Basket Fares

- 2.1 On or prior to the Start Date, the Secretary of State shall:
- (a) separately (or in aggregate with other Fares of the same type in the opposite direction or for similar journeys that have the same Price) rank, in descending order according to their Gross Revenue for the period of twelve (12) months which ended 31 March 2010:
    - (i) all Commuter Fares; and
    - (ii) all Protected Fares;
  - (b) aggregate, following such ranking:
    - (i) those Commuter Fares with the lowest Gross Revenue, until the total of the aggregated Gross Revenue of such fares accounts for up to five per cent (5%) of the aggregate Reference Revenue of all Commuter Fares;
    - (ii) those Protected Fares with the lowest Gross Revenue, until the total of the aggregated Gross Revenue of such fares accounts for up to five per cent (5%) of the aggregate Reference Revenue of all Protected Fares; and
  - (c) designate, following such aggregation:
    - (i) those Commuter Fares referred to in paragraph 2.1(b)(i) as Non Fares Basket Fares; and
    - (ii) those Protected Fares referred to in paragraph 2.1(b)(ii) as Non Fares Basket Fares.
- 2.2 Without prejudice to the Secretary of State's right to require the content of a Fares Basket to change at any time prior to the Start Date, or, thereafter, prior to the commencement of any Fares Setting Round, pursuant to paragraph 1 of Part B of Chapter 8.2.5 (*Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation*), any Commuter Fare or Protected Fare that is also designated as a Non Fares Basket Fare shall not be allocated to the relevant Fares Basket.
- 2.3 The Secretary of State may de-designate any Non Fares Basket Fare pursuant to paragraph 1.1(d)(iii) of Part B of Chapter 8.2.5 (*Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation*).

**Chapter 8.2.4**

**Regulation of Fares Basket Values and Individual Fares**

**Part A – Regulation of Fares Basket Values**

**1. Value of Fares Basket not to exceed Regulated Value**

Subject to paragraph 1.3 of Part A of Chapter 8.2.5 (*Exceeding the Regulated Value, Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price*) the Operator shall procure that the Value of a Fares Basket at any time in any Fare Year does not exceed its Regulated Value for that Fare Year.

**2. Value**

The Value of a Fares Basket at any time shall be the aggregate of the Projected Revenue of each Fare in that Fares Basket at that time.

**3. Projected Revenue**

The Projected Revenue of any Fare at any time shall be an amount equal to:

<b>P x 2010 Nominal Ticket Sales</b>	
<b>where:</b>	
<b>P</b>	is the Price of that Fare at that time; and
<b>2010 Nominal Ticket Sales</b>	is the number of nominal ticket sales of that Fare for 2010, ascertained as follows:
	$\frac{A}{B}$
	<b>where:</b>
<b>A</b>	is the aggregate Gross Revenue recorded by RSP as attributable to sales of that Fare and any other Fare with which it was aggregated under paragraph 2.1(a) of Chapter 8.2.3 ( <i>Allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets</i> ) for the period of twelve (12) months which ended 31 March 2010; and
<b>B</b>	is the Price for that Fare recorded by RSP in 2010

**4. Regulated Value**

4.1 The Regulated Value of a Fares Basket for any Fare Year shall be an amount equal to:

<b>2010 Ticket Revenue x PPAI</b>	
<b>where:</b>	
<b>2010 Ticket Revenue</b>	is the aggregate Gross Revenue recorded by RSP as attributable to sales of all Fares in that Fares Basket for the period of twelve (12) months which ended 31 March 2010;
<b>PPAI</b>	is:
	<b>where:</b>
(a)	in respect of the Fare Year commencing 1 January 2011, the Permitted Aggregate Increase for that Fare Year; and
(b)	in respect of each Fare Year commencing on or after 1 January 2012, the product of the Permitted Aggregate Increase for each Fare Year between that Fare Year and the Fare Year which begins on 1 January 2011 (inclusively).

4.2 The Permitted Aggregate Increase in any Fare Year shall be an amount equal to:

<b>PAI =</b>	$PAI = \frac{(100 \times RPI) + k}{100}$	
<b>where:</b>		
<b>PAI</b>	is the Permitted Aggregate Increase in that Fare Year;	
<b>RPI</b>	is an amount equal to:	
	$\frac{RPI - 1}{RPI - 2}$	
	where:	
<b>RPI-1</b>	is the Retail Prices Index for a month as specified in writing by the Secretary of State from time to time of the calendar year preceding that Fare Year; and	
<b>RPI-2</b>	is the Retail Prices Index for the month as specified in writing by the Secretary of State from time to time of the calendar year preceding the calendar year referred in the definition of <b>RPI-1</b> ; and	
<b>k</b>	shall be as specified in writing by the Secretary of State from time to time.	

**Part B – Regulation of Individual Fares**

**1. Price not to exceed Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price**

1.1 The Operator shall procure that the Price of:

- (a) each Commuter Fare included in the Commuter Fares Basket;
- (b) each Protected Fare included in the Protected Fares Basket,

in any Fare Year does not exceed the Regulated Price for such Fare in that Fare Year.

1.2 The Operator shall procure that the Price of any Season Ticket Fare shall be the same in both directions.

1.3 The Operator shall procure that the Child Price of each Fare in any Fare Year does not exceed fifty per cent (50%) of the Price for such Fare in that Fare Year.

**2. Regulated Price**

2.1 The Regulated Price for any Fare in any Fare Year shall be an amount equal to the greater of:

(a)	Preceding Year Ticket Price + £0.10p; and
(b)	ROUND Preceding Year Ticket Price x PII
<b>where:</b>	
<b>Preceding Year Ticket Price</b>	for the Fare Year commencing 1 January 2011, is the maximum Price for that Fare recorded by RSP in 2010 and, for any subsequent Fare Year, is the maximum Price recorded by RSP in the Fare Year preceding that Fare Year, provided that such maximum Price complied with the requirements of this Chapter 8 as it is applied at the relevant time such maximum Price was recorded by RSP. If such maximum Price did not so comply, then such maximum Price shall be the last Price recorded by RSP which did so comply; and
<b>PII</b>	is the Permitted Individual Increase in any Fare Year, as determined in accordance with paragraph 2.2;
<b>ROUND</b>	(a) if (Preceding Year Ticket Price x PII), when rounded to two (2) decimal places, results in a value ending in five pence (£0.05) to nine pence (£0.09), then (Preceding Year Ticket Price x PII) shall be rounded up to the nearest whole multiple of £0.10; or (b) if (Preceding Year Ticket Price x PII), when rounded to two (2) decimal places, results in a value ending in one pence (£0.01) to four pence (£0.04) (inclusive), then (Preceding Year Ticket Price X PII) shall be rounded down to the nearest whole multiple of £0.10.

2.2 The Permitted Individual Increase in any Fare Year shall be an amount equal to:

<b>PII =</b>	$\frac{(100 \times RPI) + k + f}{100}$
<b>where:</b>	
<b>PII</b>	is the Permitted Individual Increase in that Fare Year;
<b>RPI</b>	is an amount equal to:
	$\frac{RPI - 1}{RPI - 2}$
	where:
<b>RPI-1</b>	is the Retail Prices Index for a month as specified in writing by the Secretary of State from time to time of the calendar year preceding that Fare Year; and
<b>RPI-2</b>	is the Retail Prices Index for the month as specified in writing by the Secretary of State from time to time of the calendar year preceding the calendar year referred in the definition of <b>RPI-1</b> ;
<b>k</b>	shall be as specified in writing by the Secretary of State from time to time.



<b>f</b>	shall be as specified in writing by the Secretary of State from time to time.
----------	---

## 2.3 Where:

- (a) the Operator sets the Price of any Commuter Fare or Protected Fare in any Fare Year; and
- (b) the Secretary of State reasonably determines that the Price of such Commuter Fare or Protected Fare was set solely for the purpose of increasing the value of the Preceding Year Ticket Price in the next Fare Year,

the Preceding Year Ticket Price for the purposes of determining the Regulated Price pursuant to paragraph 2.1 in the next Fare Year shall be the maximum Price prior to such setting that complied with the requirements of this Chapter 8, as recorded by RSP in the relevant preceding Fare Year.

3. **Compulsory Inter-available Flows**

## 3.1 Where the Operator:

- (a) as Lead Operator for a Compulsory Inter-available Flow, is responsible for setting the Price of a Commuter Fare for that Flow; and
- (b) has notified the RSP of the Price of that Commuter Fare in any Fares Setting Round,

the Operator shall not increase the Price of that Commuter Fare in the same Fares Setting Round without the consent of either the Secretary of State or each other Train Operator which provides Railway Passenger Services for such Flow.

## Chapter 8.2.5

### Exceeding the Regulated Value, Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price, and Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation

#### Part A – Exceeding the Regulated Value, Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price

##### 1. Exceeding the Regulated Value

- 1.1 If the Operator is in contravention of paragraph 1 of Part A of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values*) in respect of either the Commuter Fares Basket or the Protected Fares Basket it shall reduce the Price of Fares in the relevant Fares Basket at the next available opportunity and, in any event, at the next Fares Setting Round, so as to comply with the requirements of paragraph 1 of Part A of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values*) from such date.
- 1.2 It shall not be a contravention of paragraph 1 of Part A of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values*) if and to the extent that:
- (a) the Value of the Commuter Fares Basket exceeds its Regulated Value in any Fare Year;
  - (b) such excess is caused by the Price of any relevant Commuter Fare being set pursuant to the terms of the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement by another person (other than an Affiliate of the Operator); and
  - (c) the Operator does not have a reasonable opportunity, under any procedure for consulting or notifying Train Operators of alterations to the Prices of Fares under the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement or otherwise, to alter some or all of the other Commuter Fares in the Commuter Fares Basket so as to avoid the Value of the Commuter Fares Basket exceeding its Regulated Value.
- 1.3 If and to the extent that the circumstances described in paragraph 1.2 prevail in any Fare Year, the Operator shall not subsequently increase during that Fare Year, or any subsequent Fare Year, the Price of any Commuter Fare in the Commuter Fares Basket which it is entitled to set pursuant to the terms of the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement, unless, following such increase, the Operator would, otherwise than under paragraph 1.2, comply with the provisions of paragraph 1 of Part A of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values*) in relation to the Commuter Fares Basket.
- 1.4 Where circumstances described in paragraph 1.2 prevail in any Fare Year, the Operator shall not be required to reduce the Price of any other Commuter Fare at any time during that Fare Year, or any subsequent Fare Year, where such Price has previously been set in a Fares Setting Round.

##### 2. Exceeding the Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price

- 2.1 If the Operator is in contravention of any of the provisions of paragraph 1 of Part B of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Individual Fares*) it shall reduce the Price and/or Child Price (as the case may be) of any relevant Fare at the next available opportunity and, in any event, at the next Fares Setting Round, so as to comply with the requirements of paragraph 1 of Part B of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Individual Fares*) from such date.

## Part B – Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation

### 1. Changes to Fares Baskets

- 1.1 The Secretary of State may require the content of the Commuter Fares Basket or Protected Fares Basket (as the case may be) to change in accordance with the following:
- (a) where the Secretary of State is not satisfied that the Price of any Non Fares Basket Fare is reasonably constrained by the Price of other Fares which:
    - (i) have been set in respect of the same, or part of the same, Flow as such Non Fares Basket Fare, or a Flow which is reasonably proximate to the Flow on which such Non Fares Basket Fare has been set; and
    - (ii) have been included in the relevant Fares Basket,
 the Secretary of State may de-designate any Non Fares Basket Fare and include such Non Fares Basket Fare in the relevant Fares Basket;
  - (b) where any Commuter Fare for a Flow has been included in the Commuter Fares Basket, the Secretary of State may require the inclusion in the Commuter Fares Basket of any Weekly Season Ticket, Monthly Season Ticket, Quarterly Season Ticket, Annual Season Ticket, unrestricted Single Fare or unrestricted Return Fare that existed on that Flow in February 2003;
  - (c) where any Protected Fare for a Flow has been included in the Protected Fares Basket, the Secretary of State may require the inclusion in the Protected Fares Basket of any Protected Return Fare or Protected Weekly Season Ticket that existed on that Flow in February 2003; and/or
  - (d) where the Secretary of State changes the Reference Revenue and/or the Gross Revenue of any Fare pursuant to paragraphs 3.1(a) and/or 3.1(b) then, in relation to the Fares Basket in which such Fare is or would be included, and without limiting paragraphs 1.1(a) to (c) inclusive, the Secretary of State may also:
    - (i) make any of the changes to such Fares Basket contemplated by this paragraph 1.1;
    - (ii) designate any Fare as a Non Fares Basket Fare in accordance with the provisions (other than the requirement that such designation occurs on or prior to the Start Date) of paragraph 2 of Chapter 8.2.3 (*Allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets*); and/or
    - (iii) de-designate any Non Fares Basket Fare and include such Non Fares Basket Fare in the relevant Fares Basket.
- 1.2 The Secretary of State shall serve notice in writing on the Operator:
- (a) at any time prior to the Start Date; and
  - (b) thereafter, no later than the commencement of any Fares Setting Round,
- to require any Fare to be included in a Fares Basket or to designate any Fare as a Non Fares Basket Fare pursuant to paragraph 1.1.

### 2. Changes to the 2010 Nominal Ticket Sales

- 2.1 The Operator may, in the event of any significant change to the pattern of travel on the Passenger Services during the Contract Term, apply to the Secretary of State for the **value of factors A and/or B** in the formula for determining 2010 Nominal Ticket Sales in paragraph 3 of Part A of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values*) to be adjusted to take account of such changes, such that:
- (a) the **value of factor A** is re calculated by using the Gross Revenue in respect of the sales of the relevant Fares for the most recently completed period of twelve (12) months ending 31 March; and/or
  - (b) the **value of factor B** is recalculated by using the Price of the relevant Fares recorded by RSP in the month of February during such period.

- 2.2 The Secretary of State shall act reasonably in relation to any such application but shall not under any circumstances be obliged to accept any such application in whole or in part. The Secretary of State shall be entitled to impose conditions upon any such acceptance, including conditions requiring that the **value of both factors A and B** are adjusted and/or are adjusted in respect of any or all Fares in the relevant Fares Basket.
3. **Changes to the Reference Revenue, Gross Revenue, 2010 Nominal Ticket Sales and/or 2010 Ticket Revenue**
- 3.1 The Secretary of State may, by notice in writing served on the Operator no later than the date of commencement of any Fares Setting Round, require:
- (a) the Reference Revenue of any Fares Basket to be calculated by reference to a different reference period for the purpose of paragraph 2 of Chapter 8.2.3 (*Allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets*) than the period of twelve (12) months ended 31 March 2010; and/or
  - (b) the Gross Revenue of all Commuter Fares and Protected Fares to be recalculated for the purpose of paragraph 2 of Chapter 8.2.3 (*Allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets*) by reference to a different reference period than the period of twelve (12) months ended 31 March 2010; and/or
  - (c) **the value of factor A** in the formula for determining the 2010 Nominal Ticket Sales in paragraph 3 of Part A of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values*) to be recalculated in respect of any Fare by reference to a different reference period than the period of twelve (12) months ended 31 March 2010; and/or
  - (d) **the value of factor B** in the formula for determining the 2010 Nominal Ticket Sales in paragraph 3 of Part A of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values*) to be recalculated in respect of any Fare by reference to a different reference date other than February 2010; and/or
  - (e) the 2010 Ticket Revenue in respect of any Fares Basket to be re calculated for the purpose of paragraph 4 of Part A of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values*) by reference to a different reference period than the period of twelve (12) months ended 31 March 2010.
- 3.2 Where, in accordance with paragraph 3.1(e), the 2010 Ticket Revenue in respect of any Fares Basket is re calculated by reference to a different reference period, the value of “PPAI” in paragraph 4 of Part A of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values*) shall be determined solely by reference to the product of the Permitted Aggregate Increase for each Fare Year beginning after the end of such reference period.
- 3.3 Any revision pursuant to paragraph 3.1 or 3.2 shall take effect upon commencement of the next Fare Year to commence after the Fares Setting Round referred to in paragraph 3.1.
4. **Changes to Prices**
- 4.1 The Operator may from time to time submit proposals to the Secretary of State to increase any Prices beyond the levels permitted under Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values and Individual Fares*) in connection with any proposed or actual improvement in any aspect of the Passenger Services relating to such Fares.
- 4.2 The Secretary of State shall consider any such proposal and may (at the Secretary of State’s sole discretion) require the Operator to implement any such proposal in whole or in part.
5. **Changes to Fares Regulation**
- 5.1 The Parties agree that the Secretary of State shall have the power at any time and on more than one occasion during the Contract Term to alter the obligations of, and restrictions on, the Operator under Chapter 8.2.1 (*Purpose, Structure and Construction*) to Chapter 8.2.6 (*Fares Regulation Information and Monitoring*) inclusive for any Fare Year, or part thereof (including alteration of the **value of “k”** under paragraph 4.2 of Part A of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values*) and/or paragraph 2.2 of Part B of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Individual Fares*) and/or alteration of the **value of “f”** under paragraph 2.2 of Part B of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Individual Fares*)).

5.2 The exercise by the Secretary of State of the Secretary of State's powers under this paragraph 5 shall be a Revenue Financial Target Amendment Event or a Profit Financial Target Amendment Event (as applicable).

## 6. **Changes to Compulsory Inter-available Flows**

6.1 Where:

- (a) pursuant to Clauses 4 to 7 of the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement, the consent of the Secretary of State is requested for the abolition of a Compulsory Inter-available Flow (the "**Reference Flow**") in respect of which any Fare Created would be a Commuter Fare or a Protected Fare (the "**Reference Fare**"); and
- (b) a Flow exists, which, in the Secretary of State's opinion, is substantially similar to the Reference Flow (the "**Equivalent Flow**"),

the Secretary of State may, as a condition of granting the Secretary of State's consent to the abolition of the Reference Flow, by written notice to the Operator, require any Fare Created in respect of the Equivalent Flow which has substantially the same characteristics as the Reference Fare to be included in a Fares Basket ("**Equivalent Fare**").

6.2 The Secretary of State shall not issue any such notice in respect of an Equivalent Fare unless the provisions of such notice have first been approved by the Ticketing and Settlement Scheme Council (as defined in the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement) or a delegate of such council.

6.3 The Price of any Equivalent Fare in the first Fare Year in which it is to be introduced shall be no greater than the maximum permitted Price in that Fare Year of the relevant Reference Fare, as if such Reference Fare had not been abolished.

## 7. **Change of Lead Operator/Major Flow Operator**

7.1 The Operator shall not without the Secretary of State's prior approval, agree to any request under the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement that it cease to be Lead Operator in respect of any Flow.

7.2 The Operator shall inform the Secretary of State if it becomes the Lead Operator in respect of any Flow. Upon the Operator becoming the Lead Operator in respect of any Flow, the Secretary of State may without limiting paragraph 3 above, exercise the Secretary of State's rights pursuant to paragraph 3 in relation to the relevant Fares Basket.

7.3 The Operator shall inform the Secretary of State if it ceases to be a Major Flow Operator in respect of any Flow.

## 8. **Changes to Fares Documents**

8.1 Following:

- (a) any allocation of Fares to any Fares Basket pursuant to Part B of Chapter 8.2.3 (*Allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets*); or
- (b) any subsequent adjustment thereof pursuant to this Part B of Chapter 8.2.5,

the Secretary of State shall set out in the Commuter Fares Document and/or Protected Fares Document (as the case may be) all Fares then included in the relevant Fares Basket and, as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter, the Secretary of State shall issue or reissue (as the case may be) such Fares Document(s) to the Operator.

## 9. **Changes to applicable Fares Plans**

9.1 Where the Secretary of State exercises any of the Secretary of State's rights specified in any of paragraphs 1 to 8 of this Part B of Chapter 8.2.5, it is acknowledged that Business Plan Revisions may be required pursuant to paragraph 6 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*).

**Chapter 8.2.6****Fares Regulation Information and Monitoring****1. Information**

- 1.1 The Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State by no later than week twelve (12) of each Fares Setting Round, a summary (to such level of detail or generality as the Secretary of State may reasonably require) of the Prices of the Commuter Fares or Protected Fares it is intending to set.
- 1.2 The Operator shall notify, or procure the notification to, the Secretary of State of any proposed increase to the Price of any Commuter Fare or Protected Fare and shall provide such details of any such proposal at such times (including before and during each Fares Setting Round) and in such form (including by electronic data transfer) as the Secretary of State may reasonably request from time to time.
- 1.3 The Operator shall make available, or procure that RSP makes available, to the Secretary of State, for any Fares Setting Round during the Contract Term, such details (including the proposed Prices) of the Initial Permanent Fare of any Commuter Fare or Protected Fare for each such Fares Setting Round as the Secretary of State may reasonably request from time to time.

**2. Monitoring**

- 2.1 The Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State:
  - (a) such access as the Secretary of State may require to information pertaining to the Prices of Commuter Fares and Protected Fares from time to time; and
  - (b) such further information as the Secretary of State may require for the purpose of determining the Gross Revenue of the Operator in relation to any particular Fare or Fares or any particular period.
- 2.2 By no later than week seventeen (17) of each Fares Setting Round, the Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State written confirmation from a statutory director of the Operator of whether the Operator has complied with its obligations under this Chapter 8 (*Fares and Revenue*) during each such Fares Setting Round.
- 2.3 The Operator shall take such action as the Secretary of State may require following receipt of any details from the Operator pursuant to paragraph 1 in order to ensure that the Operator shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 8.2.2 (*Operator's Obligation to Create Fares*) to this Chapter 8.2.6 (*inclusive*).

**Chapter 8.2.7****Fares Selling Restrictions****1. Fares Selling Restrictions****1.1 Restrictions on Sales**

The Operator shall ensure that the purchaser of any Protected Fare or Commuter Fare:

- (a) shall be entitled, without further charge, to such rights of access and egress and other similar rights at the commencement and end of the relevant intended journey or journeys as may be reasonably necessary for such purchaser to travel on the Passenger Services;
- (b) shall not be required to incur any cost or take any action beyond the payment of an amount equal to the Price of such Protected Fare or Commuter Fare (as the case may be) and, in relation to the issue of a Season Ticket Fare, the completion of an identity card as the Operator may reasonably require; and
- (c) shall not be required to pay an amount in respect of a seat reservation or other similar right which it may be compulsory for such purchaser to have in order to make a journey with such Protected Fare or Commuter Fare (as the case may be) on a Passenger Service.

**1.2 The Operator shall procure that for any:**

- (a) Protected Return Fare, Single Fare which is a Commuter Fare or Return Fare which is a Commuter Fare, each such Fare shall be offered for sale wherever and whenever any other Fare (not being a Season Ticket Fare) for a journey between the same origin and destination stations is offered for sale; and
- (b) Protected Weekly Season Ticket or Season Ticket Fare which is a Commuter Fare, each such Fare shall be offered for sale at all staffed ticket offices at which Fares for a journey between the same origin and destination stations are sold and otherwise wherever and whenever any Season Ticket Fare is offered for sale,

in each case, either by the Operator or its agents (except persons acting in such capacity by virtue of having been appointed under Parts II to VI of Chapter 9 of the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement or by being party to the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement).

**1.3 Where the Operator sets a limit on the number of Protected Fares or Commuter Fares that may be used on any particular train, such limit shall be the greater of:**

- (a) the number of seats in Standard Class Accommodation on such train; and
- (b) the capacity of Standard Class Accommodation of the rolling stock vehicles comprising such train according to the tables set out in Appendix 1 to Chapter 4.3 (*The Rolling Stock*).

**1.4 The Operator shall not sell or offer to sell:**

- (a) any Fare in respect of which the:
  - (i) Prices are regulated under Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values and Individual Fares*), at prices that are greater than the Prices set for such Fares from time to time in accordance with Chapter 8.2.4; and
  - (ii) Child Prices are regulated under paragraph 1.3 of Part B of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Individual Fares*) at prices that are no greater than fifty per cent (50%) of the Price of the relevant Fare;
- (b) any Fare or Discount Card which has a validity of thirteen (13) or more months, except to the extent required to do so under the terms of the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement.



**1.5 Agents of the Operator**

The Operator shall procure that all persons selling or offering to sell Fares on its behalf (whether under the terms of the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement, as its agents or otherwise):

- (a) for Fares in respect of which the Prices are regulated under Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values and Individual Fares*), sell or offer to sell at prices no greater than the Prices set for such Fares from time to time in accordance with Chapter 8.2.4; and
- (b) for Fares in respect of which the Child Price has been set pursuant to paragraph 2.1 of Chapter 8.2.2 (*Operator's Obligation to Create Fares*), sell or offer to sell such Fares to any person under the age of 16 for an amount which is no greater than fifty per cent (50%) of the Price of the relevant Fare; and
- (c) for all Fares:
  - (i) do not sell or offer to sell any Fare or Discount Card with a validity of thirteen (13) or more months without the consent of the Secretary of State (such consent not to be unreasonably withheld); and
  - (ii) comply with the provisions of paragraphs 2 and 3 of Chapter 8.2.7 (*Fares Selling Restrictions*) to the extent they apply to the selling of Fares by the Operator.

**1.6 Additional Ancillary Services**

The Operator shall, subject to this paragraph 1, be entitled to charge a purchaser of any Protected Fare or Commuter Fare for any additional services:

- (a) which are ancillary to the railway passenger service for which such Protected Fare or Commuter Fare (as the case may be) was purchased (including, charges in respect of car parking or catering services); and
- (b) which such purchaser is not obliged to purchase.

**1.7 Sale of Fares for travel on Bank Holidays**

The Operator shall ensure that, for any Fare in respect of travel on a Bank Holiday, it only offers for sale (and shall procure that any person authorised to sell Fares on its behalf only offers for sale) such Fare that has the same rights and restrictions as a Fare which is valid for travel on a Saturday or Sunday.

**2. Reduction in Prices of Fares during the Last Thirteen (13) Month Period**

2.1 During the last thirteen (13) months of the Contract Period the Operator shall not, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State (not to be unreasonably withheld), set the Price or Child Price of or sell (except to the extent required to do so under the terms of the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement as a result of the Price or Child Price of a Fare being set by another person) any Fare which would entitle the purchaser of such Fare to travel on all or any of the Passenger Services after the Contract Period for an amount which is less than the Price or the Child Price of that Fare immediately before the commencement of such thirteen (13) month period or, in the case of a new Fare, the Price of its nearest equivalent immediately before the commencement of such period.

2.2 Paragraph 2.1 shall not prevent the Operator from giving any discount or reduction to which the purchaser of a Fare may be entitled by virtue of:

- (a) presenting a Discount Card (or any equivalent replacement thereof) issued by the Operator before the commencement of such thirteen (13) month period and to which the purchaser would have been entitled before the commencement of such period;
- (b) presenting a Discount Card issued by another train operator;
- (c) the Passenger's Charter or the passenger's charter of any other train operator; or
- (d) any relevant conditions of carriage.

- 2.3 The Operator shall procure that persons acting as its agent (except persons acting in such capacity by virtue of having been appointed under Parts II to VI of Chapter 9 of the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement or by being party to the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement) shall comply with the provisions of paragraph 2.1 to the extent that such provisions apply to the selling of Fares by the Operator.
3. **Restrictions in respect of Sale of Advance Purchase Train-specific Fares**
- 3.1 It is acknowledged that the Operator shall make available for sale prior to the end of the Contract Period Advance Purchase Train-specific Fares which are valid for travel after the end of the Contract Period.
- 3.2 In making such Advance Purchase Train-specific Fares available for purchase the Operator shall not change its commercial practice in terms of the number of such Advance Purchase Train-specific Fares made available or the Passenger Services on which they are valid for use when compared with its previous commercial practice in respect of Advance Purchase Train-specific Fares valid for travel prior to the end of the Contract Period.
- 3.3 The Operator shall be permitted to take into account reasonable seasonal factors in determining its previous commercial practice. In assessing reasonableness, account will be taken of the Operator's practice in addressing such seasonal factors in the corresponding period in the previous year.

## Chapter 8.2.8

### Transport, Travel and Other Schemes

#### 1. Local Authority Concessionary Travel Schemes

1.1 The Operator shall participate in and comply with its obligations under:

- (a) the concessionary travel schemes in place at the Start Date, listed in paragraph 1 of Appendix 1 (*List of Transport, Travel and Other Schemes*) to this Chapter 8.2.8; and
- (b) any other concessionary travel scheme or amendment to the concession travel schemes referred to in (a) above in either case which the Operator is directed to comply with by the Secretary of State

1.2 The Secretary of State shall consult the Operator before making any request of the Operator to participate in any amended or new concessionary travel scheme pursuant to paragraph 1.1(b) and shall allow the Operator a reasonable opportunity to make representations to the Secretary of State with respect to any such participation.

#### 2. Multi-modal Fares Schemes

2.1 The Operator shall participate in and comply with its obligations under:

- (a) the multi-modal fares schemes in place at the Start Date set out in paragraph 2 of Appendix 1 (*List of Transport, Travel and Other Schemes*) to this Chapter 8.2.8; and
- (b) any other multi-modal fares scheme or amendment to the multi-modal fare schemes referred to in (a) above in either case which the Operator is directed to comply with by the Secretary of State,

including by co-operating in the implementation of any Smart Media technology pursuant to any such multi-modal fares schemes.

2.2 The Secretary of State shall consult the Operator before making any request of the Operator to participate in any amended or new multi-modal fares scheme pursuant to paragraph 2.1(b) and shall allow the Operator a reasonable opportunity to make representations to it with respect to any such participation.

#### 3. Discount Fare Schemes

3.1 If the Secretary of State:

- (a) effects an amendment to a Discount Fare Scheme;
- (b) introduces any new Discount Fare Scheme; or
- (c) ceases to approve a Discount Fare Scheme,

for the purposes of section 28 of the Act, such amendment, introduction or cessation of approval shall be a Cost Budget Change Event and a Cost Financial Target Amendment Event, Revenue Financial Target Amendment Event or Profit Financial Target Amendment Event (as applicable).

3.2 The Secretary of State shall provide a reasonable opportunity to the Operator to make representations to the Secretary of State before amending, introducing or ceasing to approve a Discount Fare Scheme pursuant to paragraph 3.1.

3.3 The Operator shall supply to the Secretary of State, in respect of any Discount Fare Scheme referred to in paragraph 3.1, such information within such period as the Secretary of State may reasonably require for the purposes of determining the financial effect of any such amendment, intended amendment, introduction or cessation of approval.

#### 4. Inter-Operator Schemes

4.1 The Operator shall participate in and comply with its obligations under the terms of each of the Inter-Operator Schemes.

4.2 Without limiting paragraphs 4.1 and 4.3, the Operator agrees to be bound by Parts IV and V of Chapter 4 of the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement and shall not amend, or agree or

propose to amend, the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State.

- 4.3 The Operator shall not amend, or agree or propose to amend, any Inter-Operator Scheme other than in accordance with its terms.
- 4.4 The Operator shall:
- (a) provide reasonable notice to the Secretary of State of any proposal to amend any Inter-Operator Scheme which it intends to make or of which it receives notification and which, in its opinion, is reasonably likely to materially affect the provision of the Rail Services; and
  - (b) have regard to the Secretary of State's views in respect of any such proposal.
- 4.5 If an amendment is effected to an Inter-Operator Scheme which requires the consent or approval of the Secretary of State in accordance with the terms thereof, such amendment shall be treated as a Cost Budget Change Event and a Cost Financial Target Amendment Event, Revenue Financial Target Amendment Event or Profit Financial Target Amendment Event (as applicable).

## 5. **Voting on Scheme Councils**

- 5.1 The Operator shall give the Secretary of State reasonable notice of:
- (a) any meeting of:
    - (i) a scheme council of an Inter-Operator Scheme on which the Operator is represented; or
    - (ii) a scheme management group of any Inter-Operator Scheme:
      - (A) in which the Operator has a permanent position; or
      - (B) where the Operator employs a member of such group; and
  - (b) the resolutions to be voted upon at any such meeting,
- and the Operator shall, if so directed by the Secretary of State, present any documents authored by the Secretary of State and/or the Operator at any such meeting.
- 5.2 The Operator shall vote at any such meeting in the manner required by the Secretary of State.

**APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 8.2.8****List of Transport, Travel and Other Schemes****1. Local Authority Concessionary Travel Schemes****1.1** Each of the following schemes as at the Start Date:

- (a) Transport for Greater Manchester: Concessionary Fares Scheme (free, discounted price or flat fares for elderly, disabled and young persons);
- (b) Merseytravel: Concessionary Fares Scheme (free or discounted price travel for elderly, disabled and young persons);
- (c) West Yorkshire Combined Authority: Concessionary Fares Scheme (free or discounted price travel for senior citizens, blind, disabled and young persons);
- (d) South Yorkshire Passenger Transport Executive: Concessionary Fares Scheme;
- (e) Education season ticket schemes also operate with the following: (i) Derbyshire County Council, (ii) Lancashire County Council and (iii) Cheshire County Council;
- (f) Concessionary schemes with the following bodies: (i) Durham County Council, (ii) North Lincolnshire County Council, (iii) North East Lincolnshire County Council, (iv) Derbyshire County Council and (v) Hull City Council; and
- (g) Scholar Season Ticket schemes with the following authorities: (i) West Yorkshire Combined Authority, (ii) North Lincolnshire County Council, (iii) North East Lincolnshire County Council, (iv) Lincolnshire County Council and (v) Hull City Council.

**1.2** Any other concessionary travel scheme which the Operator is required to participate in during the Contract Term pursuant to paragraph 1.1(b) of Chapter 8.2.8.**2. Multi-modal Fares Schemes****2.1** Each of the following schemes as at the Start Date:

- (a) Transport for Greater Manchester:
  - (i) County Cards (Greater Manchester Travelcards Limited season tickets);
  - (ii) Metrolink tickets (Metro and train);
  - (iii) Wayfarer tickets (bus, Metro and train);
  - (iv) Day Saver (Off peak Rover ticket with bus, train and tram combinations); and
  - (v) Rail Ranger.
- (b) Merseytravel: TRIO, Rail Pass and Saveaway - Multi-modal season tickets and off peak Rovers.
- (c) West Yorkshire Combined Authority:
  - (i) Metrocards/M-Cards (provided by West Yorkshire Ticketing Company Limited);
  - (ii) Metro Dayrover tickets (daily off-peak) (provided by West Yorkshire Ticketing Company Limited);
  - (iii) Not used;
  - (iv) Metrorover tickets (half-price travel for the unemployed).
- (d) South Yorkshire Passenger Transport Executive:
  - (i) Travelmaster;
  - (ii) Railmaster.
- (e) Derbyshire County Council: Derbyshire Wayfarer - off peak Rover

**2.2** Any other multi-modal fares travel scheme which the Operator is required to participate in during the Contract Term pursuant to paragraph 2.1(b) of Chapter 8.2.8.

### 3. **Discount Fare Schemes**

3.1 Each of the following schemes as at the Start Date:

- (a) Disabled Persons Railcard Scheme dated 23 July 1995 between the participants therein;
- (b) Young Persons Railcard Scheme dated 23 July 1995 between the participants therein; and
- (c) Senior Railcard Scheme dated 23 July 1995 between the participants therein; or
- (d) any other discount fare scheme approved from time to time by the Secretary of State for the purposes of section 28 of the Act,

in each case until such time as it may cease to be approved by the Secretary of State for the purposes of section 28 of the Act.

### 4. **Inter-Operator Schemes**

4.1 Each of the following schemes as at the Start Date which relate to arrangements between the Operator and other participants in the railway industry:

- (a) Staff Travel Scheme dated 23 July 1995 between the participants named therein;
- (b) Ticketing and Settlement Agreement;
- (c) LRT Scheme dated 23 July 1995 between the participants named therein;
- (d) Travelcard Agreement dated 15 October 1995 between London Regional Transport and the parties named therein;
- (e) Through Ticketing (Non-Travelcard) Agreement dated 15 October 1995 (as amended and restated) between London Regional Transport and the parties named therein;
- (f) National Rail Enquiry Scheme dated 11 June 1996 between the participants named therein;
- (g) Not Used;
- (h) Not Used;
- (i) any Discount Fare Scheme;
- (j) the 16-17 Saver railcard scheme introduced for use with effect from 2 September 2019 between the participants named therein;
- (k) the Veterans Railcard scheme between the participants named therein to provide discounted rail travel to military veterans and their named companions and accompanying children; and
- (l) any other scheme, agreement and/or contract of a similar or equivalent nature as may from time to time during the Contract Period amend, replace or substitute, in whole or in part, any of such schemes, agreements and/or contracts.

## Chapter 9 – Standard Provisions



Chapter 9.1 - Fixed Assets



Chapter 9.2 - Key Contracts and Key Assets



Chapter 9.3 - Branding and Intellectual Property



Chapter 9.4 - Remedies and Dispute Resolution



Chapter 9.5 - Exit Management



Chapter 9.6 - Confidentiality and Data Protection



Chapter 9.7 - Miscellaneous Legal Terms



**CHAPTER 9**  
**STANDARD PROVISIONS**

Chapter 9.1	Fixed Assets
Chapter 9.2	Key Contracts and Key Assets
Chapter 9.3	Branding and Intellectual Property
Chapter 9.4	Remedies and Dispute Resolution
Chapter 9.5	Exit Management
Chapter 9.6	Confidentiality and Data Protection
Chapter 9.7	Miscellaneous Legal Terms

**CHAPTER 9.1****Fixed Assets****1. Station Asset Management**

1.1 The Operator shall implement and comply with the Station Asset Management Plan from the Start Date.

1.2 NOT USED

1.3 The Operator shall ensure that the Station Asset Management Plan in relation to each Station shall include the following:

- (a) the details of all maintenance, repair and renewal activity undertaken by the Operator since the Start Date;
- (b) the details of any maintenance, repair and renewal activity which the Operator has not completed or not completed within the specified time frame set out in any Station Asset Management Plan together with reasons;
- (c) the details of the maintenance, repair and renewal activity undertaken since the Start Date or planned by Network Rail, any Local Authority, any Community Rail Partnership and any other relevant stakeholder, which the Operator is aware of;
- (d) the assumptions that the Operator has made about the current state and future degradation of assets at the Station at the Start Date or, if an asset becomes an asset at the Station on a later date, the assumptions of the Operator about the current state and future degradation of each relevant asset on the date that it becomes such an asset at the Station;
- (e) the details of asset provision at the Station in the context of future passenger projections;
- (f) the plans to ensure that delivery of Station Services is resilient to periods of extreme weather and minimises disruption to passengers;
- (g) the plans to ensure that maintenance, repair, renewal, enhancement and other building works to be carried out at such Station is consistent with the Principles of Inclusive Design and the Security in the Design of Stations Guidance; and
- (h) the plans to ensure that activity at such Station is consistent with the Network Rail Asset Management Policy.

1.4 In addition, the Operator shall ensure that the Station Asset Management Plan:

- (a) shall cover a period of no less than forty (40) years from the date that it is created or revised and updated in accordance with this Chapter 9.1, as if the Operator was to operate each of the Stations for such forty (40) year period;
- (b) is developed in accordance, and complies, with guidance published by the Institute of Asset Management (or such appropriate replacement guidance).

1.5 Any amendments to the Station Asset Management Plan must be agreed by the Secretary of State (such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed).

1.6 The Operator shall ensure that all renewal, enhancement and other building works at Stations are implemented in accordance with the Principles of Inclusive Design.

**1.7 Updating the Station Asset Management Plan**

- (a) Together with the Business Plan submitted in respect of each Subsequent Business Plan Year, the Operator shall have reviewed the Station Asset Management Plan and shall submit to the Secretary of State for approval (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) a draft updated version of the Station Asset Management Plan (in substantially the same form as the preceding Station Asset Management Plan).
- (b) The updated draft Station Asset Management Plan shall include:

- (i) a schedule of any revisions to the current Station Asset Management Plan and a brief summary of the rationale supporting any change;
  - (ii) any changed and developing circumstances and the requirements of the Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation; and
  - (iii) where relevant, the outcomes of, and the Operator's responses to the stakeholder consultation.
- (c) If:
- (i) the Secretary of State approves an updated draft Station Asset Management Plan submitted to it pursuant to paragraph 1.7 (a), such document shall become the then current Station Asset Management Plan; or
  - (ii) the Secretary of State does not approve an updated draft Station Asset Management Plan submitted to it pursuant to paragraph 1.7(a), then the Operator shall make:
    - (A) such amendments to it as the Secretary of State shall reasonably direct; and
    - (B) provide such additional information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require.

#### 1.8 **Consultations relating to the Station Asset Management Plan**

On or before the annual submission of the Station Asset Management Plan pursuant to the provisions of this Chapter 9.1, the Operator shall conduct consultations with relevant Stakeholders (including the Community Rail Network, passengers, users of Stations, members of relevant local communities, Network Rail and the British Transport Police) in relation to the potential risks, opportunities and priorities for investment and operational efficiencies in relation to Stations. The Operator shall act reasonably in determining the scope of the specification of such consultations including the Stations to be considered.

#### 1.9 **ISO Certification**

The Operator shall at all times maintain certification pursuant to ISO55001:2014.

### 2. **Information about Station Improvement Measures**

- 2.1 The Operator shall, subject to paragraph 2.5, at all times during the Contract Period maintain records in relation to the measures taken by it to improve the Station environment at each of the Stations, covering the areas and the information set out in Appendix 1 to this Chapter 9.1.
- 2.2 The Operator shall, subject to paragraphs 2.3 and 2.5, provide to the Secretary of State the information set out in Appendix 1 (*Information about Station Improvement Measures*) to this Chapter 9.1 no later than the end of the first Reporting Period in each Contract Year other than the first Contract Year.
- 2.3 When so requested by the Secretary of State, the Operator shall, within such reasonable period as the Secretary of State may specify, make such information available for review by the Secretary of State by reference to:
- (a) such level of disaggregation as is reasonably specified by the Secretary of State; and
  - (b) any particular Station as is reasonably specified by the Secretary of State.
- 2.4 The information to be provided by the Operator to the Secretary of State within the timescales stipulated are set out in Appendix 1 (*Information about Station Improvement Measures*) to this Chapter 9.1.
- 2.5 The Secretary of State may in consultation with the Operator review the scope of the areas and information (including the format of that information and timescales within which that information is to be provided) to be set out in Appendix 1 (*Information about Station Improvement Measures*) to this Chapter 9.1 and shall within three (3) Reporting Periods of the Start Date notify the Operator of any additions, updates or revisions to Appendix 1 to this

Chapter 9.1 that the Secretary of State requires and thereafter Appendix 1 to this Chapter 9.1 shall be deemed to be amended in accordance with the Secretary of State's notice.

### **3. Vesting of Property Leases at the Start Date**

- 3.1 The Operator shall not without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State (such consent not to be unreasonably withheld), whether generally or on a case-by-case basis:
- (a) enter into any new Property Lease; or
  - (b) effect any amendment to any Property Lease, except to the extent that the Operator is required to do so by virtue of any station or depot access conditions to which it is a party.
- 3.2 In respect of any new Property Leases with Network Rail, the Operator shall enter into such Property Leases:
- (a) with the intent that section 31 of the Act shall apply to such leases; and
  - (b) in the agreed terms marked SL and DL (as appropriate).
- 3.3 In respect of any assignment or amendment of any Property Lease to which section 31 of the Act applied on its grant, each of the Secretary of State and the Operator acknowledge that it is their intention that section 31 of the Act shall continue to apply to such assigned or amended lease.
- 3.4 The Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that any Station Lease that it enters into accurately records all fixtures and fittings in relation to such Station Lease.

### **4. Novation of Access Agreements during the Contract Term**

- 4.1 The Operator shall, to the extent so requested by the Secretary of State (other than on termination of the National Rail Contract, for which the provisions of paragraph 1 (*Novation of Access Agreements on Termination of the National Rail Contract*) of Chapter 9.5.3 (*Provisions applying on and after Termination*) apply):
- (a) following receipt of a notice purporting to terminate any Access Agreement to which it is a party, in relation to such Access Agreement; or
  - (b) following receipt of a notice purporting to terminate a Station Lease or Depot Lease in whole or in part or on becoming aware of any proceedings or any other steps having or purporting to have similar effect, in relation to any Access Agreement under which it is a Facility Owner by virtue of such Station Lease or Depot Lease,
- novate its interest under any such relevant Access Agreement (and any related Network Rail Collateral Agreement) to the Secretary of State or as the Secretary of State may direct.
- 4.2 Such obligation to novate shall be subject to the agreement of any counterparty to such Access Agreement or Network Rail Collateral Agreement and, to the extent applicable, the ORR.
- 4.3 Such novation shall be on such terms as the Secretary of State may reasonably require, including:
- (a) that the Operator shall not be released from any accrued but unperformed obligation, the consequences of any breach of the relevant agreement which is the subject of arbitration or litigation between the Parties thereto or any liability in respect of any act or omission under or in relation to the relevant agreement prior to, or as at the date of, any such novation (except to the extent that the Secretary of State or the Secretary of State's nominee agrees to assume responsibility for such unperformed obligation, such liability or the consequences of such breach in connection with the relevant novation); and
  - (b) that neither the Secretary of State nor the Secretary of State's nominee shall be obliged, in connection with the novation, to agree to assume responsibility for any unperformed obligation, liability or consequences of a contravention referred to in paragraph 4.3(a),

but shall not, unless the Operator otherwise agrees, be on terms which release any counterparty to the relevant agreement from any liability to the Operator arising prior to the date of such novation.

4.4 The Operator shall, on the occurrence of any of the circumstances specified in paragraph 4.1 in relation to any other Train Operator who is a party to an Access Agreement to which the Operator is also party, agree to the novation of the relevant Train Operator's interest under the relevant Access Agreement to the Secretary of State or as the Secretary of State may direct, subject, to the extent applicable, to the consent of the ORR. The provisions of paragraph 4.3 shall apply to any such novation.

4.5 The Operator shall notify the Secretary of State on becoming aware of any circumstances which might lead to the Secretary of State being able to require the Operator to novate its interest or agree to the novation of another Train Operator's interest under this paragraph 4.

#### 5. **Assignment of Property Leases during the Contract Term**

5.1 The Operator shall (other than on termination of the National Rail Contract, for which the provisions of paragraph 4.5 (*Property Leases*) of Chapter 9.5.3 (*Provisions applying on and after Termination*) shall apply) following receipt of a notice purporting to terminate a Property Lease or on becoming aware of any proceedings or any other steps having or purporting to have similar effect, if requested by the Secretary of State, assign its interest under all or any Property Leases to the Secretary of State or as the Secretary of State may direct, subject, where applicable, to the agreement of any other party to such Property Lease or the ORR.

5.2 Such assignment shall be on such terms as the Secretary of State may reasonably require, including:

- (a) that the Operator shall not be released from any accrued but unperformed obligation, the consequences of any antecedent breach of a covenant or obligation in the Property Leases or any liability in respect of any act or omission under or in relation to the Property Lease prior to, or as at the date of, any such assignment (except to the extent that the Secretary of State or the Secretary of State's nominee agrees to assume responsibility for such unperformed obligation, such liability or the consequences of such antecedent breach in connection with the relevant assignment); and
- (b) that neither the Secretary of State nor the Secretary of State's nominee shall be obliged, in connection with such assignment, to agree to assume responsibility for any unperformed obligation, liability or consequences of a contravention referred to in paragraph 5.2(a), and the Operator shall indemnify the Secretary of State or the Secretary of State's nominee, as the case may be, on an after-tax basis against any costs, losses, liabilities or expenses suffered or incurred in relation thereto.

5.3 The Operator shall, on the occurrence of any of the circumstances specified in paragraph 5.1 in relation to any other Train Operator who is a party to a Property Lease to which the Operator is also party, agree to the assignment of such Train Operator's interest under the relevant Property Lease to the Secretary of State or as the Secretary of State may direct, subject, where applicable, to the consent of Network Rail. The provisions of paragraph 5.2 shall apply to any such assignment.

5.4 The Operator shall notify the Secretary of State on becoming aware of any circumstances which might lead to the Secretary of State being able to require the Operator to assign its interest or agree to the assignment of another Train Operator's interest under this paragraph 5.

#### 6. **Sub-Leasing Arrangements**

6.1 Where the Secretary of State requires the Operator to sub-let some of its fleet to another Train Operator under the terms of paragraph 2.4 (*Changes to the Train Fleet*) of Chapter 4.3 (*The Rolling Stock*), then the Operator shall:

- (a) provide the sub-lessee with access to maintenance and mileage records;
- (b) give the sub-lessee reasonable access to the relevant rolling stock prior to the handover of such rolling stock to assist with relevant handover in relation to both operation and maintenance;
- (c) use reasonable endeavours to offer the sub-lessee "knowledge transfer" sessions (including, technical and operation support) to enable recipient engineers and operational personnel to learn from informed peers;

- (d) provide the sub-lessee all relevant information in relation to property arrangements at any Depot relevant to the sub-leased rolling stock (a “**Relevant Depot**”) including any stabling arrangements, and

procure such access to each Relevant Depot as the sub-lessee may reasonably require.

## 7. **Station and Depot Leases**

7.1 The Operator shall at all times enforce its rights under each Station Lease and Depot Lease.

7.2 The Operator shall not:

- (a) terminate or agree to terminate in whole or in part, or take or omit to take any other action which might result in the termination of any Station Lease or Depot Lease;
- (b) assign all or part of its interest under any Station Lease or Depot Lease; or
- (c) sublet the whole or substantially the whole of the property comprised in any Station Lease or Depot Lease,

except to the extent that the Secretary of State may otherwise agree from time to time (such agreement not to be unreasonably withheld if the Operator has made arrangements, reasonably satisfactory to the Secretary of State, for the continued operation of such Station or Depot (as the case may be) for the remainder of the Contract Term or if consent to the Closure of the relevant Station or Depot has been granted).

## 8. **Station Subleases**

8.1 Unless the Secretary of State agrees otherwise, the Operator shall not sublet to any of its Affiliates any part of the property comprised in any Property Lease except on terms that any such subletting:

- (a) (other than any subletting to an Affiliate of the Operator which is a Train Operator) is terminable without compensation immediately upon the termination of the National Rail Contract; and
- (b) is excluded from the provisions of Part II of the Landlord and Tenant Act 1954 and the Tenancy of Shops (Scotland) Act 1949.

8.2 If so requested by the Secretary of State, the Operator shall:

- (a) extend each Station Sublease on the same terms for such period as the Secretary of State may request (including a period equivalent to the franchise term of the Train Operator who is the lessee under such Station Sublease); and
- (b) if such Station Sublease terminates (which for the purposes of this paragraph 8.2(b) shall include the termination of a station sublease in respect of which the Operator was the lessor), grant a new Station Sublease on the same terms to such Train Operator and for such period as the Secretary of State may request (including a period equivalent to the franchise term of the Train Operator who is the lessee under such Station Sublease),

subject, where required, to the consent of Network Rail (and, if required, the relevant sub-lessee) and to the duration of the relevant Station Lease.

8.3 The Operator shall notify the Secretary of State immediately on it becoming aware of any event which might give the Operator a right to forfeit or terminate any Station Sublease. The Operator shall notify the Secretary of State if it wishes to forfeit or terminate any such Station Sublease but shall not (without the Secretary of State’s prior written consent) effect such forfeiture or termination until the date which occurs three (3) months after the date of such notice

## 9. **Rolling Stock Related Contracts and Insurance Arrangements**

9.1 The Operator shall not:

- (a) execute any Rolling Stock Related Contract;
- (b) exercise any option or other discretion in any Rolling Stock Related Contract that would result in any increased payment or delay in delivery being made by or to the



- Operator or the relevant counterparty or which may result in it being reasonably likely to be unable to comply with the terms of the National Rail Contract; or
- (c) amend or waive the terms of any Rolling Stock Related Contract, without, in each case, the prior written consent of the Secretary of State (not to be unreasonably withheld).
- 9.2 The Operator shall supply to the Secretary of State a copy of all draft Rolling Stock Related Contracts and, immediately following execution, all executed Rolling Stock Related Contracts (including any agreement amending any Rolling Stock Related Contract) together with:
- (a) such other information or documentation relating to such Rolling Stock Related Contract and/or the relevant rolling stock as the Secretary of State may request (which may include offer letters (original and final));
- (b) the terms proposed by any person providing finance in relation to the relevant rolling stock (including cash flows);
- (c) any agreement (in whatever form) to which the Operator (or an Affiliate of the Operator) is a party and which relates to the relevant rolling stock;
- (d) information relating to capital allowances, details of any changes in the terms (including rentals) on which the relevant rolling stock is proposed to be leased compared to the terms on which such rolling stock was previously leased; and
- (e) a detailed justification of the Operator's proposed maintenance strategy for the relevant rolling stock and/or the Operator's analysis of the whole life costs of the relevant rolling stock.
- 9.3 Where the information or documentation so requested by the Secretary of State is not held by the Operator, the Operator shall use reasonable endeavours to obtain the relevant information or documentation from a third party (including any person from whom the Operator leases rolling stock).
- 9.4 The Operator shall not, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State:
- (a) amend the terms of any insurance arrangements which relate to rolling stock vehicles used by it in the provision of the Passenger Services to which it is a party on the Start Date; or
- (b) enter into any new insurance arrangements after the Start Date which relate to rolling stock vehicles used or to be used by it in the provision of the Passenger Services ("**New Insurance Arrangements**").
- 9.5 The Operator shall, in addition, if it enters into any New Insurance Arrangements, use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that the relevant insurers waive their rights of subrogation against any Train Operator which may have equivalent insurance arrangements providing for a similar waiver of rights of subrogation against the Operator, whether on a reciprocal basis or otherwise.
10. **Cascaded Rolling Stock and Delayed Cascade Mitigation Plan**
- 10.1 Without limiting paragraph 9.1 (*Rolling Stock Related Contracts and Insurance Arrangements*):
- (a) each Rolling Stock Lease that relates to Cascaded Rolling Stock must be capable of allowing the Secretary of State to make a direction under paragraph 10.1(b) below including allowing Cascaded Rolling Stock to be sub-leased to the Prior Train Operator; and
- (b) if a Relevant Delay occurs, the Secretary of State may in the Secretary of State's discretion direct the Operator to make the Cascaded Rolling Stock available for use by the Prior Train Operator during such period as the Secretary of State may require, and the Operator shall comply with such direction. Any such direction may include the Secretary of State requiring the Operator to sublease the Cascaded Rolling Stock back to the Prior Train Operator and/or to delay the date on which the Cascaded Rolling Stock is required to be delivered to the Operator under such Rolling Stock Lease.



- 10.2 Where the Secretary of State exercises the Secretary of State’s right pursuant to paragraph 10.1 (b) to make Cascaded Rolling Stock available for use by the Prior Train Operator during a specified period there shall be a Cost Budget Change Event and a Financial Target Amendment Event and for the purposes of Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*), the impact of such change on the Cost Budget shall set out the difference between each of the rolling stock lease costs and variable track usage charge for the Cascaded Rolling Stock and the rolling stock lease costs and variable track usage charge applicable in relation to whatever rolling stock is to be used by the Operator in place of the Cascaded Rolling Stock.
- 10.3 Where there is a Trigger Event pursuant to paragraph 10.2 and the period that the Prior Train Operator retains any Cascaded Rolling Stock is more than ninety (90) days there shall be a further Trigger Event.
- 10.4 Where there is a Trigger Event pursuant to paragraphs 10.2 or 10.3 there shall be a further Trigger Event on the date that the last Cascaded Rolling Stock ceases to be retained by the Prior Train Operator.
- 10.5 Where the Secretary of State exercises the Secretary of State’s right pursuant to paragraph 10.1(b) to require the Operator to make the Cascaded Rolling Stock available for use by the Prior Train Operator during a specified period, the Operator shall not be liable for any failure to comply with its obligations under the National Rail Contract to the extent that:
- (a) such failure to comply arises directly as a result of the Operator being unable to use the Cascaded Rolling Stock; and
  - (b) the Operator uses all reasonable endeavours to comply with the relevant obligations notwithstanding the unavailability of the Cascaded Rolling Stock.
- 10.6 The Operator shall notify the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable if it becomes aware of any material risk that a Relevant Delay will occur. If a Relevant Delay does occur the Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to mitigate the impact on the delivery of the Rail Services of the unavailability of the Cascaded Rolling Stock at the expected time including by identifying and proposing value for money alternative sources of replacement rolling stock.
- 10.7 If a Relevant Delay has occurred or the Secretary of State believes that there is a material risk that a Relevant Delay will occur, the Secretary of State may serve a notice on the Operator requiring it to produce a plan to a reasonable specification provided with the notice to remedy or mitigate the impact of the delayed availability of the Cascaded Rolling Stock (“**Delayed Cascade Mitigation Plan**”). Such specification may include measures to be implemented by the Operator to mitigate the direct or indirect impact of the Relevant Delay on the Prior Train Operator or any other affected Train Operator. The Delayed Cascade Mitigation Plan shall provide a comprehensive analysis backed by relevant data and assumptions of:
- (a) all cost and revenue and other financial implications of options contained within it including the potential implications for Contract Payments;
  - (b) the implications (if any) for the Operator’s performance in relation to TOC on Self Cancellations, TOC Minutes Delay and/or Short Formations; and
  - (c) the likely impact of options within it for existing and future passenger journeys and journey opportunities.
- 10.8 The Operator shall meet with the Secretary of State to discuss the Delayed Cascade Mitigation Plan and provide such further information or analysis and further iterations of the Delayed Cascade Mitigation Plan as the Secretary of State shall reasonably require.
- 10.9 Where any rolling stock vehicles cease to be part of the Train Fleet but are acquired by another Train Operator for use in delivering passenger services the Operator shall:
- (a) ensure that:
    - (i) such rolling stock is in an acceptable redelivery condition consistent with the hand back terms agreed with the lessor;
    - (ii) a complete set of maintenance and mileage records are handed over in a suitable format; and

- (iii) the Train Operator is given reasonable access to the relevant rolling stock prior to handover to assist with an effective hand over in relation to both operation and maintenance; and
- (b) use reasonable endeavours to ensure that:
  - (i) the Train Operator is offered 'knowledge transfer' sessions to enable recipient engineers and operational personnel to learn from informed peers;
  - (ii) the Train Operator is offered on-train development programmes to train their maintenance staff to an appropriate level of competence; and
  - (iii) it offers medium-term support and advice in relation to such rolling stock including technical and operational support.

**APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 9.1**

**Information about Station Improvement Measures**

<b>Table A</b>		
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>
<b>Information to be provided</b>	<b>Information (format)</b>	<b>When information to be provided</b>
A summary of capital expenditure by Station	Spreadsheet	As per paragraph 2.2 but subject to paragraph 2.3 ( <i>Information about Station Improvement Measures</i> ).

**CHAPTER 9.2****Key Contracts and Key Assets**

Chapter 9.2.1	Key Contracts
	Appendix 1: List of Key Contracts
Chapter 9.2.2	Key Assets

**CHAPTER 9.2.1****Key Contracts****1. Key Contracts**

1.1 This Chapter sets out the rights of the Secretary of State to:

- (a) designate certain contracts or categories of contracts as Key Contracts where the Secretary of State considers that such contracts or categories of contract are necessary for the purposes of securing continuity of the Rail Services by a Successor Operator on expiry of the Contract Period; and
- (b) in accordance with paragraph 5 (*Direct Agreements*), require the Operator to procure that a counterparty to a Key Contract enters into a Direct Agreement with the Secretary of State.

This Chapter 9.2.1 shall apply to all contracts designated as Key Contracts from time to time.

1.2

- (a) The Key Contracts as at the date of the National Rail Contract are set out in Appendix 1 (*List of Key Contracts*) to this Chapter 9.2.1.
- (b) The Operator shall enter into any and all Key Contracts which are necessary for the National Rail Contract to continue in accordance with clause 2 (*Duration of the National Rail Contract*) of this National Rail Contract.
- (c) Where at any time after the date of the National Rail Contract the Operator proposes to enter into any agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement which falls within one of the categories listed in Appendix 1 (*List of Key Contracts*) to this Chapter 9.2.1 the Operator shall:
  - (i) inform the Secretary of State from time to time of any such agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement which it may be intending to enter into; and
  - (ii) comply with the provisions of paragraph 5.1 (*Direct Agreements*) in respect of any such agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement.

1.3 Without prejudice to the provisions of paragraphs 2 (*Designation of Key Contracts*), 3 (*De-designation of Key Contracts*) and 4 (*Re-designation of Key Contracts*) of this Chapter 9.2.1, Appendix 1 (*List of Key Contracts*) to this Chapter 9.2.1 shall be amended as considered necessary from time to time to take account of any:

- (a) designation by the Secretary of State of any actual or prospective agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement or any category of agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement, to which or under which the Operator is (or may become) a party or a beneficiary pursuant to paragraph 2 (*Designation of Key Contracts*) of this Chapter 9.2.1; or
- (b) de-designation by the Secretary of State of any Key Contract pursuant to paragraph 3 (*De-designation of Key Contracts*) of this Chapter 9.2.1; or
- (c) re-designation by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 4 (*Re-designation of Key Contracts*) of this Chapter 9.2.1.

**2. Designation of Key Contracts**

2.1 Where the Secretary of State considers that it is reasonably necessary for securing the continued provision of the Rail Services or the provision of services similar to the Rail Services by a Successor Operator in accordance with the National Rail Contract, the Secretary of State may make a designation pursuant to paragraph 2.2.

2.2 The Secretary of State may at any time, by serving notice on the Operator, designate as a Key Contract:

- (a) any actual or prospective agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement; and/or

- (b) any category of agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement, to which or under which the Operator is (or may become) a party or a beneficiary,  
with effect from the date specified in such notice.
- 2.3 Key Contracts may include any agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement whether in written, oral or other form, whether formal or informal and whether with an Affiliate of the Operator or any other person and may include any arrangement for the storage of assets (including electronic systems or Computer Systems) or accommodation of employees.
3. **De-designation of Key Contracts**  
The Secretary of State may at any time, by serving a notice on the Operator, de-designate any Key Contract from continuing to be a Key Contract with effect from the date specified in such notice.
4. **Re-designation of Key Contracts**  
The Secretary of State may at any time, by serving notice on the Operator, re-designate as a Key Contract anything which has ceased to be designated as a Key Contract in accordance with paragraph 3 with effect from the date specified in such notice.
5. **Direct Agreements**
- 5.1 Unless the Secretary of State otherwise agrees, or unless directed to do so by the ORR, the Operator shall not enter into any prospective Key Contract unless the counterparty to that prospective Key Contract:
- (a) is a Train Operator; or
- (b) has entered into a Direct Agreement with the Secretary of State in respect of that prospective Key Contract, providing on a basis acceptable to the Secretary of State, amongst other things, for the continued provision of the Passenger Services and/or the continued operation of the Stations and Depots in the event of:
- (i) breach, termination or expiry of such Key Contract;
- (ii) termination or expiry of the National Rail Contract; or
- (iii) the making of a railway administration order in respect of the Operator.
- 5.2 Where the Secretary of State designates or re-designates as a Key Contract:
- (a) any agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement to which the Operator is already a party; or
- (b) any category of agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement where the Operator is already a party to a contract, licence or other arrangement which, by virtue of the Secretary of State's designation or re-designation, is classified in such category,  
the Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to assist the Secretary of State in entering into a Direct Agreement as envisaged by paragraph 5.1(b).
- 5.3 The Operator shall pay to the Secretary of State an amount equal to any losses, costs, liabilities, charges or expenses which may be suffered or incurred by the Secretary of State under the provisions of any Direct Agreement and which may be notified to the Operator as a result of, or in connection with:
- (a) any breach by the Operator of the terms of the Key Contract to which the relevant Direct Agreement relates; or
- (b) any unsuccessful claim being brought by the Operator against the counterparty of any such Key Contract in relation to the termination of such Key Contract.
6. **Emergencies**
- 6.1 Where any emergency may arise in connection with the provision and operation of the Rail Services, the Operator:
- (a) may enter into on a short-term basis such contracts, licences or other arrangements as it considers necessary or appropriate to deal with the emergency;

- (b) need not procure that the relevant counterparty enters into a Direct Agreement in respect of such contracts or use all reasonable endeavours to assist the Secretary of State in entering into the same;
- (c) shall promptly inform the Secretary of State of any such emergency and contracts, licences or other arrangements which it proposes to enter into; and
- (d) shall take such action in relation to such emergency, contracts, licences or other arrangements as the Secretary of State may request.

7. **No Amendment**

The Operator shall not without the prior consent of the Secretary of State (which shall not be unreasonably withheld) vary, or purport to vary, the terms or conditions of any Key Contract at any time, unless directed to do so by the ORR.

8. **Replacement of Key Contracts**

The Operator shall, prior to the scheduled expiry date of any Key Contract (or, if earlier, such other date on which it is reasonably likely that such Key Contract will terminate), take all reasonable steps to enter into an appropriate replacement contract (whether with the counterparty to the existing Key Contract or not) and shall comply with the reasonable instructions of the Secretary of State in relation to such replacement contract.

9. **Termination of Key Contracts**

The Operator shall, to the extent so requested by the Secretary of State, exercise its right to terminate any Key Contract on the Expiry Date.



**APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 9.2.1****List of Key Contracts**

Subject to any de-designations by the Secretary of State under paragraph 3 (*De-designation of Key Contracts*) of Chapter 9.2.1 (*Key Contracts*), the following items have as at the date of the National Rail Contract been agreed between the Parties to be Key Contracts:

1. any Access Agreement to which the Operator is a party other than in its capacity as a Facility Owner;
2. any Property Lease and all side agreements relating to such relevant Property Lease;
3. any Rolling Stock Related Contract including the Rolling Stock Leases listed in Table 1 (*Original Rolling Stock*), and Table 2 (*Specified Additional Rolling Stock*) of Appendix 1 (*The Composition of the Train Fleet*) to Chapter 4.3 (*The Rolling Stock*);
4. Not Used;
5. any contract or arrangement for the lending, seconding, hiring, contracting out, supervision, training, assessment, or accommodation by another Train Operator or other third party of any train drivers, conductors or other train crew used by the Operator in the provision of the Passenger Services;
6. any contract or arrangement for the subcontracting or delegation to another Train Operator or other third party of the provision of any of the Passenger Services (whether or not the consent of the Secretary of State is required to such subcontracting or delegation under paragraph 13 (*Subcontracting any Passenger Services*) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*));
7. any contract or arrangement with a Train Operator or other third party (other than an Access Agreement) for the provision to the Operator of train dispatch, performance or supervision of platform duties, security activities, evacuation procedures, advice or assistance to customers, assistance to disabled customers, operation of customer information systems, cash management or ticket issuing systems administration;
8. any contract or arrangement with a Train Operator or other third party for the provision of breakdown or recovery, and track call services to assist in the provision of the Passenger Services;
9. any contract or arrangement for the supply of spare parts or Spares;
10. any contract or arrangement for the maintenance of track and other related infrastructure;
11. any licences of Marks to the Operator;
12. any contract or arrangement relating to the operation of smart ticketing and ticketing retail;
13. any licence of any CRM System or Yield Management System;
14. any contract or arrangement for the provision or lending of Computer Systems (other than the CRM System and Yield Management System) that the Secretary of State reasonably considers is essential for the delivery of the Rail Services;
15. any SQR Contract;
16. Not Used;
17. Not Used; and
18. Not Used.

**CHAPTER 9.2.2****Key Assets - Designation of Assets****1. Operating Assets**

- 1.1 The Operator shall maintain, protect and preserve the Operating Assets in good standing or good working order, subject to fair wear and tear.
- 1.2 The Operator shall carry out its obligations under paragraph 1.1 so that the Operating Assets may be transferred at the end of the Contract Period to a Successor Operator and used by such Successor Operator in the provision or operation of similar services to the Rail Services.
- 1.3 Where any Operating Asset is lost, destroyed or otherwise beyond repair, the Operator shall replace the Operating Asset with property, rights or liabilities in modern equivalent form to the Operating Asset to be replaced. The Operator shall at all times maintain an appropriate volume of Spares, and/or an appropriate level of access to Spares from a third party, to enable it to perform its obligations under the National Rail Contract.
- 1.4 The Secretary of State may at any time require the Operator to provide to the Secretary of State a schedule specifying the condition of any asset or class of assets that the Secretary of State specifies for this purpose. Such schedule shall cover such aspects of asset condition as the Secretary of State may reasonably require. If the Parties are unable to agree the content of such schedule of condition, either Party may refer the dispute for resolution in accordance with the Dispute Resolution Rules. Until such dispute is resolved, the Operator shall comply with the Secretary of State's requirements in respect of such schedule of condition.

**2. Assets**

- 2.1 Subject to paragraph 2.2, all property, rights and liabilities of the Operator from time to time during the Contract Period shall be designated as Assets and shall constitute "Franchise Assets" for the purposes of section 27(11) (*Transfer of franchise assets and shares*) of the Act.
- 2.2 The rights and liabilities of the Operator in respect of the following items shall not be designated as Assets and shall not constitute "Franchise Assets" for the purposes of section 27(11) of the Act:
- (a) any contracts of employment;
  - (b) the National Rail Contract and any Transfer Scheme or Supplemental Agreement;
  - (c) the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement;
  - (d) any sums placed on deposit with a bank or other financial institution;
  - (e) such other property, rights and liabilities as the Operator and the Secretary of State may agree from time to time or as the Secretary of State may de-designate as Assets under paragraph 12.2; and
  - (f) any Rolling Stock Leases.
- 2.3 The Operator shall keep vested in it at all times during the Contract Period all Assets designated as such pursuant to this Chapter 9.2.2 (*Key Assets - Designation of Assets*) as it may require in order to comply with:
- (a) the Licences;
  - (b) any contracts of employment with Business Employees;
  - (c) any relevant Fares;
  - (d) any Key Contracts; and
  - (e) any applicable safety legislation regulations or safety standards and the Safety Certificate,

in order to ensure that the Secretary of State may designate such assets as Primary Assets.

**3. Spares**

The obligation of the Operator to maintain, preserve and protect the Operating Assets under this Chapter 9.2.2 shall, in respect of Spares, include the obligation to replace any Spare which has been designated as a Primary Asset, which subsequent to its designation ceases to be part of the stock of Spares available to the Operator for use in the provision of the Rail Services, with an equivalent Spare of equal or better quality than the Spare so replaced.

#### 4. **Primary Assets**

4.1 The following property, rights and liabilities shall (to the extent that they constitute Assets) be designated as Primary Assets with effect from the following dates:

- (a) the property, rights and liabilities listed as such in the table in Appendix 1 (*List of Primary Assets*) to this Chapter 9.2.2 (which constitute Primary Assets agreed between the Parties as at the date of the National Rail Contract), on the Start Date;
- (b) any additional property, rights and liabilities designated under paragraph 5 (*Designation of Additional Primary Assets*) during the Contract Period, on the date of such designation;
- (c) any property or right which is vested in the Operator and used for the purpose of maintaining, replacing, repairing or renewing any property designated as Primary Assets and which forms or replaces part or all of such designated property on completion of such maintenance, replacement, repair or renewal, on the date of its use for such purpose;
- (d) the rights and liabilities of the Operator under any Key Contract designated under paragraph 7 (*Designation of Key Contracts as Primary Assets*), on the date of such designation;
- (e) the rights and liabilities of the Operator in respect of the terms of any Fare or Discount Card designated under paragraph 8 (*Designation of Fares and Discount Cards*), on the date of such designation;
- (f) any CRM Data and/or Yield Management Data and, to the extent that any CRM System and/or Yield Management System is the property of the Operator, such CRM System and/or Yield Management System on the later of the Start Date and:
  - (i) in relation to CRM Data or Yield Management Data, the date on which such CRM Data or Yield Management Data (as applicable) is collected; or
  - (ii) in relation to any such CRM System or Yield Management System, the date on which such CRM System or Yield Management System is created,

save, in relation to CRM Data and Yield Management Data, any data in respect of which the Data Subject has not consented to such data being disclosed and processed by any Successor Operator and/or the Secretary of State;

- (g) any licence of any CRM System and/or Yield Management System, on the date of such licence;
- (h) any Actual Passenger Demand information (and all Intellectual Property Rights in respect of the same), on the date such information is supplied to the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 15.1 (*Passenger Numbers Information*) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*);
- (i) any property and rights comprised in a Business Plan Commitment and designated by the Secretary of State as Primary Assets pursuant to paragraph 19 (*Designation of Assets comprised in Business Plan Commitments as Primary Assets*) of Chapter 9.2.2 (*Key Assets – Designation of Assets*), on the date of such designation;
- (j) all assets, which are not consumables and which are not routinely traded or disposed of as part of business as usual by a Good and Efficient Operator, that have been acquired by the Operator during the term of the National Rail Contract on the date of such acquisition; and
- (k) any Digital Rights (i) acquired during the term of the National Rail Contract, from the date of acquisition or (ii) previously designated as Primary Franchise Assets (as

defined in the Previous Agreement) pursuant to the Previous Agreement, on the Start Date.

## 5. **Designation of Additional Primary Assets**

- 5.1 The Secretary of State may at any time and from time to time, by serving notice on the Operator, designate any or all of the Assets as Primary Assets.
- 5.2 Such designation shall take effect from the delivery of such notice and may refer to all or certain categories of property, rights or liabilities. Any such notice shall specify the reasons for such designation.
- 5.3 On or before designation of any Asset as a Primary Asset, the Secretary of State may agree not to subsequently de-designate such Primary Asset without the prior written consent of the Operator. If the Secretary of State so agrees, the notice designating the relevant Asset as a Primary Asset shall state the commitment not to de-designate.

## 6. **Designation during last twelve (12) months of Contract Period**

- 6.1 If the Secretary of State designates an Asset as a Primary Asset under paragraph 5 at any time during the last twelve (12) months of the Contract Period then, within twenty eight (28) days of such designation, the Secretary of State may, subject to paragraph 6.2, de-designate such Primary Asset by serving notice on the Operator. Such de-designation shall take effect upon delivery of such notice.
- 6.2 Where, the Secretary of State has given a commitment not to de-designate a Primary Asset pursuant to paragraph 5.3 (*Designation of Additional Primary Assets*), the Secretary of State shall not de-designate such Primary Asset pursuant to paragraph 6.1 without first obtaining the prior written consent of the Operator.

## 7. **Designation of Key Contracts as Primary Assets**

The Secretary of State shall, subject to paragraphs 2.2(b) (*Assets*) and 9 (*Rights and Liabilities*), be entitled to designate any Key Contract as a Primary Asset at any time during the Contract Period by serving notice on the Operator. Such designation shall take effect from delivery of such notice.

## 8. **Designation of Fares and Discount Cards**

The Secretary of State may designate any Fare or Discount Card as a Primary Asset at any time during the Contract Period by serving a notice on the Operator. Such designation shall take effect from delivery of such notice.

## 9. **Rights and Liabilities**

The Secretary of State, in designating the rights and liabilities of the Operator (whether under a particular contract or other arrangement) as a Primary Asset may, in the Secretary of State's discretion, elect to designate some but not all of the rights and liabilities under a particular contract or other arrangement, or to designate only those rights and liabilities arising after or otherwise relating to a period after a particular time (including the period after the expiry of the Contract Period) or to those relating only to the Rail Services or a particular part thereof.

## 10. **Disputes Over Designation**

- 10.1 The Operator agrees that it shall not object in writing to or dispute any designation by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 5 (*Designation of Additional Primary Assets*) or 6 (*Designation during last twelve (12) months of Contract Period*).

## 11. **Provision of Information to the Secretary of State**

- 11.1 The Operator shall provide such information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require in order to satisfy the Secretary of State that any Assets which are to be designated as Primary Assets after the Start Date under this Chapter 9.2.2 will at the time of such designation be vested in the Operator. Such information may include details of any Security Interests over such property, rights and liabilities.
- 11.2 The Operator shall further provide such information as to the property, rights and liabilities of the Operator as the Secretary of State may reasonably require in connection with the

designation of Primary Assets. Such information shall be supplied to the Secretary of State within such timescale as the Secretary of State may reasonably require.

## 12. De-Designation of Assets and Primary Assets

12.1 The Secretary of State and the Operator may agree in writing at any time that a:

- (a) Asset shall cease to be designated as an Asset; or
- (b) Primary Asset shall cease to be designated as a Primary Asset,

and the relevant Asset or Primary Asset (as the case may be) shall cease to be designated upon such agreement coming into effect.

12.2 The Secretary of State may, in addition at any time during the Contract Period, by serving notice on the Operator:

- (a) cause an Asset which is not a Primary Asset to cease to be designated as an Asset. Such Asset shall cease to be designated on the date specified in such notice; or
- (b) subject to paragraph 12.3, cause a particular Primary Asset to cease to be designated as such. Such Primary Asset shall cease to be designated on the date specified in such notice.

12.3 Where, the Secretary of State has given a commitment not to de-designate a Primary Asset pursuant to paragraph 5.3 (*Designation of Additional Primary Assets*), the Secretary of State shall not de-designate such Primary Asset pursuant to paragraph 12.2(b) without first obtaining the prior written consent of the Operator.

12.4 The Secretary of State's rights pursuant to paragraph 12.2(b) may be exercised, in respect of any rights and liabilities in respect of a Fare or Discount Card, at any time and, in respect of any other Primary Asset, no later than one (1) year prior to the expiry of the Contract Term.

## 13. Amendment of the List of Primary Assets

The table in Appendix 1 (*List of Primary Assets*) to this Chapter 9.2.2 shall be amended as the Secretary of State considers necessary or desirable from time to time to take account of designation and de-designation of Primary Assets pursuant to this Chapter 9.2.2, except this shall not include a requirement to generically list all Primary Assets with a value of less than £20,000.

## 14. Assets not Designated as Primary Assets

14.1 This paragraph 14 relates to any Assets that are property or rights and are not designated as Primary Assets and Primary Assets with a value of less than £20,000 (together "**Relevant Assets**").

14.2 For the purposes of section 27(3) of the Act, the Secretary of State consents to the Operator:

- (a) transferring or agreeing to transfer any such Assets or any interests in, or right over, any Relevant Assets; and
- (b) creating or extinguishing, or agreeing to create or extinguish, any interest in, or right over, any Relevant Assets.

## 15. Liabilities not Designated as Primary Assets

15.1 This paragraph 15 relates to any liabilities which are not designated as Primary Assets.

15.2 For the purposes of section 27(3) of the Act, the Secretary of State consents to the Operator entering into any agreement under which any such liability is released or discharged, or transferred to another person.

## 16. Assets and Primary Assets

16.1 This paragraph 16 relates to Assets (whether or not designated as Primary Assets) which are property or rights.

16.2 The Secretary of State hereby consents to the installation of Spares which have been designated as Primary Assets on any rolling stock vehicles. Any Spare which is so installed shall cease to be so designated on such installation.

- 16.3 For the purposes of section 27(3) of the Act, the Secretary of State hereby consents to the Operator creating or agreeing to create any Security Interest over any of these Assets to the extent that the terms of any such Security Interest provided that:
- (a) if the relevant Asset becomes the subject of a transfer scheme made under section 12 and Schedule 2 of the Railways Act 2005, it shall be fully and automatically released from the relevant Security Interest immediately before the coming into force of such transfer scheme;
  - (b) if the relevant Asset is assigned, novated or otherwise transferred to another person pursuant to and in accordance with the National Rail Contract, it shall be fully and automatically released from the relevant Security Interest immediately before such assignment, novation or transfer; and
  - (c) such Security Interest shall not be enforced or enforceable until the date on which such Asset ceases to be designated as an Asset.

17. **Other Security Interests**

- 17.1 The Operator shall not create or agree to create a Security Interest over any Asset except on the terms permitted under paragraph 16.3 (*Assets and Primary Assets*).
- 17.2 The Operator shall promptly inform the Secretary of State of any Security Interest arising at any time over any of its property or rights and shall provide the Secretary of State with such information in relation thereto as the Secretary of State may reasonably require.

18. **Information about Assets used in respect of Rail Services**

- 18.1 The Operator shall at all times during the Contract Term maintain (and shall provide copies to the Secretary of State when requested to do so from time to time) records covering the following information for each Primary Asset or other asset which is the subject of, or operated under, a Key Contract, in either case which has a value in excess of twenty thousand pounds (£20,000):
- (a) the progress and completion of all work described in the maintenance schedules and manuals; and
  - (b) all operating manuals (including any safety related regulations); and
  - (c) all permits, licences, certificates or other documents required to operate such asset; and
  - (d) a printed or electronic list of all assets owned by the Operator from time to time (excluding, unless otherwise requested by the Secretary of State, any office furniture and consumable items).

19. **Designation of Assets comprised in Business Plan Commitments as Primary Assets**

- 19.1 The Secretary of State may at any time designate as a Primary Asset any asset introduced by the Operator by way of a Business Plan Commitment (the “**Designated BP Primary Assets**”). Such designation shall take effect from the date on which the Secretary of State delivers to the Operator a notice designating the relevant asset as a Designated BP Primary Asset.
- 19.2 The transfer value in relation to any Designated BP Primary Asset, which at the end of the Contract Period is:
- (a) not de-designated as a Primary Asset pursuant to paragraph 12 (*De-Designation of Assets and Primary Assets*) of this Chapter 9.2.2 (*Key Assets - Designation of Assets*); and
  - (b) transferred to a Successor Operator (whether pursuant to the Transfer Scheme or otherwise),
- shall (unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State) be nil.



**APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 9.2.2**

**List of Primary Assets**

<b>Description of Primary Asset*</b>	<b>Commitment not to de-designate</b>	<b>To Transfer to Successor Operator at Nil Value</b>
None		

*\*Note that the Secretary of State may elect to designate under Chapter 9.2.2 as Primary Assets any assets delivered by the Operator as part of a Business Plan Commitment.*



**CHAPTER 9.3**

**Branding and Intellectual Property**

**1. Branding and Brand Licence**

1.1 The Operator shall comply with the Brand Licence.

1.2 Subject to any applicable obligations or restrictions on the Operator (including the terms of the Rolling Stock Leases), the Operator shall:

- (a) apply the Primary Brand to:
  - (i) the Train Fleet;
  - (ii) the Stations;
  - (iii) staff uniforms;
  - (iv) marketing materials;
  - (v) publications; and
  - (vi) ticket sales channels;
- (b) apply the Primary Brand to any assets which:
  - (i) are owned or used by the Operator in the operation and provision of the Rail Services;
  - (ii) passengers interface with or are otherwise exposed to (including passenger information displays); and
  - (iii) the Operator, acting as a Good and Efficient Operator, considers it is appropriate to brand in such manner taking into account the general approach across the industry and the aspiration for a consistent approach to brand application.

1.3 Subject to any applicable obligations or restrictions on the Operator (including the terms of the Rolling Stock Leases), the Operator shall apply:

- (a) each Secondary Brand identified in the first column of the following table in the circumstances, to the assets and/or in the locations described in the second column in the following table:

<b>Secondary Brand</b>	<b>Circumstances/Assets/Locations</b>
Double Arrows Symbol	All Stations

- (b) in the case of the Double Arrows Symbol, to any further assets as the Secretary of State may reasonably direct; and
- (c) in the case of any Secondary Brand other than the Double Arrows Symbol, in any further circumstances, to any further assets and/or in any further locations which the Operator, acting as a Good and Efficient Operator, considers it is appropriate to brand in such manner taking into account the general approach across the industry and the aspiration for a consistent approach to brand application.

1.4 Subject to any applicable obligations or restrictions on the Operator (including the terms of the Rolling Stock Leases), the Operator shall apply the Trade Marks to those assets which:

- (i) are owned or used by the Operator in the operation and provision of the Rail Services;
- (ii) passengers interface with or are otherwise exposed to; and
- (iii) the Operator, acting as a Good and Efficient Operator, considers it is appropriate to brand in such manner taking into account the general approach across the industry and the aspiration for a consistent approach to brand application.

Assets which the Operator will consider in discharge of its obligations under paragraph 1.4 shall include:

- (a) the Train Fleet;
- (b) the Stations;
- (c) staff uniforms;
- (d) marketing materials;
- (e) publications;
- (f) ticket sales channels; and
- (g) passenger information display screens.

1.5 The Operator shall not apply any trade marks, other than the Primary Brand, the Secondary Brands, the Trade Marks or the Third Party Trade Marks, without the express prior written consent of the Secretary of State.

1.6 The Operator shall not apply any trade marks which are neither Enduring Branding nor a Third Party Trade Mark without the express prior written consent of the Secretary of State.

1.7 The Operator shall maintain the Enduring Branding including the Primary Brand and the Secondary Brands, throughout the Contract Term.

## 2 **Removal of Branding**

2.1 The Operator shall ensure that all branding that is neither Enduring Branding nor a Third Party Trade Mark ("**Transitory Branding**") shall, unless otherwise expressly agreed with the Secretary of State, be removed by the end of the Contract Period, which shall include the following:

- (a) removing or covering Transitory Branding from the exterior of any rolling stock vehicle;
- (b) removing or covering interior indications of Transitory Branding including upholstery and carpets;
- (c) replacing or covering all station or other signs including billboards;
- (d) replacing or covering all staff uniforms; and
- (e) otherwise ensuring that such removal, covering or replacement is effected with all reasonable care and in such manner that the relevant assets may reasonably continue to be used by a Successor Operator in the provision of the Rail Services.

2.2 If the Operator has not complied with the obligations under paragraph 2.1 above by the end of the Contract Term, the Operator shall pay to the relevant Successor Operator such amount as may be agreed between the Operator and such Successor Operator as being the reasonable cost (including any Value Added Tax for which credit is not available under Sections 25 and 26 of the Value Added Tax Act 1994) of covering such Transitory Branding or otherwise removing all indications or reference to the Transitory Branding in a manner reasonably acceptable to the Secretary of State. Such amount shall not in any event exceed the cost to the Successor Operator of replacing such Transitory Branding with its own. If the Operator and the relevant Successor Operator fail to agree such cost within twenty eight (28) days of the expiry of the Contract Period, the Operator shall submit such dispute for resolution in accordance with such dispute resolution procedures as the Secretary of State may require.

2.3 Any costs incurred by the operator in complying with paragraph 2.1 or 2.2 shall be a Disallowable Cost, if and to the extent that the Transitory Branding in question was applied:

- (a) during the Contract Term; and
- (b) without the express written prior consent of the Secretary of State.

## 3. **Designation as Primary Assets**

3.1 The Operator shall ensure that all rights (including any copyright and right in goodwill or passing off) in the Operator Trade Marks (each as may be modified from time to time) are capable of being designated as Primary Assets and accordingly transferred to the Successor

Operator and, if the Secretary of State so designates rights in relation to the Operator Trade Marks and does not de-designate them pursuant to paragraph 12 (*De-Designation of Assets and Primary Assets*) of Chapter 9.2.2 (*Key Assets - Designation of Assets*), the transfer value shall (unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State) be nil.

#### 4. **Licence to Operator's Intellectual Property**

4.1 On the expiry of the Contract Period, insofar as the Operator is able to do so having complied with the terms of paragraph 4.2 below, the Operator shall grant a non-exclusive licence to any Successor Operator including the Secretary of State, of any Intellectual Property Rights which:

- (a) are owned by or licensed to the Operator;
- (b) have not been designated as a Primary Asset;
- (c) do not represent or constitute a Mark; and
- (d) may, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, be necessary for any Successor Operator to operate the Rail Services on an efficient and economic basis after the expiry of the Contract Period.

4.2 Without prejudice to paragraph 7.10 (*Intellectual Property Rights and General Provisions*) of this Chapter 9.3, when agreeing the terms on which Intellectual Property Rights are to be licensed to it from third parties, the Operator shall use commercially reasonable efforts, acting as a Good and Efficient Operator, to procure that the terms of the applicable licence(s) include the right for the Operator to sub-license such Intellectual Property Rights in accordance with this paragraph 4. The Operator shall not enter into a licence that does not include such a provision unless: (i) the Secretary of State provides written consent; or (ii) no response from the Secretary of State has been received within 28 days of providing written notification, which shall constitute deemed consent. The terms of this paragraph 4.2 shall not apply to any licences to third party Intellectual Property Rights entered into by the Operator prior to the date of this Contract.

4.3 Any licence of any Intellectual Property Rights granted to the relevant Successor Operator under this paragraph 4 shall be for such period as the Secretary of State may determine to be reasonably necessary for the purpose of securing continuity of the provision of the Rail Services. Such licence shall be free of charge and royalty-free for a minimum of six (6) months. The Secretary of State may in its reasonable discretion extend the royalty-free period of any licence.

4.4 If the licence of any Intellectual Property Rights is for a period in excess of the royalty-free period determined under paragraph 4.3 above, the grant of the licence shall be subject to payment of a reasonable royalty on the basis of a willing licensor and licensee entering into a licence on comparable terms to similar licences of such Intellectual Property Rights. If the Operator and the relevant Successor Operator are unable to agree such royalty, the Operator shall submit such dispute for resolution in accordance with such dispute resolution rules as the Secretary of State may require.

4.5 Any licence granted under this paragraph 4 shall be in such form as the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine and shall:

- (a) be non-exclusive and limited to use solely for the purposes of the provision and operation of the Rail Services and will not provide for any right to use such Intellectual Property Rights for any other purpose (including its marketing or exploitation for any other purpose);
- (b) be terminable on material breach by the Successor Operator or the Secretary of State;
- (c) contain an indemnity from the Operator to the effect that to the best of its knowledge and belief it owns the relevant Intellectual Property Rights or has the right to license them and the licensing of such Intellectual Property Rights and the subsequent use of the Intellectual Property Rights will not infringe any third party Intellectual Property Rights; and
- (d) require the Successor Operator, to the extent that it relates to any trade marks, to use such trade marks in such manner as may reasonably be required by the Operator provided that it shall not be reasonable for the Operator to require any such trade

mark to be used in a manner materially different from its use during the Contract Period.

## 5. Customer Relationship Management (CRM) Data

5.1 The Operator shall ensure that any CRM System is the property of the Operator or is licensed to the Operator on terms which have been approved by the Secretary of State (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) and that any CRM Data (and any Intellectual Property Rights subsisting in the CRM Data or the database in which it is organised, collated or stored) obtained by or on behalf of the Operator shall be:

- (a) obtained on terms such that the Operator shall be the Controller of such data; and
- (b) the property of the Operator.

5.2 In relation to any CRM Data obtained by or on behalf of the Operator, the Operator shall:

- (a) ensure that the CRM Data is collected and processed by or on behalf of the Operator in accordance with the Data Protection Legislation;
- (b) without prejudice to paragraph 5.2(a) ensure that the fairness principle of the Data Protection Legislation is satisfied including by issuing all relevant privacy notices in relation to its collection and processing of the CRM Data;
- (c) without prejudice to paragraph 5.2(a) ensure that there is a lawful basis for its collection and processing of the CRM Data;
- (d) without prejudice to paragraph 5.2(a) ensure that the principles of fairness and lawfulness are satisfied in particular in respect of the disclosure of the CRM Data to any Successor Operator and/or the Secretary of State such that the CRM Data may be processed by any Successor Operator for the same purposes as are relevant to the processing of the CRM Data by the Operator; and
- (e) without prejudice to paragraph 5.2(a) ensure that where consents are required under the Data Protection Legislation for the processing of the CRM Data by the Operator and any Successor Operator (including in relation to marketing, sign up for notifications or general alerts, sign up for newsletters, and (as relevant) processing of Special Categories of Personal Data) all such consents are sought in such a way as to enable any Successor Operator to process the CRM Data for the same purposes as are relevant to the processing of it by the Operator.

5.3 The consents referred to in paragraph 5.2(e) shall be sought in such manner as shall from time to time be approved by the Secretary of State (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) and shall be on terms such as shall permit, in each case in compliance with Data Protection Legislation:

- (a) the Operator to disclose such CRM Data to any Successor Operator and/or the Secretary of State; and
- (b) any such Successor Operator to process such CRM Data in the manner contemplated by paragraph 5.2.

5.4 The Operator shall:

- (a) disclose, publish, share, provide and otherwise make available the CRM Data to any person (including a Successor Operator or any participant involved with the re-letting of the Rail Services); and
- (b) provide access to any CRM System,

in each case pursuant to the terms of the National Rail Contract (together, the “**CRM Data Obligations**”) to the extent that compliance with the CRM Data Obligations is in accordance with the Data Protection Legislation.

## 6. Rail Passenger Counts Database

6.1 Subject to compliance by the Operator with its obligations set out in Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*), the Secretary of State shall as soon as reasonably practicable following the Start Date:

- (a) use reasonable endeavours to set up and thereafter maintain the RPC Database;
  - (b) use reasonable endeavours to populate the RPC Database with such Actual Passenger Demand information as the Operator shall provide pursuant to the Operator's obligations contained elsewhere in the National Rail Contract and any other information that the Secretary of State shall desire; and
  - (c) use reasonable endeavours to provide the Operator with log-in details to the RPC Database in order to allow the Operator to access Actual Passenger Demand information that has been provided by the Operator, any Network Rail Data, any Third Party Data and to generate reports from the RPC Database.
- 6.2 The RPC Database is not intended to be used as the sole basis for any business decision. The Secretary of State makes no representation as to the accuracy and/or completeness of:
- (a) any data or information contained in the RPC Database;
  - (b) the raw Actual Passenger Demand information provided by the Operator or any Network Rail Data or any Third Party Data (as inputted to the RPC Database by whatever means); or
  - (c) any product of that Actual Passenger Demand information, Network Rail Data and/or Third Party Data.
- 6.3
- (a) The Secretary of State is not liable for:
    - (i) any inaccuracy, incompleteness or other error in Actual Passenger Demand information, Network Rail Data, Third Party Data or product of the above provided to the Secretary of State by the Operator, NR or a third party; or
    - (ii) any failure of the RPC Database to achieve any particular business result for the Operator. It is the responsibility of the Operator to decide the appropriateness of using the RPC Database to achieve its own business results; or
    - (iii) any loss, destruction, corruption, degradation, inaccuracy or damage of or to the Actual Passenger Demand information following its submission to the RPC Database; or
    - (iv) any loss or damage to the property or assets of the Operator (tangible or intangible) as a result of a contravention of paragraph 6.1 of this Chapter 9.3; or
    - (v) any indirect, special or consequential loss or damage.
  - (b) The Secretary of State's liability under this paragraph 6.3(b) shall be without prejudice to the Secretary of State's obligation to reimburse Actual Costs in accordance with (and subject to the provisions of) Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*). The Secretary of State's total liability for the duration of the National Rail Contract in respect of a contravention of its obligations under paragraph 6.1 of this Chapter 9.3 for all other heads of loss or damage which can lawfully be limited shall be limited to the extent to which the Secretary of State is successful in recovering the equivalent loss from such entity to whom the Secretary of State subcontracts its obligations under paragraph 6.1 of this Chapter 9.3 (the "**Subcontractor**"), subject to the following provisions:
    - (i) if reasonably requested by the Operator within three (3) months of incurring such loss or damage, the Secretary of State shall use reasonable endeavours to recover the equivalent losses from the Subcontractor;
    - (ii) it shall not be reasonable for the Operator to make a request pursuant to paragraph 6.3(b)(i) above if the value of the Operator's losses does not exceed ten thousand pounds sterling (£10,000)x RPI;
    - (iii) prior to accounting to the Operator for any sums recovered from the Subcontractor pursuant to this paragraph 6.3(b), the Secretary of State shall be entitled to deduct and retain any reasonable costs and expenses incurred



in pursuing such a claim which the Secretary of State does not successfully recover from the Subcontractor; and

- (iv) the Secretary of State shall be entitled to deduct from any sums recovered from the Subcontractor pursuant to this paragraph 6.3(b) such sum as the Secretary of State reasonably deems appropriate to take account of the Secretary of State's actual or potential liability to other train operating companies pursuant to equivalent arrangements with them, with a view to distributing any sums received from the Subcontractor fairly between the various operators.
  - (c) The Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to mitigate any losses incurred by the Operator as a result of a contravention by the Secretary of State of the Secretary of State's obligations contained in paragraph 6.1 of this Chapter 9.3.
- 6.4 The Parties acknowledge that it is intended that the RPC Database will also contain actual passenger demand information relating to Train Operators other than the Operator but a Train Operator shall have access only to information relating to its own franchise (in the case of the Operator, via the log on details provided pursuant to paragraph 6.1(c)). The licence granted at paragraph 7.6 (*Intellectual Property Rights and General Provisions*) shall only permit the usage of the RPC Database, Derivative Output and Intellectual Property Rights related to the Actual Passenger Demand information supplied by the Operator.
- 6.5 Without prejudice to Chapter 9.2.2 (*Key Assets - Designation of Assets*), paragraphs 2.1 (*Preparation for Reletting*) and 3 (*Data Site Information*) of Chapter 9.5.2 (*Reletting Provisions and Maintenance as a Going Concern*), Chapter 9.5.3 (*Provisions applying on and after Termination*) or any other rights of the Secretary of State, the Operator agrees that, following the expiry or termination by whatever means of the National Rail Contract and any Continuation Document, the Secretary of State shall be entitled to allow access to the Operator's Actual Passenger Demand information by way of granting access to that area of the RPC Database or otherwise to any future operator of the Passenger Services (whether or not in direct succession to the Operator) or to such part of the Actual Passenger Demand information as relates to the part of the franchise which is being taken over by such future operator.

## 7. **Intellectual Property Rights and General Provisions**

### ***RPC Database***

- 7.1 All Intellectual Property Rights in the RPC Database and Derivative Output shall at all times remain owned by the Secretary of State and to the extent that any rights in the RPC Database vest in the Operator by operation of law, the Operator hereby assigns such rights to the Secretary of State.

### ***Actual Passenger Demand***

- 7.2 Subject to Chapter 9.2.2 (*Key Assets - Designation of Assets*) and Chapter 9.5.3 (*Provisions applying on and after Termination*), all Intellectual Property Rights in the Actual Passenger Demand information will at all times remain owned by the Operator and (subject as previously stated) to the extent that any rights in the Actual Passenger Demand information vest in the Secretary of State by operation of law, the Secretary of State hereby assigns such rights to the Operator.

### ***Network Rail Data***

- 7.3 All Intellectual Property Rights in the Network Rail Data will at all times remain owned by the relevant NR entity and to the extent that any rights in the Network Rail Data vest in the Secretary of State or the Operator by operation of law, the Secretary of State and/or the Operator (as applicable) will enter into a separate agreement with the relevant Network Rail entity to assign such rights to it.

### ***Third Party Data***

- 7.4 All Intellectual Property Rights in the Third Party Data will at all times remain owned by the third party from whom they have been obtained and to the extent that any rights in the Third Party Data vest in the Secretary of State or the Operator by operation of law, the Secretary of

State and/or the Operator (as applicable) will enter into a separate agreement with the relevant third party to assign such rights to it.

**Miscellaneous IP**

- 7.5 Subject to Chapter 9.2.2 (*Key Assets - Designation of Assets*) and Chapter 9.5.3 (*Provisions applying on and after Termination*), each Party:
- (a) acknowledges and agrees that it shall not acquire or claim any title to any of the other Party's Background IP (or that of the other Party's licensors) by virtue of the rights granted to it under this Contract or through its use of such Background IP; and
  - (b) agrees that it will not, at any time, do, or omit to do, anything which is likely to prejudice the other Party's ownership (or the other Party's licensors' ownership) of such Background IP.
- 7.6 Except for BP Foreground, ICP Foreground, RPC Data, Actual Passenger Demand Data, CRM Data, Network Rail Data and Third Party Data (the ownership of which is otherwise addressed elsewhere in this Contract), as between the Parties any Foreground IP created or devised for the purposes of, or in the course of undertaking or performing the Rail Services or any other obligations under this Contract shall belong to the Operator ("**Operational Foreground**") and such Operational Foreground will immediately vest in the Operator.
- 7.7 Any domain names brought into use on or after the Start Date for the purposes of providing or receiving Rail Services shall be registered in the name of the Secretary of State.
- 7.8 The Secretary of State hereby grants, for the duration of the Contract Period, the Operator a non-exclusive, non-transferable licence to use:
- (a) the RPC Database;
  - (b) any Derivative Output; and
  - (c) all Intellectual Property Rights in the same,
- in the United Kingdom for the purposes of accessing the Actual Passenger Demand information by using the functionality of the RPC Database.
- 7.9 Without limiting any other rights the Secretary of State may have, the Operator hereby grants the Secretary of State a perpetual, non-terminable, non-exclusive licence (which is transferable and/or capable of being sub-licensed in the circumstances set out in this paragraph 7.9) to use the Actual Passenger Demand information and all Intellectual Property Rights in the same:
- (a) by including them in the RPC Database; and/or
  - (b) by including them in the Preliminary Database; and/or
  - (c) whether included in the RPC Database, the Preliminary Database or in any other format for such purposes as the Secretary of State may reasonably require including for the purposes of assisting the Secretary of State's decision making on train service requirements, infrastructure, station and rolling stock investment, the best use of the network and the alleviation of overcrowding; and/or
  - (d) to the extent permitted by the other provisions of the National Rail Contract to share, disclose, or publish the same and transfer and/or sub-licence and permit the use and sharing, disclosing or publishing for the purposes it is shared or disclosed; and/or
  - (e) to allow a future operator of the Passenger Services (whether or not in direct succession to the Operator to view and access such Actual Passenger Demand information (whether via the RPC Database or otherwise) as directly relates to the services that it will be running,
- and such rights to use the Actual Passenger Demand information and all Intellectual Property Rights pursuant to this paragraph 7.9 shall continue following expiry or termination of this Contract.
- 7.10 Subject to paragraph 7.11 below, the Operator:



- (a) hereby grants (or shall procure the grant of) to the Secretary of State a non-exclusive, perpetual, royalty-free, paid-up licence to use and copy the Background IP owned by the Operator and the Operational Foreground for any purpose related to the provision of rail services on the United Kingdom heavy rail network. Such licence may be sub-licensed to any Successor Operator; and
- (b) shall, in the case of any third party Background IP that is embedded in, or is an integral part and/or required for the use of any Operational Foreground IP (“**Embedded Operational Background**”), use all reasonable efforts to procure for the Secretary of State a non-exclusive, perpetual, royalty-free, paid-up licence to use and copy such Embedded Operational Background for any purpose related to the provision of rail services on the United Kingdom heavy rail network, with the right to grant sub-licences to any Successor Operator. Where, having used all reasonable efforts to procure the foregoing licence, the Operator has been unable to do so, and where the Operator intends to proceed with the use of the applicable Embedded Operational Background in relation to the provision of rail services, it shall notify the Secretary of State in writing, providing brief details of: (i) the applicable Embedded Operational Background and the Operational Foreground to which it relates; (ii) the third party owner or licensor of such Embedded Operational Background; and (iii) the terms on which the Operator proposes to licence the Embedded Operational Background from the applicable owner or third party licensor. The Operator may not proceed with the use of such third party Embedded Operational Background unless: (i) the Secretary of State provides written consent; or (ii) no response from the Secretary of State has been received within 28 days of providing written notification, which shall constitute deemed consent.

The foregoing provisions of this paragraph 7.10 shall not apply to any Intellectual Property Rights owned by third parties which had been licensed to the Operator or the Secretary of State prior to the date of this Contract upon binding terms that do not permit the grant of the licences contained in this paragraph 7.10.

- 7.11 Prior to any disclosure of any confidential Background IP of the other Party or any confidential Operational Foreground to a third party pursuant to any sub-licence permitted under paragraphs 7.8 above, the disclosing Party shall ensure that such third party recipient is bound by obligations of confidentiality no less onerous than those contained in this Contract, including relevant obligations set out in Chapter 9.6 (*Confidentiality and Data Protection*). Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this paragraph 7.11, the disclosing Party shall not disclose any commercially sensitive information to any third party without the prior written consent of the other Party (not to be unreasonably withheld).
- 7.12 Paragraphs 6.2 (*Rail Passenger Counts Database*), 6.3 (*Rail Passenger Counts Database*), 7.1, 7.2 and 7.9 of this Chapter 9.3 shall continue in force after expiry or termination of the National Rail Contract or any Continuation Document, together with any other provisions which expressly or impliedly continue in force after the expiry or termination of the National Rail Contract or any Continuation Document.
- 7.13 The Parties intend that the provisions of The Contract (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999 will apply to allow the relevant NR entity to rely on and enforce against a third party the provisions of paragraph 7.3 of this Chapter 9.3.

**APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 9.3****List of Operator Trade Marks****1. Registered trade marks**

<b>Owner</b>	<b>Operator Trade Mark</b>	<b>Registration No</b>	<b>Classes</b>	<b>Date of Filing</b>	<b>Registration Date</b>	<b>Status</b>
Operator	TRANSPENNINE EXPRESS with five pointed star	UK00003160905	39	22/04/2016	22/07/2016	Registered
Operator	Five pointed star	UK00003160798	39	22/04/2016	22/07/2016	Registered

**2. Unregistered trade marks**

<b>Owner</b>	<b>Operator Trade Mark</b>	<b>Status</b>
Operator	TPEXpress	Unregistered
Operator	TPE	Unregistered

**CHAPTER 9.4****Remedies and Dispute Resolution**

Chapter 9.4.1:	Events of Default and Termination Events
Chapter 9.4.2:	Dispute Resolution Procedures
Chapter 9.4.3:	Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the National Rail Contract
Chapter 9.4.4:	Force Majeure
Chapter 9.4.5	Liability

## CHAPTER 9.4.1

## Events of Default and Termination Events

## 1. Definition of Events of Default

Each of the following is an “Event of Default”:

## 1.1 Insolvency

- (a) **Administration:** Any step being taken by any person with a view to the appointment of an administrator to the Operator, the Parent, any Bond Provider, the Guarantor or the ETIA Counterparty;
- (b) **Insolvency:** Any of the Operator, the Parent, any Bond Provider, the Guarantor or the ETIA Counterparty stopping or suspending or threatening to stop or suspend payment of all or, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, a material part of (or of a particular type of) its debts, or being unable to pay its debts, or being deemed unable to pay its debts under section 123(1) or (2) of the Insolvency Act 1986 except that in the interpretation of this paragraph the words “it is proved to the satisfaction of the court that” in sub-section (1)(e) and sub-section (2) of section 123 shall be deemed to be deleted;
- (c) **Arrangements with Creditors:** The directors of the Operator, the Parent, any Bond Provider, the Guarantor or the ETIA Counterparty making any proposal under section 1 of the Insolvency Act 1986, or any of the Operator, the Parent, any Bond Provider, the Guarantor or the ETIA Counterparty proposing or making any agreement for the deferral, rescheduling or other readjustment (or proposing or making a general assignment or an arrangement or composition with or for the benefit of creditors) of all or, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, a material part of (or of a particular type of) its debts, or a moratorium being agreed or declared in respect of or affecting all or, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, a material part of (or of a particular type of) its debts;
- (d) **Security Enforceable:** Any expropriation, attachment, sequestration, execution or other enforcement action or other similar process affecting any property of the Operator or the whole or a substantial part of the assets or undertaking of the Operator, the Parent, any Bond Provider, the Guarantor or the ETIA Counterparty, including the appointment of a receiver, administrative receiver, manager or similar person to enforce that security;
- (e) **Stopping Business/Winding-Up:** Any step being taken by the Operator, the Parent, any Bond Provider, the Guarantor or the ETIA Counterparty with a view to its winding-up or any person presenting a winding-up petition or any of the Operator, the Parent, any Bond Provider, the Guarantor or the ETIA Counterparty ceasing or threatening to cease to carry on all or, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, a material part of its business, except for the purpose of and followed by a reconstruction, amalgamation, reorganisation, merger or consolidation on terms approved by the Secretary of State before that step is taken;
- (f) **Railway Administration Order:** A railway administration order being made in relation to the Operator under sections 60 to 62 of the Act;
- (g) **Moratorium:** Any step being taken by any person with a view to the filing of a moratorium under Part A1 of the Insolvency Act 1986 in respect of the Operator, the Parent, any Bond Provider, the Guarantor or the ETIA Counterparty; and
- (h) **Analogous Events:** Any event occurring which, under the Law of any relevant jurisdiction, has an analogous or equivalent effect to any of the events listed in this paragraph 1.1,

subject, in the case of any relevant event occurring in relation to a Bond Provider where no such other Event of Default has occurred and is unremedied or continuing at such time, to a period of twenty (20) Weekdays having elapsed in order to allow the Operator to replace the relevant Bond Provider.

**1.2 Non-Payment**

The Operator failing to pay to the Secretary of State any amount due under this Contract within twenty eight (28) days of the due date for such payment.

**1.3 Change of Control**

A Change of Control other than in accordance with the prior consent of the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 2 (*Change of Control and Facilitation Fee*) of Chapter 1.1 (*Organisation and Management*)

**1.4 Revocation of Licence**

Revocation of any Licence required to be held by the Operator in order to comply with its obligations under the National Rail Contract.

**1.5 Safety Certificate and Safety Authorisation**

The Safety Certificate and/or Safety Authorisation of the Operator being withdrawn or terminated.

**1.6 Passenger Service Performance**

The Operator's performance in relation to any Enforcement Benchmark is **equal to or worse than** the Default Performance Level for that Enforcement Benchmark for:

- (a) any three (3) consecutive Reporting Periods;
- (b) any four (4) Reporting Periods within a period of thirteen (13) consecutive Reporting Periods; or
- (c) any five (5) Reporting Periods within a period of twenty six (26) consecutive Reporting Periods,

save that, unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State, this paragraph 1.6 shall not apply during the Contract Period, provided that the Parties agree that paragraph 1.6 shall automatically apply if the Quantified Target Methodology is the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Operational Performance Fee in accordance with the terms of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*).

**1.7 Non-compliance with Remedial Agreements and Orders under the Act**

- (a) Non-compliance by the Operator with a Remedial Agreement, where such non-compliance is reasonably considered by the Secretary of State to be material.
- (b) Non-compliance by the Operator with:
  - (i) a provisional order;
  - (ii) a final order;
  - (iii) a penalty; or
  - (iv) any other order made relating to contravention of either a relevant condition or requirement (as defined in section 55 of the Act) or another order,
 in each case made by the Secretary of State under the Act.
- (c) Non-compliance by the Operator with any enforcement notice issued to it by the Secretary of State pursuant to section 120 of the Act.

**1.8 Breach of Law**

- (a) It becoming unlawful for the Operator to provide all or, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, a material part of the Passenger Services or to operate all or, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, a material number of the Stations or Depots (except to the extent not required under the National Rail Contract);
- (b) The Operator or any of the directors or senior managers of the Operator being convicted of manslaughter, fraud or any other indictable criminal offence in each case relating directly to the provision and operation of the Rail Services; or

- (c) The Operator being, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, in material non-compliance with a prohibition or enforcement order (or the equivalent thereof) issued by the ORR pursuant to its safety functions. If the Operator makes an appeal against such prohibition or enforcement order (or such equivalent thereof) in accordance with its terms, no Event of Default shall have occurred under this paragraph 1.8(c) until such appeal has been determined to be unsuccessful.

#### 1.9 **Contravention of Other Obligations**

The occurrence of the following:

- (a) the Operator contravening to an extent which is reasonably considered by the Secretary of State to be material to any one or more of its obligations under the National Rail Contract (other than such non-performance or non-compliance as may constitute an Event of Default under the provisions of this Chapter 9.4.1 other than this paragraph 1.9);
- (b) the service by the Secretary of State on the Operator of a written notice specifying:
  - (i) such contravention; and
  - (ii) to the extent the contravention is capable of being remedied, the reasonable period within which the Operator is required to so remedy; and
- (c) the Operator:
  - (i) contravening such obligation or obligations again to an extent which is reasonably considered by the Secretary of State to be material; or
  - (ii) permitting the contravention to continue; or
  - (iii) if the contravention is capable of remedy, failing to remedy such contravention within such period as the Secretary of State has specified in the notice served pursuant to paragraph 1.9(b)(ii).

#### 1.10 **Non-membership of Inter-Operator Schemes**

The Operator ceasing to be a member of, or ceasing to participate in or to be party to, any of the Inter-Operator Schemes, or having its membership or participation therein suspended.

#### 1.11 **Season Ticket Bond(s)**

- (a) Any Season Ticket Bond ceasing to be a legal, valid and binding obligation on the relevant Bond Provider (other than in accordance with its terms) or it otherwise becoming unlawful or impossible for such Bond Provider to perform its obligations thereunder; or
- (b) A failure by the Operator to procure the provision to the Secretary of State of a Season Ticket Bond (or Season Ticket Bonds) required to be provided pursuant to paragraph 3 (*Season Ticket Bond*) of Chapter 7.4 (*Financial Covenants and Bonds*) which individually or in aggregate fulfil the requirements of Chapter 7.4 (*Financial Covenants and Bonds*).

#### 1.12 **Key Contracts**

Termination of any Key Contract, or the failure by the Operator to take all reasonable steps to enter into an appropriate replacement contract prior to the scheduled expiry date of any Key Contract, except where requested by the Secretary of State or to the extent that the Operator has demonstrated to the reasonable satisfaction of the Secretary of State that for the duration of the Contract Term:

- (a) it is no longer necessary for it to be party to such Key Contract; or
- (b) it has made adequate alternative arrangements in order to be able to continue to provide and operate the Rail Services.

#### 1.13 **Funding Deed**

- (a) A failure by the Operator or the Guarantor to comply with their respective obligations under the Funding Deed; or

- (b) the PCG Facility Loan is at any time equal to the PCG Facility.

#### 1.14 **Early Termination Indemnity Agreement**

- (a) A failure by the ETIA Counterparty to comply with their obligations under the Early Termination Indemnity Agreement; or
- (b) the ETIA Counterparty's liability pursuant to paragraph 2.1 (*Indemnity*) or 4.3 (*Continuing Liability and Indemnity*) of the Early Termination Indemnity Agreement is equal to or exceeds the Maximum Indemnity Amount (as defined in the Early Termination Indemnity Agreement).

### 2. **Definition of Termination Events**

Each of the following is a "**Termination Event**":

- 2.1 any Force Majeure Event continues with the effect of preventing the Operator from delivering, wholly or mainly, the Passenger Services for more than six (6) consecutive months; or
- 2.2 the warranty given by the Operator pursuant to paragraph 3.2(a) (*Tax Compliance*) of Chapter 9.7 (*Miscellaneous Legal Terms*) is materially untrue; or
- 2.3 the Operator commits a material breach of its obligation to notify the Secretary of State of any Occasion of Tax Non-Compliance in respect of any Affected Party as required by paragraph 3.2(b)(i) (*Tax Compliance*) of Chapter 9.7 (*Miscellaneous Legal Terms*); or
- 2.4 the Operator fails to provide details of proposed mitigating factors as required by paragraph 3.2(b)(ii) (*Tax Compliance*) of Chapter 9.7 (*Miscellaneous Legal Terms*) which in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, are acceptable; or
- 2.5 the Secretary of State serves a Competition Event Notice on the Operator pursuant to paragraph 6 (*Competition*) of Chapter 9.7 (*Miscellaneous Legal Terms*).

### 3. **Consequences of Events of Default**

The occurrence of an Event of Default shall constitute a contravention of the National Rail Contract by the Operator. On the occurrence of an Event of Default, the provisions of Chapter 9.4.3 (*Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the National Rail Contract*) shall apply.

### 4. **Notification of Event of Default**

The Operator shall notify the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable on, and in any event within twenty four (24) hours of, it becoming aware of the occurrence of an Event of Default or an event which is likely to result in the occurrence of an Event of Default. The Operator shall take such action or steps as the Secretary of State may require to remedy any Event of Default or potential Event of Default.

### 5. **Termination Notices**

- 5.1 The Secretary of State may, on and at any time after the occurrence of:

- (a) (subject to paragraphs 5.2 and 5.3) an Event of Default which:
- (i) is unremedied or continuing; and
  - (ii) the Secretary of State considers to be material; or
- (b) a Termination Event specified in paragraph 2.1 (*Definition of Termination Events*) of this Chapter 9.4.1 which is unremedied or continuing; or
- (c) a Termination Event specified in paragraphs 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 and 2.5 (*Definition of Termination Events*) of this Chapter 9.4.1,

terminate the National Rail Contract by serving a Termination Notice on the Operator. The National Rail Contract shall terminate with effect from the date specified in any such Termination Notice.

- 5.2 The Secretary of State may not serve a Termination Notice in respect of an Event of Default in relation to which a Remedial Plan Notice has been issued until the Remedial Plan Period has expired.



5.3 The Secretary of State may not serve a Termination Notice in respect of an Event of Default for which the Operator is implementing a Remedial Agreement in accordance with its terms.

**6. Consequences of Termination or Expiry**

6.1 Upon termination of the National Rail Contract (whether through default or effluxion of time or otherwise) the obligations of the Parties shall cease except for:

- (a) any obligations arising as a result of any antecedent contravention of the National Rail Contract;
- (b) any obligations which are expressed to continue in accordance with the terms of the National Rail Contract; and
- (c) any other obligations which give effect to such termination or to the consequences of such termination or which otherwise apply (expressly or impliedly) on or after such termination.

6.2 Nothing in this paragraph 6 shall prevent the Secretary of State from bringing an action against the Operator in connection with the termination of the National Rail Contract prior to the expiry of the Contract Term.

**CHAPTER 9.4.2****Dispute Resolution Procedures****1. Disputes under the National Rail Contract**

- 1.1 Wherever the National Rail Contract provides that the Secretary of State may reasonably determine any matter, the Operator may, unless the National Rail Contract expressly provides otherwise, dispute whether a determination made by the Secretary of State is reasonable, but the Secretary of State's determination shall prevail unless and until it is agreed or found to have been unreasonable.
- 1.2 Where either Party is entitled, pursuant to the terms of the National Rail Contract, to refer a dispute arising out of or in connection with the National Rail Contract for resolution or determination in accordance with the Dispute Resolution Rules, then such dispute shall, unless the Parties otherwise agree and subject to any duty of the Secretary of State under section 55 of the Act, be resolved or determined by arbitration pursuant to the Dispute Resolution Rules.
- 1.3 Where, in the absence of an express provision in the National Rail Contract entitling it to do so, either Party wishes to refer a dispute arising out of or in connection with the National Rail Contract to arbitration pursuant to the Dispute Resolution Rules, the following process shall apply:
- (a) the Party seeking to refer to arbitration shall serve a written notice upon the other Party stating (i) the nature and circumstances of the dispute, (ii) the relief sought including, to the extent possible, an indication of any amount(s) claimed, and (iii) why it is considered that the dispute should be resolved by way of arbitration rather than litigation;
  - (b) the other Party shall respond within twenty (20) Weekdays of service of the notice confirming whether or not referral of the dispute to arbitration is agreed. In the absence of any response, the referral to arbitration shall be deemed not to have been agreed;
  - (c) in the event that the Parties agree to refer the dispute to arbitration then it shall be resolved or determined in accordance with the Dispute Resolution Rules;
  - (d) in the event that the Parties do not agree to refer the dispute to arbitration then it shall be resolved or determined in accordance with paragraph 8 (*Governing Law and Jurisdiction*) of Chapter 9.7 (*Miscellaneous Legal Terms*);
  - (e) nothing in this paragraph 1 (*Disputes under the National Rail Contract*), paragraph 2 (*Disputes under other agreements*) or paragraph 3 (*Disputes under Chapter 7 (Financial Obligations, Incentives and Scorecards)*) of Chapter 9.4.2 (*Dispute Resolution Procedures*) shall preclude either Party from commencing, continuing or otherwise taking any step by way of litigation in pursuit of the resolution or determination of the dispute unless an agreement is reached to refer the dispute to arbitration.
- 1.4 The arbitrator in any dispute referred for resolution or determination under the Dispute Resolution Rules shall be a suitably qualified person chosen by agreement between the Parties or, in default of agreement, chosen by the Secretary of the Access Disputes Committee from a panel of persons agreed from time to time for such purposes between the Secretary of State and the Operator or, in default of agreement as to the arbitrator or as to such panel, selected on the application of any Party by the President of the Law Society or the President of the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales from time to time (or such other person to whom they may delegate such selection).

**2. Disputes under other agreements**

- 2.1 The Operator shall notify the Secretary of State of any disputes to which it is a party under any Inter-Operator Scheme, Access Agreement, Property Lease or Rolling Stock Related Contract, or under any other agreement in circumstances where the relevant dispute could have an adverse effect on the Operator's ability to comply with its obligations under the National Rail Contract or on the provision of the Rail Services and which have been submitted for resolution

either to the courts or to any other procedure for dispute resolution provided for under such agreements.

2.2 Such notification shall be made both:

- (i) at the time of such submission (and such notification shall include reasonable details of the nature of the dispute); and
- (ii) at the time of the resolution of the dispute (whether or not subject to appeal) (and such notification shall include reasonable details of the result of the dispute, any associated award and whether it is subject to appeal).

2.3 The Operator shall provide such further details of any dispute referred to in paragraph 1.4 (*Disputes under the National Rail Contract*) as the Secretary of State may reasonably request from time to time.

**3. Disputes under Chapter 7 (*Financial Obligations, Incentives and Scorecards*) of this Contract**

3.1 The Parties shall comply with the terms of paragraph 4 (*Contract Payment Adjustments and Disputes*) of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) of this Contract.

**4. Cumulative Rights and Remedies**

4.1 The rights and remedies of the Secretary of State under the National Rail Contract are cumulative, may be exercised as often as the Secretary of State considers appropriate and are in addition to the Secretary of State's rights and remedies under the general Law. The exercise of such rights and remedies shall not limit the Secretary of State's right to make payment adjustments, claim damages in respect of contraventions of the National Rail Contract or pursue any available remedies under general Law.

**CHAPTER 9.4.3****Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the National Rail Contract****Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the National Rail Contract****1. Contraventions of the National Rail Contract**

- 1.1 The Operator shall notify the Secretary of State, so far as possible before it may occur and in any event as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter, of any contravention by the Operator of any provision of the National Rail Contract. This includes where the Operator is under an obligation to use all reasonable endeavours to achieve a particular result by a particular time, where such result is not achieved by such time.
- 1.2 The Operator shall deliver to the Secretary of State, or procure the delivery to the Secretary of State of, such information, records or documents as the Secretary of State may request within such period as the Secretary of State may reasonably require for the purpose of determining the existence, likelihood, nature or scope of any contravention of, Event of Default or Termination Event under, the National Rail Contract.

**2. Remedies for Contraventions of the National Rail Contract****2.1 If:**

- (a) the Secretary of State is satisfied that the Operator is contravening or is likely to contravene any term of the National Rail Contract; and/or
- (b) the:
- (i) Secretary of State is satisfied that the Operator is operating at a level that would, or would likely, be scored “1”; or
  - (ii) Operator has received a score of “1”,  
in relation to any of the Scorecard Criteria for a particular PBF Component in accordance with Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*),
- the Secretary of State may serve a notice on the Operator requiring it to:
- (c) propose such steps as the Operator considers appropriate for the purpose of securing or facilitating compliance with the term in question; and/or
- (d) address and overcome the shortfalls or failures that have led to the Operator receiving, or being likely to receive, a score of “1” with respect to the relevant Scorecard Criterion, as applicable, (a “**Remedial Plan Notice**”).

**3. Remedial Plan Notices****3.1 Each Remedial Plan Notice shall specify the following:**

- (a) the:
- (i) term or terms of the National Rail Contract that the Secretary of State is satisfied that the Operator is contravening or is likely to contravene (each a “**Relevant Term**”); and/or
  - (ii) specific Scorecard Criterion under Appendix 3 (*Scorecard Criteria*) of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*) that the Secretary of State is satisfied that the Operator is likely to score, or has scored, “1” in,  
as applicable; and
- (b) the time period (“**Remedial Plan Period**”) within which the Secretary of State requires the Operator to provide an appropriate plan for the purpose of facilitating or securing compliance with such Relevant Term and/or addressing and overcoming the shortfalls or failures that have led to the Operator receiving, or being likely to receive, a score of “1” with respect to the relevant Scorecard Criterion (a “**Remedial Plan**”).

#### 4. Remedial Plans

- 4.1 If the Secretary of State issues a Remedial Plan Notice, the Operator shall submit (at its own cost) a Remedial Plan to the Secretary of State within the Remedial Plan Period.
- 4.2 Each Remedial Plan shall set out:
- (a) the:
    - (i) Relevant Term which has caused such Remedial Plan to be required; and/or
    - (ii) the Scorecard Criterion in respect of which the Operator has received, or is likely to receive, a score of “1”; and/or
    - (iii) the Scorecard Criterion in respect of which the Operator has received a score of “1” (pursuant to the Previous Agreement),
 as applicable;
  - (b) an explanation of the reasons for:
    - (i) the contravention or likely contravention of the Relevant Term; and/or
    - (ii) the Operator receiving, or being likely to receive, a score of “1” with respect to the relevant Scorecard Criterion; and/or
    - (iii) the Operator receiving a score of “1” with respect to the relevant Scorecard Criterion (pursuant to the Previous Agreement),
 as applicable;
  - (c) the steps proposed for the purposes of:
    - (i) securing or facilitating compliance with the Relevant Term; and/or
    - (ii) addressing and overcoming the shortfalls or failures that have led to the Operator receiving, or being likely to receive, a score of “1” with respect to the relevant Scorecard Criterion and/or criterion (pursuant to the Previous Agreement as amended) (as applicable),
 as applicable; and
  - (d) the time period within which the Operator proposes to implement those steps.

#### 5. Remedial Agreements

- 5.1 If the Secretary of State is satisfied that the matters within such Remedial Plan referred to in paragraphs 4.2(c) and (d) are appropriate (with or without further modification as the Parties may agree) the Secretary of State may:
- (a) require the Operator to enter into a supplemental agreement (the “**Remedial Agreement**”) with the Secretary of State to implement those matters; or
  - (b) give notice to the Operator that the Secretary of State shall not require the Operator to implement those matters.
- 5.2 If the Secretary of State gives notice under paragraph 5.1(b) above in relation to any Remedial Plan proposed as a result of the circumstances in paragraph 2.1(a) (*Remedies for Contraventions of the National Rail Contract*), then:
- (a) the Secretary of State may not issue any further Remedial Plan Notice in respect of the circumstances which originally gave rise to the relevant Remedial Plan; and
  - (b) the Operator shall be entitled to such derogation as the Secretary of State may reasonably determine to be necessary to account for the relevant contravention or likely contravention of the National Rail Contract,
- in each case, for the duration of the period in which the relevant circumstances are continuing.

## 6. **Enhanced Monitoring by the Secretary of State**

### 6.1 Where:

- (a) there is an occurrence of a contravention of the National Rail Contract; and/or
- (b) the Secretary of State is satisfied that the Operator is operating at a level that would, or would likely, be scored “1” or the Operator has received a score of “1” in relation to any of the Scorecard Criteria for a particular PBF Component, in accordance with Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*),

the Secretary of State may at the Secretary of State’s option (but shall not be obliged to) commence or increase the level and/or frequency of monitoring (whether by inspection, audit or otherwise) of the Operator’s performance of any relevant obligations until such time as the Operator demonstrates, to the Secretary of State’s reasonable satisfaction, that the Operator is capable of performing and will perform such obligations as required by the National Rail Contract.

6.2 The Operator shall co-operate fully with the Secretary of State in relation to the enhanced monitoring referred to in paragraph 6.1.

6.3 The results of such enhanced monitoring will be reviewed at each Contract Performance Meeting held pursuant to paragraph 8 (*Contract Performance Meetings*) of Chapter 1.1 (*Organisation and Management*).

6.4 The Operator shall compensate the Secretary of State for all reasonable costs incurred by the Secretary of State in carrying out such monitoring. Any such compensation shall be a Disallowable Cost pursuant to Appendix 2 (*Disallowable Costs*) to Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*).

## 7. **Statutory Notices**

7.1 If requested by the Secretary of State, the Operator shall publish and display at the Stations (and shall use all reasonable endeavours to procure the publication and display at Operator Access Stations of) such statutory notices as the Secretary of State may wish to publish from time to time in the exercise of the Secretary of State’s functions (including in relation to Closures or any enforcement or penalty orders).

**CHAPTER 9.4.4****Force Majeure****1. Definition of Force Majeure Events**

1.1 The following events shall constitute “**Force Majeure Events**”, subject to the conditions specified in paragraph 2 being satisfied:

- (a) the Operator or any of its agents or subcontractors is prevented or restricted by the Infrastructure Manager (including by virtue of the implementation of any Contingency Plan) from gaining access to any section or part of track (including any track running into, through or out of a station). For the purposes of this paragraph 1.1:
  - (i) references to a party being prevented or restricted from gaining access to any section or part of track shall mean that such party is not permitted to operate any trains on the relevant section or part of track, or is only permitted to operate a reduced number of trains from that which it was scheduled to operate;
  - (ii) the period of such prevention or restriction shall be deemed to commence with effect from the first occasion on which the Operator is prevented or restricted from operating a train on such section or part of track;
  - (iii) references in paragraphs 1.1(a)(i) and 1.1(a)(ii) to the operation of trains include scheduled empty rolling stock vehicle movements; and
  - (iv) “**Contingency Plan**” means a contingency plan (as defined in the Railway Operational Code or where the Railway Operational Code ceases to exist such other replacement document of a similar or equivalent nature which contains a definition of contingency plan similar to that contained in the Railway Operational Code) implemented by and at the instigation of the Infrastructure Manager, or such other contingency or recovery plan as the Secretary of State may agree from time to time;
- (b) the Operator or any of its agents or subcontractors is prevented or restricted by the Infrastructure Manager or any Facility Owner (other than a Facility Owner which is an Affiliate of the Operator) from entering or leaving:
  - (i) any station or part thereof (excluding any prevention or restriction from gaining access to any section or part of track running into, through or out of a station); or
  - (ii) any depot or part thereof (including the movement of trains on tracks within any depot but excluding any prevention or restriction from gaining access to any track outside such depot running into or out of that depot);
- (c) any of the following events occurs:
  - (i) a programme of Mandatory Modifications commences;
  - (ii) any Rolling Stock Units are damaged by fire, vandalism, sabotage or a collision and are beyond repair or beyond economic repair; or
  - (iii) a government authority prevents the operation of Rolling Stock Units on the grounds of safety,

and, in each case, the greater of two (2) Rolling Stock Units and ten per cent (10%) of all rolling stock vehicles used by the Operator in the provision of the Passenger Services in relation to any Service Group are unavailable for use in the provision of the Passenger Services as a result of the occurrence of such event.

For the purposes of this paragraph 1.1(c), “**Rolling Stock Units**” means the smallest number of rolling stock vehicles which are normally comprised in a train used by the Operator in the provision of the Passenger Services;



- (d) the Operator prevents or restricts the operation of any train on safety grounds provided that:
- (i) the Operator has, either before or as soon as reasonably practicable after initiating such prevention or restriction, sought the confirmation of the ORR in exercise of its safety functions, or any relevant other body with statutory responsibility for safety in the circumstances, of the necessity of such prevention or restriction; and
  - (ii) if and to the extent that the ORR, or other relevant body with statutory responsibility for safety in the circumstances, in exercise of its safety functions indicates that such prevention or restriction is not necessary, then no Force Majeure Event under this paragraph 1.1(d) shall continue in respect of that restriction or prevention after the receipt of such indication from the ORR or other relevant body;
- (e) act of God, war damage, enemy action, terrorism or suspected terrorism, riot, civil commotion or rebellion (together “**Emergency Events**”) or the act of any government instrumentality (including the ORR but excluding the Secretary of State) in so far as the act of government instrumentality directly relates to any of the Emergency Events, provided that there shall be no Force Majeure Event under this paragraph 1.1(e) by reason of:
- (i) the suicide or attempted suicide of any person that does not constitute an act of terrorism;
  - (ii) the activities of the police, fire service, ambulance service or other equivalent emergency service that are not in response to acts of terrorism or suspected terrorism; or
  - (iii) an act of God which results in the Operator or its agents or subcontractors being prevented or restricted by the Infrastructure Manager from gaining access to any relevant section or part of track; or
  - (iv) the occurrence and impact, whether direct or indirect, of COVID-19; and
- (f) any strike or other Industrial Action by any or all of the employees of the Operator or any or all of the employees of:
- (i) the Infrastructure Manager;
  - (ii) the operator of any other railway facility; or
  - (iii) any person with whom the Operator has a contract or arrangement for the lending, seconding, hiring, contracting out or supervision by that person of train drivers, conductors, other train crew or station or depot staff used by the Operator in the provision of the Rail Services,
- or of the agents or sub-contractors of any such person listed in paragraphs 1.1(f)(i) to 1.1(f)(iii).

1.2 The definition of “**Force Majeure Event**” shall exclude the occurrence and impact, whether direct or indirect, of COVID-19.

## 2. **Conditions to Force Majeure Events**

2.1 The occurrence, and continuing existence of a Force Majeure Event shall be subject to satisfaction of the following conditions:

- (a) in relation to an event occurring under paragraph 1.1(a), that event has continued for more than twelve (12) consecutive hours;
- (b) the Operator notifies the Secretary of State within two (2) Weekdays of it becoming aware or, if circumstances dictate, as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter, of:
  - (i) the occurrence or likely occurrence of the relevant event; and
  - (ii) the effect or the anticipated effect of such event on the Operator’s performance of the Passenger Services;

- (c) at the same time as the Operator serves notification on the Secretary of State under paragraph 2.1(b), it informs the Secretary of State of the steps taken and/or proposed to be taken by the Operator to prevent the occurrence of, and/or to mitigate and minimise the effects of, the relevant event and to restore the provision of the Passenger Services;
- (d) the relevant event did not occur as a result of:
  - (i) any act or omission to act by the Operator or its agents or subcontractors, save that in respect of the occurrence of Industrial Action in accordance with paragraph 1.1(f), the provisions of paragraph 2.2 apply; or
  - (ii) the Operator's own contravention of, or default under, the National Rail Contract, any Access Agreement, Rolling Stock Related Contract, Property Lease or any other agreement;
- (e) the Operator used and continues to use all reasonable endeavours to avert or prevent the occurrence of the relevant event and/or to mitigate and minimise the effects of such event on its performance of the Passenger Services and to restore the provision of the Passenger Services as soon as reasonably practicable after the onset of the occurrence of such event; and
- (f) the Operator shall, to the extent reasonably so requested by the Secretary of State, exercise its rights and remedies under any relevant agreement to prevent the occurrence or recurrence of any such event and to obtain appropriate redress and/or compensation from any relevant person.

2.2 Where:

- (a) Industrial Action in accordance with paragraph 1.1(f) occurs as a result of an act or omission to act by the Operator or its agents or subcontractors;
  - (b) the Secretary of State reasonably believes that it was reasonable for the Operator, its agents or subcontractors (as the case may be) so to act or omit to act; and
  - (c) the other conditions specified in paragraph 2.1 have been satisfied,
- such occurrence shall be a Force Majeure Event.

**3. Consequences of Force Majeure Events**

- 3.1 The Operator shall not be responsible for any failure to perform any of its obligations under the National Rail Contract, nor shall there be any contravention of the National Rail Contract if and to the extent that such failure is caused by any Force Majeure Event.
- 3.2 If any Force Majeure Event continues, with the effect of preventing the Operator from delivering, wholly or mainly, the Passenger Services for more than six (6) consecutive months, it shall be a Termination Event in accordance with paragraph 2.1 (*Definition of Termination Events*) of Chapter 9.4.1 (*Events of Default and Termination Events*).
- 3.3 Notwithstanding any other provision of this Contract, and without prejudice to the Parties' positions as to whether the Force Majeure Event provisions would otherwise be engaged, the Operator agrees that it shall not be entitled to further relief from obligations pursuant to the Force Majeure Event provisions under this Chapter 9.4.4 as a direct or indirect impact of COVID-19.

**4. Effect of Force Majeure Event on a Remedial Agreement**

- 4.1 Without prejudice to the operation of paragraph 2.1 (*Definition of Termination Events*) of Chapter 9.4.1 (*Events of Default and Termination Events*), the following provisions shall apply in relation to Force Majeure Events affecting the Operator's performance of their obligations pursuant to a Remedial Agreement:
  - (a) the Operator shall give written notice to the Secretary of State promptly after the Operator becomes aware (and in any event within twenty-four (24) hours after becoming aware) of the occurrence or likely occurrence of a Force Majeure Event which will or is likely to affect the Operator's ability to comply with a Remedial Agreement within the period specified therein;

- (b) each notice submitted in accordance with paragraph 4.1(a) shall state the extent or likely extent of the relevant Force Majeure Event and in the case of a Force Majeure Event which has not occurred at such time, the reasons why the Operator considers it likely to occur;
- (c) the Operator shall use, and shall continue to use, all reasonable endeavours to avoid or reduce the effect or likely effect of any Force Majeure Event on its ability to comply with any Remedial Agreement; and
- (d) subject to the Operator having complied with its obligations under paragraphs 4.1(a) to 4.1(c) (inclusive) the Operator shall be entitled to a reasonable extension of the remedial period applicable to a Remedial Agreement in order to take account of the effect of a Force Majeure Event which has occurred on the Operator's ability to comply with that Remedial Agreement.

**5. No Relief under Force Majeure**

- (a) Nothing in paragraph 3 (*Consequences of Force Majeure Events*) will relieve the Operator from its obligations under the National Rail Contract to create, implement and operate the Business Continuity Plan.
- (b) If a Force Majeure Event affecting the Operator occurs which is an event or circumstance that is within the scope of the Business Continuity Plan, then paragraph 3.1 will only apply to that Force Majeure Event to the extent that the impacts of that Force Majeure Event would have arisen even if:
  - (i) the Operator had complied with paragraph 2 (*Business Continuity Plan*) of Chapter 1.2 (*Strategies and Plans*); and
  - (ii) the Business Continuity Plan had been fully and properly implemented and operated in accordance with paragraph 2 (*Business Continuity Plan*) of Chapter 1.2 (*Strategies and Plans*) and the terms of the Business Continuity Plan in respect of that Force Majeure Event.

**6. Force Majeure and Payments**

Following the occurrence of a Force Majeure Event, the payment of Contract Payments shall continue to be calculated in accordance with Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) and the payment of such Contract Payments shall continue unaffected.

**CHAPTER 9.4.5****Liability****1. Liability with respect to Passengers and Third Parties**

- 1.1. The Operator hereby acknowledges that the Secretary of State shall not be responsible for the actions of the Operator or any Affiliate of the Operator and that, except as expressly provided in the National Rail Contract, the Operator shall provide and operate the Rail Services at its own cost and risk without recourse to the Secretary of State or government funds or guarantees.
- 1.2. The Operator, on demand, shall hold the Secretary of State fully protected and indemnified in respect of all losses, liabilities, costs, charges, expenses, actions, proceedings, claims or demands incurred by or made on the Secretary of State in connection with any death, personal injury, loss or damage suffered by passengers or by any third party using or affected by the Rail Services which is caused or contributed to by the Operator, any Affiliate of the Operator, or any employee, agent, contractor or sub-contractor of the Operator or of any Affiliate of the Operator.

**2. Liability of the Secretary of State**

Neither the Secretary of State nor any of the Secretary of State's officers, agents or employees shall in any circumstances be liable to the Operator for any loss or damage caused by the negligent exercise of any powers reserved to the Secretary of State under the National Rail Contract, except to the extent that such negligence also constitutes a contravention of an obligation of the Secretary of State under the National Rail Contract. The Operator may not recover from the Secretary of State or any of the Secretary of State's officers, agents, or employees any amount in respect of loss of profit or consequential loss.

**3. No Relief due to the Secretary of State**

- 3.1. The Secretary of State may for the Secretary of State's own purposes (whether under the National Rail Contract or under any other arrangement or otherwise and whether before or after the date of the National Rail Contract) monitor or review any proposals, plans or projects (or any aspect thereof) of the Operator under the National Rail Contract, but no review, enquiry, comment, statement, report or undertaking, made or given by or on behalf of the Secretary of State during such review or monitoring (and no failure to undertake, make or give any review, enquiry, comment or statement) shall operate to exclude or relieve either Party from or reduce or otherwise affect the obligations of such Party under the National Rail Contract.
- 3.2. The exercise by or on behalf of the Secretary of State of (or, as the case may be, any failure to exercise) any of the Secretary of State's functions, rights or obligations in respect of any review or monitoring process shall not in any way impose any liability, express or implied, on the Secretary of State to any other Party save to the extent that the exercise (or failure to exercise) of any of such functions, rights or obligations results in a contravention by the Secretary of State of an express provision of the National Rail Contract and the Secretary of State does not make or give any representation or warranty, either express or implied, as to whether any proposal, plan or project will enable either Party to comply with its obligations under the National Rail Contract.

**CHAPTER 9.5****Exit Management**

Chapter 9.5.1	Handover Package
	Appendix 1: Form of Handover Package
Chapter 9.5.2	Reletting Provisions and Maintenance as a Going Concern
Chapter 9.5.3	Provisions applying on and after Termination

**CHAPTER 9.5.1****Handover Package****1. Handover Package Status****1.1** The Operator shall:

- (a) on or before the Start Date, provide to the Secretary of State:
  - (i) the package which contains the information specified in Appendix 1 (Form of Handover Package) to this Chapter 9.5.1 and such other information as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify from time to time (the “**Handover Package**”); and
  - (ii) a letter in a form approved by and addressed to the Secretary of State confirming the details of any insurer providing insurance to the Operator and authorising the insurer (and any relevant broker) to release any insurance-related information to any of the Secretary of State, a Successor Operator or its agent on demand;
- (b) maintain the Handover Package and update it at least every three (3) Reporting Periods; and
- (c) in respect of the information required pursuant to paragraph 1.1(a)(ii), supply revised information and/or letters to the Secretary of State as and when required in order to ensure that such information and letters remain accurate and up to date.

**1.2** The Operator shall ensure that any Successor Operator will have immediate access to the Handover Package on the expiry of the Contract Period.

**1.3** From the date that the Station Asset Management Plan is created pursuant to Chapter 9.1 (*Fixed Assets*) the Operator shall update the Handover Package to include the Station Asset Management Plan and shall update the Station Asset Management Plan included in the Handover Package pursuant to this paragraph 1.3 whenever such plans are updated in accordance with Chapter 9.1 (*Fixed Assets*).

**1.4** The Operator shall put in place such arrangements as are necessary (to the reasonable satisfaction of the Secretary of State) to ensure that the Station Asset Management Plan is (and continues to be maintained) in a format acceptable to the Secretary of State which is capable of being transferred to a Successor Operator as part of the Handover Package so that the Successor Operator is able to access, use and amend the Station Asset Management Plan using the same format.

**2. Statutory Director’s Certificate**

**2.1** At the same time as the Operator is required to provide each draft Business Plan with request to each Subsequent Business Plan Year to the Secretary of State as required by paragraph 3 (*Annual Business Plan Process*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*), the Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State the latest version of the Handover Package (updated as required pursuant to paragraph 1.1(b) of this Chapter 9.5.1) together with:

- (a) a certificate signed by a statutory director of the Operator, addressed to the Secretary of State, which confirms that:
  - (i) the Handover Package contains the information specified in Appendix 1 (*Form of Handover Package*) to this Chapter 9.5.1 (and such other information specified from time to time by the Secretary of State); and
  - (ii) such information is accurate as at the date of the certificate; and
- (b) a document setting out all the changes that have been made to the Handover Package since the last version of the Handover Package provided to the Secretary of State pursuant to this paragraph 2.1.

**3. Key Personnel List**

- 3.1 The Operator shall on or before the Start Date, provide to the Secretary of State the Key Personnel List by following the guidance issued by the Secretary of State from time to time. The Key Personnel List shall be stored in an encrypted server with password protected access.
- 3.2 The Operator shall ensure that the Key Personnel List is maintained in an accurate and up to date form. In the event of any change(s) to the Key Personnel List the Operator shall supply the revised Key Personnel List to the Secretary of State pursuant to the guidance mentioned in paragraph 3.1 above and as soon as reasonably practicable (and in any event within the timeframes set out in paragraph 3.4) after the change(s) is/are made.
- 3.3 The Operator shall make the relevant Business Employee listed in the Key Personnel List aware that their Personal Data shall be shared with:
- (a) the Secretary of State and retained by the Secretary of State during the Contract Term (until such time as the Personal Data is replaced in the Key Personnel List by way of the change(s) described in paragraph 3.2) and for a period of twelve (12) months after the Expiry Date; and
  - (b) the Successor Operator during the mobilisation period,
- including by ensuring that the fairness principle of the Data Protection Legislation is satisfied in respect of the same by issuing all relevant privacy notices.
- 3.4 The Operator shall be responsible for informing the Secretary of State if details in the Key Personnel List are incorrect or need to be deleted by the Secretary of State within five (5) Weekdays of notice from the relevant Business Employee. The Secretary of State shall delete or amend the details within five (5) Weekdays of notice from the Operator.
- 3.5 The Operator shall also ensure that the Key Personnel List is provided to the Secretary of State within twenty four (24) hours of the receipt of any Termination Notice.



**APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 9.5.1****Form of Handover Package**

1. All information in the Handover Package must be provided electronically in a form that is acceptable to the Secretary of State.
2. **Property**  
A list of all property owned, leased, operated or occupied by the Operator which shall include the address and contact telephone number of each property including the term, expiry dates of any leases and lease payments. Where applicable, the list will also include the name, office address and telephone number of the lessor and/or the party which has granted authority to use or occupy the property, and any relevant reference numbers applicable to that lease or occupation.
3. **Contracts**  
A list of all contracts (sales, purchases or otherwise including leases of whatever type and licences) between the Operator and the counterparty or counterparties to each such contract, showing the name, office address and telephone number of each counterparty; the contract reference number of the Operator and each counterparty (if any); and the contract price/value, term and expiry date. This requirement shall apply to all contracts (including all Affiliate Contracts and Group Contracts) unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State.
4. **Systems**  
A list of the electronic systems (networks (including any applicable certifications) and computer and information technology and platforms and applications (including relevant passwords for the same) in use by the Operator, together with the name, office address and telephone number of the Operator's Information Technology Manager (or the holder of any equivalent post) who is responsible for administration of each such system.
5. **Asset Register**  
A list of all assets owned or operated by the Operator, together with their location.
6. **Insurance**  
A list of the names, office addresses and telephone numbers of all insurers and any relevant broker providing insurance to the Operator, together with the relevant policy numbers and other references and details of any outstanding claims or unresolved disputes.
7. **Safety Certificate/Safety Authorisation**
  - (a) A complete copy of the Safety Certificate, an electronic copy of the Operator's application for the Safety Certificate and full details of the Operator's safety management system in place to support the Safety Certificate.
  - (b) A complete copy of the Safety Authorisation, an electronic copy of the Operator's application for the Safety Authorisation and full details of the Operator's safety management system in place to support the Safety Authorisation.

**CHAPTER 9.5.2****Reletting Provisions and Maintenance as a Going Concern****1. Reletting of Rail Services**

- 1.1 The Operator acknowledges that the Secretary of State may wish, at or before the expiry of the Contract Period, either to invite persons to tender for the right to provide all or some of the Passenger Services under a National Rail Contract or other agreement (as determined by the Secretary of State from time to time) or alternatively to enter into a National Rail Contract or other agreement (as determined by the Secretary of State from time to time) in respect of all or some of the Passenger Services without having gone through a tendering process.
- 1.2 The Operator further acknowledges that the Secretary of State has in certain circumstances a duty under section 30 of the Act to secure the continued provision of services equivalent to the Passenger Services on expiry or termination of the National Rail Contract. The Operator accordingly accepts and agrees to the restrictions and obligations imposed on it under Chapter 4 (*Rail Services*) and this Chapter 9 (*Standard Provisions*).

**2. Preparation for Reletting**

- 2.1 The Operator shall, if so requested by the Secretary of State provide the Secretary of State and the Secretary of State's representatives and advisers with access to officers, the Business Employees and all books, records and other materials kept by or on behalf of the Operator in connection with the Rail Services (including electronic or magnetic records, any CRM System and any Yield Management System) for the purpose of assisting such representatives and advisers:

- (a) to prepare reports or other documents in connection with any invitation to potential Successor Operators to tender for the right and obligation to operate all or any of the Rail Services;
- (b) to prepare invitations to other potential Operators to tender for the right and obligation to provide any other railway passenger services or operate any other additional railway asset; or
- (c) to enter into any National Rail Contract or other agreement (including any agreement entered into by the Secretary of State in fulfilment of the Secretary of State's duties under section 30 of the Act) relating to the services equivalent to the Rail Services (or any part thereof), without undergoing a tendering process,

provided that the exercise of such access rights by the Secretary of State and the Secretary of State's representatives and advisers shall not unduly interfere with the continuing provision and operation of the Rail Services by the Operator.

**3. Data Site Information**

- 3.1 The Operator shall, at the request of the Secretary of State, make available to the Secretary of State and the Secretary of State's representatives and advisers:
- (a) the information relating to the Rail Services as specified in the document in the agreed terms marked **DSMI** (the "**Data Site Monitor and Index**"); and
  - (b) such other information as they shall reasonably require in connection with the matters referred to in paragraph 2.1,

in each case, by no later than three (3) months after the date of any such request. For the purposes of this paragraph 3 the information referred to in paragraphs 3.1(a) and 3.1(b) shall be the "**Data Site Information**".

- 3.2 The Data Site Monitor and Index shall be amended and updated by the Secretary of State from time to time. Such amended and updated Data Site Monitor and Index shall, from the date that the Operator receives notification from the Secretary of State of any such amendment or update, be the applicable Data Site Monitor and Index for the purposes of this paragraph 3.
- 3.3 The Operator shall prepare and present the Data Site Information in such manner and in such format (including in disaggregated form) as the Secretary of State may specify in the Data Site

Monitor and Index or otherwise require, and shall provide such assistance as the Secretary of State may require in connection with the verification and the updating of such Data Site Information.

- 3.4 The Operator shall provide such confirmation in relation to the accuracy of:
- (a) the contents of the documents referred to in paragraph 2.1; and
  - (b) any Data Site Information uploaded to such electronic data site as the Secretary of State may require pursuant to paragraph 3.5,
- in each case, as the Secretary of State shall require from time to time.
- 3.5 The Operator shall upload the Data Site Information to such electronic data site as the Secretary of State may specify and shall make a sufficient number of appropriate staff available for that purpose. The Operator shall ensure that such staff are trained in the use of such data site (such training to be at the expense of the Secretary of State).
- 3.6 The Operator shall:
- (a) comply with its obligations under paragraph 2.1 (*Preparation for Reletting*) and this paragraph 3 promptly and in any case in accordance with any reasonable timetable with which the Secretary of State requires the Operator by notice in writing to comply;
  - (b) where the Secretary of State raises with the Operator any query in relation to any Data Site Information, make a full and substantive response to such query within five (5) Weekdays. Such response shall include any further information requested by the Secretary of State in relation to such query; and
  - (c) nominate a person to whom:
    - (i) all queries or requests for information pursuant to paragraph 3.6(b);
    - (ii) requests for access to premises pursuant to paragraph 5 (*Inspection Rights during the Tendering/Reletting Process*); and
    - (iii) requests for access to employees,

shall be addressed and who shall be responsible for complying with any such queries or requests for information and such requests for access to employees and premises. The Operator shall notify the Secretary of State (the Secretary of State's representatives and advisers) of the name and contact details of such person.
- 3.7 In connection with any proposal (whether or not yet finalised) to enter into separate National Rail Contracts and/or other agreements with more than one Successor Operator, each relating to only some of the services equivalent to the Rail Services (whether or not together with other railway passenger services) at or following the end of the Contract Period, the Operator agrees and acknowledges that the Secretary of State may require:
- (a) that the Operator provides the Secretary of State with additional information and reports and analysis in respect of such Service Groups as the Secretary of State may specify. This may include:
    - (i) information relating to the operational and financial performance of the Operator in relation to such Service Groups; and
    - (ii) identification of those employees, assets and liabilities which relate to such Service Groups together with an indication of the extent to which the same are shared between the operation of different Service Groups; and
  - (b) subject to an appropriate Business Plan Revision, that the Operator reorganises the business of providing services equivalent to the Rail Services in order to facilitate the transfer anticipated by this Chapter 9.5.2 on an ongoing basis of the business of providing the Rail Services within each of such Service Groups to separate Successor Operators. This may include, to the extent reasonably practicable:
    - (i) the re-organisation of personnel such that an appropriate number of employees (having sufficient skills, qualifications and experience) will transfer by operation of Law to each Successor Operator of each such Service Group; and/or

- (ii) entering into additional or clarificatory contractual or other arrangements so that the Successor Operator of each such Service Group will have the necessary assets and rights to operate the Rail Services within that Service Group; and
  - (c) that the Operator uploads Data Site Information to more than one data site.
- 3.8 The Operator shall make available to any Successor Operator, in an orderly fashion, suitable data to evidence its performance against the Diversity KPIs.
- 4. **Non-Frustration of Transfer to Successor Operator**
- 4.1 The Operator shall take no action or steps which is or are designed, directly or indirectly:
  - (a) to prevent, prejudice or frustrate the transfer as a going concern of the business of providing the Rail Services at the end of the Contract Period to a Successor Operator; or
  - (b) to avoid, frustrate or circumvent any provision of the National Rail Contract (including in particular the provisions of this Chapter 9 (*Standard Provisions*) which is included in whole or in part for the purpose of preventing any such preventive, prejudicial or frustrating action or steps.
- 4.2 Subject to the restrictions set out in paragraph 4.1 and the other provisions of the National Rail Contract, the Operator may take such action as it may require for the purposes of bidding to become, or becoming, a Successor Operator.
- 5. **Inspection Rights during the Tendering/Reletting Process**
- 5.1 Without limiting any other rights of the Secretary of State under the National Rail Contract and subject to paragraph 5.3, the Operator shall permit the undertaking of inspections (including the taking of inventories) or surveys of:
  - (a) trains;
  - (b) Stations;
  - (c) Depots;
  - (d) sidings; and/or
  - (e) other premises owned or occupied by the Operator or any Affiliates of the Operator or used in connection with the provision of the Rail Services by the Operator or any Affiliates of the Operator,

(“**Inspections**”) by the Secretary of State (or the Secretary of State’s nominee, which for these purposes shall include potential Successor Operators including potential bidders who have expressed an interest in tendering for the right and obligation to operate any or all of the Rail Services, and who carry suitable identification and evidence of authorisation (“**Nominee**”) as the Secretary of State may reasonably require in connection with any Tendering/Reletting Process.
- 5.2 The Operator shall provide a travel permit(s) which will allow the Secretary of State or a Nominee to travel free of charge on the Routes in order to carry out the Inspections.
- 5.3 The Secretary of State shall use reasonable endeavours to ensure that any Inspections shall be undertaken so as not to unduly interfere with the continuing provision and operation of the Rail Services by the Operator.
- 6. **Maintenance as a going concern**
- 6.1 The Operator shall maintain and manage the business of providing the Rail Services so that, to the greatest extent possible and practicable:
  - (a) the Operator is able to perform its obligations under the National Rail Contract; and
  - (b) a Successor Operator would be able to take over the business of providing the Rail Services immediately at any time.
- 6.2 The Operator’s obligation under paragraph 6.1 shall include an obligation to ensure that any computer and information technology systems of the Operator shared in whole or in part with

Affiliates of the Operator or third parties can be operated by a Successor Operator as a standalone system without continued reliance on such Affiliates of the Operator or other third parties immediately from the date of termination of the National Rail Contract without any reduction in functionality or any increase in maintenance or support costs to the Successor Operator (this obligation being without prejudice to any requirement for the Operator to obtain consent to such arrangements relating to sharing computer and information technology systems from the Secretary of State).

- 6.3 The Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that such Successor Operator would have immediate access to all Business Employees and Primary Assets for such purpose.
- 6.4 The Operator shall maintain and manage the business of providing the Rail Services on the basis that such business will be transferred, in the manner contemplated under the National Rail Contract, as a going concern at the end of the Contract Period to, and continued immediately thereafter by, a Successor Operator.
- 6.5 The Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that an appropriate number of employees (having sufficient skills, qualifications and experience) will transfer by operation of Law to any Successor Operator following the expiry of the Contract Period and in so doing shall plan for the recruitment and training of Business Employees to continue up until the end of the Contract Term.
- 6.6 The Operator shall comply with all reasonable requirements of the Secretary of State to obtain or maintain the property and rights that a Successor Operator would require, or that it would be convenient for it to have, on the basis that the same will transfer by operation of Law to any Successor Operator following the expiry of the Contract Term.

**CHAPTER 9.5.3****Provisions applying on and after Termination****1. Novation of Access Agreements on Termination of the National Rail Contract**

1.1 The Operator shall, to the extent so requested by the Secretary of State on termination of the National Rail Contract, in relation to any Access Agreement to which it is a party, novate its interest under any relevant Access Agreement (and any related Network Rail Collateral Agreement) to the Secretary of State or as the Secretary of State may direct.

1.2 Such obligation to novate shall be subject to the agreement of any counterparty to such Access Agreement or Network Rail Collateral Agreement and, to the extent applicable, the ORR.

1.3 Such novation shall be on such terms as the Secretary of State may reasonably require, including:

- (a) that the Operator shall not be released from any accrued but unperformed obligation, the consequences of any breach of the relevant agreement which is the subject of arbitration or litigation between the Parties or any liability in respect of any act or omission under or in relation to the relevant agreement prior to, or as at the date of, any such novation (except to the extent that the Secretary of State or the Secretary of State's nominee agrees to assume responsibility for such unperformed obligation, such liability or the consequences of such breach in connection with the relevant novation); and
- (b) that neither the Secretary of State nor the Secretary of State's nominee shall be obliged, in connection with such novation, to agree to assume responsibility for any unperformed obligation, liability or consequences of a breach of the relevant agreement referred to in paragraph 1.3(a),

but shall not, unless the Operator otherwise agrees, be on terms which release any counterparty to the relevant agreement from any liability to the Operator arising prior to the date of such novation.

1.4 The Operator shall, on the occurrence of the circumstances specified in paragraph 1.1 in relation to any other Train Operator who is a party to an Access Agreement to which the Operator is also party, agree to the novation of the relevant Train Operator's interest under the relevant Access Agreement to the Secretary of State or as the Secretary of State may direct, subject, to the extent applicable, to the consent of the ORR. The provisions of paragraph 1.3 shall apply to any such novation.

1.5 The Operator shall notify the Secretary of State on becoming aware of any circumstances which might lead to the Secretary of State being able to require the Operator to novate its interest or agree to the novation of another Train Operator's interest under this paragraph 1.

**2. Co-operation with Successor Operator**

2.1 In order to ensure the continuity of, and an orderly handover of control over, the Rail Services, the Operator shall co-operate with:

- (a) where a Successor Operator has been appointed, such Successor Operator; or
- (b) the Secretary of State; or
- (c) any relevant Train Operator,

and shall take such steps as may be reasonably requested by the Secretary of State in connection therewith.

2.2 In satisfaction of its obligations under paragraph 2.1, the Operator shall make appropriately skilled and qualified Business Employees reasonably available to attend such meetings with the Secretary of State, any Successor Operator, the Infrastructure Manager, ORR, HS2 Limited any relevant Train Operator, any rolling stock lessor or sub-lessee and/or any other relevant third party as are reasonably required in order to determine:

- (a) those actions that are required in order to facilitate such continuity and orderly handover, in particular those actions arising under the following agreements:



- (i) Access Agreements;
  - (ii) Property Leases;
  - (iii) agreements in relation to Shared Facilities;
  - (iv) Rolling Stock Leases;
  - (v) Rolling Stock Related Contracts;
  - (vi) any other Key Contract; and
- (b) without prejudice to the Secretary of State's rights under this Chapter 9.5.3, those rights and liabilities as may be specified in any Transfer Scheme.

### 3. **Transfer of Primary Assets**

#### 3.1 **Option Arrangements**

- (a) The Secretary of State hereby grants to the Operator the right to require the Secretary of State to make, and the Operator hereby grants to the Secretary of State the right to make, a Transfer Scheme in accordance with section 12 and Schedule 2 of the Railways Act 2005 for the transfer of any or all Primary Assets on the expiry of the Contract Period.
- (b) On or within fourteen (14) days before the expiry of the Contract Period:
- (i) either Party may serve notice on the other Party specifying the Primary Assets to be transferred; and
  - (ii) the other Party may (within such timescale) serve a subsequent notice specifying any additional Primary Assets to be transferred.
- (c) The Secretary of State may (and shall if required by the Operator) make one or more such Transfer Schemes for the transfer of the Primary Assets specified in any such notice within fourteen (14) days after service of such notice (except in relation to any such Primary Assets which are, in accordance with Chapter 9.2.2 (*Key Assets - Designation of Assets*), de-designated as such prior to the end of the Contract Period).
- (d) Any Assets or Primary Assets which are not so transferred shall cease to be designated as such fourteen (14) days after service of such notice.

#### 3.2 **Supplemental Agreement**

Without prejudice to the duties, powers, rights and obligations of the Secretary of State under the Railways Act 2005 in respect of any Transfer Scheme, any Transfer Scheme shall impose on the Operator and the transferee an obligation to enter into an agreement substantially in the form of the Supplemental Agreement which shall provide for the determination of amounts to be paid in respect of the property, rights and liabilities which are transferred under such Transfer Scheme. The Operator shall enter into any such Supplemental Agreement and shall comply with its obligations thereunder.

#### 3.3 **Payment of Estimated Transfer Price**

- (a) The Secretary of State may require the Operator to pay to any transferee under a Transfer Scheme, or may require any such transferee to pay to the Operator, on the day on which the Transfer Scheme comes into force such sum as the Secretary of State may determine should be so paid having regard to:
- (i) the Secretary of State's estimate of the sum likely to be paid under the relevant Supplemental Agreement in respect of the Primary Assets being transferred under the relevant Transfer Scheme;
  - (ii) the Secretary of State's estimate of any other sums likely to be paid thereunder;
  - (iii) the financial condition of the Operator and the transferee and whether any estimate so paid would be likely to be repaid, if in excess of the sums eventually payable thereunder; and
  - (iv) such other matters as the Secretary of State may consider appropriate.



- (b) The Operator shall pay to any such transferee the sum determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 3.3(a) on the day on which the relevant Transfer Scheme comes into force.

#### 3.4 Possession of Assets

On the coming into force of a Transfer Scheme, the Operator shall deliver up to the Secretary of State (or the Secretary of State's nominee) possession of the Primary Assets transferred under such Transfer Scheme.

#### 4. Associated Obligations on Termination

##### 4.1 Assistance in Securing Continuity

- (a) In order to facilitate the continuity of the Rail Services on expiry of the Contract Period, the Operator shall take such steps, both before and after the expiry of the Contract Period, as the Secretary of State may reasonably require, to assist and advise any Successor Operator in providing and operating the Rail Services.
- (b) In particular, the Operator shall provide any Successor Operator with such records and information relating to or connected with the Rail Services as the Secretary of State may reasonably require (other than confidential financial information but including any Business Plan, Cost Budget and all records relating to the Business Employees).

##### 4.2 Access

On the expiry of the Contract Period, the Operator shall grant, (or, in relation to the rolling stock vehicles, procure that any sub-lessee shall provide), the Secretary of State and the Secretary of State's representatives such access as the Secretary of State may reasonably request to any property owned, leased or operated by the Operator at such time, for the purpose of facilitating the continued provision of the Rail Services.

##### 4.3 Key Contracts

- (a) The Operator shall provide such assistance to any Successor Operator as the Secretary of State may reasonably require in ensuring that, pursuant to any Direct Agreements, such Successor Operator may enter into (or enjoy the benefit of) contracts equivalent to the relevant Key Contracts (or part thereof).
- (b) In satisfaction of its obligations under paragraph 4.3(a), the Operator shall terminate, surrender, cancel or undertake not to enforce its rights under any Key Contract (or part thereof) provided that nothing in this paragraph shall require the Operator to undertake not to enforce any rights under a Key Contract relating to the period prior to the expiry of the Contract Period.

##### 4.4 Change of Name

The Operator shall cease to use any trademarks which are licensed to the Operator under any of the Brand Licences forthwith upon expiry of the Contract Period and shall take all necessary steps to change any company name which incorporates any such marks as soon as practicable.

##### 4.5 Property Leases

- (a) The Operator shall, on the expiry of the Contract Period, if requested by the Secretary of State, assign its interest under all or any Property Leases to the Secretary of State or as the Secretary of State may direct, subject where applicable to the agreement of any other party to such Property Lease or the ORR.
- (b) Such assignment shall be on such terms as the Secretary of State may reasonably require, including:
  - (i) that the Operator shall not be released from any accrued but unperformed obligation, the consequences of any antecedent breach of a covenant or obligation in the Property Leases or any liability in respect of any act or omission under or in relation to the Property Lease prior to, or as at the date of, any such assignment (except to the extent that the Secretary of State or the Secretary of State's nominee agrees to assume responsibility for such

unperformed obligation, such liability or the consequences of such breach in connection with the relevant assignment); and

- (ii) that neither the Secretary of State nor the Secretary of State's nominee shall be obliged, in connection with such assignment, to agree to assume responsibility for any unperformed obligation, liability or consequences of a breach referred to in paragraph 4.5(b)(i), and the Operator shall indemnify the Secretary of State or the Secretary of State's nominee, as the case may be, on demand, on an after-tax basis against any costs, losses, liabilities or expenses suffered or incurred in relation thereto.
- (c) The Operator shall, on the occurrence of any of the circumstances specified in paragraph 4.5(a) in relation to any other Train Operator who is a party to a Property Lease to which the Operator is also party, agree to the assignment of such Train Operator's interest under the relevant Property Lease to the Secretary of State or as the Secretary of State may direct, subject, where applicable, to the consent of the Infrastructure Manager. The provisions of paragraph 4.5(b) shall apply to any such assignment.
- (d) The Operator shall notify the Secretary of State on becoming aware of any circumstances which might lead to the Secretary of State being able to require the Operator to assign its interest or agree to the assignment of another Train Operator's interest under this paragraph 4.

## 5. **Actions required immediately on Handover**

- 5.1 The Operator shall immediately on the expiry of the Contract Period make available to the Secretary of State:
  - (a) information as to the status of each purchase order or contract, including its award date, anticipated delivery date, confirmation of receipt of goods or services and the payment records for each purchase order, together with any matters in dispute with the appointed subcontractor and, to the extent that the Operator is a subcontractor to another Train Operator, equivalent information in respect of that Train Operator; and
  - (b) information concerning any contract necessary for the continued operation of the Rail Services where a procurement or bidding process has been initiated.
- 5.2 The Operator agrees that the Secretary of State or the Secretary of State's agents may have access to and use free of charge any information contained in any Computer System or in hard copy format as the Secretary of State sees fit (for the purposes of continuing the operation of the Rail Services).

## 6. **Maintenance Records in relation to Rolling Stock**

- 6.1 The Operator shall immediately on expiry of the Contract Period provide to the Secretary of State or (in relation to rolling stock vehicles) procure that any sub-lessee shall provide:
  - (a) records of the status of the maintenance of the rolling stock vehicles used in the provision of the Passenger Services;
  - (b) records of the status of the maintenance of any lifting equipment;
  - (c) a list of any deferred maintenance; and
  - (d) records of the status of the maintenance of any depot or station which is an Asset, including the extent of completion of examinations and the modification status of each such rolling stock vehicle.

## 7. **Ticketing Arrangements**

- 7.1 The Operator shall provide immediately on expiry of the Contract Period a statement certifying:
  - (a) all ticketing transactions with the public or credit card agencies that are in process and not yet complete, together with any allocations on multi-modal travel with other agencies or local authorities;
  - (b) the extent of any outstanding claims with ticketing settlement agencies;

- (c) refund arrangements (whether under the Passenger's Charter or not) with members of the public or other Train Operators or ticketing settlement agencies that are in process and not yet complete; and
- (d) commissions owed and/or due.

## 8. Information about Passengers

8.1 The Operator shall immediately on the expiry of the Contract Period make available to the Secretary of State and/or the Secretary of State's nominee:

- (a) passenger numbers information specified in paragraph 15 (*Passenger Numbers Information*) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*) in such format and to such level of disaggregation (as the Secretary of State and/or the Secretary of State's nominee may reasonably require);
- (b) the CRM Data; and
- (c) the Yield Management Data.

## 9. Successor Operator Timetables

9.1 Both prior to and following the selection of a Successor Operator (whether a Train Operator or otherwise and whether or not subject to the satisfaction of any conditions), the Operator shall:

- (a) co-operate with, where a Successor Operator has been appointed, that Successor Operator, or where not, the Secretary of State; and
- (b) take such steps as may reasonably be requested by the Secretary of State, so as to ensure the continuity of, and orderly handover of control over of the Rail Services.

9.2 The steps that the Secretary of State may reasonably request the Operator to take pursuant to paragraph 9.1 include:

- (a) participating in any timetable development process that takes place during the Contract Period, but which relates to any timetable period applying wholly or partly after the expiry of the Contract Term ("**Successor Operator Timetable**"), including bidding for and securing any Successor Operator Timetable, whether or not:
  - (i) the Successor Operator has been identified; or
  - (ii) there is in place an Access Agreement relating to the period over which that Successor Operator Timetable is intended to be operated;
- (b) using reasonable endeavours to seek amendments to and/or extensions of Access Agreements which can be transferred to the Successor Operator on expiry of the Contract Period;
- (c) assisting the Secretary of State or the Successor Operator (as the case may be) in the preparation and negotiation of any new Access Agreement relating to any Successor Operator Timetable; and/or
- (d) entering into that Access Agreement in order to secure the relevant priority bidding rights required by the Successor Operator to operate that Successor Operator Timetable, provided that the Operator shall not be required to enter into any such Access Agreement unless the Secretary of State has first provided to it confirmation in writing that the Secretary of State shall include that Access Agreement in any Transfer Scheme pursuant to paragraph 3.1 (*Transfer of Primary Assets*) of Chapter 9.5.3 (*Provisions applying on and after Termination*).

9.3 In addition to its obligation in paragraph 9.2(c), the Operator shall undertake such planning, preparation and organisation as would be undertaken by a Good and Efficient Operator to ensure the successful operation of the Successor Operator Timetable from the Expiry Date or any earlier date of termination as if the Operator were to be operating the same from that date.

**10. Other Train Operating Companies**

- 10.1 If the franchise agreement or equivalent agreement of another Train Operator terminates or a railway administration order is made in respect of another Train Operator, the Operator shall co-operate with any reasonable request of the Secretary of State to ensure:
- (a) that the services provided or operated by such other Train Operator may continue to be provided or operated by any successor Train Operator or the railway administrator; and
  - (b) that the benefit of any arrangements between the Operator and such other Train Operator which were designated as a key contract under such franchise agreement or equivalent agreement immediately prior to its termination or to a railway administration order being made will continue to be provided to any successor Train Operator or to the railway administrator.
- 10.2 The benefit of any arrangements of the type referred to in paragraph 10.1(b) shall be provided on substantially the same terms as previously obtained by the relevant Train Operator, subject to paragraph 5.8 (*Arm's Length Dealings*) of Chapter 9.7 (*Miscellaneous Legal Terms*) and paragraph 10.3 of this Chapter 9.5.3, provided that the Secretary of State may exclude or modify any terms agreed or amended by such Train Operator in the twelve (12) months preceding the date on which such Train Operator's franchise agreement was terminated or the date on which the relevant railway administration order was made which were, in the Secretary of State's reasonable opinion, to the material detriment of such Train Operator's business. The benefit of such arrangements shall be provided for such period as the Secretary of State may reasonably require to allow the relevant Train Operator or railway administrator to renegotiate such arrangements or make alternative arrangements.
- 10.3 The Operator shall notify the Secretary of State of its intention to terminate any contract with any other Train Operator which is designated as a Key Contract under that Train Operator's franchise agreement or equivalent agreement and shall give that Train Operator sufficient notice to enable it to make suitable alternative arrangements for its passengers without causing disruption to the railway passenger services provided by such Train Operator.
- 10.4 If the franchise agreement or equivalent agreement of another Train Operator terminates in contemplation of the entry into or entry into effect of a new franchise agreement or equivalent agreement with the same Train Operator in respect of all or a material part of the relevant railway passenger services, the Operator shall waive any event of default or other right it may have to terminate any agreement with such Train Operator arising out of such termination, provided that the entry into or entry into effect of such new franchise agreement or equivalent agreement takes place.

## CHAPTER 9.6

### Confidentiality and Data Protection

#### 1. Confidentiality

Subject to the provisions of the Act, the Environmental Information Regulations, the Freedom of Information Act (and any code of practice or other guidance related to the same) and paragraphs 2 (*Disclosure of Confidential Information*) to 8 (*Continuing Obligation*) and 10 (*Redactions*) inclusive of this Chapter 9.6, each Party shall hold in confidence the Contract Documents and all documents, materials and other information, whether technical or commercial, supplied by or on behalf of the other Party (including all documents and information supplied in the course of proceedings under the Dispute Resolution Rules or the rules of any other dispute resolution procedures to which a dispute is referred in accordance with the National Rail Contract) (all together the “**Confidential Information**”) and shall not, except with the other Party’s prior written authority, publish or otherwise disclose any Confidential Information otherwise than as expressly provided for in the National Rail Contract unless or until the recipient Party can demonstrate that any such document, material or information is in the public domain through no fault of its own and through no contravention of the National Rail Contract, whereupon to the extent that it is in the public domain this obligation shall cease.

#### 2. Disclosure of Confidential Information

2.1 Each Party may disclose any data or information acquired by it under or pursuant to the National Rail Contract or information relating to a dispute arising under the National Rail Contract without the prior written consent of the other Party if such disclosure is made in good faith:

- (a) to any Affiliate of such Party or outside consultants or advisers of such Affiliate, upon obtaining from such Affiliate and/or such outside consultants or advisers of such Affiliate an undertaking of confidentiality equivalent to that contained in paragraph 1 (*Confidentiality*) above;
- (b) to any outside consultants or advisers engaged by or on behalf of such Party and acting in that capacity, upon obtaining from such consultants or advisers an undertaking of confidentiality equivalent to that contained in paragraph 1 (*Confidentiality*) above;
- (c) to any lenders, security trustee, bank or other financial institution (and its or their advisers) from which such Party is seeking or obtaining finance, upon obtaining from any such person an undertaking of confidentiality equivalent to that contained in paragraph 1 (*Confidentiality*) above;
- (d) to the extent required by Law or pursuant to an order of any court of competent jurisdiction or under the Dispute Resolution Rules or the rules of any other dispute resolution procedures to which a dispute is referred in accordance with the National Rail Contract or the rules of a recognised stock exchange or a formal or informal request of any taxation authority;
- (e) to any insurer, upon obtaining from such insurer an undertaking of confidentiality equivalent to that contained in paragraph 1 above;
- (f) to any director, employee or officer of such Party, to the extent necessary to enable such Party to perform its obligations under the National Rail Contract or to protect or enforce its rights under the National Rail Contract;
- (g) by the Operator, to the ORR, the Passengers’ Council or a Local Authority; or
- (h) by the Secretary of State (with the consent of the Operator (such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed)) to Transport for the North, Rail North Partnership, HS2 Limited, Network Rail or its relevant consultant or advisor (as the case may be), upon obtaining from Transport for the North, Rail North Partnership, HS2 Limited, Network Rail or its relevant consultant or advisor (as the case may be) an undertaking of confidentiality equivalent to that contained in paragraph 1 above.

- 2.2 The Secretary of State may disclose the Confidential Information of the Operator:
- (a) on a confidential basis to any Central Government Body for any proper purpose of the Secretary of State or of the relevant Central Government Body;
  - (b) to Parliament and Parliamentary Committees or if required by any Parliamentary reporting requirement;
  - (c) to the extent that the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) deems disclosure necessary or appropriate in the course of carrying out its public functions;
  - (d) on a confidential basis to a professional adviser, consultant, supplier or other person engaged by any of the entities described in paragraph 2.2(a) of this Chapter 9.6 (including any benchmarking organisation) for any purpose relating to or connected with the Rail Services;
  - (e) on a confidential basis for the purpose of the exercise of its rights under this Contract, including its right of audit, assessment or inspection pursuant to paragraph 4 (*Right to Inspect*) of Chapter 1.1 (*Organisation and Management*) and its rights pursuant to Chapter 9.5.2 (*Reletting Provisions and Maintenance as a Going Concern*);
  - (f) on a confidential basis to a Local Authority or other relevant Stakeholder to the extent that the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) deems such disclosure necessary or appropriate for the purposes of the development and/or implementation of any proposal promoted by (or on behalf of) such Local Authority or other relevant Stakeholder in relation to the provision of additional, varied and/or extended Passenger Services, introduction of new stations or enhancements to Stations or other infrastructure schemes which impact on the Rail Services;
  - (g) on a confidential basis to a proposed successor, transferee or assignee of the Secretary of State in connection with any assignment, novation or disposal of any of its rights, obligations or liabilities under this Contract;
  - (h) on a confidential basis to any Devolved Transport Body for any proper purpose of the Secretary of State or of the relevant Devolved Transport Body;
  - (i) to the extent required to enable the Secretary of State to enjoy and exercise the full extent of the benefits and rights conferred by each licence granted pursuant to paragraph 9.4 (*Cross-licensing of Business Plan IP*) and paragraph 10.4 (*Cross-licensing of Industry Change Project IP*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*) and paragraph 7.10 (*Miscellaneous IP*) of Chapter 9.3 (*Branding and Intellectual Property*);
  - (j) on a confidential basis, to the extent necessary to provide Business Plans, Costs Budgets and any related information to a prospective Successor Operator or any persons invited to tender for the right to provide all or some of the Passenger Services; and
  - (k) to the European Union, to the extent required under Article 4.7, Chapter 4 of Title XI of Part Two of the Trade and Cooperation Agreement,

and for the purposes of the foregoing, references to disclosure on a confidential basis shall mean disclosure subject to a confidentiality agreement or arrangement containing terms no less stringent than those placed on the Secretary of State under this paragraph 2.2 of this Chapter 9.6.

### 3. **Publication of Certain Information**

- 3.1 Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph 1 of this Chapter 9.6 (*Confidentiality and Data Protection*), paragraph 9.5 (*Cross-licensing of Business Plan IP*) and paragraph 10.5 (*Cross-licensing of Industry Change Project IP*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*) and paragraph 7.11 (*Miscellaneous IP*) of Chapter 9.3 (*Branding and Intellectual Property*), the Secretary of State may publish (for purposes including section 73 of the Act) and whether to the press, the public or to one or more individuals, companies or other bodies, including to any prospective Successor Operator) in such form and at such times as the Secretary of State sees fit, the following (irrespective of whether the same was provided to the Secretary of State by the Operator or a third party):



- (a) any or all of the Contract Documents provided that the Secretary of State shall, prior to publishing the same, redact from any Contract Documents any Redactions pursuant to paragraph 10 (*Redactions*) of this Chapter 9.6;
- (b) the amount of any Contract Payments payable under the National Rail Contract and the aggregate amount of Contract Payments paid in each year under the National Rail Contract;
- (c) such information as the Secretary of State may consider reasonably necessary to publish in connection with the performance of the Secretary of State's functions in relation to any Closure or proposed Closure;
- (d) the amount of any payments by the Operator under the Passenger's Charter;
- (e) such information (including CRM Data and Yield Management Data) as may reasonably be required in connection with any Tendering/Reletting Process or the retendering or reletting of any other railway passenger services, provided that such information may only be published during the period of, or during the period leading up to, such retendering or reletting;
- (f) any reports and accounts delivered to the Secretary of State under this Contract including any analyses, statistics and other information derived from such reports and accounts;
- (g) the results of any monitoring or measurement of the performance of the Operator in the provision of the Rail Services (including any information provided under Chapter 4 (*Rail Services*));
- (h) the results, on a Service Group, Route, station or other comparable basis, of any calculation of passenger numbers under Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*);
- (i) the results of any survey under Part 2 (*NRPS and Wavelength*) of Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*);
- (j) the results of any assessment or inspection under Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*) or Chapter 1.1 (*Organisation and Management*);
- (k) details of the Operator's plans and performance in respect of safety;
- (l) such information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require to include in the Secretary of State's annual report in respect of the Operator provided that, in preparing that report, the Secretary of State shall have regard to the need for excluding, so far as is practicable, the matters specified in paragraphs (a) and (b) of section 71(2) of the Act for this purpose, taking references in those paragraphs to the ORR as references to the Secretary of State;
- (m) such information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require to publish at or around the expiry or possible termination of the Contract Period in order to secure continuity of the provision and operation of the Rail Services; and
- (n) any information provided to the Secretary of State pursuant to any provision of the National Rail Contract including pursuant to a Request for Data where in the opinion of the Secretary of State publication is appropriate for the purposes of properly carrying out its duties.

3.2 Without prejudice to any other provision of this Chapter 9.6, the Secretary of State may publish any other information relating to the Operator if the Secretary of State has previously notified the Operator and the Operator does not demonstrate to the reasonable satisfaction of the Secretary of State within fourteen (14) days of such notification that the publication of such information would, in the reasonable opinion of the Operator, have a material adverse effect on its business. If the Operator attempts so to demonstrate to the Secretary of State but the Secretary of State is not so satisfied, the Secretary of State shall allow seven (7) more days before publishing the relevant information.

#### 4. **Service Development Information**

Nothing in this Chapter 9.6 shall be deemed to prohibit, prevent or hinder, or render either Party liable for, the disclosure by either Party to Network Rail, the ORR, HS2 Limited,



Devolved Body, Rail North Partnership, other Train Operators, any operators of services for the carriage of goods by rail, the Passengers' Council and/or any Local Authority of any information relating to the development of the Train Service Requirement in accordance with Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*).

**5. Publication by Secretary of State**

Nothing in this Chapter 9.6 shall be deemed to prohibit, prevent or hinder, or render the Secretary of State liable for, the disclosure of any information by the Secretary of State to the ORR, the Parliamentary Commissioner for Administration, a Minister of the Crown, any department of the government of the United Kingdom, the Scottish Parliament, the National Assembly of Wales, the Mayor of London, the Greater London Authority or any department or officer of any of them or of information which is otherwise disclosed for the purpose of facilitating the carrying out of the Secretary of State's functions.

**6. Provision of Information to the ORR**

The Operator hereby authorises the Secretary of State to provide to the ORR, to the extent so requested by the ORR, such information as may be provided to the Secretary of State in relation to the Operator under the National Rail Contract.

**7. Disclosure by Comptroller and Auditor General**

The Parties recognise that the Comptroller and Auditor General may, in pursuance of the Secretary of State's functions under the Exchequer and Audit Department Act 1921, the National Audit Act 1983 and the Government Resources and Accounts Act 2000, disclose information which the Secretary of State has obtained pursuant to those Acts and which a Party to the National Rail Contract would not be able to disclose otherwise than under this Chapter 9.6.

**8. Continuing Obligation**

This Chapter 9.6 (and any other provisions necessary to give effect hereto) shall survive the termination of the National Rail Contract, irrespective of the reason for termination.

**9. Freedom of Information - General Provisions**

9.1 The Operator acknowledges and shall procure that its agents and subcontractors acknowledge that the Secretary of State is subject to the requirements of the Freedom of Information Act and the Environmental Information Regulations and accordingly the Operator shall (and shall procure that its agents and subcontractors shall) assist and co-operate with the Secretary of State to enable the Secretary of State to comply with the Secretary of State's information disclosure obligations under the Freedom of Information Act and/or the Environmental Information Regulations.

9.2 Notwithstanding paragraph 10 (*Redactions*), the Operator shall (and shall procure that its agents and subcontractors shall):

- (a) transfer to the Secretary of State any Requests for Information received by the Operator (or its agents or subcontractors) as soon as practicable and in any event within two (2) Weekdays of receiving any such Request for Information;
- (b) provide the Secretary of State with a copy of all information in its (or their) possession or power in the form that the Secretary of State requires within five (5) Weekdays of the Secretary of State's request (or within such other period as the Secretary of State may specify); and
- (c) provide all necessary assistance as reasonably requested by the Secretary of State to enable the Secretary of State to respond to any Request for Information within the time for compliance set out in section 10 of the Freedom of Information Act or Regulation 5 of the Environmental Information Regulations as applicable.

9.3 The Secretary of State shall be responsible for determining in the Secretary of State's absolute discretion, and notwithstanding any other provision in the National Rail Contract or any other agreement, whether Confidential Information (as such term is defined in paragraph 1 (*Confidentiality*) of this Chapter 9.6) and/or any other information is exempt from disclosure in accordance with the provisions of the Freedom of Information Act and/or the Environmental Information Regulations.

- 9.4 The Operator shall not (and shall procure that its agents and subcontractors shall not) respond directly to any Request for Information unless expressly authorised to do so by the Secretary of State.
- 9.5 The Operator acknowledges and shall procure that its agents and subcontractors acknowledge that notwithstanding any provision to the contrary in the National Rail Contract the Secretary of State may be obliged under the Freedom of Information Act and/or the Environmental Information Regulations and any related Code of Practice or other guidance to disclose information concerning the Operator and/or its agents and subcontractors:
- (a) in certain circumstances without consulting the Operator (or its agents and/or subcontractors where applicable); or
  - (b) following consultation with the Operator and having taken its views into account (and the views of its agents and/or subcontractors where applicable),

provided always that where applicable the Secretary of State shall in accordance with the provisions of the Freedom of Information Act and/or the Environmental Information Regulations take reasonable steps where appropriate to give the Operator advance notice or failing that to draw the disclosure to the Operator's attention after any such disclosure.

## 10. Redactions

- 10.1 Subject to paragraph 9 (*Freedom of Information - General Provisions*), by no later than the date which is:
- (a) twenty (20) Weekdays after the date of this Contract (in respect of the Contract Documents referred to in paragraphs (a) and (f) of the definition thereof);
  - (b) twenty (20) Weekdays after the date of their respective execution (in respect of the Contract Documents referred to in paragraphs (b), (c) and (g) of the definition thereof);
  - (c) twenty (20) Weekdays after the dates that such Contract Documents are agreed or determined (in respect of the Contract Documents referred to in paragraphs (d) and (f) of the definition thereof);
  - (d) twenty (20) Weekdays after the date of notification by the Secretary of State to the Operator of another agreement that is required for publication (in respect of the Contract Documents referred to in paragraphs (e) and (h) of the definition thereof); and
  - (e) twenty (20) Weekdays after the date of any document varying the terms of any Contract Documents,

the Operator shall provide to the Secretary of State details of any provisions of the Contract Documents or any such variation which the Operator believes are exempt from disclosure in accordance with the provisions of the Freedom of Information Act, the Environmental Information Regulations and/or section 73(3) of the Act (the "**Redactions**").

- 10.2 For each such Redaction the Operator should specify:
- (a) the exact text of the Contract Documents or variation that the Operator proposes is redacted using the template table(s) provided by the Secretary of State from time to time;
  - (b) whether the Operator proposes that the Redaction applies in relation to the publication of the relevant Contract Documents or variation on the website of the Department for Transport, on the register required to be maintained by the Secretary of State pursuant to section 73 of the Act or on both such website and such register; and
  - (c) the reasons why the Operator believes that the proposed Redaction is justified in accordance with the Freedom of Information Act, the Environmental Information Regulations and/or section 73(3) of the Act. Such reasons shall be stated in the template table(s) provided by the Secretary of State from time to time.

- 10.3 The Secretary of State shall consult with the Operator in relation to the Operator's proposed Redactions (provided that the same are provided to the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 10.1).
- 10.4 If the Secretary of State and the Operator are unable to agree upon any proposed Redaction, the Secretary of State shall be entitled to determine, in the Secretary of State's absolute discretion, whether or not to make such proposed Redaction.
- 10.5 If the Operator does not provide its proposed Redactions to the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 10.1, the Operator shall be deemed to have consented to publication of the relevant document without any Redactions.
11. **Data Protection**
- 11.1 In respect of any Personal Data processed by the Operator, including CRM Data and Personal Data relating to Business Employees, the Operator agrees that it shall:
- (a) comply with the Data Protection Legislation; and
  - (b) procure that its agents and sub-contractors, including the Operations Data Processors, shall comply with the Data Protection Legislation.
- 11.2 The Operator shall promptly:
- (a) notify the Secretary of State of any Operations Data Breach, upon the Operator's awareness of the same, including all relevant details, whether the Operations Data Breach is by itself or by an Operations Data Processor;
  - (b) provide the Secretary of State on request with all reasonable information, assistance and co-operation in relation to its processing of the CRM Data and the Personal Data relating to Business Employees, and procure that any Operations Data Processor which it appoints shall provide the Operator with all reasonable information, assistance and co-operation in relation to the processing of the CRM Data and the Personal Data relating to Business Employees by the Operations Data Processor, in each case in order to permit the Secretary of State to make an accurate and complete assessment of compliance by the Operator with this paragraph 11; and
  - (c) provide the Secretary of State on request with all reasonable information, assistance and co-operation in relation to any audit of the Operator in relation to its processing of the CRM Data and the Personal Data relating to Business Employees, and procure that any Operations Data Processor which it appoints shall submit itself to audits by the Operator or the Operations Data Processor (whether those audits are by the Operator or by any person appointed on its behalf), in each case in order to permit the Secretary of State to make an accurate and complete assessment of compliance by the Operator with this paragraph 11.
- 11.3 The Operator shall and shall procure that any Operations Data Processor which it appoints shall:
- (a) notify (in the case of Operator) the Secretary of State and (in the case of any Operations Data Processor) the Operator in writing of the full names and registered office addresses of the entities which are from time to time carrying out any storage, hosting and/or other processing of the CRM Data and/or the Personal Data relating to Business Employees, together with the storage, hosting and/or other processing location(s);
  - (b) ensure that in cases where the storage, hosting and/or other processing location(s) are outside of the United Kingdom the notification shall include details of the relevant country(ies) or territory(ies); and
  - (c) ensure that in cases where the storage, hosting and/or other processing locations(s) are in a third country (which has the meaning given in the Data Protection Legislation) the notification shall include a description of the appropriate safeguards which are in place under the Data Protection Legislation in respect of the same including that there is in force a European Commission decision that the country or territory to which the transfer is made ensures an adequate level of protection for processing of Personal Data, that there is in place the standard contractual clauses approved by the European Commission decision for the transfer of personal data to

processors established in third countries, or that the transfer is to the United States of America and there exists a current and appropriate certification under the EU-US Privacy Shield framework (or such other framework as may replace the EU-US Privacy Shield framework during the Contract Term) in each case in relation to the transfer.

- 11.4 With reference to paragraphs 11.1 to 11.3 inclusive, the Operator hereby acknowledges that whilst the Secretary of State is not the Controller in respect of the CRM Data or Personal Data relating to Business Employees, the Secretary of State's legitimate interests given its duties under the Act, and its reputation, may be adversely affected in the event of any unlawful processing of CRM Data and/or Personal Data relating to Business Employees, or in the event of any Operations Data Breach. In addition, the Operator hereby acknowledges that the Secretary of State legitimately wishes to have knowledge of the locations in which the CRM Data and the Personal Data relating to Business Employees is stored, hosted or otherwise processed from time to time (whether inside or outside of the United Kingdom) given that all such information would be relevant in the event of any transfer of the Rail Services to a Successor Operator.

**12. Data Protection – Apprenticeships**

- 12.1 In respect of information relating to each Business Employee who commences an Apprenticeship and which is included in the Apprenticeships Data Collection Form:

- (a) the Operator shall not cause or permit any Personal Data whatsoever which relates to any Business Employee who commences an Apprenticeship to be included in any Apprenticeships Data Collection Form or otherwise shared with the Secretary of State or the Rail Delivery Group (whether in written form, on the telephone, or otherwise) and, accordingly, the Operator shall convert into anonymised aggregated form all Personal Data that is in the first instance included in the Apprenticeships Data Collection Form prior to sharing the Apprenticeships Data Collection Form with the Rail Delivery Group for the purpose described in paragraph 2.2 (*Apprenticeships*) of Chapter 2.1 (*Diversity and Inclusion and Training and Development*) (and the Operator hereby acknowledges and agrees that if it should be possible in any way to identify any Business Employee from the anonymised aggregated data there would be a disclosure of Personal Data by the Operator and, accordingly, the Operator would be in contravention of this paragraph 12.1(a) in that event); and
- (b) the Parties acknowledge that, notwithstanding the requirements of paragraph 12.1(a) including the absolute obligation that is imposed on the Operator to effect the anonymised aggregation of the Personal Data comprised in information relating to each Business Employee who commences an Apprenticeship, it may still be possible from time to time to identify the Business Employee from the Apprenticeships Data Collection Form and that there will be processing of Personal Data inherent in that circumstance, and accordingly, the Operator shall in preparation for that possibility ensure that:
- (i) the Business Employee who commences an Apprenticeship is made aware that their Personal Data may be shared with the Rail Delivery Group (and onward to the Secretary of State) for the purpose described in paragraph 2.2 (*Apprenticeships*) of Chapter 2.1 (*Diversity and Inclusion and Training and Development*);
- (ii) the Personal Data is collected and processed by or on behalf of the Operator in accordance with the Data Protection Legislation;
- (iii) the fairness principle of the Data Protection Legislation is satisfied including by issuing all relevant privacy notices in relation to the collecting and processing of the Personal Data by the Operator, and for the disclosure to and subsequent processing by the Rail Delivery Group (and the Secretary of State) for the purpose described in paragraph 2.2 (*Apprenticeships*) of Chapter 2.1 (*Diversity and Inclusion and Training and Development*);
- (iv) there is a lawful basis for the collection and processing of the Personal Data by the Operator, and for the disclosure to and subsequent processing by the Rail Delivery Group (and the Secretary of State) for the purpose described in

paragraph 2.2 (*Apprenticeships*) of Chapter 2.1 (*Diversity and Inclusion and Training and Development*); and

- (v) the Business Employee is made aware that their Personal Data shall be retained by the Secretary of State for a period of seven (7) years following its receipt of the same from the Rail Delivery Group.

12.2 Nothing in paragraph 12.1(b) is intended by the Parties to absolve the Operator from its obligations under paragraph 12.1(a)).

### 13. Further Information

13.1 The Operator shall:

- (a) deliver to the Secretary of State, or procure the delivery to the Secretary of State of, such data, information, records or documents as he may request within such period as he may reasonably require and which relate to or are connected with the Operator's performance of the National Rail Contract; and
- (b) procure that each Affiliate of the Operator complies with paragraph 13.1(a) in respect of any data, information, records or documents that relate to its dealings with the Operator in connection with the Operator's performance of its obligations under the National Rail Contract.

13.2 The information referred to in paragraph 13.1 shall include:

- (a) any agreement, contract or arrangement to which the Operator is a party in connection with any rolling stock vehicles used in the operation of the Passenger Services;
- (b) in so far as the Operator has or is able to obtain the same, any other agreement contract or arrangement which may be associated with the procurement, leasing, financing or maintenance of any such rolling stock vehicles;
- (c) any agreement for the manufacture or supply of any rolling stock vehicles; and
- (d) any arrangements for the securitisation of any lease granted in respect of such rolling stock vehicles.

13.3 The Secretary of State may require the Operator to provide:

- (a) the information required to be provided under this Contract more frequently than set out in this Contract;
- (b) the information required to be provided under this Contract, or, in the Secretary of State's sole discretion, more detailed financial information, at any time in connection with the re-letting of the Rail Services;
- (c) such unaudited accounts under such accounting policies as may be prescribed by the Secretary of State, acting reasonably, from time to time;
- (d) research or survey datasets which relate to or are connected with the Operator's performance of the National Rail Contract;
- (e) any data or information which supports operational and business functions; and
- (f) information about any agreement, contract or arrangement to which the Operator is a party and which relate to or are connected with the Operator's performance of the National Rail Contract.

### 14. Request for Data

14.1

- (a) If the Secretary of State requires any further information, data, records or documents during the Contract Term which the Operator is not otherwise required to provide pursuant to this Contract (the "**Relevant Data**"), the Secretary of State may issue a request to the Operator specifying:
  - (i) the Relevant Data the Operator is to provide to the Secretary of State;



- (ii) any requirement in relation to timeliness, format and method of delivery of such Relevant Data; and
  - (iii) where such Relevant Data is required to be provided on an ongoing basis, may include the frequency with which such Relevant Data shall be required to be delivered,

(each a “**Request for Data**”).
- (b) The Operator acknowledges and agrees that any Relevant Data provided by the Operator pursuant to a Request for Data may be shared with other persons who are acting on the Secretary of State’s behalf or such other persons as the Secretary of State may notify, in each case, in accordance with this Chapter 9.6.
- (c) Within fourteen (14) days of the date of issuance of a Request for Data by the Secretary of State or such other timeframe as may be specified in the relevant Request for Data, the Operator shall:
  - (i) provide to the Secretary of State all Relevant Data specified in the Request for Data as it is reasonably able to provide or procure within such period; and
  - (ii) if the Operator has not provided all the Relevant Data specified in the Request for Data, it shall provide the Secretary of State with:
    - (A) details of any further action that would be required to enable it to provide such Relevant Data, including the rationale for requiring such further action together with relevant supporting evidence;
    - (B) the Operator’s proposed timescales for taking such action in timely manner and the rationale for arriving at such timeframe; and
    - (C) where applicable, an estimate (including a breakdown of the individual cost components) of any additional costs the Operator expects to incur (acting reasonably) in order to provide such Relevant Data together with relevant supporting evidence.
  - (d) The Secretary of State may, following review of the Operator’s response pursuant to paragraph 14.1(c)(ii), require the Operator to take such further action as the Secretary of State may specify (acting reasonably), including providing part or all of the Relevant Data which remains outstanding or taking any steps to mitigate the amount of any costs that the Operator may incur in order to comply with the Request for Data.
- 14.2 The Operator shall provide an audit of data sources and information that are used by the Operator’s business, as requested by the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) from time to time. The Secretary of State may also request information and guidance from the Operator about its data sources, including the purpose for collecting such data, any risks associated with handling or sharing such data, and any third party contracts or agreements used to collect and process the data.
- 14.3 Nothing in paragraph 13, this paragraph 14 or paragraph 15 (*Information from Third Parties*) of this Chapter 9.6 shall require the Operator to provide any Relevant Data or any other data, information, records or documents which would, or is reasonably likely to:
  - (a) require it to incur additional costs, over and above those provided for within the Cost Budget most recently Placed in Escrow, unless the Secretary of State otherwise directs or gives consent or such additional costs were contemplated when the Secretary of State agreed or reasonably determined the Operator’s most recent Business Plan and the Operator’s Cost Budget most recently Placed in Escrow; or
  - (b) put it in breach of any applicable law or regulation.
- 14.4 If the Operator reasonably considers that any provision of paragraph 13 (*Further Information*), this paragraph 14 or paragraph 15 (*Information from Third Parties*) of this Chapter 9.6 requires, or is likely to require, it do anything inconsistent with acting as a Good and Efficient Operator, it shall notify and consult with the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable following becoming aware of the same and proceed in accordance with any guidance or directions that the Secretary of State may reasonably provide or direct.

**15. Information from Third Parties**

- 15.1 The Operator shall, if the Secretary of State so requests, through a Request for Data or otherwise, use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that the Secretary of State has direct access to any information, data or records relating to the Operator which is or are maintained by third parties and to which the Secretary of State is entitled to have access, or of which the Secretary of State is entitled to receive a copy under the National Rail Contract.
- 15.2 The Operator shall, if the Secretary of State so requests, procure the provision by RSP to the Secretary of State of such information, data and records as the Operator is entitled to receive under the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement, in such form as the Secretary of State may specify from time to time.
- 15.3 The obligations of the Operator to provide information to the Secretary of State shall not apply if the Secretary of State notifies the Operator that the Secretary of State has received the relevant information directly from any other person (including Network Rail or RSP). The Operator shall, if the Secretary of State so requests, confirm or validate any such information which is received from any such other person.
- 15.4 The Operator shall promptly advise the Secretary of State of any changes that are to be made to the databases, systems or processes which are owned, operated or otherwise used by the Operator which may have an impact on the Operator's ability to meet its data sharing obligations pursuant to the National Rail Contract or any Request for Data issued by the Secretary of State or will, in the reasonable opinion of the Operator, materially affect the continuity of any supply of information or data that the Operator is required to provide to the Secretary of State. Any such advice shall include an assessment of the materiality of the relevant change.
- 15.5 To the extent that collection or supply of any data, information, records or documents is managed by a third party on the Operator's behalf:
- (a) the Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that all relevant third party service providers permit the sharing with the Secretary of State of all data, information, records or documents which such third party service provider shall be required to provide or may provide on request to the Operator; or
  - (b) where the Operator is unable to procure access pursuant to paragraph 15.5(a), it shall use all reasonable endeavours to agree a variation or amendment to any contract or other arrangement in place between the Operator and the relevant third party as may be required to comply with paragraph 15.5(a).
- 15.6 During the Contract Term, the Operator shall:
- (a) not enter into any new contracts or other arrangements which may materially adversely affect the Operator's ability to comply with paragraph 13 (*Further Information*), paragraph 14 (*Request for Data*) and this paragraph 15 of this Chapter 9.6, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State; and
  - (b) to the extent it is entering into any material amendments to any existing contracts or arrangements with third parties, use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that the contract or arrangement (as amended) does not materially adversely affect the Operator's ability to comply with its requirements pursuant to paragraph 13 (*Further Information*), paragraph 14 (*Request for Data*) and this paragraph 15 of this Chapter 9.6.

**16. Compatibility of information**

- 16.1 All financial, operational or other information, and any data and records required to be provided to the Secretary of State under the National Rail Contract shall be provided, if so requested by the Secretary of State, in a form compatible with the Secretary of State's electronic data and records systems on the Start Date, as modified from time to time.
- 16.2 The Operator shall ensure that the interconnection of such systems or the provision of such information, data and records to the Secretary of State under the National Rail Contract will not result in any infringement of any third party Intellectual Property Rights to which its systems or such information, data or records may be subject.

**17. Information in respect of the first Contract Year**

National Rail Contract Version 1.1X - TransPennine Express	Page 385 of 500	Chapter 9.6
---	-----------------	-------------



- 17.1 If any provision of this Contract requires the Operator to provide information in respect of the first Contract Year, the Secretary of State may require the Operator to provide such information in respect of the period commencing on 01 April 2021 and ending 31 March 2022.

## CHAPTER 9.7

**Miscellaneous Legal Terms****1. All Reasonable Endeavours**

- 1.1 Any obligation on the part of the Operator to use “all reasonable endeavours” shall extend to consequent obligations adequately to plan and resource its activities, and to implement those plans and resources, with all due efficiency and economy.

**2. Assignment**

- 2.1 The Operator shall not without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State assign, hold in trust for any other person, or grant a Security Interest in or over, the National Rail Contract or any part hereof or any benefit or interest or right herein or hereunder (other than any right of the Operator to receive monies under a Supplemental Agreement).

**3. Compliance with Laws****3.1 General**

The Operator shall at all times perform the Rail Services and all its other obligations under the National Rail Contract in accordance with all applicable Laws.

**3.2 Tax Compliance**

- (a) The Operator represents and warrants that as at the Start Date, it has notified the Secretary of State in writing of any Occasions of Tax Non-Compliance where the Operator (including where the Operator is an unincorporated joint venture or consortium, the members of that unincorporated joint venture or consortium) is the Affected Party or any litigation that it is involved in that is in connection with any Occasions of Tax Non Compliance where the Operator (including where the Operator is a joint venture or consortium, the members of that joint venture or consortium) is the Affected Party.
- (b) If, at any point during the Contract Term, an Occasion of Tax Non-Compliance occurs in relation to any Affected Party, the Operator shall:
- (i) notify the Secretary of State in writing of such fact within five (5) Weekdays of its occurrence; and
  - (ii) promptly provide to the Secretary of State:
    - (A) details of the steps which the Affected Party is taking to address the Occasion of Tax Non-Compliance and to prevent the same from recurring, together with any mitigating factors that it considers relevant; and
    - (B) such other information in relation to the Occasion of Tax Non-Compliance as the Secretary of State may reasonably require.

**4. Set Off**

- 4.1 Save as otherwise expressly provided under the National Rail Contract or required by law, all sums payable under the National Rail Contract shall be paid in full and without any set-off or any deduction or withholding including on account of any counter-claim.
- 4.2 Notwithstanding paragraph 4.1 the Secretary of State shall be entitled to set-off against any amounts payable by the Secretary of State under the National Rail Contract:
- (a) any amount or liability payable or due to the Secretary of State under or in relation to the National Rail Contract or the Previous Agreement (whether such amount or liability is present, contingent and/or future, liquidated or unliquidated); and
  - (b) any monetary penalty payable under the Act.
- 4.3 Notwithstanding paragraph 4.1, the Secretary of State shall be entitled to set off any liability for payment under Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) against any sum owed to the Secretary of State by the Operator under Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*).

## 5. Miscellaneous Provisions

### 5.1 *Waivers*

- (a) Any Party may at any time waive any obligation of any other Party owed to it under the National Rail Contract and the obligations of the Parties hereunder shall be construed accordingly.
- (b) No waiver by any Party of any default by any other Party in the performance of such Party's obligations under the National Rail Contract shall operate or be construed as a waiver of any other or further such default, whether of a like or different character. A failure to exercise or delay in exercising a right or remedy under the National Rail Contract shall not constitute a waiver of any right or remedy or a waiver of any other rights or remedies and no single or partial exercise of any right or remedy under the National Rail Contract shall prevent any further exercise of such right or remedy or the exercise of any other right or remedy.
- (c) A waiver of any right or remedy under the National Rail Contract or by law is only effective if given in writing by the Secretary of State.
- (d) The terms of the National Rail Contract shall only be capable of waiver or variation in writing in accordance with this paragraph 5.1 (*Waivers*) and paragraph 8 (*Variations*) of Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*) (respectively).

### 5.2 *Time Limits*

Where in the National Rail Contract any obligation of a Party is required to be performed within a specified time limit (including an obligation to use all reasonable endeavours or reasonable endeavours to secure a particular result within such time limit): (i) that obligation shall be deemed to continue after the expiry of such time limit if such Party fails to comply with that obligation (or secure such result, as appropriate) within such time limit; (ii) the Parties shall consult on the relevant Party's failure to perform the obligation within the specified time limit; and (iii) the relevant Party shall, as applicable, continue to use all reasonable endeavours or reasonable endeavours to do or procure that the relevant thing is done as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter.

### 5.3 *Partial Invalidity*

If any provision in the National Rail Contract is held to be void, illegal, invalid or unenforceable, in whole or in part, under any enactment or rule of Law, such provision or part shall to that extent be deemed not to form part of the National Rail Contract but the legality, validity and enforceability of the remainder of the National Rail Contract shall not be affected.

### 5.4 *Further Assurance*

Each Party agrees to execute and deliver all such further instruments and do and perform all such further acts and things as shall be necessary or expedient for the carrying out of the provisions of the National Rail Contract.

### 5.5 *Rights of Third Parties*

- (a) A person who is not a Party to the National Rail Contract shall have no right under the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999 to enforce any term of the National Rail Contract except to the extent set out in this paragraph 5.5.
- (b) Any Successor Operator or potential Successor Operator nominated by the Secretary of State and notified to the Operator and the Operator for the purposes of this paragraph 5.5 may enforce and rely on the provisions of Chapter 9.5 (*Exit Management*) to the same extent as if it were a Party but subject to paragraphs 5.5(c) and 5.5(d).
- (c) The National Rail Contract may be terminated, and any term may be amended or waived, in each case in accordance with the terms of the National Rail Contract, without the consent of any person nominated under paragraph 5.5(b).
- (d) The person nominated under paragraph 5.5(b) shall only be entitled to enforce and rely on Chapter 9.5 (*Exit Management*) to the extent determined by the Secretary of State (whether at the time of nomination or at any other time) and, to the extent that

any such person is entitled to enforce and rely on Chapter 9.5 (*Exit Management*), any legal proceedings in relation thereto must be commenced within one (1) year of the expiry of the Contract Period and any such person shall not be entitled to enforce or rely on Chapter 9.5 (*Exit Management*) to the extent that it has consented to any particular act or omission of the Operator which may constitute a contravention of Chapter 9.5 (*Exit Management*) or has been afforded a reasonable opportunity to indicate to the Operator that it is not so consenting and has not so indicated (the extent of such reasonable opportunity to be determined by the Secretary of State unless otherwise agreed).

#### 5.6 ***Secretary of State's Consent or Approval***

Where any provision of the National Rail Contract provides for any matter to be subject to the consent or approval of the Secretary of State, then (subject only to the express terms of that provision as to the basis on which that consent or approval may be given or withheld) the Secretary of State shall be entitled to give that consent or approval subject to any condition or conditions as the Secretary of State considers appropriate, which may include the adjustment of any of the terms of the National Rail Contract.

#### 5.7 ***Enforcement Costs***

The Operator shall compensate the Secretary of State for all reasonable costs incurred by the Secretary of State as a result of the Operator failing to perform its obligations under the National Rail Contract in accordance with their terms in the exercise of the Secretary of State's rights under Chapter 9.4 (*Remedies and Dispute Resolution*).

#### 5.8 ***Arm's Length Dealings***

The Operator shall ensure that every contract or other arrangement or transaction to which it may become a party in connection with the National Rail Contract with any person is on bona fide arm's length terms.

#### 5.9 ***Non-Discrimination***

The Operator shall not discriminate in:

- (a) seeking offers in relation to, or in awarding, a contract for the purchase or hire of goods, or the purchase of services; or
- (b) making offers in relation, or in awarding, a contract for the sale of goods or the sale of services,

in either case on the grounds:

- (a) of nationality, against a person who is a national of and established in a relevant state; or
- (b) that the goods to be supplied under the contract originate in a relevant state.

For the purposes of this clause, "relevant state" means:

- (i) any state which is a party to the EEA agreement entered into on 2 May 1992 (as updated from time to time) where such discrimination is prohibited under the Trade and Cooperation Agreement or under any free trade agreement (whenever entered into) between the United Kingdom and the EEA; and/or
- (ii) any other state which is a party to a Free Trade Agreement where that Free Trade Agreement prohibits such discrimination.

#### 5.10 ***Statutory Director's Written Confirmation, Statement and/or Certificate***

It shall be a contravention of the National Rail Contract if any written confirmation, statement and/or certification from a statutory director of the Operator, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, in any material respect, is untrue, inaccurate and/or misleading.

#### 5.11 ***No Partnership or Agency***

Nothing in this Contract is intended to, or shall be deemed to, establish any partnership or joint venture between any of the Parties, constitute any Party the agent of another Party, or

authorise any Party to make or enter into any commitments for or on behalf of any other Party.

#### 5.12 **Survival**

The following provisions and any other provisions of this Contract (as amended by the terms of this Contract as applicable) reasonably required for the purpose of giving full effect to such provisions or for any other purpose shall survive the termination or expiry of this Contract for any reason and shall continue in full force and effect in accordance with their terms unless and until the Secretary of State instructs otherwise, and the continued operation of such provisions following the termination of this Contract pursuant to clause 2 shall not constitute a Trigger Event for the purposes of this Contract:

- (a) Clause 3 (*General Obligations*);
- (b) Clause 5 (*Notices*);
- (c) Clause 6 (*Entire Agreement*);
- (d) paragraph 3.2 (*Maintenance of Records*) of Chapter 1.1 (*Corporate Information*);
- (e) paragraph 1.2 (*Small and Medium-sized Enterprises*) and 2.2 (*Business Continuity Plan*) of Chapter 1.2 (*Strategies and Plans*);
- (f) Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*);
- (g) Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*);
- (h) Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*);
- (i) Chapter 7.4 (*Financial Covenants and Bonds*);
- (j) paragraph 7 (*Termination of National Rail Contract*) of Chapter 7.6 (*Railways Pension Scheme*);
- (k) paragraph 8 (*Conflicts between this Contract and the Business Plan*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*);
- (l) paragraph 9 (*Termination of Key Contracts*) of Chapter 9.2.1 (*Key Contracts*);
- (m) paragraph 19.2 (*Designation of Assets comprised in Business Plan Commitments as Primary Assets*) of Chapter 9.2.2 (*Key Assets - Designation of Assets*);
- (n) paragraph 2 (*Removal of Branding*), paragraph 4 (*Licence to Operator's Intellectual Property*), paragraph 6 (*Rail Passenger Counts Database*) and paragraph 7 (*Intellectual Property Rights and General Provisions*) of Chapter 9.3 (*Branding and Intellectual Property*);
- (o) Chapter 9.4 (*Remedies and Dispute Resolution*) except for the provisions of Chapter 9.4.3 (*Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the National Rail Contract*);
- (p) paragraphs 1.2 and 1.4 (*Handover Package Status*) and paragraphs 3.3 and 3.5 (*Key Personnel List*) of Chapter 9.5.1 (*Handover Package*);
- (q) Chapter 9.5.2 (*Reletting Provisions and Maintenance as a Going Concern*);
- (r) Chapter 9.5.3 (*Provisions applying on and after Termination*);
- (s) Chapter 9.6 (*Confidentiality and Data Protection*);
- (t) Chapter 9.7 (*Miscellaneous Legal Terms*); and
- (u) Chapter 10 (*Definitions and Interpretation*).

#### 5.13 **Counterparts**

This Contract may be executed in any number of counterparts all of which when taken together shall constitute one and the same instrument.

### 6. **Competition**

6.1 In so far as the Transaction is:

- (a) notified to the European Commission under Council Regulation (EC) 139/2004 concerning the control of concentrations between undertakings as amended from time to time (the “**EU Merger Regulation**”);or
- (b) within the jurisdiction of the CMA in the United Kingdom (including as a result of a referral under Article 4(4) or Article 9 of the EU Merger Regulation),

and the Transaction remains under consideration by a Competition Authority at the Start Date the Operator shall use all reasonable endeavours expeditiously to progress the consideration of the Transaction by the relevant Competition Authority.

- 6.2 Without prejudice to the generality of paragraph 6.1, the Operator shall respond in a timely manner to all requests for information and/or documents made by the Competition Authority, respond to any issues letter, issues statement or statement of objections, provide comments on any working papers on which the Competition Authority invites comments, attend any meeting (including issues meetings, state of play meetings or hearings), respond to any provisional findings and notice of possible remedies, respond to any provisional decision on remedies and attend any remedies hearing.
- 6.3 The Operator shall report to the Secretary of State on at least a weekly basis or as frequently as the Secretary of State shall require on the progress of the consideration of the Transaction by the Competition Authority and immediately concerning any material developments in the case. The Operator shall promptly provide to the Secretary of State copies of all material communications with the Competition Authority, including requests for information and/or documents made by the Competition Authority, submissions and responses with supporting evidence, as well as hearing transcripts (provided always that the Operator may redact from such copies information which is confidential to the Operator and which may if disclosed to the Secretary of State prejudicially affect the Operator’s legitimate business interests).
- 6.4 If at any time the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) determines that a Competition Event has arisen, the Secretary of State shall have the right to give written notice to the Operator informing it that such Competition Event has arisen (“**Competition Event Notice**”) and the provisions of paragraph 2.5 (*Definition of Termination Events*) of Chapter 9.4.1 (*Events of Default and Termination Events*) shall apply.

## 7. **Subsidy Control, State Aid and Procurement Regulations**

- 7.1 The Operator shall maintain and comply with a procurement policy that is consistent with all requirements (including all publication or notification requirements that apply from time to time) of the Utilities Contracts Regulations 2016 (“**Procurement Policy**”). In addition, the Procurement Policy shall require the Operator to act in accordance with Commercial Considerations when conducting procurements which are not subject to the Utilities Contracts Regulations 2016. The Operator shall act in accordance with such Procurement Policy in relation to all processes to procure goods and services that are commenced during the Contract Term.
- 7.2 The Operator acknowledges and agrees that the National Rail Contract must not result in any financial advantage being granted to the Operator that is incompatible with any of the following (together, the “**Subsidies Rules**”): Chapter 3: Subsidy control of Title XI of Part Two of the Trade and Cooperation Agreement; EU rules on State aid and, in particular, Articles 107 and 108 of the Treaty on the Functioning of the European Union insofar as those rules are applicable pursuant to the Northern Ireland Protocol; any other rules on subsidy control contained in any legislation enacted in the United Kingdom, or contained in any Free Trade Agreement, that apply to the National Rail Contract from time to time. In that regard, it is noted in particular that Chapter 7 (*Financial Obligations, Incentives & Scorecards*) defines the parameters on the basis of which the compensation payment for discharging the public service obligations is to be calculated. In accordance with Articles 4(1) and 6(1) of Regulation 1370, these parameters have been determined in such a way that no compensation payment may exceed the amount required to cover the net financial effect on costs incurred and revenues generated in discharging the public service obligations, taking account of revenue relating thereto kept by the Operator and a reasonable profit. At the end of the term of the National Rail Contract, the Secretary of State will carry out an ex-post check to ensure that there has been no overcompensation for the discharge of the public service obligations over the duration of the National Rail Contract in violation of Regulation 1370, or any other financial advantage that is identified as having been granted as a result of the National Rail

Contract in violation of the Subsidies Rules. The Secretary of State will recover, in accordance (where applicable) with any mechanism that exists from time to time to enforce the Subsidies Rules and/or Regulation 1370, any overcompensation of the Operator over the duration of the National Rail Contract in violation of Regulation 1370 or any other financial advantage that is identified as having been granted as a result of the National Rail Contract in violation of the Subsidies Rules, and the Operator agrees to repay such monies promptly.

- 7.3 Subject to paragraph 7.4, the Operator shall act in accordance with Commercial Considerations when selling goods or services.
- 7.4 Where the Operator is selling tickets for, or any other right to, travel on Passenger Services, the provisions of paragraph 7.3 do not apply.

**8. Governing Law and Jurisdiction**

The National Rail Contract (and any non-contractual obligations arising out of or in connection with it) shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of England and Wales and the Parties irrevocably agree that the courts of England and Wales are to have exclusive jurisdiction to settle any disputes which may arise out of or in connection with the National Rail Contract, except as expressly set out in the National Rail Contract.



## Chapter 10 – Definitions and Interpretations

### Chapter 10 - Definitions and Interpretations

**CHAPTER 10****DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATION**

1.	Interpretation
2.	Agreed Documents
3.	Definitions

## Chapter 10

### Definitions and Interpretation

#### 1. Interpretation

- 1.1 For the purposes of this agreement, “**National Rail Contract**” means this Contract and the Direct Award Collateral Agreement which together constitute a single agreement. The National Rail Contract is a “*franchise agreement*” for the purposes of the Act.
- 1.2 In the National Rail Contract, except to the extent the context otherwise requires:
- (a) words and expressions defined in Part I of the Act have the same meanings when used therein provided that, except to the extent expressly stated, “railway” shall not have the wider meaning attributed to it by section 81(2) of the Act;
  - (b) words and expressions defined in the Interpretation Act 1978 have the same meanings when used in the National Rail Contract;
  - (c) references to “Parties” shall mean the Secretary of State and the Operator (and references to a “Party” shall mean the Secretary of State or the Operator as the context requires);
  - (d) the words “include”, “including” and “in particular” are to be construed without limitation;
  - (e) references to any “person” include its successors, transferees or assignees;
  - (f) the words “subsidiary”, “subsidiary undertaking” and “parent undertaking” each have the same meaning in the National Rail Contract as in section 1162 of the Companies Act 2006;
  - (g) references in any of the agreements comprising the National Rail Contract to Recitals, clauses, Chapters, Parts of Chapters, paragraphs of Chapters and Appendices to Chapters are to Recitals, clauses, Chapters, Parts of Chapters, paragraphs of Chapters and Appendices to Chapters of that agreement, unless expressly specified to the contrary, and the Chapters and Appendices form part of the agreement in which they appear;
  - (h) references in any Chapter in any of the agreements comprising the National Rail Contract to a Part, paragraph or Appendix are references to a Part, paragraph or Appendix of that Chapter (or the relevant Part of a Chapter), unless expressly specified to the contrary;
  - (i) headings and references to headings shall be disregarded in construing the National Rail Contract;
  - (j) references to any enactment include any subordinate legislation made from time to time under such enactment and are to be construed as references to that enactment as for the time being amended or modified or to any enactment for the time being replacing or amending it and references to any subordinate legislation are to be construed as references to that legislation as for the time being amended or modified or to any legislation for the time being replacing or amending it;
  - (k) references to an agreement or any other document shall be construed as referring to that agreement or document as from time to time supplemented, varied, replaced, amended, assigned or novated;
  - (l) references to any particular provisions of any agreement or any other document shall be construed to include any other provisions of, or incorporated in, that agreement or other document which the Secretary of State reasonably considers have an equivalent effect or are intended to fulfil the same function;
  - (m) amendments to or variations of contracts or arrangements include assignments, novations or other transfers of rights and/or obligations (in whole or in part) under such contracts or arrangements;

- (n) words importing the masculine gender include the feminine and vice versa, and words in the singular include the plural and vice versa;
  - (o) wherever provision is made for the giving or issuing of any notice, endorsement, consent, approval, waiver, certificate or determination by any person, unless otherwise specified, such notice, endorsement, consent, approval, waiver, certificate or determination shall be in writing and the words “notify”, “endorse”, “consent”, “approve”, “waive”, “certify” or “determine” and other cognate expressions shall be construed accordingly;
  - (p) references to materials, information, data and other records shall be to materials, information, data and other records whether stored in electronic, written or other form;
  - (q) references to the Operator bidding for Train Slots or a Timetable shall mean the final action incumbent on the Operator under the Network Code to confirm to the Infrastructure Manager its interests in the Train Slots to which that confirmation relates, and “bid” shall be construed accordingly;
  - (r) references to the period of validity of any Fare are references to its period of validity excluding any rights of any purchaser thereof to extend such period under the Passenger’s Charter, any equivalent document, or the terms and conditions attaching to such Fare (including any applicable conditions of carriage) in the event of the cancellation or delay of any of the railway passenger services for which such Fare is valid;
  - (s) references to “railway passenger services” are to be construed subject to section 40 of the Railways Act 2005;
  - (t) references to the “provision of railway passenger services” include the organisation of the relevant train movements and making the necessary arrangements with the Infrastructure Manager or any other relevant Facility Owner;
  - (u) references in lower case letters to terms defined in paragraph 3 (*Definitions*) shall be construed, where relevant, as being references to the terms defined as such in a franchise agreement or relevant agreement made under section 30 of the Act or section 6 of the Railways Act 2005 with any other Train Operator;
  - (v) references to sums of money being expended by the Operator shall be to such sums exclusive of Value Added Tax;
  - (w) the words “shall not be liable” are to be construed as meaning that no contravention of the National Rail Contract and no Event of Default shall arise as a result of the occurrence of the matter to which such words relate;
  - (x) references to a “contravention of the National Rail Contract” or a “contravention” (and cognate expressions) are to be construed as meaning a breach of the National Rail Contract;
  - (y) wherever provision is made for the Operator to “procure” or “ensure” the delivery of an obligation under the National Rail Contract, unless otherwise specified, that provision shall be construed as a primary obligation on the Operator to deliver that obligation;
  - (z) references to “profit” shall be construed as meaning profit before corporation tax, determined in accordance with GAAP; and
  - (aa) references to “process” or “processing” or “processed” are to be construed in accordance with the Data Protection Legislation for the purposes of paragraph 4.1 of Chapter 9.2.2 (*Key Assets - Designation of Assets*), paragraph 5 of Chapter 9.3 (*Branding and Intellectual Property*), paragraph 12.1 of Chapter 9.6 (*Confidentiality and Data Protection*), and paragraph 11 (*Data Protection*) of Chapter 9.6 (*Confidentiality and Data Protection*).
- 1.3 Where there is a requirement on the Operator to “**fully and effectively co-operate**” with one (1) or more other third parties with regard to an objective, that requirement relates to the quality of co-operation to be provided by the Operator taking into account and subject to the response of the other third parties concerned. Subject to the detailed provisions of Chapter 3

(*Collaboration*), it does not indicate an obligation on the Operator beyond co-operation, relating to the funding of detailed design and development of an infrastructure project, actual delivery or subsequent operation (including in each case performance, cost and revenue effects). It does indicate that the Operator shall participate actively in relation to the relevant objective including through the application of management time and internal resources, correspondence and attendance at meetings, in each case as the Operator reasonably considers in all of the circumstances to be an appropriate use of its resources and effective to achieve the relevant objective.

- 1.4 Where reference is made in the National Rail Contract to the last twelve (12) or thirteen (13) months of the Contract Period, such period shall be deemed to commence on the earliest of the following dates:
- (a) the date which is twelve (12) or thirteen (13) months, as the case may be, prior to the Expiry Date or if the actual date of expiry of the Contract Period is known the date which is twelve (12) or thirteen (13) months prior to that date; or
  - (b) such earlier date as the Secretary of State may determine.
- 1.5 Any such period described in paragraph 1.4 above (which may be longer or shorter than twelve (12) or thirteen (13) months, as the case may be) shall expire on the Expiry Date or, if earlier:
- (a) in the case of periods commencing under paragraph 1.4(b), the date falling twelve (12) or thirteen (13) months after the date of any notice under paragraph 1.4(b); or
  - (b) such earlier date as the Secretary of State may determine.
- 1.6 In the National Rail Contract, the Secretary of State is acting as part of the Crown.
- 1.7 Notwithstanding any other provisions of the National Rail Contract:
- (a) the following words and expression contained in paragraph 3 (*Definitions*) of this Chapter 10 (*Definitions and Interpretation*) shall be disappplied:
    - (i) Commuter Fares;
    - (ii) Commuter Fares Basket;
    - (iii) Commuter Fares Document or CFD;
    - (iv) CPAY;
    - (v) CPAY Agreement;
    - (vi) London Station;
    - (viii) Pay As You Go Agreement;
    - (ix) PAYG Peak Fare;
    - (x) PAYG Off-Peak Fare;
    - (xi) PAYG Zone; and
    - (xiv) Suburban Station;
  - (b) the provisions of this Contract shall be disappplied to the extent that:
    - (i) such provisions (including Chapter 8) relate to Commuter Fares, the Commuter Fares Basket and the Commuter Fares Document and all applicable definitions relating thereto; and
    - (ii) such provisions relate to the words and/or expressions set out at paragraph 1.7(a).

## 2. Agreed Documents

2.1 References to documents “**in the agreed terms**” are references to documents initialled by or on behalf of the Secretary of State and the Operator.

2.2 As at the date of this Contract, the documents “**in the agreed terms**” are as follows:

<b>BP</b>	Business Plan;
<b>DSMI</b>	Data Site Monitor and Index;
<b>DL</b>	Depot Lease;
<b>EP</b>	Expenses Policy;
<b>NRCA</b>	Network Rail Collateral Agreement;
<b>PC</b>	Passenger’s Charter;
<b>PFD</b>	Protected Fares Document;
<b>POA</b>	Power of Attorney;
<b>PSM</b>	Passenger Survey Methodology;
<b>SL</b>	Station Lease;
<b>STB</b>	Season Ticket Bond;
<b>SA</b>	Supplemental Agreement;
<b>SAMP</b>	Station Asset Management Plan;
<b>TS</b>	Transfer Scheme;
<b>TFCP</b>	Train Formation Capacity Plan;
<b>TSR</b>	Train Service Requirement; and
<b>TTSM</b>	Ticketless Travel Survey Methodology.

## 3. Definitions

3.1 In the National Rail Contract, except to the extent the context otherwise requires, the following words and expressions have the following meanings:

“ <b>Acceptable Insight Rating</b> ”	has the meaning given in paragraph 3 of Appendix 3 ( <i>Scorecard Criteria</i> ) to Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
“ <b>Access Agreement</b> ”	has the meaning given to the term “ <b>access agreement</b> ” in section 83(1) of the Act;
“ <b>Accessibility Panel</b> ”	means the regular forum of disabled passengers, including users of assisted travel, which the Operator must operate and consult on accessibility issues by virtue of section B5 of the Accessible Travel Policy Guidance and which the Operator shall establish from the Start Date;
“ <b>Accessible Travel Policy</b> ”	means the Operator’s policy for accessible travel which the Operator is required to establish and review from time to time in accordance with the conditions of its Licences in respect of the operation of railway passenger services and/or stations;
“ <b>Accessible Travel Policy Guidance</b> ”	means the “Accessible Travel Policy: Guidance for Train and Station Operators”, published by the ORR in July 2019 as amended and/or replaced from time to time;
“ <b>Act</b> ”	means the Railways Act 1993 (as modified, amended or replaced by the Transport Act 2000, the Railways Act 2005 and the Deregulation Act 2015) and any regulations or orders made thereunder;
“ <b>Action Plan</b> ”	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 9.1(e) of Chapter 4.4 ( <i>Operational Performance</i> );

**“Actual All Cancellations Performance Level”**

means, in respect of a Reporting Period, the All Cancellations Figures most recently published by Network Rail for that Reporting Period in relation to the Operator;

**“Actual Annual Losses”**

means in relation to a Contract Year:

the sum of:

- (a) the aggregate amount of Disallowable Costs incurred in the Contract Year;
- (b) the aggregate amount of Revenue Foregone in the Contract Year;
- (c) the aggregate value of all SoS Claims in the Contract Year;
- (d) all Actual Costs incurred by the Operator in the Contract Year which were not reimbursed in the Contract Payment for that Contract Year;
- (e) any costs reimbursed in any Contract Payment relating to any preceding Contract Year which during the Contract Year have been agreed or determined to be Disallowable Costs pursuant to paragraph 4 of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*);
- (f) any revenue not taken account of in any Contract Payment relating to any preceding Contract Year which during the Contract Year has been agreed or determined to be Revenue Foregone pursuant to paragraph 4 of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*); and
- (g) any costs reimbursed in any Contract Payment relating to any preceding Contract Year which have during the Contract Year, been agreed or determined to not be Actual Costs (excluding Disallowable Costs) pursuant to paragraph 4 of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*), if and to the extent that in the period between such costs being reimbursed and the agreement or determination that they were not Actual Costs, the Secretary of State has consented to the Operator declaring or paying a Permitted Dividend.

minus:

- (i) an amount equal to the total Fixed Fee and Performance Based Fee earned by the Operator for the relevant Contract Year,

calculated in each case, on the basis of the Operator’s Audited Accounts Reconciliation for the relevant Contract Year and as agreed between the Parties or determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 8.1 (a)(viii) of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*). For the avoidance of doubt the Actual Annual Losses may be positive or negative;

**“Actual Consist Data”**

means information as to the type of individual vehicles of rolling stock in the Train Fleet which are actually used to form a train on any particular Passenger Service and the manner in which they are configured, which may or may not be the same as the Scheduled Consist Data for the same service;



**“Actual Costs”**

means costs, expenses (including payments) and liabilities reasonably and properly incurred by the Operator arising out of or in connection with the operation of the Rail Services in accordance with this Contract and:

- (a) on the accruals accounting basis;
- (b) net of any future likely discounts, rebates or price reductions; and
- (c) calculated on a gross, actual basis (whether or not the Operator accounts on the agency basis),

provided that if the Operator’s profit and loss account includes any cost(s) in respect of right of use assets treated in accordance with IFRS16 (the “**IFRS16 Cost**”), then for the purpose of this definition the amount for each IFRS16 Cost shall be deemed to be replaced (for the purposes of this definition and all related consequential purposes under this Contract) with the amount which would have applied if the cost had been treated on a cash basis, as such cost is incurred in accordance with the relevant contractual arrangements, rather than in accordance with IFRS16,

including:

- (i) in relation to the First Reporting Period only, an amount equal to the Net Book Value of the Transferring Fixed Assets,

but excluding:

- (i) Contract Payments (including any Fixed Fee and/or any Performance Based Fee);
- (ii) Disallowable Costs;
- (iii) corporation tax, deferred tax and any other accounting adjustments relating to Taxation;
- (iv) the amount of any interest payable by the Operator to the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 3.1 of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*);
- (v) amounts paid to the Secretary of State or any third parties in relation to SoS Claims;
- (vi) any accounting transaction included in the Management Accounts, Annual Management Accounts, Annual Audited Accounts or Audited Accounts Reconciliation but which does not require the Operator to make a cash payment including notional pensions accounting adjustments, the accounting impact of financial instrument revaluations and depreciation and amortisation;
- (vii) any debits shown in the profit and loss account in the Management Accounts, the Annual Management Accounts, the Annual Audited Accounts or the Audited Accounts Reconciliation which arise from the reversal of amounts of income previously accrued, deferred or provided for which have subsequently been reversed, which shall instead be treated as Actual Revenue;

- (viii) for the avoidance of doubt, any costs relating to the Previous Agreement;
- (ix) any Advisory Support Costs agreed or determined pursuant to paragraph 18 of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*); and
- (x) any interest paid or payable by the Operator on PCG Advances (as defined in the Funding Deed);

**“Actual Passenger Demand”**

has the meaning given to it in paragraph 15.1 of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*);

**“Actual Performance Level”**

means, as applicable with respect to the relevant OP Component, the Operator’s actual performance in any Reporting Period in relation to:

- (a) TOC on Self Cancellations, as determined by the TOC on Self Cancellations Re-Calculation carried out pursuant to paragraph 3.1(b) of Chapter 4.4 (*Operational Performance*) in the second Reporting Period after the relevant Reporting Period in respect of which the Operator’s performance is measured;
- (b) TOC Minutes Delay, as determined by the TOC Minutes Delay Re-Calculation carried out pursuant to paragraph 4.1(b) of Chapter 4.4 (*Operational Performance*) in the second Reporting Period after the relevant Reporting Period in respect of which the Operator’s performance is measured; or
- (c) Short Formations, as determined by the Short Formations Re-Calculation carried out pursuant to paragraph 5.1(b) of Chapter 4.4 (*Operational Performance*) in the second Reporting Period after the relevant Reporting Period in respect of which the Operator’s performance is measured,

in each case disregarding the potential impact of any outstanding claims with respect to any Force Majeure Event relating to TOC on Self Cancellations, TOC Minutes Delay or Short Formations (as applicable) in the relevant Reporting Period;

**“Actual T-3 Performance Level”**

means, in respect of a Reporting Period, the T-3 figures most recently published by Network Rail for that Reporting Period in relation to the Operator;

**“Actual T-15 Performance Level”**

means, in respect of a Reporting Period, the T-15 figures most recently published by Network Rail for that Reporting Period in relation to the Operator;

**“Actual Profit”**

means, with respect to any PBF Assessment Period:

- (a) the Actual Revenue; less
- (b) the Actual Cost,

in each case with respect to such PBF Assessment Period;

**“Actual Revenue”**

means the total revenue of the Operator received or receivable on the accruals accounting basis in relation to this Contract, being:

- (a) all revenue whatsoever from any source; and
- (b) calculated on a gross, actual basis (whether or not the Operator accounts on the agency basis),

and (for the avoidance of doubt) including:

- (i) any revenue received or receivable by the Operator under any Track Access Agreement (including under Schedules 4 or 8 to such Track Access Agreement) (and any amounts paid or payable under Schedules 4 or 8 to such Track Access Agreement, shall be treated as a negative revenue and shall not be Actual Costs);
- (ii) (A) any revenue earned without making any deduction or allowance for amounts which the Secretary of State considers (acting reasonably and taking into account the relevant circumstances) has been lost or reduced as a result of the Operator's breach of its obligations under this Contract or as a result of the fraud or dishonesty of any Business Employee and, for the avoidance of doubt any such amounts lost or reduced shall be treated as Revenue Foregone; and  
 (B) an amount equal to the amount of revenue which was not received or receivable by the Operator (including debts or other receivables waived, not collected or written off) but which the Secretary of State determines (acting reasonably and taking into account the relevant circumstances) would have been received or receivable by a Good and Efficient Operator and, for the avoidance of doubt any such amounts lost or reduced shall be treated as Revenue Foregone,  
 and for the purpose of limbs (ii)(A) and (ii)(B) only, any breach by the Operator of paragraph 8 (*Consequences for Poor Performance – Enforcement Benchmarks*) of Chapter 4.4 (*Operational Performance*) shall be disregarded where the circumstances resulting in such breach do not amount to a breach of any other relevant obligation of the Operator pursuant to this Contract;
- (iii) cash or other consideration received or receivable on disposal of any assets (including any cash or other consideration received or receivable from a Successor Operator) provided that the purchase of those assets was an Actual Cost;
- (iv) compensation (or equivalent) paid or payable by the Operator (whether pursuant to the Passenger's Charter (or otherwise)), and for the avoidance of doubt, such compensation shall not be Actual Costs; and
- (v) retail or other commission, allowances or similar payments, paid or payable by the Operator (and for the avoidance of doubt, such commission, allowances or similar payments paid or payable by the Operator shall not be Actual Costs);

but excluding:

- (A) Contract Payments (including any Fixed Fee and/or any Performance Based Fee);

- (B) any accounting transaction included in the Management Accounts, the Annual Management Accounts, the Annual Audited Accounts or the Audited Accounts Reconciliation but which does not entitle the Operator to receive a cash payment. (Examples include notional pensions accounting adjustments, the accounting impact of financial instrument or other revaluations and (except with prior agreement from the Secretary of State) gains from hedging activity);
- (C) any other transactions where and to the extent that, as part of a revenue stream the Operator makes a payment, nets off a payment or otherwise foregoes revenue in lieu of a payment (which shall be classified as costs);
- (D) cash or other consideration received or receivable on disposal of any assets where the purchase of those assets was not an Actual Cost;
- (E) the amount of any interest payable by the Secretary of State to the Operator in accordance with paragraph 3.1 of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*); and
- (F) any credits shown in the profit and loss account in the Management Accounts, the Annual Management Accounts, the Annual Audited Accounts or the Audited Accounts Reconciliation which arise from the reversal of amounts of expenditure previously accrued, prepaid or provided for which have subsequently been reversed, which shall instead be treated as Actual Costs;

**“Actual Train Mileage”**

means the actual train mileage operated during each Reporting Period by each train used in the provision of the Passenger Services (excluding any actual train mileage operated as a result of positioning or other movements of rolling stock vehicles outside the Timetable) and **“Actual Train Miles”** shall be construed accordingly;

**“Actuary”**

has the meaning given to it in the Pension Trust;

**“Additional Boxing Day Services”**

has the meaning given to it in paragraph 14.1 (b) of Part 2 of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*);

**“Additional Requirement”**

means, in relation to any Affiliate Contract, each requirement set out in paragraph 8.6(b)(ii) (*Affiliate Trading*) of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*);

**“Administration Fee”**

has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.5 (*Change of Control and Facilitation Fee*) of Chapter 1.1 (*Organisation and Management*);

**“Advance Purchase Train-specific Fares”**

has the meaning given to it under the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement;

**“Advisory Support Costs”**

means the reasonable advisory support costs properly incurred in preparing and submitting the Business Plan for the Initial Business Plan Year and Modelling Suite prior to entry into this Contract which comply with the provisions and requirements of the note entitled “NRC1 – Reimbursement of Costs” issued by the Secretary of State on 28 January 2021 to the Secretary of State’s web based data

	site and portal containing documents and information relation to the TransPennine Express Direct Award;
<b>“Advisory Support Costs Payment” or “ASCP”</b>	means the financial adjustment (if any) calculated in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 18 ( <i>Advisory Support Costs Payment</i> ) of Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> );
<b>“Affected Party”</b>	means, in respect of the Operator (including where Operator is an unincorporated joint venture or consortium, the members of that unincorporated joint venture or consortium) or the Operator (such party being the <b>“Affected Party”</b> ): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) any tax return of the Affected Party submitted to a Relevant Tax Authority on or after 1 October 2012 is found on or after 1 April 2013 is found to be incorrect as a result of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) a Relevant Tax Authority successfully challenging the Affected Party under the General Anti-Abuse Rule or the Halifax Abuse Principle or under any tax rules or legislation that have an effect equivalent or similar to the General Anti-Abuse Rule or the Halifax Abuse Principle;</li> <li>(ii) the failure of an avoidance scheme which the Affected Party was involved in, and which was, or should have been, notified to a Relevant Tax Authority under the DOTAS or any equivalent or similar regime; and/or</li> </ul> </li> <li>(b) any tax return of the Affected Party submitted to a Relevant Tax Authority on or after 1 October 2012 gives rise, on or after 1 April 2013, to a criminal conviction in any jurisdiction for tax related offences which is not spent at the Start Date or to a civil penalty for fraud or evasion;</li> </ul>
<b>“Affected Service Quality Area”</b>	has the meaning given to such term in paragraph 17.1(b) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“Affected Service Quality Indicator”</b>	has the meaning given to such term in paragraph 17.1(a) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“Affiliate”</b>	means, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) in respect of any person (“A”): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) any person which A Controls or which Controls A; or</li> <li>(ii) any person which is Controlled by any other Affiliate of A; and</li> </ul> </li> <li>(b) any person which directly or indirectly (including as a shareholder in any immediate parent undertaking): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) holds any share capital in the Operator;</li> <li>(ii) in the event of the winding-up or other analogous event in respect of the Operator would be entitled to any share or receive any assets of the Operator which are available for distribution; or</li> <li>(iii) has any voting power in the Operator,</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	and for the purpose of this definition none of Network Rail or NR or HS2 Limited shall be construed as being an affiliate of the Secretary of State;
<b>“Affiliate Contract”</b>	means any agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement entered into by the Operator with an Affiliate other than any Access Agreement or other cross-industry arrangement;
<b>“Affiliate Counterparty”</b>	means an Affiliate of the Operator who is a party to an Affiliate Contract or Group Contract (as the case may be);
<b>“Agreed Update”</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the updates to the Cost Budget (and any consequential amendments to the applicable Cost Category, Record of Assumptions and/or terms of this Contract) to reflect a Cost Budget Change, as agreed or determined pursuant to the provisions of paragraphs 2.5, 2.6 or 2.7 of Chapter 7.5 (<i>Variations, Changes and Amendments</i>); and/or</li> <li>(b) the updates to the applicable Amendable Financial Target(s) (and any consequential amendment to the Record of Assumptions and/or terms of this Contract) to reflect a Financial Target Amendment, as agreed or determined pursuant to the provisions of paragraph 2.10 of Chapter 7.5 (<i>Variations, Changes and Amendments</i>);</li> </ul>
<b>“All Cancellations”</b>	means the sum of Cancellations, Partial Cancellations, Network Rail Cancellations and Network Rail Partial Cancellations relating to the Rail Services as produced and/or published by Network Rail;
<b>“All Cancellation Figures”</b>	means the moving annual average percentage published by Network Rail in respect of All Cancellation, rounded to two (2) decimal places;
<b>“All Cancellations Measure”</b>	means, for each Reporting Period, each of the benchmarks specified in the All Cancellations Table for that Reporting Period;
<b>“All Cancellations Table”</b>	means the table entitled “All Cancellations Table” as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“Alternative Survey”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 19.6 of Part 2 ( <i>NRPS and Wavelength</i> ) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> )
<b>“Amendable Financial Target”</b>	means a: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Target Cost;</li> <li>(b) Target Cost Maximum Fee Performance Level;</li> <li>(c) Target Cost Nil Fee Performance Level;</li> <li>(d) Target Profit;</li> <li>(e) Target Profit Maximum Fee Performance Level;</li> <li>(f) Target Profit Nil Fee Performance Level;</li> <li>(g) Target Revenue;</li> <li>(h) Target Revenue Maximum Fee Performance Level; and/or</li> <li>(i) Target Revenue Nil Fee Performance Level,</li> </ul>

- as the case may be;
- “Amendable Target”** means an Amendable Financial Target and/or an OP Target (as applicable);
- “Ancillary Service”** means:
- (a) the selling, lending or hiring of any goods or rights and the provision of any services (whether for a charge or not) on any train used in the provision of the Passenger Services where such goods or services are sold or provided principally for consumption or use on the relevant train, including the sale of any Fares, meals, light refreshments, newspapers, magazines, books, entertainment materials information or materials targeted at tourists and other leisure passengers (such as maps) or phone cards;
  - (b) the provision of any service at any station which, if provided on a train used in the provision of the Passenger Services, would fall within paragraph (a) or which, if provided at a Station, would fall within the meaning of the term Station Services and which, in each case, is made available only or principally to persons at such stations who either are about to travel or have recently travelled on a train used in the provision of the Passenger Services;
  - (c) the selling at any location of any Fare which is valid, in whole or in part, on the Passenger Services and the selling of any other Fare at any location where such Fares may be purchased from the Operator on or before the date of the National Rail Contract or at any other location, provided that the majority of Fares sold at any such other location shall be Fares which are valid, in whole or in part, on the Passenger Services;
  - (d) the selling, in conjunction with any Fare, of any other rights which entitle the purchaser thereof to:
    - (i) travel on any other train or light rail service;
    - (ii) travel on any aircraft;
    - (iii) travel on any shipping or ferry service;
    - (iv) travel on any bus; or
    - (v) attend any event or attraction or enter any location;
  - (e) the lending, seconding, hiring or contracting out of Business Employees to other Train Operators in order to enable such Train Operators to provide services at the Stations to passengers travelling on any such operator’s trains;
  - (f) the provision of information relating to railway passenger services within Great Britain to passengers through telephone, internet, mobile data services or other appropriate means;
  - (g) the supervision, management and training of train crew of other Train Operators provided such activity is necessarily incidental to the provision of the



Passenger Services and could not reasonably be carried out by or through an Affiliate of the Operator;

- (h) the licensing or permitting of any other person (including an Affiliate of the Operator) to carry out any activity or business, in connection with the provision of the Rail Services, or otherwise, on any rolling stock vehicle operated by the Operator, at any station served by the Passenger Services, at any Depot, or otherwise (including the letting, leasing or licensing (on an exclusive basis or otherwise) of any part or all of a Station or Depot to such other person);
- (i) such other activity or business as may be reasonably necessary for the purpose of providing any other Rail Services or complying with the National Rail Contract, provided that it could not reasonably be carried out by or through an Affiliate of the Operator;
- (j) the subleasing to any other person of the following property which is not comprised in a Station or Depot: none;
- (k) the provision or operation of Charter Services, subject to the Planned Train Mileage of such Charter Services not exceeding in any Reporting Period two per cent (2%) of the Planned Train Mileage of Passenger Services provided by the Operator in such Reporting Period;
- (l) the provision of consultancy services reasonably ancillary to the provision of the other Rail Services; and
- (m) any services or activity not falling within the meaning of the term Light Maintenance Services, or (a) to (l) above, subject to the gross value of any such services or activity (excluding any attribution of costs) not exceeding twenty five thousand pounds (£25,000) per annum in each Contract Year, per item and in aggregate, two hundred and fifty thousand pounds (£250,000) per annum in each Contract Year provided that in the second and each subsequent Contract Year, these amounts will be increased by RPI;

**“Annual Adjustment” or “AADJ”** means the annual adjustment to the Periodic Contract Payment calculated pursuant to Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*);

**“Annual Audited Accounts”** means the accounts of the Operator which:

- (a) comply with of the requirements of Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*); and
- (b) are delivered to the Secretary of State by the Operator in accordance with paragraph 1.5(b) of Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*) and certified by the Operator’s auditors as true and fair;

**“Annual Management Accounts”** means the management accounts of the Operator which:

- (a) comply with of the requirements of Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*); and

(b) are delivered to the Secretary of State by the Operator in accordance with paragraph 1.5(a) of Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*);

**“Annual PBF Specifications”**

has the meaning given in paragraph 2.5 (*Changes to the Applicable Assessment Methodology*) in Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*);

**“Annual Season Ticket”**

means a Season Ticket Fare which is valid in Standard Class Accommodation from (and including) the day on which it first comes into effect until (but excluding) the day which falls twelve (12) months after such day;

**“Applicable Assessment Methodology”**

means, with respect to:

- (a) each QTM PBF Component, the relevant Scorecard Methodology or the relevant Quantified Target Methodology;
- (b) the Customer Satisfaction Fee, Customer Satisfaction Scorecard A or Customer Satisfaction Scorecard B;
- (c) the Business Management Fee, the relevant Scorecard Methodology;
- (d) the Financial Performance Fee:
  - (i) the FP Scorecard Methodology;
  - (ii) the FP Cost QTM;
  - (iii) the FP Revenue QTM; or
  - (iv) the FP Profit QTM,
 in each case with or without application of the FP TT QTM,

as may be designated as applicable to the relevant PBF Component from time to time:

- (e) in the Business Plan applicable to the relevant PBF Assessment Period; or

by any agreement with or direction by the Secretary of State in the course of the relevant PBF Assessment Period in accordance with paragraph 2.7 (*Changes to the Applicable Assessment Methodology*) or paragraph 6 (*Exceptional Events*) of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*);

**“Applicable FP Sub-Components”**

means, where the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee is:

- (a) the FP Scorecard Methodology, the FP Cost QTM or the FP Revenue QTM:
  - (i) the FP Cost Sub-Component;
  - (ii) the FP Revenue Sub-Component; and
  - (iii) (if the FP TT QTM is applied), the FP TT Sub-Component;
- (b) the FP Profit QTM:
  - (i) the FP Profit Sub-Component; and
  - (ii) (if the FP TT QTM is applied), the FP TT Sub-Component;

**“Apprenticeship”**

means (as the context requires) an individual apprenticeship pursuant to:

- (a) an apprenticeship programme operated by the Operator:
  - (i) in connection with an apprenticeships framework listed on the Federation for Industry Sector Skills & Standards’ “Frameworks Library” (as located at the date of this Contract at: <http://www.afo.sscalliance.org/frameworkslibrary/>); and
  - (ii) in compliance with the “Specification of Apprenticeship Standards for England” pursuant to the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009; and/or
- (b) an apprenticeship programme operated by the Operator pursuant to (and in accordance with applicable requirements of) such statutory apprenticeships system as may be introduced in replacement of, or in variation or addition to, the apprenticeships frameworks system described in paragraphs (a)(i) and (ii) above,

and references to **“Apprenticeships”** shall be construed accordingly;

**“Apprenticeships Data Collection Form”**

means the excel table provided by the Secretary of State and populated by the Operator specifying in relation to each Contract Year the number of Apprenticeships to be commenced in such Contract Year, the number of such Apprenticeships at each of level 1 – 8, the role and skills category within which each such Apprenticeship falls and other information as the table may be amended or replaced by the Secretary of State;

**“Apprenticeships Requirement”**

has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.4 of Chapter 2.1 (*Diversity and Inclusion and Training and Development*);

**“Approved Affiliate Contract”**

means a contract or arrangement entered into between the Operator and an Affiliate of the Operator to which the Secretary of State has consented to:

- (a) in accordance with paragraph 8.7 of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*); or
- (b) on or prior to the Start Date,

save that if such contract or arrangement is renewed (including the continuation of any such contract or arrangement beyond its original term) and/or varied then the provisions of paragraph 8.7 of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) shall apply to such renewal and/or variation of the contract or arrangement;

**“Assessment Methodology Notification”**

has the meaning given in paragraph 2.7(a) (*Changes to the Applicable Assessment Methodology*) of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*);

**“Assets”**

means the property, rights and liabilities designated as such pursuant to paragraph 1 of Chapter 9.2.2 (*Key Assets - Designation of Assets*) but excluding such property, rights or liabilities as shall, in accordance with the terms of the National Rail Contract, cease to be so designated;

<b>“Assumed Schedule of Contributions”</b>	means the schedule of contributions for an Operator Pension Section which as at the date of agreement or determination of the Cost Budget, Target Cost Template or Target Profit Template (as applicable) applies for the relevant Contract Year or PBF Assessment Period;
<b>“Audited Accounts Reconciliation”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 1.5(b)(ii) of Chapter 7.3 ( <i>Management Information</i> );
<b>“Background IP”</b>	means all Intellectual Property Rights owned by or licensed to a Party that exist at the start of the Contract Period and/or which are created or developed during the Contract Period independently by a Party or its third party licensor separately from the performance or receipt of Rail Services or any obligations under this Contract;
<b>“BAME”</b>	means Black, Asian and Minority Ethnic;
<b>“Bank”</b>	means a person which has a permission under Part 4A of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 to carry on the regulated activity of accepting deposits thereunder and which is reasonably acceptable to the Secretary of State;
<b>“Bank Holiday”</b>	means any day other than a Saturday or Sunday on which banks in the City of London are not open for business;
<b>“Base Cash Position”</b>	means [REDACTED <sup>54</sup> ] (excluding the value of Season Ticket Fare suspense liabilities) or such other value as the Secretary of State may determine in accordance with paragraph 9.7 of Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> );
<b>“Benchmark Levels”</b>	<p>means each of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the Breach Performance Levels and Default Performance Levels with respect to each of TOC on Self Cancellations, TOC Minutes Delay and Short Formations;</li> <li>(b) the SQR Benchmark with respect to each Service Quality Area;</li> <li>(c) the NRPS Benchmark with respect to each NRPS Measure; and</li> <li>(d) the Breach Ticketless Travel Benchmark;</li> </ul> <p>in each case as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan, or as may be agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 2.7(b) of Chapter 7.2 (<i>Performance Based Fee</i>);</p>
<b>“Bond Provider”</b>	<p>means any person or persons who may provide or be an obligor under a Season Ticket Bond from time to time and who shall, unless the Secretary of State otherwise agrees, be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) a Bank; or</li> <li>(b) an insurance company,</li> </ul> <p>in each case with the Relevant Credit Rating;</p>

---

<sup>54</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<b>“Bond Year”</b>	means the period beginning on the Start Date and ending on 31 March 2022 and any subsequent period of thirteen (13) Reporting Periods beginning on the day after the end of the preceding Bond Year provided that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the Operator and the Secretary of State may agree to vary the Reporting Period in which a Bond Year ends from time to time; and</li> <li>(b) the last Bond Year shall expire on the expiry of the Contract Period and may be a period of less than thirteen (13) Reporting Periods;</li> </ul>
<b>“Boxing Day Services”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 14.1(a) of Chapter 4.1 ( <i>Service Development</i> );
<b>“BP Background”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 9.1 ( <i>Ownership of Business Plan IP</i> ) of Chapter 7.7 ( <i>Business Plan</i> );
<b>“BP Foreground”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 9.2 ( <i>Ownership of Business Plan IP</i> ) of Chapter 7.7 ( <i>Business Plan</i> );
<b>“Brand Licence”</b>	means any licence between the Secretary of State (or any company wholly owned by the Secretary of State) and the Operator in respect of any registered or unregistered trademarks which are listed in Schedule 1 ( <i>Licensed IP</i> ) of the relevant licence;
<b>“Breach Performance Level”</b>	means, in relation the relevant Enforcement Benchmark for any Reporting Period, the number set out in the relevant column of the Enforcement TOC on Self Cancellations Benchmarks Table, the Enforcement Short Formations Benchmarks Table, the Enforcement TOC Minutes Delay Benchmarks Table and (as the case may be) in the row of the applicable table for that Contract Year;
<b>“Breach Ticketless Travel Benchmark”</b>	means the value in relation to the Ticketless Travel Rate as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan, or as may be agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 2.7(b) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“British Transport Police”</b>	means the British Transport Police Authority and the British Transport Police Force created pursuant to section 18 and section 20 of the Railways and Transport Safety Act 2003 (or any successor or successors to its statutory policing functions);
<b>“BTP Methodology”</b>	means the document in which the British Transport Police sets out the ‘Threat, Risk, Harm (TRH)’ performance monitoring approach and worked examples, a copy of which is available from the Secretary of State;
<b>“Buildings Research Establishment Environmental Assessment Method” or “BREEAM”</b>	means the internationally recognised environmental assessment method and rating system for buildings developed by Building Research Establishment Limited or any other standard which is generally recognised as having replaced it;
<b>“Business Continuity Plan” or “BCP”</b>	means a business continuity and disaster recovery plan (including a Force Majeure Events recovery plan) required to be produced, maintained and implemented by the Operator in accordance with the requirements of paragraph 2 of Chapter 1.2 ( <i>Strategies and Plans</i> );
<b>“Business Employee”</b>	means:

- (a) any employee of the Operator from time to time; and
- (b) any other person who is an employee of any Affiliate of the Operator or is an employee of any party to whom the Rail Services or services which are in support of or ancillary to the Rail Services have been subcontracted (at any tier) or delegated by the Operator; and
- (c) in the case of (a) or (b) whose contract of employment would (subject to the exercise of such person's right to object to the transfer) be transferred to a Successor Operator following the expiry of the Contract Period by virtue of the operation of Law (including the Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) Regulations 2006) or in respect of whom liabilities arising from a contract of employment or employment relationship may be so transferred;

**“Business Management Fee” or “BM”**

means the element of the Performance Based Fee attributable to the sum of:

- (a) Business Plan Quality;
- (b) Business Plan Delivery; and
- (c) Collaboration;

**“Business Plan”**

means, with respect to the Initial Business Plan Year, the business plan in the agreed terms marked **BP**:

- (a) as agreed between the Parties prior to the date of this Contract in accordance with paragraph 2 (*Initial Business Plan*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*); or
- (b) as the same may be replaced from time to time in respect of:
  - (i) each Subsequent Business Plan Year and (if applicable);
  - (ii) the Extension Business Plan Year in accordance with paragraph 3 (*Annual Business Plan Process*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*),

and (in each case) may otherwise only be revised in accordance with paragraph 6 (*Business Plan Revisions*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*);

**“Business Plan Approach”**

means any strategies, actions, and processes that the Operator intends to take or follow (as applicable), as described in any Business Plan, for the purposes of delivering:

- (a) the Operator's obligations under this Contract;
- (b) the Business Plan Commitments set out in such Business Plan; and
- (c) the Business Plan KPIs set out in such Business Plan,

in each case with respect to the relevant Business Plan Year;



<b>“Business Plan Commitments”</b>	means the contractual obligations which the Operator is required to deliver in relation to any Business Plan Year, which (in respect of each Business Plan Component in the Business Plan) are identified as ‘Business Plan Commitments’ in the Business Plan, and which shall include the achievement of milestones and other indicators of progress towards associated longer-term requirements as described in the Outline Business Plan;
<b>“Business Plan Components”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 1.1(a) of Chapter 7.7 ( <i>Business Plan</i> );
<b>“Business Plan Delivery”</b>	means the element of the Performance Based Fee attributable to the Operator’s performance in delivering the Business Plan with respect to the Business Plan Year corresponding to the relevant PBF Assessment Period, including time and delivery of expected outputs, outcomes and performance against the Business Plan Commitments and Business Plan KPIs;
<b>“Business Plan KPIs”</b>	means, in relation to a Business Plan, the key performance indicators, which shall be measurable expressions of specific outputs and/or outcomes, used to measure the Operator’s performance against the Business Plan in relation to a Business Plan Year (provided that to the extent that the Operator’s performance against any QTM Targets or Amendable Financial Targets is assessed pursuant to Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> ), no Business Plan KPI shall measure the Operator’s performance in relation to the relevant outputs and/or outcomes so assessed);
<b>“Business Plan KPI Improvement Plan”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 5.5 of Chapter 7.7 ( <i>Business Plan</i> );
<b>“Business Plan Period”</b>	means, in respect of any Business Plan, the Business Plan Year to which such Business Plan relates, together with a period of three (3) years following the end of such Business Plan Year (regardless of whether such period extends beyond the Contract Term);
<b>“Business Plan Quality”</b>	means the element of the Performance Based Fee attributable to the extent to which the Business Plan with respect to the relevant Subsequent Business Plan Year meets the Secretary of State’s requirements and demonstrates innovation and ambition;
<b>“Business Plan Revision”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 6.2 ( <i>Business Plan Revisions</i> ) of Chapter 7.7 ( <i>Business Plan</i> );
<b>“Business Plan Year”</b>	means the Initial Business Plan Year and each Subsequent Business Plan Year;
<b>“Cancellation”</b>	means a Passenger Service: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) which is included in the Enforcement Plan of the Day and which is cancelled for reasons attributed to the Operator pursuant to its Track Access Agreement; or</li> <li>(b) which is included in the Enforcement Plan of the Day and which operates less than fifty per cent (50%) of its scheduled mileage (as prescribed in the Enforcement Plan of the Day) for reasons attributed to the Operator pursuant to its Track Access Agreement;</li> </ul>



<b>“Cancellations Figures”</b>	<p>means the number of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Cancellations and Partial Cancellations; and</li> <li>(b) Network Rail Cancellations and Network Rail Partial Cancellations,</li> </ul> <p>in each case, relating to the Passenger Services operated in each Reporting Period;</p>
<b>“Cascaded Rolling Stock”</b>	<p>means rolling stock proposed to be used by the Operator in the provision of the Passenger Services the availability of which is, in the opinion of the Secretary of State, directly or indirectly dependent upon the successful introduction into service of any Relevant Rolling Stock by any other Train Operator;</p>
<b>“Cash Balance”</b>	<p>means in respect of any Weekday during the Contract Period, the Operator’s actual cash balance excluding the value of Season Ticket Fare suspense liabilities as at the end of business hours on the previous Weekday;</p>
<b>“CCTV Guidance”</b>	<p>means the Rail Delivery Group’s “<i>National Rail &amp; Underground Closed Circuit Television (CCTV)</i>” guidance, the British Transport Police’s “<i>Output Requirements from Video Systems</i>” guidance, Home Office’s “<i>Surveillance Camera Code of Practice June 2013</i>”, each as updated from time to time and any other guidance reasonably required by the Secretary of State;</p>
<b>“Ceased Services”</b>	<p>has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.3(c) of Part 1 (<i>Service Quality Regime</i>) of Chapter 5.5 (<i>Customer Experience Performance</i>);</p>
<b>“Ceiling Cash Position”</b>	<p>means [REDACTED<sup>55</sup>] (excluding the value of Season Ticket Fare suspense liabilities) or such other value as the Secretary of State may determine in accordance with paragraph 9.7 of Chapter 7.1 (<i>Contract Payments</i>);</p>
<b>“Central Government Body”</b>	<p>means a body listed in one of the following sub-categories of the Central Government classification of the Public Sector Classification Guide, as published and amended from time to time by the Office for National Statistics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Government Department;</li> <li>(b) Non-Departmental Public Body or Assembly Sponsored Public Body (advisory, executive, or tribunal);</li> <li>(c) Non-Ministerial Department;</li> <li>(d) Executive Agency; or</li> <li>(e) any other body that is a limited company and is controlled directly or indirectly by a Government Department;</li> </ul>
<b>“Change of Control”</b>	<p>has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.1 (<i>Change of Control and Facilitation Fee</i>) of Chapter 1.1 (<i>Organisation and Management</i>);</p>

---

<sup>55</sup> **2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.**

**“Change of Law”**

means the coming into effect after the date of the National Rail Contract of:

- (a) Legislation; or
- (b) any applicable judgment of a court of Law which changes a binding precedent,

the terms of which apply only to the railway industry, a particular section of the railway industry or the provision of services to the railway industry and not to other transport modes or to industries other than the railway industry, and without limitation:

- (i) excluding any changes in Taxation;
- (ii) excluding any changes which were foreseeable at the date of the National Rail Contract, and for this purpose, but without limitation, there shall be regarded as foreseeable any Legislation which on the date of the National Rail Contract has been published:
  - (A) in a draft parliamentary bill as part of a government departmental consultation paper;
  - (B) in a parliamentary bill;
  - (C) in a draft statutory instrument; or
  - (D) as a proposal in the Official Journal of the European Union except to the extent that such proposal is intended to apply solely within member states other than the United Kingdom,

to the extent that the same is subsequently enacted in substantially the same form as the form in which it was previously so published. In relation to the application of this sub paragraph (ii), each TSI shall be considered separately.

Change of Law (1) includes any Legislation, which only applies to the railway industry, which is made under the Health and Safety at Work etc. Act 1974 and which is not excluded under (i) and (ii) (a **“Specifically Included Change of Law”**), but (2) excludes any Legislation (other than a Specifically Included Change of Law) which is made with the intention or effect of specifically applying to (or disapplying in relation to) the railway industry any other Legislation which does not apply only to the railway industry;

**“Charge Variation”**

means a variation:

- (a) to a Relevant Agreement; and
- (b) which is effected as a result of a Charging Review (including any variation in connection with an Incremental Output Statement Charge);

**“Charging Review”**

means:

- (a) the exercise by the ORR of its powers under:
  - (i) Part 7 of Schedule 7 of the Track Access Agreement to which the Operator is a Party

- on the Start Date or any Replacement Agreement which is or is deemed to be a Relevant Agreement in accordance with the definition of that term;
- (ii) Condition F11.4 (*Review of Long Term Charge*) of the Station Access Conditions in relation to any station which is not an Independent Station; or
- (iii) Condition F12.4 (*Review of Access Generally*) of the Station Access Conditions in relation to any station which is not an Independent Station; or
- (iv) Condition 42.4 (*Review of the Long Term Charge*) of the Independent Station Access Conditions in relation to any station which is an Independent Station or a Station;
- (b) the following by the ORR of the procedure in Schedule 4A of the Act;
- (c) the exercise by the ORR of any of its powers or the following of any other procedure, which, in the Secretary of State's reasonable opinion:
  - (i) has an equivalent effect to; or
  - (ii) is intended to fulfil the same function as,
 

any of the powers referred to in paragraphs (a) or (b) in relation to any Relevant Agreement provided that, without limitation, the exercise by ORR of any of its approval rights under Condition F12 of the Station Access Conditions shall not be considered to have an equivalent effect to or fulfil the same function as any of the powers referred to in paragraphs (a) or (b). For this purpose, Relevant Agreement includes any Relevant Agreement which is not the subject of any previous Charging Review; or
- (d) any amendment to a Relevant Agreement, or entry into a new Relevant Agreement which is approved by the ORR to the extent that it relates to an Incremental Output Statement Charge or a scheme to which that charge relates;

**“Charter Service”**

means a railway passenger service, whether operated on the same routes as the Passenger Services or not:

- (a) which is not reflected in the Timetable;
- (b) which does not conform to the pattern of railway passenger services normally provided by the Operator;
- (c) for which the advance booking or booking arrangements for seats on the relevant service are, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, materially different from those generally applicable to the Passenger Services;
- (d) for which tickets are available on a restricted basis or on terms and conditions which, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, are materially

	different from those generally applicable to the Passenger Services; and/or
	(e) for which the departure time, journey time and calling pattern are, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, materially different from those of the Passenger Services,
	and which, in the opinion of the Secretary of State, is not a railway passenger service provided by the Operator as part of the Passenger Services;
<b>“Child Price”</b>	means, in relation to any Fare, the amount charged or chargeable to a person under the age of 16 in respect of such Fare;
<b>“Closed Scheme Employees”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.2 of Chapter 7.6 ( <i>Railways Pension Scheme</i> );
<b>“Closure”</b>	means a discontinuance or closure under Part 4 of the Railways Act 2005 of any of the Passenger Services or of any network on which the Passenger Services may be operated or of any of the Stations or of any part of such network or Station;
<b>“CMA”</b>	means the Competition and Markets Authority;
<b>“Code of Practice”</b>	means the code of practice for protecting the interests of users of railway passenger services or station services who have disabilities, as prepared, revised from time to time (with the approval of the Disabled Persons Transport Advisory Committee) and published by the Secretary of State pursuant to section 71B of the Act and which is available at <a href="https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/accessible-railway-stations-design-standards">https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/accessible-railway-stations-design-standards</a> (or such other applicable web address that is adopted by the Secretary of State from time to time);
<b>“Collaboration”</b>	means the element of the Performance Based Fee attributable to collaboration with Network Rail, the Secretary of State and applicable stakeholders;
<b>“Collective Agreement”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992;
<b>“Combined Methodology”</b>	means, with respect to each of the FP Cost Sub-Component, the FP Revenue Sub-Component and the FP Profit Sub-Component, the relevant methodology with respect to such Applicable FP Sub-Component (as applicable) as set out in Appendix 6 ( <i>Combined Methodology</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Commercial Considerations”</b>	means considerations of price, quality, availability, marketability, transportation and other terms and conditions of purchase or sale, or other factors that would normally be taken into account in the commercial decisions of a privately owned enterprise operating according to market economy principles in the relevant business or industry;
<b>“Commitment”</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) where the Transaction is within the jurisdiction of the CMA undertakings in lieu of reference for a second phase investigation offered by any Parent, the Operator or any Affiliate of the Operator that the CMA</li> </ul>

is able to accept pursuant to section 73(2) of the Enterprise Act 2002 in relation to the Transaction; or

- (ii) where the Transaction is notified to the European Commission under Council Regulation (EC) 139/2004 concerning the control of concentrations between undertakings as amended from time to time the giving by any Parent, the Operator or any Affiliate of the Operator to the European Commission of commitments to enable the European Commission to conclude that the concentration arising out of the Transaction would not impede effective competition in the common market or a substantial part of it and declare it compatible with the common market pursuant to Article 6(1)(b) of the EU Merger Regulation;

**“Community Rail Network”**

means the grassroots community network whose purpose is to support Community Rail Partnerships (previously known as the Association of Community Rail Partnerships) or any successor body;

**“Community Rail Partnership”**

means any not for profit organisation of the same name that has an interest in the development of responsive and good quality railway passenger services;

**“Community Rail Report”**

has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.6 of Chapter 5.2 (*Customer Schemes*);

**“Community Rail Route”**

means any Route in respect of which the Secretary of State determines that any relevant Community Rail Partnership has an interest;

**“Community Rail Strategy”**

means the Community Rail Development Strategy (as may be updated from time to time) published in November 2018 and which provides a broad framework within local lines can support their communities;

**“Commuter Fare”**

means any:

- (a) Weekly Season Ticket, Monthly Season Ticket, Quarterly Season Ticket and Annual Season Ticket (and their equivalent products compliant with the ITSO Specification) between each London Station and any other such station or other Suburban Station; and
- (b) unrestricted Single Fare and unrestricted Return Fare (and their equivalent products compliant with the ITSO Specification) between each London Station; and
- (c) unrestricted Single Fare and unrestricted Return Fare (and their equivalent products compliant with the ITSO Specification) from each Suburban Station to each London Station (but not in the other direction); and
- (d) PAYG Peak Fare or PAYG Off-Peak Fare (and their equivalent products compliant with the ITSO Specification) between each London Station and any other such station (and the CPAY equivalent fares),

for which the Operator is entitled to be allocated all or part of the revenue therefrom pursuant to the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement;

<b>“Commuter Fares Basket”</b>	means the grouping of Commuter Fares: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) determined by the Secretary of State pursuant to Chapter 8.2.3 (<i>Allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets</i>);</li> <li>(b) for the purposes of regulating aggregate Prices, as the case may be, in accordance with Chapter 8.2.4 (<i>Regulation of Fares Basket Values and Individual Fares</i>);</li> <li>(c) amended by the Secretary of State from time to time in accordance with Part B of Chapter 8.2.5 (<i>Exceeding the Regulated Value, Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price and Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation</i>); and</li> <li>(d) set out in the Commuter Fares Document;</li> </ul>
<b>“Commuter Fares Document” or “CFD”</b>	means the document in the agreed terms marked <b>CFD</b> as the same may be amended from time to time in accordance with Part B of Chapter 8.2.5 ( <i>Exceeding the Regulated Value, Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price and Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation</i> );
<b>“Competition Authority”</b>	means the European Commission or the CMA;
<b>“Competition Event”</b>	means an Intervention by a Competition Authority or any Commitment which could prejudice the ability of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) the Operator to operate the Rail Services in accordance with the National Rail Contract; or</li> <li>(ii) any Affiliate of the Operator to continue to operate any other rail contract of which it is the franchisee;</li> </ul>
<b>“Competition Event Notice”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 6.4 of Chapter 9.7 ( <i>Miscellaneous Legal Terms</i> ) ;
<b>“Compulsory Inter-available Flow”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement;
<b>“Computer System”</b>	means computer hardware and computer software, including licensed third party software and data protocols;
<b>“Confidential Information”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1 of Chapter 9.6 ( <i>Confidentiality and Data Protection</i> );
<b>“Connection”</b>	means a connection (however described) between any of the Passenger Services provided by the Operator and any other railway passenger service provided by the Operator or any other Train Operator or any bus, ferry or shipping service and cognate phrases shall be construed accordingly;
<b>“Contingency Plan”</b>	means a contingency plan (as defined in the Railway Operational Code or where the Railway Operational Code ceases to exist such other replacement document of a similar or equivalent nature which contains a definition of contingency plan similar to that contained in the Railway Operational Code) implemented by and at the instigation of the Infrastructure Manager, or such other contingency or recovery plan as the Secretary of State may agree from time to time;
<b>“Continuation Document”</b>	means any franchise agreement, direct award, interim franchise agreement or other arrangement pursuant to which the Operator is required to provide services for the carriage of passengers by railway which is entered into by the Operator in respect of some or all of the same Passenger



	Services by way of direct or indirect continuation of the arrangement currently in place under the National Rail Contract;
<b>“Contract”</b>	means clauses 1 to 11 and Chapters 1 to 10 including any Appendices and Annexes as varied from time to time;
<b>“Contract Documents”</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) this Contract;</li> <li>(b) the Direct Award Collateral Agreement;</li> <li>(c) the Funding Deed;</li> <li>(d) the Train Service Requirement;</li> <li>(e) any Request for Business Plan;</li> <li>(f) any Business Plan agreed or determined in accordance with Chapter 7.7 (<i>Business Plan</i>);</li> <li>(g) the Early Termination Indemnity Agreement; and</li> <li>(h) any other agreement signed by the Operator at the time of the award of the Rail Services which is in the possession of the Secretary of State and which is notified by the Secretary of State to the Operator as being required for publication;</li> </ul>
<b>“Contract Payment”</b>	means, in relation to any Reporting Period, the amount determined in accordance with paragraph 1 of Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> );
<b>“Contract Payment Component”</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) each of the components of the “<b>£CP</b>” of Chapter 7.1 (<i>Contract Payments</i>); and</li> <li>(b) any component or element, described in the relevant provisions of Chapter 7.1 (<i>Contract Payments</i>) and Chapter 7.2 (<i>Performance Based Fee</i>), as the case may be, which is used in determining or calculating the value of those components described in paragraph (a) above;</li> </ul>
<b>“Contract Performance Meeting”</b>	means a meeting between the Secretary of State and the Operator to be held in accordance with paragraph 8 of Chapter 1.1 ( <i>Organisation and Management</i> );
<b>“Contract Period”</b>	means the period commencing on the Start Date and ending on the Expiry Date or, if earlier, the date of termination of the National Rail Contract pursuant to Chapter 9.4 ( <i>Remedies and Dispute Resolution</i> );
<b>“Contract Term”</b>	means the period commencing on the Start Date and expiring on the Expiry Date;
<b>“Contract Year”</b>	means any period of twelve (12) months during the Contract Period, beginning on 1 April and ending on 31 March, except that the first Contract Year and the Final Contract Year may be for a period of less than twelve (12) months and the first Contract Year shall begin on the Start Date and the Final Contract Year shall end on the last day of the Contract Period;
<b>“Control”</b>	means, in respect of a person (“A”), that another person (whether alone or with others and whether directly or



indirectly and whether by the ownership of share capital, the possession of voting power, contract or otherwise):

- (a) has the power to appoint and/or remove all or the majority of the members of the board of directors or other governing body of:
  - (i) A;
  - (ii) any person who has equivalent rights over A; or
  - (iii) any person who A has equivalent rights over;
- (b) has the power to direct the affairs and policies of:
  - (i) A;
  - (ii) any person who has equivalent rights over A; or
  - (iii) any person who A has equivalent rights over;
- (c) is the parent undertaking of A or of any other person which is the parent undertaking of such person by virtue of section 1162(5) of the Companies Act 2006; or
- (d) possesses or is, or will be at a future date, entitled to acquire:
  - (i) twenty-five per cent (25%) or more of the share capital or issued share capital of, or of the voting power in;
    - (A) A;
    - (B) any person who has equivalent rights over A; or
    - (C) any person who A has equivalent rights over;
  - (ii) such part of the issued share capital of:
    - (A) A;
    - (B) any person who has equivalent rights over A; or
    - (C) any person who A has equivalent rights over,

as a result of which he would, if the whole of the income of such persons were distributed, be entitled to receive twenty-five per cent (25%) or more of the amount so distributed; or
  - (iii) such rights as would, in the event of the winding-up or other analogous event in respect of:
    - (A) A;
    - (B) any person who has equivalent rights over A; or
    - (C) any person who A has equivalent rights over,

entitle him to receive twenty-five per cent (25%) or more of the assets of such person

	which would then be available for distribution,
	and <b>“Controlled”</b> shall be construed accordingly;
<b>“Controlled Emission Toilet” or “CET”</b>	means a toilet fitted on a Rolling Stock Unit and which retains effluent in retention tanks such that effluent is not discharged on the rail tracks;
<b>“Controller”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Data Protection Legislation;
<b>“Cost Budget”</b>	means in respect of the first Cost Budget, the periodic cost budget (expressed in nominal prices) provided pursuant to paragraph 5.1(a) of Chapter 7.5 ( <i>Variations, Changes and Amendments</i> ) and Placed in Escrow and thereafter, means the periodic cost budget (expressed in nominal prices) generated by the Financial Cost Model as most recently Placed in Escrow;
<b>“Cost Budget Change”</b>	means any change to the Cost Budget (and as applicable the Record of Assumptions) as agreed or determined under the provisions of paragraphs 2.5, 2.6 or 2.7 of Chapter 7.5 ( <i>Variations, Changes and Amendments</i> );
<b>“Cost Budget Change Event”</b>	has the meaning given to it in Part 1 of Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.5 ( <i>Variations, Changes and Amendments</i> );
<b>“Cost Category” or “C<sub>Cat</sub>”</b>	means the cost categories containing groups of individual lines of costs as set out in the Cost Budget as most recently Placed in Escrow;
<b>“Cost Efficiency Analysis”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.3(k) ( <i>Contents of the Business Plan</i> ) of Chapter 7.7 ( <i>Business Plan</i> );
<b>“Cost Financial Target Amendment Event”</b>	means the events described in paragraphs 5 and 6 of Part 3 ( <i>Financial Target Amendment Events</i> ) of Appendix 1 ( <i>Trigger Events</i> ) to Chapter 7.5 ( <i>Variations, Changes and Amendments</i> );
<b>“Count Equipment”</b>	means any load-weigh, infrared, CCTV or other type of equipment as may from time to time be installed on any train in the Train Fleet for the purposes of (amongst other things) passenger counting, including that specified in paragraph 17 of Chapter 4.1 ( <i>Service Development</i> );
<b>“COVID-19”</b>	means the coronavirus disease 2019;
<b>“COVID-19 Guidance and Regulation”</b>	means guidance and/or regulation relating to COVID-19 as from time to time issued by the ORR, Public Health England or any other relevant government department, agencies or public bodies;
<b>“CPAY”</b>	means an arrangement operated by TfL under which contactless payment cards can be used by passengers to obtain access to the public transport services in London without the requirement for purchase of a separate ticket or permission to travel;
<b>“CPAY Agreement”</b>	means an agreement dated 30 July 2014 between Transport Trading Limited and train operators operating in London relating to the acceptance of certain contactless payment cards for “pay as you go” journeys in London;
<b>“Creating”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement, cognate expressions and references to <b>“Create”</b> shall be construed accordingly;

<b>“CRM Data”</b>	means Personal Data (including any or all of name, address, e-mail address and ticket purchasing history, credit and debit card details) collected by or on behalf of the Operator relating to persons travelling on or purchasing tickets for travel on the Passenger Services or other services for the carriage of passengers by railway;
<b>“CRM Data Obligations”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 5.4 of Chapter 9.3 ( <i>Branding and Intellectual Property</i> );
<b>“CRM System”</b>	means any system (whether a Computer System or otherwise) for the collection of CRM Data and/or onto which CRM Data is input, processed and/or held as such system may be amended or altered from time to time;
<b>“CRP Amount”</b>	means the sum of <b>[REDACTED<sup>56</sup>]</b> per Contract Year (reduced pro-rata in respect of any Contract Year of less than three hundred and sixty five (365) days);
<b>“Current Reporting Period”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.3 of Appendix 1 ( <i>Calculation of Periodic Contract Payments (PCP)</i> ) to Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> );
<b>“Current Year”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.3 of Appendix 1 ( <i>Calculation of Periodic Contract Payments (PCP)</i> ) to Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> );
<b>“Customer Report”</b>	means a report published in accordance with paragraph 1 ( <i>Customer Report</i> ) of Chapter 5.1 ( <i>Customer Information</i> );
<b>“Customer Satisfaction Fee” or “CS”</b>	means the element of the Performance Based Fee the purpose of which is to measure the Operator’s effectiveness in delivering high levels of satisfaction and positive sentiment amongst users of the Passenger Services;
<b>“Customer Satisfaction Scorecard A”</b>	means the methodology applicable to calculation of the Customer Satisfaction Fee where Customer Satisfaction Scorecard A is the Applicable Assessment Methodology, as set out in Appendix 4 ( <i>Scorecard Methodology</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Customer Satisfaction Scorecard B”</b>	means the methodology applicable to calculation of the Customer Satisfaction Fee where Customer Satisfaction Scorecard B is the Applicable Assessment Methodology, as set out in Appendix 4 ( <i>Scorecard Methodology</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Customer Service Quality Inspection”</b>	means an inspection (and provision of reports as specified) of the Operator’s customer facing systems and procedures against the Service Quality Indicators in the manner specified in Part 3 of Appendix 1 to Chapter 5.5, and in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“Dataset”</b>	means the data specified in Appendix 1 ( <i>Environmental Information</i> ) to Chapter 6 ( <i>Environment and Sustainability</i> ) as the same may be amended from time to time by the Secretary of State (acting reasonably);

---

<sup>56</sup> **2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.**

<b>“Data Protection Act”</b>	means the Data Protection Act 2018;
<b>“Data Protection Legislation”</b>	means all Laws relating to data protection, the Processing of Personal Data and privacy in force from time to time including the Data Protection Act 2018, (for so long as and to the extent that the law of the European Union has legal effect in the United Kingdom) the GDPR, and, to extent that they are applicable, the Privacy and Electronic Communications (EC Directive) Regulations 2003 (as may be amended by the proposed Regulation on Privacy and Electronic Communications);
<b>“Data Subject”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Data Protection Legislation;
<b>“Data Site Information”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.1 of Chapter 9.5.2 ( <i>Reletting Provisions and Maintenance as a Going Concern</i> );
<b>“Data Site Monitor and Index” or “DSMI”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.1 of Chapter 9.5.2 ( <i>Reletting Provisions and Maintenance as a Going Concern</i> );
<b>“Default Performance Level”</b>	means, in relation to the relevant Enforcement Benchmark for any Reporting Period, the number set out in the relevant Column of the Enforcement TOC on Self Cancellations Benchmarks Table, Enforcement TOC Minutes Delay Benchmarks Table or Enforcement Short Formations Benchmarks Table (as the case may be) in the row of the applicable table for that Contract Year;
<b>“Delay Attribution Principles and Rules”</b>	means the version of the document known as the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules referenced in the Network Code;
<b>“Delayed Cascade Mitigation Plan”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 10.7 of Chapter 9.1 ( <i>Fixed Assets</i> );
<b>“Departure Station”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2 of Appendix 1 ( <i>Accessible Transport Arrangements</i> ) to Chapter 5.3 ( <i>Accessibility and Inclusivity</i> );
<b>“Depot”</b>	means a depot in respect of which the Operator has entered into a Depot Lease;
<b>“Depot Lease” or “DL”</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) any lease of a depot to which the Operator is a party as at the Start Date; or</li> <li>(b) any other lease of a depot in relation to which the Operator becomes the Facility Owner at any time during the Contract Period;</li> </ul>
<b>“Derivative Output”</b>	means Intellectual Property Rights that are derived from or generated by the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database when querying such database (which includes the format of all reports and analysis);
<b>“Designated BP Primary Assets”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 19.1 ( <i>Designation of Assets comprised in Business Plan Commitments as Primary Assets</i> ) of Chapter 9.2.2 ( <i>Key Assets - Designation of Assets</i> );
<b>“Designated Employer”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Pension Trust;

<b>“Destination Station”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2 of Appendix 1 ( <i>Accessible Transport Arrangements</i> ) to Chapter 5.3 ( <i>Accessibility and Inclusivity</i> );
<b>“Devolved Body”</b>	means Transport for the North;
<b>“Devolved Transport Body”</b>	means, any public sector body which has been given responsibility for public passenger transport in the United Kingdom including Transport for London, Transport for Wales, Transport Scotland, Rail North, any Passenger Transport Executive or Combined Authority and any other public body with relevant public passenger transport responsibilities;
<b>“Digital Rights”</b>	means rights held at all times by Operator namely each of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the Intellectual Property Rights relating to domain names together with any linked email addresses;</li> <li>(b) the Intellectual Property Rights relating to social media handles together with any linked messaging functionality; and</li> <li>(c) any other domain names, email addresses, social media handles, URLs or other digital Intellectual Property Rights acquired for the Rail Services after the date of this Contract;</li> </ul>
<b>“Direct Agreement”</b>	means any agreement made, or to be made, from time to time between the Secretary of State and the counterparty of a Key Contract in relation to such Key Contract, including any agreement entered into by the Secretary of State under Chapter 9.2.1 ( <i>Key Contracts</i> );
<b>“Direct Award Collateral Agreement”</b>	means the agreement between the Secretary of State and the Operator regulating the rights and obligations of the Parties in the event that a legal challenge is successfully raised as a result of the entering into of this Contract;
<b>“Direct Delay”</b>	means a delay that is attributed as “Direct Delay” in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules;
<b>“Disabled Person”;</b>	is a reference to a person who has a disability as defined in the EA 2010;
<b>“Disabled Persons Transport Advisory Committee” or “DPTAC”</b>	means the committee with that name established under section 125 of the Transport Act 1985 and its statutory successors;
<b>“Disallowable Costs”</b>	means any costs or capital expenditure which are described within Appendix 2 (Disallowable Costs) to Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> ) or any other costs or capital expenditure identified as Disallowable Costs in this Contract, and may include amounts stated in any Cost Budget, Financial Cost Model and/or Record of Assumptions (as applicable) which have been Placed in Escrow;
<b>“Discount Card”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement;
<b>“Discount Fare Scheme”</b>	Means each of the following schemes as at the Start Date: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Disabled Persons Railcard Scheme dated 23 July 1995 between the participants therein;</li> <li>(b) Young Persons Railcard Scheme dated 23 July 1995 between the participants therein; and</li> </ul>

- (c) Senior Railcard Scheme dated 23 July 1995 between the participants therein; or
- (d) any other discount fare scheme approved from time to time by the Secretary of State for the purposes of section 28 of the Act,

in each case until such time as it may cease to be approved by the Secretary of State for the purposes of section 28 of the Act.

**“Dispute Handling Plan”**

has the meaning given to it in paragraph 5.2 (*Industrial Action*) of Chapter 2.2. (*Rail Workforce*);

**“Dispute Handling Policy”**

means the policy issued by the Secretary of State with the same name on, on or about the Start Date, as may be amended, supplemented or replaced from time to time;

**“Dispute Resolution Rules”**

means the procedures for the resolution of disputes known as **“The Railway Industry Dispute Resolution Rules”**, as amended from time to time in accordance with the terms thereof. The rules are available at [http://accessdisputesrail.org/RIDR/RIDR Rules.pdf](http://accessdisputesrail.org/RIDR/RIDR_Rules.pdf) (or such other applicable web address that is adopted from time to time);

**“Disputed Cancellation”**

means a Passenger Service:

- (a) which is included in the Enforcement Plan of the Day and which is cancelled; or
- (b) which is included in the Enforcement Plan of the Day and which operates less than fifty per cent (50%) of its scheduled mileage (as prescribed in the Enforcement Plan of the Day),

in either case, in circumstances where attribution of responsibility for the same is, at the relevant time, in dispute between Network Rail and the Operator pursuant to the Track Access Agreement;

**“Disputed Partial Cancellation”**

means a Passenger Service which is included in the Enforcement Plan of the Day and which:

- (a) misses a stop; or
- (b) completes fifty per cent (50%) or more, but less than one hundred per cent (100%) of its scheduled mileage as prescribed in the Enforcement Plan of the Day,

in either case, in circumstances where attribution of responsibility for the same is, at the relevant time, in dispute between Network Rail and the Operator pursuant to the Track Access Agreement;

**“DOTAS”**

means the Disclosure of Tax Avoidance Schemes rules which require a promoter of tax schemes to tell HM Revenue & Customs of any specified notifiable arrangements or proposals and to provide prescribed information on those arrangements or proposals within set time limits as contained in Part 7 of the Finance Act 2004 and in secondary legislation made under vires contained in Part 7 of the Finance Act 2004 and as extended to National Insurance Contributions by the National Insurance Contributions (Application of Part 7 of the Finance Act 2004) Regulations



	2012, SI 2012/1868 made under s.132A Social Security Administration Act 1992;
<b>“Double Arrows Symbol”</b>	means the double arrows symbol trade mark detailed in Part 1 ( <i>Registered Trade Marks</i> ) of Schedule 1 ( <i>Licensed IP</i> ) of the Brand Licence;
<b>“Draft Action Plan”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 9.1(b)(i), of Chapter 4.4 ( <i>Operational Performance</i> );
<b>“Diversity KPIs”</b>	means D&I Initiatives KPIs and D&I Characteristics KPIs;
<b>“D&amp;I Annual Report”</b>	means a report produced by the Operator developed in accordance with paragraph 1.3 of Chapter 2.1 ( <i>Diversity and Inclusion and Training and Development</i> ) in respect of the previous twelve (12) months or, if shorter, the period since the Start Date;
<b>“D&amp;I Annual Reporting Date”</b>	means the date on which the Operator must provide the D&I Annual Report to the Secretary of State as stated in the D&I Strategy, provided that if this date, in any Contract Year, occurs after the expiry of the term of this Contract then the D&I Annual Reporting Date shall be one (1) month before the expiry of the term of this Contract;
<b>“D&amp;I Champion”</b>	means the director or senior executive that is accountable and responsible for implementing the D&I Strategy and ensuring that the Operator complies with its obligations relating to diversity and inclusion (excluding the obligations in paragraph 1.4 of Chapter 2.1 ( <i>Diversity and Inclusion and Training and Development</i> ));
<b>“D&amp;I Characteristics KPIs”</b>	means the KPIs set out in the Operator’s D&I Strategy used to assess the impact of the Operator’s initiatives on diversity at different levels of the workforce and in connection with different characteristics (including gender, age, ethnicity and disability) compared to the region and/or nationally;
<b>“D&amp;I Improvement Plan”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.7 of Chapter 2.1 ( <i>Diversity and Inclusion and Training and Development</i> );
<b>“D&amp;I Initiatives KPIs”</b>	means the KPIs set out in the Operator’s D&I Strategy used to measure its performance against diversity initiatives and policies, which may include KPIs along the following lines: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the number of positive action initiatives implemented and maintained by the Operator;</li> <li>(b) the number of adverts in targeted publications;</li> <li>(c) membership of diversity and inclusion networks and forums;</li> <li>(d) the percentage of staff trained annually in diversity and inclusion;</li> <li>(e) the number of line managers completing diversity and inclusion training;</li> <li>(f) the number of members of the board of directors completing diversity and inclusion training; and</li> <li>(g) the number of diversity and inclusion training sessions;</li> </ul>
<b>“D&amp;I Strategy”</b>	means the diversity and inclusion strategy developed by the Operator and approved pursuant to the Previous Agreement as set out in the relevant annex to the Operator’s Business Plan and as may be updated from time to time in accordance



	with Chapter 7.7 ( <i>Business Plan</i> ), including by way of a Business Plan Revision;
<b>“EA 2010”</b>	means the Equality Act 2010;
<b>“EA Claim”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.1 of Chapter 5.3 ( <i>Accessibility and Inclusivity</i> );
<b>“EA Requirements”</b>	means the duties of a provider of services under sections 20(3), 20(5) and sections 20(9)(a) and 20(9)(b) in relation to section 20(4), of the EA 2010;
<b>“Early Termination Indemnity Agreement”</b>	means the deed made between the Secretary of State and the ETIA Counterparty dated on or about the date of the National Rail Contract specifying arrangements relating to the provision of an indemnity in favour of the Secretary of State for liabilities arising in relation to an early termination of the National Rail Contract or any failure by the Operator to perform or comply with any of its obligations under any applicable Supplemental Agreement;
<b>“Embedded ICP Background”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 10.5 ( <i>Cross Licensing of Industry Change Project IP</i> ) of Chapter 7.7 ( <i>Business Plan</i> );
<b>“Embedded Operational Background”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 7.10(b) ( <i>Miscellaneous IP</i> ) of Chapter 9.3 ( <i>Branding and Intellectual Property</i> );
<b>“Emergency Events”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.1(e) of Chapter 9.4.4 ( <i>Force Majeure</i> );
<b>“Emergency Working Capital Payment”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 9.4 of Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> );
<b>“Employment Agreement”</b>	means the terms and conditions of employment of any Business Employee whether contained in or otherwise incorporated or implied, including by way of custom or practice, into any Collective Agreement, individual contract of employment, employee handbook or otherwise, in each case whether or not in writing;
<b>“Employment Policy Framework”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.1(a) of Chapter 2.2 ( <i>Rail Workforce</i> );
<b>“EMV”</b>	means contactless payment cards and any other devices that conform to the international standards issued by EMVCo (owned by American Express, Discover, JCB, MasterCard, UnionPay and Visa);
<b>“Enduring Branding”</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) branding which shall not: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) bear any brand image or symbol;</li> <li>(ii) display any distinctive trademarks;</li> <li>(iii) (subject to paragraph 1.7 of Chapter 9.3 (<i>Branding and Intellectual Property</i>)) make any reference to the name of the company or entity which owns the branding, the Operator or an Affiliate of the Operator; or</li> <li>(iv) use any colour combinations, livery or other elements;</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>that are specific to the Operator, an Affiliate of the Operator or any other company and shall incorporate no other visual link to the Operator, an Affiliate of the</p>

Operator or any other company unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State; and

- (b) such trade marks as:
  - (i) the Operator applies to any Primary Asset or other asset used by it under a Key Contract that encapsulate the heritage, regional and passenger perception of railway routes served by its train services; and
  - (ii) are under the proprietorship of the Secretary of State and licensed to the Operator in accordance with the Brand Licence under paragraph 1.1 of Chapter 9.3 (*Branding and Intellectual Property*) that encapsulate the heritage, regional and passenger perception of railway routes served by its train services,

and includes the Primary Brand and the Secondary Brands;

**“Enforcement Benchmarks”**

means any of the Enforcement TOC on Self Cancellations Benchmarks, the Enforcement TOC Minutes Delay Benchmarks or the Enforcement Short Formations Benchmarks (as the context may require);

**“Enforcement Plan of the Day”**

means the Plan of the Day except for any:

- (a) additions to such Plan of the Day of any railway passenger services which are not included in the Timetable;
- (b) omissions from such Plan of the Day of any Passenger Services included in the Timetable; and/or
- (c) rescheduling in such Plan of the Day of any Passenger Services from their scheduling in the Timetable,

in each case:

- (i) as proposed by the Operator in breach of its obligations in paragraph 4 of Chapter 4.2 (*Operating Obligations*); or
- (ii) as agreed by the Operator in breach of its obligations in paragraph 3 of Chapter 4.2 (*Operating Obligations*);

**“Enforcement TOC on Self Cancellations Benchmarks”**

means for each Reporting Period within each Contract Year:

- (a) the Breach Performance Level;
- (b) the Default Performance Level;

each as applicable and as specified in the Enforcement TOC on Self Cancellations Benchmarks Table for that Contract Year;

**“Enforcement TOC on Self Cancellations Benchmarks Table”**

means the table entitled “Enforcement TOC on Self Cancellations Benchmarks” as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;

**“Enforcement Short Formations Benchmarks”**

means for each Reporting Period within each Contract Year:

- (a) the Breach Performance Level;
- (b) the Default Performance Level;

	each as applicable and as specified in the Enforcement Short Formations Benchmarks Table for that Contract Year;
<b>“Enforcement Short Formations Benchmarks Table”</b>	means the table entitled “Enforcement Short Formations Benchmark Table” as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“Enforcement TOC Minutes Delay Benchmarks”</b>	means for each Reporting Period within each Contract Year: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the Breach Performance Level;</li> <li>(b) the Default Performance Level;</li> </ul> each as applicable and as specified in the Enforcement TOC Minutes Delay Benchmarks Table for that Contract Year;
<b>“Enforcement TOC Minutes Delay Benchmarks Table”</b>	means the table entitled “TOC Minutes Delay Benchmarks” as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“Enhanced Disability Awareness Training”</b>	means training which is compliant with the requirements set out in section 4, paragraph B6 of the Accessible Travel Policy Guidance;
<b>“Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.3 of Chapter 6 ( <i>Environment and Sustainability</i> );
<b>“Environmental Impact Targets”</b>	means the targets in relation to the Operator’s environmental impact which are set out in the Operator’s Business Plan;
<b>“Environmental Impact Targets Plan”</b>	means the Operator’s plan in relation to the Environmental Impact Targets as set out in the Operator’s Business Plan, as may be updated from time to time in accordance with Chapter 7.7 ( <i>Business Plan</i> ), including by way of a Business Plan Revision;
<b>“Environmental Information Regulations”</b>	means the Environmental Information Regulations 2004 together with any guidance and/or codes of practice issued by the Information Commissioner or any relevant Central Government Body in relation to such Regulations;
<b>“Equivalent Fare”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 6.1 of Part B ( <i>Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation</i> ) of Chapter 8.2.5 ( <i>Exceeding the Regulated Value, Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price, and Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation</i> );
<b>“Equivalent Flow”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 6.1(b) of Part B ( <i>Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation</i> ) of Chapter 8.2.5 ( <i>Exceeding the Regulated Value, Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price, and Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation</i> );
<b>“ERMA”</b>	means the emergency recovery measures agreement between the Secretary of State and the Operator which was entered into on 19 September 2020 and took effect on 20 September 2020;
<b>“ERMA Extension Actual Capex”</b>	means the Actual Capex (as defined in the Previous Agreement) for the ERMA Extension Period;
<b>“ERMA Extension Actual Costs”</b>	means the Actual Costs (as defined in the Previous Agreement) for the ERMA Extension Period;
<b>“ERMA Extension Period”</b>	means the two Reporting Periods immediately preceding the Start Date (commencing on 1 April 2021 and ending on 29 May 2021);

<b>“Escrow Documents”</b>	means the Modelling Suite (including the Cost Budget and, if applicable, the Amendable Financial Targets), the Forecast Revenue, the Record of Assumptions and the Supplementary Material;
<b>“ETIA Counterparty”</b>	has the meaning given to it under the Early Termination Indemnity Agreement;
<b>“EU Merger Regulation”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 6.1 (a) ( <i>Competition</i> ) of Chapter 9.7 ( <i>Miscellaneous Legal Terms</i> );
<b>“Evening Peak”</b>	means, in relation to any Passenger Service, the period between 1600 and 1859 (inclusive) during a Weekday or such other continuous three hour period between 1200 and 2359 (inclusive) as the Secretary of State may specify from time to time;
<b>“Evening Peak Service”</b>	means a Passenger Service which departs from either a Manchester Station (as defined in the General Provisions to the TSR) or from Leeds in the Evening Peak;
<b>“Event of Default”</b>	means any of the events set out in paragraph 1 ( <i>Definition of Events of Default</i> ) of Chapter 9.4.1 ( <i>Events of Default and Termination Events</i> );
<b>“Event Steering Groups”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Network Code;
<b>“Evidence Report”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.1 of Appendix 1 ( <i>PBF Assessment Period Review</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> ) (and “ <b>Evidence Reports</b> ” shall be construed accordingly);
<b>“Exceptional Event”</b>	means an event, the effect of which, in the opinion of the Secretary of State (acting reasonably), is that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) it would no longer be reasonably practicable to collect the data required to assess the Operator’s performance against the NRPS Expected Range and/or one or more of the QTM Targets in respect of a PBF Assessment Period;</li> <li>(b) the degree of challenge involved in meeting the NRPS Expected Range and/or any one or more of the QTM Targets is likely to be increased or decreased to such a significant extent that it would no longer be appropriate to assess the Operator’s performance against such NRPS Expected Range and/or one or more of the QTM Targets; or</li> <li>(c) the degree of uncertainty with respect to the Operator’s future cost and/or revenue prospects is increased to such an extent that (even after applying any Financial Target Amendments which may also be caused by such event), it would no longer be appropriate to assess the Operator’s performance against any of the Amendable Financial Targets which are applicable at that time in the context of the then current Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee;</li> </ul>
<b>“Expenses Policy” or “EP”</b>	means the Operator’s policy in respect of expenses in the agreed terms;
<b>“Expiry Date”</b>	means the later of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) 01:59 on 28 May 2023; or</li> </ul>

	(b) any such later date that is specified by the Secretary of State pursuant to clause 2.3 ( <i>Amendment of Start Date/Expiry Date</i> ); or
	(c) any such later date to which the National Rail Contract is continued in accordance with clause 2.2 ( <i>Additional Reporting Periods</i> );
<b>“Extended Term Contract”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 12.3(a) ( <i>Contracts Associated with the delivery of Business Plan Commitments</i> ) of Chapter 7.7 ( <i>Business Plan</i> );
<b>“Extended Term Designated Contract”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 12.3(b) ( <i>Contracts Associated with the delivery of Business Plan Commitments</i> ) of Chapter 7.7 ( <i>Business Plan</i> );
<b>“Extension Business Plan Year”</b>	means the period of twelve (12) months beginning on the 1 April following the due date for expiry of the Contract Term;
<b>“Facilitation Fee”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.4 ( <i>Change of Control and Facilitation Fee</i> ) of Chapter 1.1 ( <i>Organisation and Management</i> );
<b>“Facility Owner”</b>	has the meaning given to the term facility owner in section 17(6) of the Act;
<b>“Fare”</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the right, exercisable against one or more Train Operators, subject to any applicable rights or restrictions and the payment of the relevant price, to make one or more journeys on the network or to carry on such a journey an item of luggage or an animal (where this right does not arise under the relevant conditions of carriage except on the payment of a fee) and, where applicable, to obtain goods or services from a person; and</li> <li>(b) for the purposes only of Chapter 8.2.3 (<i>Allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets</i>) to Chapter 8.2.6 (<i>Fares Regulation Information and Monitoring</i>) (inclusive) and the definitions of Commuter Fare, Protected Fare, Return Fare, Single Fare, Protected Weekly Season Ticket, Protected Return Fare and paragraph (b) of the definition of Season Ticket Fare, a Fare as defined under paragraph (a) that is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) valid for a journey or journeys on the Passenger Services included in the Timetable or other railway passenger services which are required to be included in another relevant Train Operator’s passenger timetable by the Secretary of State;</li> <li>(ii) sold under the Travelcard Agreement; or</li> <li>(iii) a Cross London Ticket (as defined in the Through Ticketing (Non Travelcard) Agreement);</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>“Fare Year”</b>	means the period from 1 January in any year to 31 December in the same year or any alternative period that the Secretary of State may specify in writing to the Operator from time to time;
<b>“Fares Basket”</b>	means either the Commuter Fares Basket or the Protected Fares Basket;

<b>“Fares Document”</b>	means any of the Commuter Fares Document and/or the Protected Fares Document;
<b>“Fares Plan”</b>	means the Operator’s plan in relation to Fares as set out in the Operator’s Business Plan, as may be updated from time to time in accordance with Chapter 7.7 ( <i>Business Plan</i> ), including by way of a Business Plan Revision;
<b>“Fares Setting Round”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement;
<b>“Final Balance Sheet”</b>	means the balance sheet included in the Operator’s Annual Audited Accounts for the last Contract Year of the Contract Period (provided pursuant to paragraph 1.5(b) ( <i>Annual Financial Information</i> ) of Chapter 7.3 ( <i>Management Information</i> ));
<b>“Final Closing Accounts”</b>	means the Operator’s Annual Audited Accounts (provided pursuant to paragraph 1.5(b) ( <i>Annual Financial Information</i> ) of Chapter 7.3 ( <i>Management Information</i> )) where the balance sheet shows that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the only amounts owed to the Operator are amounts owed by the Secretary of State, amounts in relation to unsettled taxation and any incidental debtor which the Secretary of State may determine for this purpose; and</li> <li>(b) the only creditors of the Operator are the Secretary of State, the Parent, amounts in relation to unsettled taxation and any incidental creditor which the Secretary of State may determine for this purpose;</li> </ul>
<b>“Final Closing Accounts Reconciliation”</b>	means the Audited Accounts Reconciliation relating to the Final Closing Accounts;
<b>“Final Closing Adjustment” or “FCA”</b>	means the financial adjustment (if any) calculated in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 17.2 of Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> );
<b>“Final Contract Year”</b>	means the Contract Year ending on the last day of the Contract Period;
<b>“Final Working Capital Adjustment”</b>	means the financial adjustment (if any) calculated in accordance with the provisions of paragraphs 11.1 of Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> );
<b>“Financial Conduct Authority”</b>	means the UK Financial Conduct Authority of 25 The North Colonnade, Canary Wharf, London E14 5HS and with company registered number 01920623 or such other regulatory body which may succeed or replace it from time to time;
<b>“Financial Cost Model”</b>	means the financial model within the Modelling Suite used to generate the Cost Budget and, if applicable, the Templates that derive and record the Amendable Financial Targets together with, for the first Contract Year, the Period 1 and 2 Budget (and, for the avoidance of doubt, the Periods 1 and 2 Budget does not form part of the Cost Budget);
<b>“Financial Performance Fee” or “FIN”</b>	means the element of the Performance Based Fee, the purpose of which is to measure the Operator’s effectiveness in controlling costs, driving revenue growth (subject to the constraints of the Government’s public health requirements) and deterring ticketless travel;



<b>“Financial Plan”</b>	means the financial plan forming part of each Business Plan as described in paragraph 1.3 of Chapter 7.7 ( <i>Business Plan</i> );
<b>“Financial Target Amendment”</b>	means any amendment to the Amendable Financial Target(s) as agreed or determined under the provisions of paragraph 2.12 of Chapter 7.5 ( <i>Variations, Changes and Amendments</i> );
<b>“Financial Target Amendment Event”</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) a Cost Financial Target Amendment Event;</li> <li>(b) a Revenue Financial Target Amendment Event; or</li> <li>(c) a Profit Financial Target Amendment Event,</li> </ul> as the case may be (and in each case as described in Part 3 of Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.5 ( <i>Variations, Changes and Amendments</i> ));
<b>“First Reporting Period”</b>	means the first Reporting Period to occur during the Contract Term;
<b>“First Working Capital Payment” or “FWCP”</b>	means [REDACTED <sup>57</sup> ];
<b>“Fixed Fee” or “FF”</b>	means the fixed fee part of the Fixed Fee and Performance Based Fee calculated in accordance with paragraph 12 of Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> );
<b>“Fixed Fee and Performance Based Fee” or “FFPBF”</b>	means the Contract Payment Component calculated in accordance with paragraph 12 of Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> ) comprising of the Fixed Fee and the Performance Based Fee;
<b>“Fixed or Non-Current Assets”</b>	means any asset which is a fixed or non-current asset in accordance with GAAP;
<b>“Flexible Ticket”</b>	has the meaning given in the Previous Agreement, subject to any variations that may be required by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 3.2 ( <i>Flexible Ticket</i> ) of Chapter 8.2.2 ( <i>Operator’s Obligation to Create Fares</i> );
<b>“Flexible Ticket Commencement Date”</b>	means the date on which the Flexible Ticket is to be available to passengers as described in paragraph 3.1 ( <i>Flexible Ticket</i> ) of Chapter 8.2.2 ( <i>Operator’s Obligation to Create Fares</i> );
<b>“Floor Cash Position”</b>	means [REDACTED <sup>58</sup> ] (excluding the value of Season Ticket Fare suspense liabilities) or such other value as the Secretary of State may determine in accordance with paragraph 9.7 of Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> );
<b>“Flow”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement;
<b>“FM Adjusted Performance Level”</b>	means, as applicable with respect to the relevant OP Component, the Operator’s actual performance in any Reporting Period in relation to:

---

<sup>57</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>58</sup> 2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.



- (a) TOC on Self Cancellations, as determined by the TOC on Self Cancellations Re-Calculation carried out pursuant to paragraph 3.1(c) of Chapter 4.4 (*Operational Performance*);
- (b) TOC Minutes Delay, as determined by the TOC Minutes Delay Re-Calculation carried out pursuant to paragraph 4.1(c) of Chapter 4.4 (*Operational Performance*); or
- (c) Short Formations, as determined by the Short Formations Re-Calculation carried out pursuant to paragraph 5.1(c) of Chapter 4.4 (*Operational Performance*),

in each case after accounting for any impact of any resolved claims with respect to any Force Majeure Event relating to TOC on Self Cancellations, TOC Minutes Delay or Short Formations (as applicable) in the relevant Reporting Period;

**“Force Majeure Event”**

means any of the events described as such in paragraph 1 of Chapter 9.4.4 (*Force Majeure*) where the conditions specified in paragraph 2 of Chapter 9.4.4 (*Force Majeure*) are satisfied;

**“Forecast Closing Cash Position”**

means, with respect to a Reporting Period, the Operator’s forecast working capital position (excluding the Contract Payment to be made in the following Reporting Period and excluding the value of Season Ticket Fare suspense liabilities) as at the last day of that Reporting Period as reflected in the Operator’s latest Management Accounts;

**“Forecast Passenger Demand”**

means the forecast prepared by the Operator pursuant to paragraph 2.5 of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*) in respect of:

- (a) the number of passengers travelling in each class of accommodation:
  - (i) on each Passenger Service;
  - (ii) on each Route; and/or
  - (iii) at any station or between any stations; and
- (b) the times of day, week or year at which passengers travel,

for the period in respect of which the next Timetable is to apply;

**“Forecast Revenue”**

means in respect of the first Forecast Revenue, the forecast of Actual Revenue (expressed in nominal prices) provided pursuant to paragraph 5.1(a) of Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*) and Placed in Escrow and thereafter, means the forecast of Actual Revenue (expressed in nominal prices) most recently Placed in Escrow as may be updated by the Secretary of State from time to time;

**“Foreground IP”**

means Intellectual Property Rights created, devised by or on behalf of one of the Parties during the Contract Period: (i) in the performance of Rail Services; (ii) in carrying out any activities in relation to the network which are connected with, ancillary to, or intended to benefit from the Rail Services; and/or (iii) in the course of performing any obligations under this Contract;

<b>“FP Cost QTM”</b>	means the application of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the Combined Methodology to the FP Cost Sub-Component; and</li> <li>(b) the Scorecard Methodology to the FP Revenue Sub-Component;</li> </ul>
<b>“FP In-Year Change Notice”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.7(g) ( <i>Changes to the Applicable Assessment Methodology</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“FP Profit QTM”</b>	means the application of the Combined Methodology to the FP Profit Sub-Component;
<b>“FP Revenue QTM”</b>	means the application of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the Scorecard Methodology to the FP Cost Sub-Component; and</li> <li>(b) the Combined Methodology to the FP Revenue Sub-Component;</li> </ul>
<b>“FP Scorecard Methodology”</b>	means the application of the Scorecard Methodology to both the FP Cost Sub-Component and the FP Revenue Sub-Component;
<b>“FP TT QTM”</b>	means the application of the Quantified Target Methodology to the FP TT Sub-Component (which may be included as part of any Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee);
<b>“FP Cost Sub-Component” or “FIN(Cost)”</b>	means the element of the Financial Performance Fee attributable to the Operator’s effectiveness in controlling costs, calculated in accordance with the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee;
<b>“FP Profit Sub-Component” or “FIN(Profit)”</b>	means the element of the Financial Performance Fee attributable to the Operator’s effectiveness in controlling costs and driving revenue growth (subject to the constraints of the Government’s public health requirements) and (where the FP TT QTM is not applied and deterring ticketless travel is not otherwise incentivised pursuant to Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> )) deterring ticketless travel, calculated in accordance with the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee;
<b>“FP Revenue Sub-Component” or “FIN(Revenue)”</b>	means the element of the Financial Performance Fee attributable to the Operator’s effectiveness in driving revenue growth (subject to the constraints of the Government’s public health requirements) and (where the FP TT QTM is not applied and deterring ticketless travel is not otherwise incentivised pursuant to Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> )) deterring ticketless travel, calculated in accordance with the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee;
<b>“FP TT Sub-Component” or “FIN(TT)”</b>	means the element of the Financial Performance Fee attributable to the Operator’s effectiveness in deterring ticketless travel, calculated in accordance with the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee;

<b>“Freedom of Information Act” or “FOIA”</b>	means the Freedom of Information Act 2000 together with any guidance and/or codes of practice issued by the Information Commissioner or any relevant Central Government Body in relation to the Freedom of Information Act 2000;
<b>“Free Trade Agreement”</b>	means an international free trade agreement (whether bilateral, plurilateral or multilateral) to which the United Kingdom is party, whether entered into before, on or after the date of the National Rail Contract;
<b>“Funding Deed”</b>	means the deed made between the Secretary of State, the Operator and the Guarantor dated on or about the date of the National Rail Contract specifying arrangements relating to the funding for the Operator by the Guarantor and giving rights to the Secretary of State in relation to such funding;
<b>“GAAP”</b>	means generally accepted accounting principles in the United Kingdom, as derived from and including the accounting requirements of the Companies Act 2006, <i>‘Financial Reporting Standards 100, 101 and 102’</i> , abstracts issued by the Urgent Issues Task Force of the Accounting Standards Board and, where appropriate, International Financial Reporting Standards and the listing rules of the Financial Conduct Authority, in each case, as amended from time to time;
<b>“GDPR”</b>	means the General Data Protection Regulation (Regulation (EU) 2016/679);
<b>“General Anti-Abuse Rule”</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the legislation in Part 5 of the Finance Act 2013; and</li> <li>(b) any future legislation introduced into parliament to counteract tax advantages arising from abusive arrangements to avoid national insurance contributions;</li> </ul>
<b>“Geographical Area”</b>	means that area of Great Britain bounded by a reasonably drawn line running through the railway stations at the following places: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Milngavie;</li> <li>(b) North Berwick;</li> <li>(c) Dunbar;</li> <li>(d) Berwick-upon-Tweed;</li> <li>(e) Alnmouth;</li> <li>(f) Sunderland;</li> <li>(g) Hartlepool;</li> <li>(h) Saltburn;</li> <li>(i) Whitby;</li> <li>(j) Scarborough;</li> <li>(k) Cleethorpes;</li> <li>(l) Retford;</li> <li>(m) Buxton;</li> <li>(n) West Kirkby;</li> <li>(o) Blackpool North;</li> <li>(p) Whitehaven;</li> <li>(q) Dumfries;</li> <li>(r) Kilmarnock; and</li> <li>(s) Milngavie</li> </ul>

as redefined from time to time by agreement with the Secretary of State, or in the absence of such as agreement, as determined by the Secretary of State;

**“Good and Efficient Operator”**

means in the context of all other relevant provisions of this Contract, a notional train operator:

- (a) having the same commercial, regulatory and operational arrangements as the Operator and being subject to the same operational circumstances;
- (b) which is a party to an agreement in equivalent terms to this Contract (with performance targets and standards equivalent to those set out in Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*) and which complies with its obligations under such agreement and the Licences in a timely, efficient and economical manner;
- (c) with the degree of skill, diligence, prudence and foresight which can be expected from a skilled and experienced train operator so that in this context costs and revenues are optimised in combination to the greatest extent reasonably practicable, adopting a reasonable balance in respect of short, medium and longer term consequences for the relevant rail services; and

without limiting (a) to (c), in the context of the winding down of the Operator’s affairs in the period following the end of the Contract Period, a notional train operator as described in paragraphs (a) to (c), seeking to maximise the receipts from debtors and minimise costs and payments to creditors in the realisation of its assets and discharge of its liabilities so as to ensure the largest possible available sum for distribution to its shareholders within a reasonable time, following the end of the operational period of its National Rail Contract, provided that the Secretary of State shall be entitled for the purpose of this provision by notice to the Operator from time to time to direct the period which is to be regarded as a reasonable period for this purpose;

**“Good Insight Rating”**

has the meaning given in paragraph 3 of Appendix 3 (*Scorecard Criteria*) to Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*);

**“Gross Revenue”**

means, in relation to any period and any Fare, the gross revenue to the Operator (or any relevant predecessor of the Operator) attributable to such Fare over the relevant period, excluding any applicable Value Added Tax, costs, commissions or other expenses which may be paid or incurred in connection with such Fare;

**“Group Contract”**

means an agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement entered into by an Affiliate of the Operator with a third party, under or pursuant to which any goods, services, rights and/or other benefits whatsoever are or may be enjoyed by the Operator;

**“Group Contract Supplier”**

means any party to a Group Contract which is responsible for the provision of goods, services, rights and/or other benefits which are or may be enjoyed by the Operator under or pursuant to that Group Contract;

**“Guarantor”**

has the meaning given to it under the Funding Deed;

<b>“Halifax Abuse Principle”</b>	means the principle explained in the CJEU Case C-255/02 Halifax and others;
<b>“Handover Package”</b>	has the meaning giving to it in paragraph 1.1(a)(i) of Chapter 9.5.1 ( <i>Handover Package</i> );
<b>“Hot Standby”</b>	means any rolling stock vehicle specified in the Train Formation Capacity Plan which: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) is operationally ready to provide the Passenger Services in the Timetable;</li> <li>(b) is not already assigned to the delivery of any Passenger Service in the Timetable; and</li> <li>(c) will only be used to deliver such Passenger Services if: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) a rolling stock vehicle scheduled to deliver such Passenger Services is unable to so deliver; and</li> <li>(ii) Actual Passenger Demand could only be met by the deployment in service of such rolling stock vehicle;</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>“High Speed Services”</b>	means the Passenger Services which will use the HS2 Network for some part of their route and are operated by the high speed rolling stock;
<b>“HS2 Limited”</b>	means High Speed Two (HS2) Limited, a company registered in England with registered number 06791686 whose registered office is at 2 Snowhill, Queensway, Birmingham, B4 6GA or such other entity as may be appointed infrastructure manager in relation to the HS2 Network from time to time;
<b>“HS2 Network”</b>	means the network in respect of which HS2 Limited is the Facility Owner;
<b>“HS2 Project”</b>	means the project for the construction and development of a high speed railway from London to Birmingham, Manchester and Leeds known as “HS2” or “High Speed 2” and all related infrastructure works including the enabling works at London Euston Station;
<b>“Hs2 Shadow Operator”</b>	means the entity appointed by the Secretary of State to act as shadow operator for the development and delivery of High Speed Services, and the recast of conventional services associated with the introduction of the High Speed Services, being the West Coast Partnership franchise operator or any successor shadow operator appointed by the Secretary of State from time to time;
<b>“ICP Background”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 10.1 ( <i>Ownership of Industry Change Project IP</i> ) of Chapter 7.7 ( <i>Business Plan</i> );
<b>“ICP Foreground”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 10.2 ( <i>Ownership of Industry Change Project IP</i> ) of Chapter 7.7 ( <i>Business Plan</i> );
<b>“ICP Incentivisation”</b>	means, in relation to any Industry Change Project, such further incentives or rewards (in addition to that provided for in this Contract) as may be made available to the Operator to the extent necessary for the purposes of adequately incentivising the Operator's performance or delivery of such Industry Change Project, which may include:

- (a) adjustments to any relevant elements of future Contract Payments;
- (b) payment(s) to be made by the Secretary of State to the Operator on completion of the relevant Industry Change Project (which may be variable and calculated by reference to the Operator's performance in delivering, and/or the benefits realised from, the relevant Industry Change Project); and/or
- (c) milestone payments to be paid by the Secretary of State to the Operator on completion of any applicable milestones during the course of delivery of the Industry Change Project;

**“ICP Relief”**

means, in relation to any Industry Change Project, relief from any specific requirements of and/or adverse consequences pursuant to the provisions of this Contract, as may be made available to the Operator to the extent necessary for the purposes of adequately protecting the Operator from adverse consequences resulting directly from the Operator's performance or delivery of such Industry Change Project, which may include:

- (a) relief from or adjustment to the determination of any relevant elements of the Performance Based Fee;
- (b) relief from or adjustment to the provisions of this Contract dealing with the consequences of poor performance by the Operator (including, for example, any applicable circumstances in which the Operator would otherwise be required to put in place a Remedial Plan); and
- (c) any other necessary and appropriate relief from performance,

in each case, the extent necessary in order to account for any adverse impact on the Operator pursuant to such provisions of this Contract that would otherwise arise as a direct result of the Operator's performance or delivery of the associated Industry Change Project;

**“IFRS16 Cost”**

has the meaning given in the definition of Actual Costs;

**“Immediately Effective Chapter Provisions”**

means:

- (a) paragraphs 1 (*Corporate Information*), 2 (*Change of Control and Facilitation Fee*), 3 (*Maintenance of Records*), 4 (*Right to inspect*), 5 (*Periodic Update Reports*) and 7 (*Identification of Key Personnel and Provision of Organisation Chart*) of Chapter 1.1 (*Organisation and Management*);
- (b) paragraph 2 (*Business Continuity Plan*) of Chapter 1.2 (*Strategies and Plans*);
- (c) paragraph 1 (*Duty of Cooperation*) of Chapter 3 (*Collaboration*);
- (d) paragraphs 1 (*Train Service Requirement*), 2 (*Train Formation Capacity Plan*), 6.4 (*Finalising the Train Formation Capacity Plan*) and 13 (*Subcontracting any Passenger Services*) of Chapter 4.1 (*Service Development*);



- (e) paragraph 1 (*Customer Report*) and paragraph 5.3 (*Publishing the Passenger's Charter*) of Chapter 5.1 (*Customer Information*);
- (f) paragraph 2.8 (*Community Rail Partnerships*) of Chapter 5.2 (*Customer Schemes*);
- (g) Paragraphs 1 (*Smart Ticketing*) and 2 (*Retail*) of Chapter 5.4 (*Customer Benefits*);
- (h) Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*);
- (i) paragraph 7 (*Industry Change Projects*) and paragraphs 9 (*Business Plan Intellectual Property Rights*) to 11 (*Access to IP Materials and Resources*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*);
- (j) Chapter 8.2.1 (*Purpose, Structure and Construction*);
- (k) Chapter 8.2.3 (*Allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets*);
- (l) Part B (*Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation*) of Chapter 8.2.5 (*Exceeding the Regulated Value, Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price, and Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation*);
- (m) paragraph 3 (*Vesting of Property Leases at the Start Date*), paragraph 9 (*Rolling Stock Related Contracts and Insurance Arrangements*) and paragraph 10 (*Cascaded Rolling Stock and Delayed Cascade Mitigation Plan*) of Chapter 9.1 (*Fixed Assets*);
- (n) Chapter 9.2.1 (*Key Contracts*);
- (o) paragraph 18.2 (*Information about Assets used in respect of Rail Services*) of Chapter 9.2.2 (*Key Assets - Designation of Assets*);
- (p) Chapter 9.4 (*Remedies and Dispute Resolution*);
- (q) paragraph 1.1 (*Handover Package Status*) and paragraph 3 (*Key Personnel List*) of Chapter 9.5.1 (*Handover Package*);
- (r) Chapter 9.5.2 (*Reletting Provisions and Maintenance as a Going Concern*);
- (s) paragraph 10 (*Other Train Operating Companies*) of Chapter 9.5.3 (*Provisions applying on and after Termination*);
- (t) Chapter 9.6 (*Confidentiality and Data Protection*);
- (u) the provisions of Chapter 9.7 (*Miscellaneous Legal Terms*) (save for paragraph 3.2 (*Tax Compliance*) and paragraph 6 (*Competition*)); and
- (v) Chapter 10 (*Definitions and Interpretation*);

**“Improvement Initiatives”**

means initiatives which are intended to:



- (a) improve outcomes for passengers on any or all parts of the railway network;
- (b) improve cost-efficiency and/or reduce costs in relation to any or all parts of the railway network;
- (c) generate additional revenue for all or part of the railway network;
- (d) improve environmental outcomes for all or part of the railway network; or
- (e) deliver any other benefits or support any government policy objective,

and may include:

- (i) initiatives proposed by the Secretary of State or identified proactively by the Operator;
- (ii) initiatives arising in connection with the conclusions of the Williams Rail Review; and/or
- (iii) initiatives which are capable of delivery by the Operator acting alone, and/or initiatives which would require collaboration between the Operator and other parties to deliver;

**“Incident Response Plan”**

means the plan created by the Operator pursuant to paragraph 5 of Chapter 1.2 which contains (as a minimum) the information set out in paragraph 5.2 of Chapter 1.2 (*Strategies and Plans*);

**“Incremental Output Statement Charge”**

means the charge to which that description is commonly given, first introduced into Relevant Agreements in April 2001;

**“Independent Service Quality Audits”**

has the meaning given to it in paragraph 5.1 of Part 1 (*Service Quality Regime*) of Chapter 5.5 (*Service Quality Regime*);

**“Independent Station”**

means, at any time, any station of which Network Rail (or any other person other than a Train Operator) is the Facility Owner at that time;

**“Independent Station Access Conditions”**

has the meaning given to it in the Access Agreement to which it relates;

**“Industrial Action”**

means any concerted action taken in connection with the employment of any employees of the Operator or of any of the employees of persons listed in paragraphs 1.1(f)(i) to 1.1(f)(iii) of Chapter 9.4.4 (*Force Majeure*) (whether or not that action involves any breach of such employees’ conditions of employment, and including any action taken in furtherance of a dispute, or with a view to improving the terms of employment of the relevant employees or by way of support for any other person) subject always, in the case of any unofficial industrial action, to the Operator being able to demonstrate the occurrence of such unofficial industrial action to the reasonable satisfaction of the Secretary of State;

**“Industry Change Project”**

means any scheme or proposal to introduce changes to the operation or delivery of the Rail Services that are expected to deliver long term and industry wide efficiency savings, reduced cost and/or revenue growth, but which, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, a reasonable Train Operator would not be sufficiently incentivised to deliver in accordance with the terms of this Contract (in the

absence of any ICP Incentivisation or ICP Relief) as a result of:

- (a) materially increased risk of:
  - (i) adverse impacts on the Performance Based Fee, as calculated pursuant to Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*);
  - (ii) adverse consequences for the Operator as a result of poor performance pursuant to the terms of this Contract (including, for example, requirements to put in place Remedial Plans); and/or
  - (iii) prejudice to delivery of any other Business Plan Commitments and/or performance against any Business Plan KPIs;
- (b) significantly increased reputational risk; and/or
- (c) any resulting necessity for the Operator to require materially increased deployment of and/or input from senior employees of any Parent or Affiliate of the Operator with relevant expertise, in excess of what would reasonably be expected to be required for the purposes of the day to day management of the Operator and the performance of its obligations under this Contract,

such that it would not be reasonable for the Secretary of State to require delivery of such scheme or proposal as part of a Business Plan in the absence of corresponding ICP Incentivisation and/or ICP Relief;

<b>“Industry Schemes”</b>	means multi-modal fares schemes and/or Traveline;
<b>“Information Commissioner”</b>	has the same meaning as “Commissioner” in section 3 of the Data Protection Act;
<b>“Infrastructure Manager”</b>	means: Network Rail in relation to the national rail and associated railway infrastructure;
<b>“Initial Business Plan Year”</b>	means the period beginning on the Start Date and ending on the following 31 March;
<b>“Initial Dataset”</b>	means the Dataset provided in accordance with paragraph 1.1 ( <i>Data Sharing</i> ) of Chapter 6 ( <i>Environment and Sustainability</i> ) (or the equivalent data provided under the Previous Agreement), excluding any measures which the Secretary of State agrees, acting reasonably, that the Operator was (under the Previous Agreement), or is (in accordance with the National Rail Contract) (as applicable), despite using reasonable endeavours, unable to provide;
<b>“Initial Permanent Fare”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement;
<b>“Initial Short Formations Calculation”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 5.1(a) of Chapter 4.4 ( <i>Operational Performance</i> );
<b>“Initial TOC Minutes Delay Calculation”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.1(a) of Chapter 4.4 ( <i>Operational Performance</i> )
<b>“Initial TOC on Self Cancellations Calculation”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.1(a) of Chapter 4.4 ( <i>Operational Performance</i> )

<b>“Inspections”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 5.1 of Chapter 9.5.2 ( <i>Reletting Provisions and Maintenance as a Going Concern</i> );
<b>“Institute of Asset Management”</b>	means The Institute of Asset Management, a company limited by guarantee, registered with company number 05056259 with registered office Woodlands Grange, Woodlands Lane, Bradley Stoke, Bristol, BS32 4JY or its successors;
<b>“Intellectual Property Rights”</b>	means all intellectual and industrial property rights of any kind including patents, supplementary protection certificates, rights in Know-How, registered trademarks, registered designs, unregistered design rights, unregistered trademarks, rights to prevent passing off or unfair competition and copyright (whether in drawings, plans, specifications, designs and computer software or otherwise), database rights, topography rights, any rights in any invention, discovery or process, and applications for and rights to apply for any of the foregoing, in each case in the United Kingdom and all other countries in the world and together with all renewals, extensions, continuations, divisions, reissues, re-examinations and substitutions;
<b>“Interest Rate”</b>	means a rate equivalent to two per cent (2%) per annum above the base lending rate published by Royal Bank of Scotland plc (or such other bank as the Secretary of State may, after consultation with the Operator, determine from time to time) during any period in which an amount payable under the National Rail Contract remains unpaid;
<b>“Interim Closing Accounts Reconciliation”</b>	means the Audited Accounts Reconciliation relating to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the period from the end of the Contract Period until the next 31 March;</li> <li>(b) thereafter, each year to 31 March until the 31 March before the date of the Final Closing Accounts;</li> </ul>
<b>“Interim Closing Adjustment” or “ICA”</b>	means each financial adjustment (if any) calculated in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 17.1 of Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> );
<b>“Interim PBF Component Determination”</b>	has the meaning given to that term in paragraph 2.7(d)(ii) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Inter-Operator Schemes”</b>	means the list of schemes in paragraph 4 of Appendix 1 ( <i>List of Transport, Travel and Other Schemes</i> ) to Chapter 8.2.8 ( <i>Transport, Travel and Other Schemes</i> );
<b>“International Organisation for Standardisation”</b>	means the international standard setting body known as <b>“ISO”</b> or any such successor body;
<b>“Intervention”</b>	means a determination following the completion of a second phase investigation that the merger resulting from the award of the Rail Services to the Operator (i) in the case of the CMA has resulted or may be expected to result in a substantial lessening of competition in the UK market or (ii) in the case of the European Commission would significantly impede effective competition in the internal market and that in either case specified actions are required to be taken for the purposes of remedying those anticipated competition issues;
<b>“Investigation”</b>	means any investigation, threatened use, or use of any statutory powers by the Pensions Regulator in relation to a section of the Railways Pension Scheme which has or had as its designated employer the Operator or another Train

Operator (including a Successor Operator). For the avoidance of doubt, this includes any powers under section 231 of the Pensions Act 2004 or any other power which could affect the contributions payable by the employer or the liabilities of any other person in respect of that section;

**“In-Scope Matters”**

means any of the following matters in relation to any Business Employees:

- (a) pay negotiation strategies;
- (b) changes to any remuneration strategy, pension arrangements or staff benefits;
- (c) any proposed restructuring or redundancy plans;
- (d) any proposed changes affecting Business Employees (including proposed changes to the terms of any Employment Agreement, any proposed changes to working practices or procedures, howsoever these are recorded or have become established, and whether these apply nationally or locally) which either Party reasonably believes (a) is likely to give rise to material industrial relations risks (including a risk of Industrial Action); and/or (b) could have a material negative impact on productivity; and/or (c) would not be in train passengers’ interests;
- (e) any proposed variations to the terms or conditions of employment of any Business Employee (in particular, any proposal to make any additional payment or provide any additional benefit or vary any term or condition relating to holiday, leave or hours to be worked) where such variation:
  - (i) wholly or partly first takes effect after the end of the Contract Period;
  - (ii) results in any such employment not being terminable by the Operator or other relevant employer within six (6) months of the expiry of the Contract Period;
  - (iii) relates to a payment or the provision of a benefit triggered by termination of employment;
  - (iv) relates to the provision of a benefit (excluding base salary) which any such employee will or may have a contractual right to receive after the expiry of the Contract Period; or
  - (v) prevents, restricts or hinders any such employee from working for a Successor Operator or from performing the duties which such employee performed for the Operator;
- (f) any creation or grant of terms or conditions of employment for any Business Employee where the employment of such Business Employee by the Operator or such other relevant employer may commence on or after the Start Date if and to the extent that such terms or conditions are, in the reasonable opinion of the Operator, materially

different from the terms or conditions of employment of equivalent or nearest equivalent Business Employees at the date on which such employment is scheduled to commence;

- (g) any other matter notified to the Operator by the Secretary of State from time to time; and/or
- (h) any negotiation or consultation strategies regarding any of the matters at (a) to (g) above;

**“ISO50001:2011”**

means the standard that is set by the International Organisation for Standardisation which specifies requirements for establishing, implementing, maintaining and improving an energy management system, whose purpose is to enable an organization to follow a systematic approach in achieving continual improvement of energy performance, including energy efficiency, energy use and consumption or any equivalent standard which is generally recognised as having replaced it;

**“ISO 22301:2012”**

means the standard that is set by the International Organisation for Standardisation which specifies requirements for the development, implementation, operation, monitoring, review and maintenance of a business continuity planning process, or any equivalent standard which is generally recognised as having replaced it;

**“ISO55001:2014”**

means the standard that is produced by the International Organisation for Standardisation which specifies requirements for an asset management system within the context of the organisation or any equivalent Standard which is generally recognised as having replaced it;

**“ISO14001:2015”**

means the standard that is set by the International Organisation for Standardisation which specifies requirements for an environmental management system to enable an organisation to develop and implement a policy and objectives which takes into account legal requirements and other requirements to which the organisation subscribes, and information about significant environmental aspects or any equivalent standard which is generally recognised as having replaced it;

**“ISO50001 Energy Review”**

means the Energy Review as defined in paragraph 4.4.3 of ISO50001:2011, or any same or similar review from an equivalent standard which is generally recognised as having replaced it;

**“ITSO Ltd”**

means the non-profit distributing organisation run by its members for the benefit of members and users of Smart Media;

**“ITSO Specification”**

means the common specification issued by ITSO Ltd and which enables the use of interoperable Smart Media in transport and other areas;

**“ITSO Certified Smart Media”**

means the contactless smartcards, devices or other media designed to hold fare and travel information with the monetary or other value encoded which have been certified by ITSO Ltd;

**“ITSO Operating Licence”**

means the licence granted to Train Operators by ITSO Ltd which, among other things, permits the Train Operators to issue ITSO Specification compliant cards and issue, sell and accept ITSO Specification compliant products;

<b>“ITSO Smart Media Ticketing Scheme”</b>	means a Smart Ticketing Scheme that utilises ITSO Certified Smart Media;
<b>“Key Contract”</b>	<p>means:</p> <p>(a) each agreement and contract listed in Appendix 1 (<i>List of Key Contracts</i>) to Chapter 9.2.1 (<i>Key Contracts</i>) as at the date of the National Rail Contract; and</p> <p>(b) any other agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement to which the Operator is a party or under which the Operator is the beneficiary from time to time which is designated as such pursuant to Chapter 9.2.1 (<i>Key Contracts</i>),</p> <p>but excluding any such agreement, contract, licence or other arrangement which ceases, in accordance with the terms of the National Rail Contract, to be designated as a Key Contract;</p>
<b>“Key Personnel”</b>	means those persons identified by the Operator in accordance with paragraph 7 of Chapter 1.1 ( <i>Organisation and Management</i> );
<b>“Key Personnel List”</b>	<p>means a list of the following Business Employees:</p> <p>(a) all directors (statutory or otherwise);</p> <p>(b) all managers with responsibility for a department/function within the Operator’s business;</p> <p>(c) all managers in the operations, commercial, personnel and public affairs departments or in each case their nearest equivalents; and</p> <p>(d) all Key Personnel,</p> <p>which contains the name, office address, office telephone number, business mobile telephone number and a brief description of the person’s role and responsibilities in the business;</p>
<b>“Know-How”</b>	means formulae, methods, plans, inventions, discoveries, improvements, processes, performance methodologies, techniques, specifications, technical information, tests, results, reports, component lists, manuals and instructions;
<b>“Law”</b>	includes any enactment, subordinate legislation, rule, regulation, order, directive or other provision, including those of the European Community, and any judicial or administrative interpretation or application thereof, which has, in each case, the force of law in the United Kingdom or any part of it (including the Act, the Transport Act, the Transport Safety Act 2003 and the Railways Act 2005);
<b>“Lead Operator”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement;
<b>“Legislation”</b>	means any enactment or subordinate legislation, rule, regulation, order, directive or other provision including those of the European Community, which has, in each case, the force of Law in the United Kingdom or any part of it, but excluding any order under section 1 of the Transport and Works Act 1992;



**“Licences”**

means such licences and/or statements of national regulatory provisions granted or to be granted under applicable law as the Operator may be required from time to time to hold under the Act or under the Railway (Licensing of Railway Undertakings) Regulations 2005 (as amended) in order to provide or operate the Rail Services;

**“Licence Accessibility Obligations”**

has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.3(a) of Chapter 5.3 (*Accessibility and Inclusivity*)

**“Light Maintenance Service”**

means:

- (a) the provision of access to any other person under an Access Agreement;
- (b) the carrying out of inspections of rolling stock vehicles;
- (c) the carrying out of maintenance work on rolling stock vehicles of a kind which is normally carried out at regular intervals of twelve (12) months or less;
- (d) the replacement of failed components and consumables on rolling stock vehicles;
- (e) the preparation of rolling stock vehicles for service;
- (f) the stabling or other temporary holding of rolling stock vehicles;
- (g) the refuelling of rolling stock vehicles;
- (h) the emptying of retention tanks fitted to rolling stock vehicles equipped with Controlled Emission Toilets;
- (i) the replenishment of water tanks; and
- (j) the cleaning of the exterior or the interior of rolling stock vehicles,  
in each case for itself and/or other Train Operators, at any Station or Depot; and
- (k) the provision of any service which the Operator may provide, or may be required to provide, under any Access Agreement in effect on the Start Date or as lawfully directed by the ORR from time to time;

**“Local Authority”**

means:

- (a) in England, a county council, a district council, a unitary authority, a passenger transport executive, a London borough council, the common council of the City of London, or a council which is established under the Local Government Act 1992 and which is either an authority responsible for expenditure on public passenger transport services within the meaning of section 88 of the Transport Act 1985 or a local authority for the purposes of section 93 of the Transport Act 1985;
- (b) in Wales, a county council, a district council or a council which is established under the Local Government Act 1972 or the Local Government (Wales) Act 1994;
- (c) in Scotland, the Strathclyde Passenger Transport Executive, or a district council or a unitary authority which is established under the Local Government



(Scotland) Act 1973 or the Local Government, etc. (Scotland) Act 1994;

- (d) in London, the Mayor of London and Transport for London established under the Greater London Authority Act 1999;
- (e) a combined authority created pursuant to the Local Democracy, Economic Development and Construction Act 2009;
- (f) any local enterprise partnership;
- (g) any other body or council replacing any of the above from time to time; and
- (h) any other body or instrument of local or regional government specified by the Secretary of State from time to time;

**“Lock-up Period”**

means the period commencing on the date of this Contract and expiring on the date which the Secretary of State confirms by notice in writing to the Operator that:

- (a) the Secretary of State considers that all the obligations of the Parties to account to each other pursuant to Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*) have been fully performed and discharged (such confirmation not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed); and
- (b) by virtue of such notice, the Lock-Up Period has expired.

No such notice shall constitute a waiver of any rights which the Secretary of State may have under or in respect of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*);

**“London Station”**

means any station served by the Railway Passenger Services in the Zones and any Zone to or from which a passenger may travel from or to such station;

**“London Transport Users’ Committee”**

means the London Transport Users’ Committee established under the London Transport Users’ Committee (Transitional Provisions) Order 2000, generally known as “London TravelWatch”;

**“Long Term Charge”**

has the meaning given to it in the Station Access Conditions;

**“Maintenance Contract”**

means any contract or arrangement to which the Operator is a party, which includes the carrying out for the Operator of any maintenance work (including Light Maintenance Services) or service provision in respect of rolling stock vehicles used by the Operator in the provision of the Passenger Services or for the enforcement of warranties or other rights against a manufacturer in respect of any such rolling stock vehicles;

**“Major Flow Operator”**

has the meaning given to it in the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement;

**“Managed Station”**

means any station used in connection with the provision of the Rail Services where the Infrastructure Manager is the Facility Owner or becomes the Facility Owner during the Contract Period;

**“Managed Station Area”**

means the premises comprising part or parts of a Managed Station to be occupied by the Operator on or after the Start

	Date and to be used for or in connection with the provision of the Rail Services;
<b>“Management Accounts”</b>	means, in relation to any Reporting Period, the Operator’s management accounts which: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) comply with the requirements of Chapter 7.3 (<i>Management Information</i>); and</li> <li>(b) are required to be delivered to the Secretary of State by the Operator in accordance with paragraphs 1.3(a) and 1.3(b) of Chapter 7.3 (<i>Management Information</i>);</li> </ul>
<b>“Mandate”</b>	means in relation to any In-Scope Matter any mandate formally agreed from time to time in writing (other than through email or other informal correspondence unless the email in question includes express confirmation from the Secretary of State that its content (or stipulated part of it) is to form a Mandate) between the Operator and the Secretary of State regarding: (i) the objective or objectives of negotiations or consultation; (ii) any parameters or constraints on such objective(s), or the substance of such negotiations or consultation; and/or (iii) how such negotiations or consultation are to be approached, structured or handled;
<b>“Mandatory Modification”</b>	means a modification or addition to any rolling stock vehicle which is required to be made under any applicable Law or any directive of the Rail Safety and Standards Board or any government authority;
<b>“Marks”</b>	means such trade marks as the Operator may apply to any Primary Asset or other asset used by it under a Key Contract, which are applied on the expiry of the Contract Period and are not the subject of a Brand Licence;
<b>“Material Discrepancies”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 15.1 of Part 1 ( <i>Service Quality Regime</i> ) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“Maximum Combined Methodology Fee” or “MCMF”</b>	means the amount determined in accordance with paragraphs 2 and 3 of Appendix 6 ( <i>Combined Methodology</i> ) to Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Maximum Performance Based Fee” or “MPBF”</b>	has the meaning given to that term in paragraph 1 of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Minimum Requirement”</b>	means, in relation to any Affiliate Contract, each requirement set out in paragraph 8.6(b)(i) ( <i>Affiliate Trading</i> ) of Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> );
<b>“Minister of the Crown”</b>	has the meaning given to it in section 8(1) of the Minister of the Crown Act 1975;
<b>“Minor Works”</b>	means small scale physical alterations or additions to improve accessibility of Stations to Disabled Persons, not involving substantial works of construction or reconstruction;
<b>“Minutes Delay”</b>	means the minutes of delay to the Passenger Services that are attributed to the Operator or the Infrastructure Manager (as the case may be) pursuant to the Track Access Agreement and disregarding any minutes of delay that are imputed to Passenger Services that were cancelled;
<b>“Modelling Suite”</b>	means the suite of spreadsheet models (including the Financial Cost Model, Cost Budget, Forecast Revenue, the

	Amendable Financial Targets (if applicable) and the Operational Models) as most recently Placed in Escrow;
<b>“Modern Slavery Helpline”</b>	means the point of contact for reporting suspicion, seeking help or advice and information on the subject of modern slavery, which as of the date of this Contract is available online at <a href="https://www.modernslaveryhelpline.org/report">https://www.modernslaveryhelpline.org/report</a> or by telephone on 08000 121 700;
<b>“Monthly Season Ticket”</b>	means a Season Ticket Fare which is valid in Standard Class Accommodation from (and including) the day it first comes into effect until (but excluding) the day which falls one (1) month after such day;
<b>“Morning Peak”</b>	means, in relation to any Passenger Service, the period between 0700 and 0959 (inclusive) during a Weekday or such other continuous three hour period between 0600 and 1159 (inclusive) as the Secretary of State may specify from time to time;
<b>“Morning Peak Service”</b>	means a Passenger Service which arrives either at a Manchester Station (as defined in the General Provisions to the TSR) or at Leeds in the Morning Peak;
<b>“National Community Rail Steering Group”</b>	means the National Community Rail Steering Group administered by the Department for Transport, or such successor organisation;
<b>“National Cyber Security Centre”</b>	means the National Cyber Security Centre, which is a part of Government Communications Headquarters established to protect UK critical services from cyber attacks, manage major incidents, and improve the underlying security of the UK Internet through technological improvement and advice to citizens and organisations;
<b>“National Lottery”</b>	means the state-franchised national lottery in the United Kingdom;
<b>“National Rail Enquiry Scheme”</b>	means the telephone information scheme run by RDG, providing information to customers regarding rail journeys throughout the country;
<b>“National Rail Passenger Survey”</b>	means a passenger satisfaction survey in respect of the Rail Services to be carried out by the Passengers’ Council as described in paragraph 19 of Part 2 ( <i>NRPS and Wavelength</i> ) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> ) and shall include any Alternative Survey as referred to in paragraph 19.6 of Part 2 ( <i>NRPS and Wavelength</i> ) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> )
<b>“National Rail Timetable”</b>	means the passenger timetable published by Network Rail (currently twice per annum) specifying the timings and stopping patterns of all passenger railway services in Great Britain;
<b>“Net Book Value of the Transferring Fixed Assets”</b>	means the net book value agreed in writing by the Secretary of State of the fixed assets that the Operator and the Secretary of State have agreed will transfer to become fixed assets under this Contract;
<b>“Network Code”</b>	means the document known as the Network Code and formerly known as the Railtrack Track Access Conditions 1995 (as subsequently replaced or amended from time to time) or any equivalent code or agreement applying to Network Rail or NR;
<b>“Network Change”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Network Code;

<b>“Network Rail”</b>	means in respect of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the network or any relevant facility (other than the HS2 Network): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Network Rail Infrastructure Limited, a company registered in England with registered number 02904587 whose registered office is 1 Eversholt Street, London NW1 2DN; and</li> <li>(ii) any successor in title to the network or any relevant railway facility; or</li> </ul> </li> <li>(b) any new or other sections of network or any relevant new or other railway facilities, (other than the HS2 Network or any railway facilities constructed solely in relation to the HS2 Network) the owner (if different);</li> </ul>
<b>“Network Rail Asset Management Policy”</b>	means the policy set by Network Rail for a holistic asset management approach that includes asset capability, asset performance and reporting, sustainability, asset whole-life cost modelling, forecasting and reporting, cost efficient asset management, and asset management to meet customer service requirements;
<b>“Network Rail Cancellation”</b>	means a Passenger Service: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) which is included in the Enforcement Plan of the Day and which is cancelled; or</li> <li>(b) which is included in the Enforcement Plan of the Day and which operates less than fifty per cent (50%) of its scheduled mileage (as prescribed in the Enforcement Plan of the Day),</li> </ul> <p>in either case in circumstances where responsibility for the same is attributed to Network Rail pursuant to the Track Access Agreement;</p>
<b>“Network Rail Collateral Agreement”</b>	means an agreement in the agreed terms marked <b>NRCA</b> which is required to be entered into by the Operator with Network Rail or any other franchisee as a condition to any Access Agreement of which the Operator is the beneficiary;
<b>“Network Rail Data”</b>	means any information, data and materials that may be provided to the Secretary of State by NR that relates to the Operator and which the Secretary of State decides (in the Secretary of State’s absolute discretion) to add to the RPC Database;
<b>“Network Rail Partial Cancellation”</b>	means a Passenger Service which is included in the Enforcement Plan of the Day and which: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) misses a stop;</li> <li>(b) completes fifty per cent (50%) or more, but less than one hundred per cent (100%) of its scheduled mileage as prescribed in the Enforcement Plan of the Day,</li> </ul> <p>in circumstances where responsibility for the same is attributed to Network Rail pursuant to the Track Access Agreement;</p>
<b>“Network Rail’s Traction Electricity Rules”</b>	means the document entitled <i>“Traction Electricity Rules”</i> as published by the ORR;

<b>“New Facilities”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.3(a)(ii) of Part 1 ( <i>Service Quality Regime</i> ) Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“New Insurance Arrangements”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 9.4(b) of Chapter 9.1 ( <i>Fixed Assets</i> );
<b>“New Services”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.3(a)(i) of Part 1 ( <i>Service Quality Regime</i> ) Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“New Station”</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) a station not served by railway passenger services as at February 2003, but which has since that time been, or is subsequently, served by railway passenger services which have been, or are subsequently to be, included in the Timetable or in another relevant Train Operator’s timetable; and/or</li> <li>(b) if the Secretary of State requires, a station, other than a Station, at which, with the consent of the Secretary of State (whether by amendment to the National Rail Contract or otherwise) railway passenger services operated by the Operator call;</li> </ul>
<b>“2010 Nominal Ticket Sales”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3 of Chapter 8.2.4 ( <i>Regulation of Fares Basket Values and Individual Fares</i> );
<b>“Nominee”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 5.1 of Chapter 9.5.2 ( <i>Reletting Provisions and Maintenance as a Going Concern</i> );
<b>“Non Fares Basket Fare”</b>	means a Fare that is designated as such by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 2.1 of Chapter 8.2.3 ( <i>Allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets</i> ) and which has not been de-designated as such pursuant to paragraph 1.1 of Part B ( <i>Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation</i> ) of Chapter 8.2.5 ( <i>Exceeding the Regulated Value, Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price, and Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation</i> )
<b>“Non-Financial PBF Component”</b>	means each PBF Component other than the Financial Performance Fee;
<b>“Northern Ireland Protocol”</b>	means the Protocol on Ireland/Northern Ireland forming part of the Agreement on the withdrawal of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland from the European Union and the European Atomic Energy Community;
<b>“Notified Fault”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.1(b) of Chapter 5.1 ( <i>Customer Information</i> );
<b>“NR”</b>	means Network Rail Limited (company number 04402220), Network Rail Infrastructure Limited (company number 2904587) whose registered offices are both at 1, Eversholt Street, London NW1 2DN or any Affiliate thereof from time to time;
<b>“NR Data Sharing Strategy”</b>	means the Network Rail data sharing strategy agreed pursuant to the Previous Agreement, as may be amended from time to time pursuant to paragraph 2 ( <i>NR Data Sharing Strategy</i> ) of Chapter 3 ( <i>Collaboration</i> );
<b>“NRPS Benchmark”</b>	means, in respect of a relevant Contract Year, the benchmark for each NRPS Measure as set out in the NRPS Benchmark

	Table or as may be agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 2.7(b) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> ) or paragraphs 19.5 or 20.2 of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“NRPS Benchmark Table”</b>	means the tables setting out the NRPS Benchmarks as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“NRPS Expected Range”</b>	means, in relation to the Operator’s Overall NRPS Score, the range between (and inclusive of) the values in relation to performance as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan, or as may be agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 2.7(b) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> ) or paragraphs 19.5 or 20.2 of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Satisfaction Performance</i> );
<b>“NRPS Improvement Plan”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 21.3 of Part 2 ( <i>NRPS and Wavelength</i> ) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“NRPS Improvement Proposal”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 21.1 of Part 2 ( <i>NRPS and Wavelength</i> ) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“NRPS Measure”</b>	means each of the factors more particularly described in the Passenger Survey Methodology and grouped as “Stations (S)”, “Trains (T)”, “Customer Service (C)” and “Dealing With Delays (D)”;
<b>“NTR”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.4 ( <i>Lock-Up Restriction</i> ) of Chapter 7.4 ( <i>Financial Covenants and Bonds</i> );
<b>“NCSC Cyber-Security Information Sharing Partnership” or “CSIP”</b>	means the government and industry partnership operated by the National Cyber Security Centre to facilitate the sharing of information and intelligence in relation to cyber security threats;
<b>“Occasion of Tax Non-Compliance”</b>	means, in respect of the Operator (including where Operator is an unincorporated joint venture or consortium, the members of that unincorporated joint venture or consortium) or the Operator (such party being the <b>“Affected Party”</b> ): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) any tax return of the Affected Party submitted to a Relevant Tax Authority on or after 1 October 2012 is found, on or after 1 April 2013, to be incorrect as a result of:                         <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) a Relevant Tax Authority successfully challenging the Affected Party under the General Anti-Abuse Rule or the Halifax Abuse Principle or under any tax rules or legislation that have an effect equivalent or similar to the General Anti-Abuse Rule or the Halifax Abuse Principle;</li> <li>(ii) the failure of an avoidance scheme which the Affected Party was involved in, and which was, or should have been, notified to a Relevant Tax Authority under the DOTAS or any equivalent or similar regime; and/or</li> </ul> </li> <li>(b) any tax return of the Affected Party submitted to a Relevant Tax Authority on or after 1 October 2012 gives rise, on or after 1 April 2013, to a criminal</li> </ul>



	conviction in any jurisdiction for tax related offences which is not spent at the Start Date or to a civil penalty for fraud or evasion;
<b>“Off-Peak Passenger Service”</b>	means a Passenger Service that is not a Morning Peak Service or an Evening Peak Service;
<b>“On Time”</b>	means the percentage of recorded station stops called at within 59 seconds of the planned time relating to the Rail Services as produced and/or published by Network Rail;
<b>“On Time Figures”</b>	means the moving annual average percentage published by Network Rail in respect of On Time, rounded to two (2) decimal places;
<b>“Operating Assets”</b>	means all assets (including any Intellectual Property Rights or intangible assets) employed by the Operator in the performance of the Operator’s obligations under the National Rail Contract;
<b>“Operational Foreground”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 7.6 ( <i>Miscellaneous IP</i> ) of Chapter 9.3 ( <i>Branding and Intellectual Property</i> );
<b>“Operational Models”</b>	means the spreadsheet models used to calculate inputs to, or otherwise required to obtain a full understanding of the calculation of items within, the Financial Cost Model and/or the Record of Assumptions as most recently Placed in Escrow and the Operational Performance Targets;
<b>“Operational Performance Component”</b>	means each of the matters in relation to which the Operational Performance Fee is assessed using the Quantified Target Methodology, being: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) TOC on Self Cancellations;</li> <li>(b) TOC Minutes Delay;</li> <li>(c) Short Formations;</li> <li>(d) T-3;</li> <li>(e) T-15; and</li> <li>(f) All Cancellations;</li> </ul>
<b>“Operational Performance Component ABPS Table”</b>	means, with respect to each Operational Performance Component (as applicable) the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) TOC on Self Cancellations Benchmarks Table;</li> <li>(b) TOC Minutes Delay Benchmarks Table;</li> <li>(c) Short Formations Benchmarks Table;</li> <li>(d) T-3 Table;</li> <li>(e) T-15 Table; and</li> <li>(f) All Cancellations Table;</li> </ul>
<b>“Operational Performance Fee” or “OP”</b>	means the element of the Performance Based Fee, the purpose of which is to measure the Operator’s effectiveness in delivering punctual and reliable journeys and in providing an appropriate amount of passenger-carrying capacity;
<b>“Operational Performance Target Amendment”</b>	means any amendment to the Operational Performance Target(s) as agreed or determined under the provisions of paragraph 2.15 of Chapter 7.5 ( <i>Variations, Changes and Amendments</i> );



<b>“Operational Performance Target Amendment Event”</b>	has the meaning given to it in Part 2 of Appendix 1 to Chapter 7.5 ( <i>Variations, Changes and Amendments</i> );
<b>“Operational Performance Targets”</b>	means any of the OP Targets and/or the Enforcement Benchmarks (as the context may require);
<b>“Operational Planning Matters”</b>	<p>means matters relating to the continuous improvement of train timetabling and train planning functions, including improvements to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the quality of the Operator’s and Network Rail’s timetable planning activities, through, amongst other things: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) adequate resourcing of train planning and diagramming activities for both rolling stock and traincrew;</li> <li>(ii) collaborative working between the Operator’s and Network Rail or other Train Operators’ planning teams;</li> <li>(iii) the timely sharing of plans for rolling stock and traincrew, including ancillary moves;</li> <li>(iv) timely sharing of rolling stock characteristics required to support timetable simulation and performance modelling; and</li> <li>(v) an increased focus on the advance development of major timetable changes, including through Event Steering Groups;</li> </ul> </li> <li>(b) the robustness and resilience of the Operator’s and Network Rail’s train plans through collaborative working, to ensure jointly developed train regulation policies, contingency and service recovery plans including but not limited to data in relation to, and plans for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) diversionary route availability (including traincrew knowledge and rolling stock clearance); and</li> <li>(ii) traincrew flexibility (including route and traction knowledge, and spare cover);</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>“Operations Data Breach”</b>	<p>means any Personal Data Breach or any infringement of the rights afforded to a Data Subject under the Data Protection Legislation relating in whole or in part to CRM Data and/or Business Employees which is notified to or otherwise comes to the attention of the Information Commissioner (defined below) whether by way of the Operator in its capacity as Data Controller, by any affected Data Subject, by any other person whatsoever, or in any other way, and which results in the Information Commissioner having any material engagement with the Operator in respect of the same (which shall mean any correspondence, request, direction or other form of engagement with the Operator in connection with a Personal Data Breach or the infringement of rights other than:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the Information Commissioner’s acknowledgement of receipt of the notification or of it otherwise having awareness of the Personal Data Breach or the infringement of rights;</li> </ul>

- (b) the Information Commissioner’s first request for information following receipt of the notification or of it otherwise having awareness of the Personal Data Breach or the infringement of rights; and
  - (c) the Information Commissioner’s written confirmation that no action (whether formally or informally) shall be taken under the Data Protection Legislation in relation to the Personal Data Breach or the infringement of rights);
- “Operations Data Processor”** means any Processor who, from time to time, is processing or has processed CRM Data and/or Personal Data relating to Business Employees on behalf of the Operator;
- “Operator Access Station”** means any station at which the Passenger Services call (other than any Station);
- “Operator Pension Sections”** has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2 of Chapter 7.6 (*Railways Pension Scheme*);
- “Operator Pension Section Rules”** has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.2(a) of Chapter 7.6 (*Railways Pension Scheme*);
- “Operator Relationship Manager”** means the person responsible for managing the Operator’s overall relationship with the Secretary of State;
- “Operator Trade Marks”** means registered or unregistered trade marks which are not owned by the Secretary of State (including such of the Primary Brand and any Secondary Brands not owned by the Secretary of State) as set out in Appendix 1 (*List of Operator Trade Marks*) to Chapter 9.3 (*Branding and Intellectual Property*);
- “OP Targets”** means, in relation to each Operational Performance Component in each Reporting Period during the relevant PBF Assessment Period the:
- (a) Relevant OP Component Maximum Fee Performance Level;
  - (b) Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level A;
  - (c) Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level B; and
  - (d) Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level;
- as specified as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan, or as may be agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 2.7(b) (*Changes to the Applicable Assessment Methodology*), paragraph 4 (*Target Amendments*) or paragraph 5 (*Effect of Extended Term and alterations to the PBF Assessment Period*) of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*);
- “Original Rolling Stock”** has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.1 of Chapter 4.3 (*The Rolling Stock*);
- “ORR”** means the Office of Rail and Road established by section 15 of the Railways and Transport Safety Act 2003 and having duties and obligations as set out in the Act;
- “Other Passenger Route Within the Geographical Area”** means any route which is not a Route but is a route in the Geographical Area over which a passenger train operator other than the Operator operates passenger services included in the National Rail Timetable;

<b>“Outline Business Plan”</b>	means, with respect to each Business Plan Component within a Business Plan, the longer-term context and strategy for such Business Plan Component applicable from (a) the end of the relevant Business Plan Year, to (b) the end of the relevant Business Plan Period, which shall (among other things) include identification and consideration of any anticipated or potential developments or enhancements which may be required to be reflected in the Business Plan with respect to any future Business Plan Years during the relevant Business Plan Period to the extent that such developments or enhancements are within the reasonable contemplation of the Parties at the time of agreement or determination of the relevant Business Plan;
<b>“Overall Customer Service Pass Rate”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.1(a)(iii) ( <i>Service Quality Standards</i> ) of Appendix 5 ( <i>Quantified Target Methodology</i> ) to Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Overall NRPS Score”</b>	means the overall score (described in the Passenger Survey Methodology) achieved by the Operator for the relevant PBF Assessment Period, calculated in accordance with the process detailed in the Passenger Survey Methodology;
<b>“Overall PBF TTR” or “OPT”</b>	means, in relation to any PBF Assessment Period, the overall ticketless travel rate with respect to such PBF Assessment Period as determined in accordance with paragraph 4.1(c) of Appendix 5 ( <i>Quantified Target Methodology</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Overall SQR Component Pass Rate”</b>	means each of the Overall Station Pass Rate, the Overall Trains Pass Rate and the Overall Customer Service Pass Rate, in each case as calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.1 ( <i>Calculation of Service Quality Standards Fee (“SQ”)</i> ) of Appendix 5 ( <i>Quantified Target Methodology</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Overall Station Pass Rate”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.1(a)(i) ( <i>Service Quality Standards</i> ) of Appendix 5 ( <i>Quantified Target Methodology</i> ) to Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Overall Trains Pass Rate”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.1(a)(ii) ( <i>Service Quality Standards</i> ) of Appendix 5 ( <i>Quantified Target Methodology</i> ) to Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Parent”</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) in the context of paragraph 1.3(c) (Contents of the Business Plan) of Chapter 7.7 (Business Plan), First Rail Holdings Limited (Company Number: 05154485), whose registered office is at 4<sup>th</sup> Floor Capital House, 25 Chapel Street, London, United Kingdom NW1 5DH (being the ‘Immediate Parent’); and</li> <li>(b) in the context of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) paragraph 8.2(b) (Contract Performance Meetings) of Chapter 1.1 (Organisation and Management);</li> <li>(ii) paragraph 5.2(c) (PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting) of Appendix 1 (PBF Assessment Period Review) to Chapter 7.2 (Performance Based Fee);</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

- (iii) paragraph 7.2 (*Identification of Key Personnel and Provision of Organisation Chart*) of Chapter 1.1 (*Organisation and Management*);
- (iv) paragraph 7.3(a)(iii) (*Industry Change Projects*) of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*);
- (v) paragraph 1.1 (*Insolvency*) of Chapter 9.4.1 (*Events of Default and Termination Events*); and
- (vi) the definitions of “Commitment”, “Final Closing Accounts” and “Industry Change Project” under this Chapter 10 (*Definitions and Interpretation*),

either FirstGroup plc (Company Number: SC157176), whose registered office is at 395 King Street, Aberdeen, AB24 5RP or the Immediate Parent, as the case may be;

- (c) in the context of:
  - (i) paragraph 1.2 (*Corporate Information*) of Chapter 1.1 (*Organisation and Management*); and
  - (ii) paragraph 1.8(a)(i) (*Parent and Affiliate Accounts and Affiliate Trading*) of Chapter 7.3 (*Management Information*),

both of those persons;

**“Park Mark”**

means the certification scheme administered by the parking industry and which sets car park design and management safety standards for crime reduction within car parks;

**“Partial Cancellation”**

means a Passenger Service which is included in the Enforcement Plan of the Day and which:

- (a) misses a stop; or
- (b) completes fifty per cent (50%) or more, but less than one hundred per cent (100%) of its scheduled mileage as prescribed in the Enforcement Plan of the Day,

in each case, for reasons which are attributed to the Operator pursuant to its Track Access Agreement;

**“Participating Employer”**

has the meaning given to it in the Pension Trust;

**“Pass Rate”**

means:

- (a) in respect of a Reporting Period and for each Service Quality Schedule, the pass rate (*i.e. the number of Service Quality Indicators that have passed rather than failed*) for a Service Quality Area comprised in such Service Quality Schedule as calculated in accordance with paragraph 8 of Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*); and

(b) in respect of each Service Quality Schedule and for each Contract Year, the pass rate (*i.e. the number of Service Quality Indicators that have passed rather than failed*) for a Service Quality Area comprised in such Service Quality Schedule calculated in accordance with paragraph 8 of Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*),

both expressed as a percentage;

<b>“Passenger Assistance”</b>	means the passenger assistance service provided by train operating companies and referred to by the ORR as <b>“Passenger Assist”</b> , as such service may be further described by the ORR from time to time at: <a href="http://orr.gov.uk/info-for-passengers/passengers-with-disabilities">http://orr.gov.uk/info-for-passengers/passengers-with-disabilities</a> (or such other applicable web address that is adopted by the ORR for these purposes from time to time);
<b>“Passenger Carrying Capacity”</b>	means, in relation to a Passenger Service, the capacity of the vehicles (as stated in Chapter 4.3 ( <i>The Rolling Stock</i> ) or determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 2.3 of Chapter 4.3 ( <i>The Rolling Stock</i> )) from which the Passenger Service is formed;
<b>“Passenger Change Date”</b>	means a date upon which significant changes may be made to the Timetable in accordance with or by virtue of the Network Code;
<b>“Passenger Services”</b>	means the Operator’s railway passenger services as specified in any Timetable and/or Plan of the Day including those railway passenger services which the Operator may delegate or subcontract or otherwise secure through any other person from time to time in accordance with the National Rail Contract;
<b>“Passenger Services Enhancement Options”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 8.1 ( <i>Development of Proposals for Passenger Service Enhancements</i> ) of Chapter 4.1 ( <i>Service Development</i> );
<b>“Passenger Survey Methodology” or “PSM”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 19.4 of Part 2 ( <i>Part 2: NRPS and Wavelength</i> ) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“Passenger’s Charter” or “PC”</b>	means the Operator’s service commitments to its passengers in the agreed terms marked <b>PC</b> , as amended or replaced from time to time with the prior written consent of the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 5 of Chapter 5.1 ( <i>Customer Information</i> );
<b>“Passengers’ Council”</b>	means the passengers’ council established under section 19 of the Railways Act 2005 (as amended by The Passengers’ Council (Non-Railway Functions) Order 2010). The Passengers’ Council has been generally known as <b>“Transport Focus”</b> from 30 March 2015;
<b>“Pay As You Go Agreement”</b>	means an agreement dated 16 October 2009 between Transport Trading Limited and train operators operating in London enabling joint ticketing and the acceptance of each other’s tickets using smart media technology under the name <b>“Pay as You Go”</b> ;
<b>“PAYG Peak Fare”</b>	means a Fare which is a Permanent Fare and which entitles the purchaser to make a single journey under the Pay As You Go Agreement in Standard Class Accommodation between and within the PAYG Zones for which the fare is valid, at any time;

**“PAYG Off-Peak Fare”**

means a Fare which is a Permanent Fare and which entitles the purchaser to make a single journey under the Pay As You Go Agreement in Standard Class Accommodation between and within the PAYG Zones for which the fare is valid, at any time on Saturdays and Sundays and at such times as the Operator may designate on Mondays to Fridays (where such Fare need not be valid between 06:30 and 09:30 or between 16.00 and 19.00 but must be valid at all other times) and which may take into account the different directions of travel;

**“PAYG Zone”**

means the Stations within the **“PAYG Area”** (as such is defined in the Pay As You Go Agreement) or otherwise included in part 1 (PAYG Acceptance) of schedule 3 (Operation of PAYG) of the Pay As You Go Agreement (as such is amended from time to time);

**“Payment Date”**

means the date for the payment of Contract Payments in accordance with paragraph 2.3 of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*);

**“PBF Assessment Period”**

means:

- (a) the period commencing on the Start Date and ending on 1 April 2022 at 01.59; and
- (b) each subsequent period of thirteen Reporting Periods commencing on 1 April at 02.00 provided that the final PBF Assessment Period shall commence on 1 April 2023 at 02.00 and end on 28 May 2023 at 01.59,

subject to any agreed longer or shorter period (and/or additional PBF Assessment Period(s)) as agreed with or directed by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 5 (*Effect of Extended Term and alterations to the PBF Assessment Period*) of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*);

**“PBF Assessment Period Review”**

means a review carried out (or to be carried out) with respect to a PBF Assessment Period in accordance with Appendix 1 (*PBF Assessment Period Review*) of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*);

**“PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist”**

means, in respect of a PBF Assessment Period Review, a checklist completed (or, as the case may be, to be completed) with respect to all Non-Financial PBF Components and Applicable FP Sub-Components to which, in each case, the Scorecard Methodology or Combined Methodology is applicable, substantially in the form of that set out in Appendix 2 (*PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist*) of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*);

**“PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting”**

means, in respect of a PBF Assessment Period Review, a meeting held between the Parties to discuss the performance of the Operator during the relevant PBF Assessment Period;

**“PBF Assessment Period Scorecard”**

means, in respect of a PBF Assessment Period, a scorecard completed (or, as the case may be, to be completed) by the Secretary of State with respect to all Non-Financial PBF Components and Applicable FP Sub-Components to which, in each case, the Scorecard Methodology or Combined



Methodology is applicable, in accordance with paragraph 6 (*PBF Assessment Period Review Scoring*) of Appendix 1 (*PBF Assessment Period Review*) of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*);

<b>“PBF Component”</b>	means each of the following components which shall be individually assessed to calculate the corresponding element of the PBF:
	(a) Operational Performance Fee;
	(b) Service Quality Standards Fee;
	(c) Customer Satisfaction Fee;
	(d) Financial Performance Fee; and
	(e) Business Management Fee;
<b>“Performance Based Fee” or “PBF”</b>	means the performance-based element of the Contract Payments as calculated pursuant Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“PCG Facility”</b>	has the meaning given in the Funding Deed;
<b>“PCG Facility Loan”</b>	has the meaning given in the Funding Deed;
<b>“Peak”</b>	means the Morning Peak and the Evening Peak;
<b>“Peak Passenger Service”</b>	means, as the case may be, a Morning Peak Service or an Evening Peak Service;
<b>“Pension Trust”</b>	means the pension trust governing the Railways Pension Scheme;
<b>“Pensions Committee”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Railways Pension Scheme;
<b>“Percentage Allocation”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement (and references to <b>“Percentage Allocations”</b> shall be construed accordingly);
<b>“Performance Improvement Management System”</b>	means the rail industry framework for the management of performance risks;
<b>“Performance Strategy Plan”</b>	means any joint plan, which the Operator and Network Rail are party to, which has been designed to achieve the performance objectives set out in Part L of the Network Code (and/or other objectives related to train service reliability and punctuality as agreed by the Infrastructure Manager and the Operator);
<b>“Periodic Finance Review Meeting”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 8.1 of Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> );
<b>“Periodic Contract Payment” or “PCP”</b>	means the Contract Payment Component calculated in accordance with paragraph 1.1 of Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> );
<b>“Periods 1 and 2 Budget”</b>	means the budget for the ERMA Extension Period as set out in the columns entitled “Pre-NRC Budget” of the Financial Cost Model (and, for the avoidance of doubt, the Periods 1 and 2 Budget does not form part of the Cost Budget);
<b>“Permanent Fare”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement;
<b>“Permitted Aggregate Increase” or “PAI”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.2 of Chapter 8.2.4 ( <i>Regulation of Fares Basket Values and Individual Fares</i> )



<b>“Permitted Dividend” or “PD”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.4 of Chapter 7.4 ( <i>Financial Covenants and Bonds</i> );
<b>“Permitted Individual Increase” or “PII”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.2 of Part B ( <i>Regulation of Individual Fares</i> ) of Chapter 8.2.4 ( <i>Regulation of Fares Basket Values and Individual Fares</i> );
<b>“Personal Data”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Data Protection Legislation;
<b>“Personal Data Breach”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Data Protection Legislation;
<b>“Placed in Escrow”</b>	means in respect of the Escrow Documents, delivery thereof in accordance with paragraph 5 of Chapter 7.5 ( <i>Variations, Changes and Amendments</i> );
<b>“Plan of the Day”</b>	means, in relation to each day during the Contract Term, the Passenger Services scheduled to be operated on that day through specification in the Timetable or as notified to the Operator by the Infrastructure Manager from time to time prior to 2200 on the previous day;
<b>“Planned Train Mileage”</b>	means the aggregate train mileage planned during each Reporting Period by each train used in the provision of the Passenger Services (excluding, any train mileage planned as a result of positioning or other movements of rolling stock vehicles outside the Timetable);
<b>“Police Scotland”</b>	means the national police force for Scotland as formed in 2013 following the merger of eight regional police forces;
<b>“Potential Annual Losses”</b>	means in relation to a Contract Year the sum of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the aggregate amount of Disallowable Costs incurred in the relevant Contract Year;</li> <li>(b) the aggregate amount of Revenue Foregone in the relevant Contract Year;</li> <li>(c) the aggregate value of all SoS Claims in the relevant Contract Year;</li> <li>(d) all Actual Costs incurred in the relevant Contract Year to date which were not reimbursed in the Contract Payment;</li> <li>(e) any costs reimbursed in any Contract Payment during any preceding Contract Year which during the Contract Year have been agreed or determined to be Disallowable Costs pursuant to paragraph 4 of Chapter 7.1 (<i>Contract Payments</i>);</li> <li>(f) any revenue not taken account of in any Contract Payment relating to any preceding Contract Year which during the Contract Year has been agreed or determined to be Revenue Foregone pursuant to paragraph 4 of Chapter 7.1 (<i>Contract Payments</i>); and</li> <li>(g) any costs reimbursed in any Contract Payment during any preceding Contract Year which during the Contract Year have been agreed or determined to not be Actual Costs (excluding Disallowable Costs) pursuant to paragraph 4 of Chapter 7.1 (<i>Contract Payments</i>), if and to the extent that in the period between such costs being reimbursed and the agreement or determination that they were</li> </ul>

not Actual Costs, the Secretary of State has consented to the Operator declaring or paying a Permitted Dividend;

minus

- (i) an amount equal to the proportion of the Fixed Fee earned by the Operator for the relevant Contract Year, calculated on a pro rata basis,

as agreed between the Parties or determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 8.1 (a)(vii) of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*), provided that where the sum calculated is negative the Potential Annual Losses shall be zero;

**“Power of Attorney” or “POA”** means the power of attorney granted by the Operator in favour of the Secretary of State in the agreed terms marked **POA**;

**“Preceding Reporting Period”** has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.3 of Appendix 1 (*Calculation of Periodic Contract Payments (PCP)*) to Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*);

**“Preceding Year”** has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.3 of Appendix 1 (*Calculation of Periodic Contract Payments (PCP)*) to Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*);

**“Preceding Year Ticket Price”** has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.1 of Part B (*Regulation of Individual Fares*) of Chapter 8.2.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values and Individual Fares*);

**“Preliminary Database”** means such database as may reasonably be put in place by the Secretary of State prior to making any RPC Database available to the Operator, as part of the development of the RPC Database;

**“Previous Agreement”** means a franchise agreement dated 22 December 2015 under which services equivalent to the Rail Services (or a material proportion thereof) were provided by the Operator on or about the day prior to the Start Date;

**“Previous Customer Report”** means, in relation to a Customer Report, the Customer Report published by the Operator immediately prior to that Customer Report;

**“Previous Operator”** means First TransPennine Express Limited (with company number: 09111801) of 4<sup>th</sup> Floor Capital House, 25 Chapel Street, London, United Kingdom NW1 5DH;

**“Previous Passenger Services”** means:

(a) any railway passenger services operated under a Previous Agreement that is the same or substantially the same as any Passenger Service in terms of departure and arrival times and stopping patterns; and

(b) if no such railway passenger service is found under paragraph (a) such other railway passenger services operated under a Previous Agreement which is similar in terms of departure and arrival times and stopping patterns to the Passenger Services as the Secretary of State may reasonably determine;

<b>“Previous Performance Level”</b>	means the level of performance actually achieved in relation to the Previous Passenger Services;
<b>“Price”</b>	means, in respect of any Fare, the price of such Fare before the deduction of any applicable discount to which a purchaser may be entitled, as notified to RSP in accordance with Schedule 5 ( <i>Fares and Smart Ticketing</i> ) to the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement;
<b>“Primary Assets”</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the property, rights and liabilities of the Operator listed in Appendix 1 (<i>List of Primary Assets</i>) to Chapter 9.2.2 (<i>Key Assets - Designation of Assets</i>); and</li> <li>(b) any other property, rights and liabilities of the Operator which is or are designated as such pursuant to Chapter 9.2.2 (<i>Key Assets - Designation of Assets</i>),</li> </ul> but excluding such property, rights or liabilities as may, in accordance with the terms of the National Rail Contract, cease to be so designated;
<b>“Primary Brand”</b>	means TransPennine Express (as detailed in Schedule 1 ( <i>Licensed IP</i> ) to the Brand Licence) and the Parties acknowledge that such brand constitutes Enduring Branding;
<b>“Principles of Inclusive Design”</b>	means planning, designing, building and managing places, while having due regard and a proportionate response to stakeholder views obtained through consultation or otherwise, so that they work better for everybody and reflect the diversity of the people who use them as embodied in the document published by the Commission for Architecture and the Built Environment in 2006 with the title <b>“The Principles of Inclusive Design”</b> (as revised from time to time”);
<b>“Prior Train Operator”</b>	means the Train Operator which used or is using the Cascaded Rolling Stock immediately prior to its proposed use by the Operator;
<b>“PRM TSI”</b>	means the EU’s Regulation (EU) No 1300/2014 of 18 November 2014 (as amended from time to time) on the technical specifications for interoperability relating to accessibility of the European Union’s rail system for persons with disabilities and persons with reduced mobility;
<b>“Processor”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Data Protection Legislation;
<b>“Procurement Policy”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 7 ( <i>Subsidy Control, State Aid and Procurement Regulations</i> ) of Chapter 9.7 ( <i>Miscellaneous Legal Terms</i> );
<b>“Profit Financial Target Amendment Event”</b>	means the events described in paragraphs 9 and 10 in Part 3 ( <i>Financial Target Amendment Events</i> ) of Appendix 1 ( <i>Trigger Events</i> ) to Chapter 7.5 ( <i>Variations, Changes and Amendments</i> );
<b>“Projected Revenue”</b>	means the revenue in any Fare Year which is projected to be attributable to any Fare, determined in accordance with paragraph 3 of Chapter 8.2.4 ( <i>Regulation of Fares Basket Values and Individual Fares</i> );

<b>“Property Lease”</b>	means any Depot Lease, any lease in respect of a Managed Station Area, any lease in respect of the Shared Facilities or any Station Lease and any agreement or lease of a similar or equivalent nature (whether in respect of any such facility or otherwise) which the Operator may enter into with a person who has an interest in a network or a railway facility which is to be used for or in connection with the provision or operation of the Rail Services;
<b>“Proposed Business Plan Commitment”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 12.3 ( <i>Contracts Associated with the delivery of Business Plan Commitments</i> ) of Chapter 7.7 ( <i>Business Plan</i> );
<b>“Protected Fare”</b>	means a Protected Return Fare or a Protected Weekly Season Ticket;
<b>“Protected Fares Basket”</b>	means the grouping of Protected Fares: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) determined by the Secretary of State pursuant to Chapter 8.2.3 (<i>Allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets</i>);</li> <li>(b) for the purposes of regulating their aggregate Prices in accordance with Chapter 8.2.4 (<i>Regulation of Fares Basket Values and Individual Fares</i>);</li> <li>(c) amended by the Secretary of State from time to time in accordance with of Part B (<i>Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation</i>) of Chapter 8.2.5 (<i>Exceeding the Regulated Value, Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price, and Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation</i>); and</li> <li>(d) set out in the Protected Fares Document;</li> </ul>
<b>“Protected Fares Document” or “PFD”</b>	means the document in the agreed terms marked <b>PFD</b> , as the same may be amended from time to time in accordance with Part B ( <i>Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation</i> ) of Chapter 8.2.5 ( <i>Exceeding the Regulated Value, Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price, and Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation</i> )
<b>“Protected Return Fare”</b>	means in respect of a Fare for a Flow: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) for which there was a Saver Return Fare in February 2003, a Return Fare for each such Flow in respect of which the Operator is entitled or obliged from time to time to set the Price under the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement, subject to the following additional rights and restrictions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) it shall be valid for no less than one (1) month;</li> <li>(ii) it shall be valid all day on a Saturday or Sunday and from no later than 1030 on any other day;</li> <li>(iii) it need not be valid for any journey: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(A) beginning between 1500 and 1900 on any day other than a Saturday or Sunday;</li> <li>(B) where such journey begins from a London Station or any station between any London Station and Reading station, Watford station,</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Luton station, or Stevenage station (inclusively); and

(C) which is in a direction away from London; or

(b) for which there was no Saver Return Fare in February 2003, a Return Fare for each such Flow in respect of which the Operator is entitled or obliged from time to time to set the Price under the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement,

except in each case to the extent that a Return Fare for any such Flow is a Commuter Fare;

**“Protected Weekly Season Ticket”** means a Weekly Season Ticket for any Flow for which there was a weekly season ticket in the fares manuals and systems of the RSP in February 2003, and in respect of which the Operator is entitled or obliged, from time to time, to set the Price of under the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement except to the extent that a Weekly Season Ticket for any such Flow is a Commuter Fare;

**“Public Sector Operator”** means any person (other than a franchisee or franchise operator in relation to the services provided or operated under its franchise agreement) who provides railway passenger services or operates any station or light maintenance depot pursuant to or under section 30 of the Act or section 6 of the Railways Act 2005;

**“Purchase Price”** has the meaning given in Clause 2.1 of any Supplemental Agreement;

**“Qualified Consent”** has the meaning given to it in paragraph 8.8(a)(ii) (*Affiliate Trading*) of Chapter 7.1 (*Contract Payments*);

**“Quantified Target Methodology”** means, with respect to each QTM PBF Component and the FP TT Sub-Component, the relevant methodology with respect to such QTM PBF Component or the FP TT Sub-Component (as applicable) as set out in Appendix 5 (*Quantified Target Methodology*) of Chapter 7.2 (*Performance Based Fee*);

**“Quarter” or “Quarterly”** means:

(a) in respect of the first Contract Year only:

(i) a period of one (1) Reporting Period ending at the end of the first Reporting Period in the first Contract Year;

(ii) a period of three (3) consecutive Reporting Periods ending at the end of the fourth and seventh Reporting Periods in the first Contract Year; or

(iii) a period of four (4) consecutive Reporting Periods ending at the end of the eleventh Reporting Period in the first Contract Year; and

(b) in respect of each other Contract Year:

(i) a period of three (3) consecutive Reporting Periods ending at the end of the third, sixth and ninth Reporting Periods in a Contract Year; or

	(ii) a period of four (4) consecutive Reporting Periods ending at the end of the thirteenth Reporting Period of a Contract Year
	(and “Quarterly” shall be interpreted accordingly);
<b>“Quarterly Forecast”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.4(a) ( <i>Quarterly Financial Information</i> ) of Chapter 7.3 ( <i>Management Information</i> );
<b>“Quarterly Season Ticket”</b>	means a Season Ticket Fare which is valid in Standard Class Accommodation from (and including) the day it first comes into effect until (but excluding) the day which falls three (3) months after such day;
<b>“QTM PBF Components”</b>	means each of the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Operational Performance Fee; and</li> <li>(b) Service Quality Standards Fee;</li> </ul>
<b>“QTM Targets”</b>	means any: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) OP Targets;</li> <li>(b) SQR Targets; and/or</li> <li>(c) TT Targets,</li> </ul> as applicable;
<b>“Rail Services”</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the Passenger Services, the Light Maintenance Services, the Station Services and the Ancillary Services as the Operator may provide or operate from time to time, including any of such services as the Operator may delegate or subcontract or otherwise secure through any other person from time to time in accordance with the National Rail Contract; and</li> <li>(b) the rights proposed by the Secretary of State in the Request for Business Plan to operate the Passenger Services over the Routes prescribed in paragraph 7 (<i>Restrictions relating to Rail Services</i>) of Chapter 4.1 (<i>Service Development</i>);</li> </ul>
<b>“Rail Delivery Group” or “RDG”</b>	means the Rail Delivery Group Limited (company number 08176197) (including any of its successors and assigns) whose principal place of business is at 2nd Floor, 200-202 Aldersgate Street, London EC1A 4HD, which is responsible for preserving and enhancing the benefits for passengers of Britain’s national rail network policy formulation and communications on behalf of the whole rail industry;
<b>“Rail Product”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement and references to <b>“Rail Products”</b> shall be construed accordingly;
<b>“Rail Revenue Recovery Group” or “RRRG”</b>	means the body known as the Rail Revenue Recovery Group, established to advise on how best to drive the recovery and subsequent ongoing growth of rail revenues, including by developing proposals for a programme of cross-industry activities;
<b>“Rail Safety and Standards Board” or “RSSB”</b>	means Rail Safety and Standards Board Limited, a company registered in England with registered number 04655675



	whose registered office is at The Helicon, 4th Floor, One South Place, London, EC2M 2RB;
<b>“Railway Group”</b>	means the committee responsible for cross industry co-ordination in respect of rail safety legislation and industry safety standards chaired by the Rail Safety and Standards Board;
<b>“Railway Operational Code”</b>	has the meaning given to it in Condition H of the Network Code;
<b>“Railway Passenger Services”</b>	means, for the purposes of Chapter 8 ( <i>Fares and Revenue</i> ) only, services for the carriage of passengers by railway which are provided by a person who is bound by the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement, or any part of it, and including the Operator and any other Train Operator from time to time;
<b>“Railways Pension Scheme”</b>	means the pension scheme established by the Railways Pension Scheme Order 1994 (No. 1433);
<b>“RDG Guidance on Emergency Planning, Knowledge, Understanding and Responsibilities”</b>	means the guidance that sets out industry best practice for planning for responses to major incidents and emergencies entitled “ <i>Emergency Planning, Knowledge, Understanding and Responsibilities</i> ” dated April 2015 and published by RDG, as amended or updated from time to time, or other relevant guidance as reasonably specified by the Secretary of State during the Contract Term;
<b>“RDG Design Guidelines”</b>	means the Rail Delivery Group’s ticket vending machine design guidelines;
<b>“Reactionary Delay”</b>	means a delay that is attributed as “Reactionary Delay” in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules;
<b>“Reactionary Minutes Delay”</b>	means the minutes of delay to the Passenger Services that are attributed as ‘Reactionary Delay’ in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules, disregarding any minutes of delay that are imputed to Passenger Services that were cancelled;
<b>“Reasonable Commercial Manner”</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) acting in the long-term interests of the Rail Services taking into account the long-term affordability, sustainability and financial robustness of the Operator Pension Section(s) as if the Operator and its employees (as appropriate) were solely responsible for the funding of the Operator Pension Section(s) and, at all times, disregarding the actual allocation of cost risk as between the Operator and the Secretary of State in this Contract; or at the option of the Secretary of State;</li> <li>(ii) acting in such other manner as the Secretary of State directs;</li> </ul>
<b>“Re-inspection Failure”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.1(a) of Part 1 ( <i>Service Quality Regime</i> ) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );



<b>“Recognised Accreditation Scheme”</b>	means any of the following diversity accreditation schemes: (a) Investors in Diversity; (b) Clear Assured; (c) National Equality Standards; (d) Diversity Development Standard; (e) Inclusive Employers; and/or, such other scheme as the Secretary of State may designate as a Recognised Accreditation Scheme from time to time;
<b>“Recruitment Objectives”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.5(a) of Chapter 2.1 ( <i>Diversity and Inclusion and Training and Development</i> );
<b>“Recruitment Targets”</b>	means the recruitment targets and associated timeframes in respect of all new recruits across all grades, jobs, positions and roles, as set out in the Operator’s D&I Strategy;
<b>“Rectification Evidence Failure”</b>	has the meaning given to such term in paragraph 4.1(b) of Part 1 ( <i>Service Quality Regime</i> ) to Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“Record of Assumptions” or “ROA”</b>	means a document marked <b>ROA</b> prepared by the Operator (and/or, where Chapter 7.5 ( <i>Variations, Changes and Amendments</i> ) applies) as may be revised in accordance with Chapter 7.5 ( <i>Variations, Changes and Amendments</i> ) providing: (a) detailed assumptions, explanations of assumptions and parameters underlying the Financial Costs Model and Operational Models; (b) a description of the functionality, operation and structure of Financial Costs Model and Operational Models; and (c) a description of each input cell, its requirements and its inter-relationship with the Financial Costs Model and Operational Models;
<b>“Redactions”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 10.1 of Chapter 9.6 ( <i>Confidentiality and Data Protection</i> );
<b>“Reference Fare”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 6.1(a) of Part B ( <i>Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation</i> ) of Chapter 8.2.5 ( <i>Exceeding the Regulated Value, Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price, and Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation</i> );
<b>“Reference Flow”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 6.1(a) of Part B ( <i>Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation</i> ) of Chapter 8.2.5 ( <i>Exceeding the Regulated Value, Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price, and Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation</i> );
<b>“Reference Revenue”</b>	means the aggregate Gross Revenue recorded by RSP as attributable to sales of all Commuter Fares or Protected Fares for the period of twelve (12) months which ended 31 March 2010 or such other reference period as the Secretary of State may require pursuant to paragraph 3.1(a) of Chapter 8.2.5 ( <i>Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation</i> );

<b>“Regulated Child Price”</b>	means the Child Price that is permitted to be charged by the Operator in respect of any Fare in any Fare Year as specified in paragraph 1.3 of Part B ( <i>Regulation of Individual Fares</i> ) of Chapter 8.2.4 ( <i>Regulation of Fares Basket Values and Individual Fares</i> );
<b>“Regulated Price”</b>	means the Price that is permitted to be charged by the Operator in respect of any Fare in any Fare Year, determined in accordance with paragraph 2.1 of Part B ( <i>Regulation of Individual Fares</i> ) of Chapter 8.2.4 ( <i>Regulation of Fares Basket Values and Individual Fares</i> );
<b>“Regulated Qualifications Framework”</b>	means the Regulated Qualifications Framework introduced by Ofqual on 1 October 2015 as located at the date of this Contract at <a href="https://www.gov.uk/find-a-regulated-qualification">https://www.gov.uk/find-a-regulated-qualification</a> ;
<b>“Regulated Value”</b>	means the Value of any Fares Basket that is permitted in any Fare Year, determined in accordance with paragraph 4.1 of Part A ( <i>Regulation of Fares Basket Values</i> ) of Chapter 8.2.4 ( <i>Regulation of Fares Basket Values and Individual Fares</i> );
<b>“Regulation 1370”</b>	means Regulation (EC) N° 1370/2007 of 23 October 2007 on public passenger transport services by rail and by road as incorporated into domestic law by the European Union (Withdrawal) Act 2018 and as amended by S.I. 2020/504 and S.I 2020/1470, and Regulation (EC) N° 1370/2007 of 23 October 2007 on public passenger transport services by rail and by road as applicable in the European Union;
<b>“Relevant Agreement”</b>	<p>means any Property Lease or Access Agreement in relation to any stations or network which may be used from time to time by the Operator in connection with the Rail Services, as replaced or amended from time to time. If and to the extent that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) following the effective date of any Charge Variation, the Operator enters into any Replacement Agreement;</li> <li>(b) the effect of that Charge Variation is reflected in the terms of the Replacement Agreement; and</li> <li>(c) the Secretary of State has consented to such Replacement Agreement being entered into and constituting a Replacement Agreement for the purposes of this definition,</li> </ul> <p>then the Replacement Agreement shall be deemed to be a Relevant Agreement;</p>
<b>“Relevant Assets”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 14.1 ( <i>Assets not Designated as Primary Assets</i> ) of Chapter 9.2.2 ( <i>Key Assets – Designation of Assets</i> );
<b>“Relevant Contract”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 16.1 of Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> );
<b>“Relevant Credit Rating”</b>	<p>means a credit rating of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) <b>A-(or better) (A minus or better)</b> by Standard and Poor’s Corporation or Fitch Ratings Limited in respect of long term senior debt; or</li> <li>(b) <b>A3 (or better)</b> by Moody’s Investors Service Inc. in respect of long term senior debt; or</li> </ul>

(c) if any credit rating specified in paragraph (a) or (b) ceases to be published or made available or there is a material change in the basis of any such credit rating, such other rating or standard as the Secretary of State may, after consultation with the Operator, determine to be appropriate in the circumstances;

<b>“Relevant Data”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 14.1(a) ( <i>Request for Data</i> ) of Chapter 9.6 ( <i>Confidentiality and Data Protection</i> );
<b>“Relevant Delay”</b>	means any delay to the successful introduction into service of any Relevant Rolling Stock;
<b>“Relevant Depot”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 6.1(d) ( <i>Sub-Leasing Arrangements</i> ) of Chapter 9.1 ( <i>Fixed Assets</i> );
<b>“Relevant Documents”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 9.2(a) of Chapter 5.3 ( <i>Accessibility and Inclusivity</i> );
<b>“Relevant Employer”</b>	means any of the Operator’s Affiliates to whom the Rail Services or services which are in support of or ancillary to the Rail Services have been subcontracted (at any tier) or delegated by the Operator, which employs Business Employees performing or in support of or ancillary to the Rail Services;
<b>“Relevant Managed Station”</b>	means Leeds, Manchester Piccadilly and Liverpool Lime Street Stations;
<b>“Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level A”</b>	means, in respect of the relevant Operational Performance Component, the value in relation to performance set out in the relevant Operational Performance Component ABPS Table or otherwise agreed or determined (as applicable) in accordance with paragraph 2.7(b) ( <i>Changes to the Applicable Assessment Methodology</i> ), paragraph 4 ( <i>Target Amendments</i> ) or paragraph 5 ( <i>Effect of Extended Term and alterations to the PBF Assessment Period</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level B”</b>	means, in respect of the relevant Operational Performance Component, the value in relation to performance set out in the relevant Operational Performance Component ABPS Table or otherwise agreed or determined (as applicable) in accordance with paragraph 2.7(b) ( <i>Changes to the Applicable Assessment Methodology</i> ), paragraph 4 ( <i>Target Amendments</i> ) or paragraph 5 ( <i>Effect of Extended Term and alterations to the PBF Assessment Period</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Range”</b>	means, in relation to each Operational Performance Component, the range between the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level B and the Relevant OP Component Expected Fee Performance Level A, in each case with respect to such Operational Performance Component;
<b>“Relevant OP Component Maximum Fee Performance Level”</b>	means, in respect of the relevant Operational Performance Component, the value in relation to performance set out in the relevant Operational Performance Component ABPS Table or otherwise agreed or determined (as applicable) in accordance with paragraph 2.7(b) ( <i>Changes to the Applicable Assessment Methodology</i> ), paragraph 4 ( <i>Target Amendments</i> ) or paragraph 5 ( <i>Effect of Extended Term and alterations to the PBF Assessment Period</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );

<b>“Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level”</b>	means, in respect of the relevant Operational Performance Component, the value in relation to performance set out in the relevant Operational Performance Component ABPS Table or otherwise agreed or determined (as applicable) in accordance with paragraph 2.7(b) ( <i>Changes to the Applicable Assessment Methodology</i> ), paragraph 4 (Target Amendments) or paragraph 5 ( <i>Effect of Extended Term and alterations to the PBF Assessment Period</i> ) of Chapter 7.2;
<b>“Relevant Rectification Period”</b>	has the meaning given to such term in paragraph 4.1(b) of Part 1 ( <i>Service Quality Regime</i> ) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“Relevant Reporting Period”</b>	has, for the purposes of paragraph 3.3 of Chapter 7.4 ( <i>Financial Covenants and Bonds</i> ) only, the meaning given to it in that paragraph;
<b>“Relevant Rolling Stock”</b>	means rolling stock to be acquired by another Train Operator which, when acquired, will initiate the <b>“cascade”</b> of rolling stock that directly or indirectly makes the Cascaded Rolling Stock available for use by the Operator;
<b>“Relevant Tax Authority”</b>	means HM Revenue & Customs, or, if applicable, a tax authority in the jurisdiction in which the Affected Party is established;
<b>“Relevant Term”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.1 of Chapter 9.4.3 ( <i>Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the National Rail Contract</i> );
<b>“Relevant Threshold Amount”</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) in relation to a Target Cost, [REDACTED<sup>59</sup>]; and</li> <li>(b) in relation to a Target Profit, or a Target Revenue, the amount reasonably determined by the Secretary of State prior to the relevant PBF Assessment Period;</li> </ul>
<b>“Remedial Agreement”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 5.1 of Chapter 9.4.3 ( <i>Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the National Rail Contract</i> );
<b>“Remedial Plan”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.1(b) of Chapter 9.4.3 ( <i>Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the National Rail Contract</i> );
<b>“Remedial Plan Notice”</b>	has the meaning given to it in has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2 of Chapter 9.4.3 ( <i>Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the National Rail Contract</i> );
<b>“Remedial Plan Period”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.1(b) of Chapter 9.4.3 ( <i>Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the National Rail Contract</i> );
<b>“Replacement Agreement”</b>	means an agreement entered into as a replacement for any Relevant Agreement;
<b>“Reporting Period”</b>	means:

---

<sup>59</sup> **2 September 2021 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document - this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.**

- (a) for the purposes of the Season Ticket Bond, any consecutive seven (7) day period or any other period, each within a Reporting Period (as defined in paragraph (b)) agreed in accordance with paragraph 3.10 of Chapter 7.4 (*Financial Covenants and Bonds*); or
- (b) for all other purposes, a period of twenty eight (28) days, provided that:
  - (i) the first such period during the Contract Period shall exclude any days up to but not including the Start Date;
  - (ii) the first and last such period in any Reporting Year may be varied by up to seven (7) days by notice from the Secretary of State to the Operator;
  - (iii) each such period shall start on the day following the last day of the preceding such period; and
  - (iv) the last such period during the Contract Period shall end at the end of the Contract Period;

**“Reporting Year”**

means a period normally commencing on 1 April in each calendar year, comprising thirteen (13) consecutive Reporting Periods;

**“Request for Data”**

has the meaning given to it in paragraph 14.1(a) (*Request for Data*) of Chapter 9.6 (*Confidentiality and Data Protection*);

**“Request for Information”**

means a request for information or an apparent request under the Freedom of Information Act or the Environmental Information Regulations;

**“Request for Business Plan” or “RfBP”**

means, with respect to each Business Plan Year, the request issued by the Secretary of State to the Operator (as may be updated or revised from time to time in accordance with paragraph 3.3 of Chapter 7.7 (*Business Plan*)), setting out the specification to be achieved by, and the requirements as to the format and content of, the Business Plan with respect to such Business Plan Year, and shall include the Secretary of State’s proposed Annual PBF Specifications; and

**“Required Establishment”**

means the number of train crew required in order to operate the Passenger Services, which in the case of drivers shall be calculated in accordance with the Rail Delivery Group’s “Guidance Note on Driver Establishment Calculation (December 2013)” and otherwise in accordance with an equivalent methodology;

**“Required Performance Improvement”**

means, in relation to each relevant Operational Performance Component, an improvement in the Operator’s performance:

- (a) in relation to:
  - (i) TOC on Self Cancellations; and/or
  - (ii) TOC Minutes Delay; and/or
  - (iii) Short Formations; and/or
- (b) against:
  - (i) the T-3 Measure; and/or

- (ii) the T-15 Measure; and/or
- (iii) the All Cancellations Measure,

in each case, so that such level of performance is better than the Relevant OP Component Nil Fee Performance Level for the relevant Operational Performance Component;

**“Retail Prices Index”**

means the retail prices index for the whole economy of the United Kingdom and for all items as published from time to time by the Office for National Statistics as “RPI” or, if such index shall cease to be published or there is, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, a material change in the basis of the index or if, at any relevant time, there is a delay in the publication of the index, such other retail prices index as the Secretary of State may, after consultation with the Operator, determine to be appropriate in the circumstances;

**“Return Fare”**

means a Fare which entitles the purchaser to make, without further restrictions as to the time of day for which the Fare is valid, a journey in each direction in Standard Class Accommodation between the stations and/or the zones for which such Fare is valid and which expires no earlier than 0200 hours on the day after the day of the outward journey or, if later, the time the relevant return journey may be completed if commenced before 0200 hours;

**“Revenue Financial Target Amendment Event”**

means the events described in paragraphs 7 and 8 in Part 3 (*Financial Target Amendment Events*) of Appendix 1 (*Trigger Events*) to Chapter 7.5 (*Variations, Changes and Amendments*);

**“Revenue Foregone”**

means:

- (a) the revenue foregone as referred to in limb (ii) of the definition of Actual Revenue; and/or
- (b) any other amounts identified as Revenue Foregone in this Contract;

**“Reward and People Principles”**

means any policy or policies, high level objectives, principles, instructions or guidance issued to the Operator or any Relevant Employer by the Secretary of State (a) with the title “Reward and People Policy”, “Reward Policy” and/or “People Policy”; and/or (b) which relates to remuneration, pensions, benefits, working arrangements, working practices or terms and conditions of employment in respect of any Business Employee, in each case (a) and (b) as may be amended, supplemented or replaced by the Secretary of State from time to time;

**“RM3P”**

means the ‘Risk Management Maturity Model for Performance’ system to monitor and manage operational performance within the rail industry;

**“Rolling Stock Lease”**

means any agreement for the leasing of rolling stock vehicles to which the Operator is a party as at the Start Date and any agreement of a similar or equivalent nature (including, any agreement or arrangement for the subleasing, hiring, licensing or other use of rolling stock vehicles) to which the Operator is a party from time to time during the Contract Term whether in addition to, or replacement or substitution for, in whole or in part, any such agreement;

**“Rolling Stock Related Contract”**

means any Rolling Stock Lease, Maintenance Contract or Technical Support Contract;



<b>“Rolling Stock Units”</b>	means the smallest number of rolling stock vehicles which are normally comprised in a train used by the Operator in the provision of the Passenger Services;
<b>“Route”</b>	means any route specified in the Timetable over which the Operator has permission to operate the Passenger Services pursuant to any Track Access Agreement;
<b>“Route-Specific Required Performance Improvement”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 9.1(a)(ix), of Chapter 4.4 ( <i>Operational Performance</i> );
<b>“Route Map”</b>	means a map (which may be a topological map) showing each of the Routes and each Other Passenger Route Within the Geographical Area meeting the requirements set out in paragraph 8 of Chapter 5.1 ( <i>Customer Information</i> );
<b>“RPC Database”</b>	means a database to be provided by the Secretary of State pursuant to and on the terms of paragraph 6.1 of Chapter 9.3 ( <i>Branding and Intellectual Property</i> ) containing rail passenger counts information and providing analytical reporting tools or such other functionality as the Secretary of State may decide from time to time;
<b>“RSP”</b>	means Rail Settlement Plan Limited;
<b>“RSPS3002”</b>	means the RSP document with reference RSPS3002, version 3 (03-00) published on 27 September 2017 (or amended publications that replace this) which specifies standards for issuing, checking and validating rail products on ITSO Certified Smart Media and defines the rail specific rules required to ensure interoperability across the rail network;
<b>“Safeguarding on Rail Audit”</b>	means the principles and measures to protect vulnerable children and adults at risk on rail transport, published by the British Transport Police against which the Operator will be assessed (as amended or replaced from time to time);
<b>“Safeguarding Strategy”</b>	means a safeguarding strategy to promote and enforce the principles and measures set out in the Safeguarding on Rail Audit and approved by the British Transport Police;
<b>“Safety Authorisation”</b>	means the authorisation issued by the ORR under the Safety Regulations authorising the Operator’s safety management system (as defined in those regulations) and the provisions adopted by the Operator to meet the requirements that are necessary to ensure safe design, maintenance and operation of the relevant infrastructure on the Routes;
<b>“Safety Certificate”</b>	means the certificate issued by the ORR under the Safety Regulations, certifying its acceptance of the Operator’s safety management system (as defined in those regulations) and the provisions adopted by the Operator to meet the requirements that are necessary to ensure safe operation on the Routes;
<b>“Safety Regulations”</b>	means the Railways and Other Guided Transport Systems (Safety) Regulations 2006 (as amended pursuant to the Railways and Other Guided Transport Systems (Safety) (Amendment) Regulations 2006);
<b>“Saver Return Fare”</b>	means a return fare which is shown as a saver fare in the systems of the RSP as at the date of each Fares Setting Round;
<b>“Scheduled Consist Data”</b>	means information as to the type of individual vehicles of rolling stock that have been scheduled by the Operator to form a train in the Train Fleet for any particular Passenger



	Service and the manner in which they are scheduled to be configured;
<b>“Scorecard Criterion”</b>	means each criterion set out in Appendix 3 ( <i>Scorecard Criteria</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> ), in respect of which the Operator’s performance is measured (in whole or in part) in relation to a PBF Assessment Period and for which a score shall be awarded in the PBF Assessment Period Scorecard (and “Scorecard Criteria” means the plural of Scorecard Criterion);
<b>“Scorecard Methodology”</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) in relation to a PBF Component other than the Customer Satisfaction Fee, the methodology set out in Appendix 4 (<i>Scorecard Methodology</i>) of Chapter 7.2 (<i>Performance Based Fee</i>); and</li> <li>(b) in relation to the Customer Satisfaction Fee, the Customer Satisfaction Scorecard A or Customer Satisfaction Scorecard B (whichever is the Applicable Assessment Methodology for the Customer Satisfaction Fee);</li> </ul>
<b>“Scottish Ministers”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in section 44(2) of the Scotland Act 1998 and shall include any other body replacing them from time to time;
<b>“Season Ticket Bond”</b>	means the season ticket bond to be provided to the Secretary of State in respect of the Operator’s liabilities under certain Fares and Season Ticket Fares in the agreed terms marked STB and such other bond as may replace it from time to time under Chapter 7.4 ( <i>Financial Covenants and Bonds</i> );
<b>“Season Ticket Fare”</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) for the purposes of Chapter 7.4 (<i>Financial Covenants and Bonds</i>) and the definition of Season Ticket Bond only, a Fare which entitles the purchaser to make an unlimited number of journeys in any direction during the period for which, and between the stations and/or the zones for which, such Fare is valid; and</li> <li>(b) for all other purposes, a Fare which entitles the purchaser to make, without further restriction except as to class of accommodation, an unlimited number of journeys in any direction during the period for which, and between the stations and/or the zones for which, such Fare is valid;</li> </ul>
<b>“Seating and Assistance Provisions”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.2(a) of Chapter 5.3 ( <i>Accessibility and Inclusivity</i> );
<b>“Secondary Brand”</b>	means the Double Arrows Symbol and the Operator Trade Marks and the Parties acknowledge that such brands constitute Enduring Branding;
<b>“Secretary of State Relationship Manager”</b>	means the person responsible for managing the Secretary of State’s overall relationship with the Operator;
<b>“Secretary of the Access Disputes Committee”</b>	means the person appointed as the secretary of the Access Disputes Committee from time to time;
<b>“Secure Stations Accreditation”</b>	means Stations which have achieved accreditation under the Secure Stations Scheme;

<b>“Secure Stations Scheme”</b>	means the certification scheme which is managed by the Department for Transport and British Transport Police and sets station design and management safety standards for crime reduction at railway stations;
<b>“Security Interest”</b>	means any mortgage, pledge, lien, hypothecation, security interest or other charge or encumbrance or any other agreement or arrangement having substantially the same economic effect;
<b>“Security in the Design of Stations Guidance”</b>	means the “ <i>Security in Design of Stations (SIDOS)</i> ” Guidance published by the Secretary of State, the British Transport Police and the Centre for the Protection of National Infrastructure dated July 2012 as amended, updated or replaced from time to time, and/or any other relevant security guidance as reasonably directed by the Secretary of State;
<b>“Service Group”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Track Access Agreement or as specified by the Secretary of State from time to time;
<b>“Service Quality Area”</b>	means each of the service quality areas for SQR Trains, SQR Stations and SQR Customer Service as set out in Column 1 of the table(s) in Appendix 2 to Part 1 ( <i>Service Quality Regime</i> ) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“Service Quality Failure”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.1 of Part 1 ( <i>Service Quality Regime</i> ) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“Service Quality Improvement”</b>	means the Operator ensuring that the relevant Affected Service Quality Area or Affected Service Quality Indicator (as applicable) is provided at a level that is equal to or above the SQR Benchmark;
<b>“Service Quality Improvement Proposal”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 17.1 ( <i>Consequences of Performance falling below the SQR Benchmark</i> ) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“Service Quality Indicator”</b>	means each of the indicators for SQR Trains, SQR Stations and SQR Customer Service comprised in a Service Quality Area as specifically specified in Column 2 of the table(s) in Appendix 2 to Part 1 ( <i>Service Quality Regime</i> ) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“Service Quality Inspection”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.1 of Part 1 ( <i>Service Quality Regime</i> ) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“Service Quality Regime” or “SQR”</b>	means the regime for the measurement of standards at SQR Stations, on SQR Trains and SQR Customer Service as set out in Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“Service Quality Re-inspection”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.1(a) of Part 1 ( <i>Service Quality Regime</i> ) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“Service Quality Schedules”</b>	means each of the service schedules for SQR Stations, SQR Trains and SQR Customer Service contained in Appendix 1 of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“Service Quality Standards Fee” or “SQ”</b>	means the element of the Performance Based Fee the purpose of which is to measure the Operator’s effectiveness in delivering high-quality provision of facilities, services, customer care and other outputs that affect passengers’ satisfaction and sentiment;

**“Service Quality Trains Rectification Evidence”**

means evidence and/or documentation demonstrating (as the case may be) that the Operator has rectified a relevant Service Quality Failure in relation to SQR Trains;

**“Service Recovery Plan”**

means, in the event of a prevention or restriction of access to the track or a section of the track (howsoever caused) which results in any Cancellation, Partial Cancellation, and/or any Passenger Service being operated with less Passenger Carrying Capacity than the Passenger Carrying Capacity specified for such Passenger Service in the Train Formation Capacity Plan, a plan implemented by the Operator:

- (a) to minimise the disruption arising from such prevention or restriction of access by operating, during such period of disruption, the best possible level of service given such disruption, including by:
  - (i) keeping service intervals to reasonable durations;
  - (ii) keeping extended journey times to reasonable durations; and
  - (iii) managing any resulting overcrowding;
- (b) to:
  - (i) return the level of service to that level specified in the Timetable as soon as reasonably practicable; and
  - (ii) prior to the attainment of the level of service specified in paragraph (b)(i) operate any reduced level of service agreed with the Infrastructure Manager for the purpose of minimising such disruption pursuant to paragraph (a);
- (c) in accordance with the principles of service recovery set out in the **“Approved Code of Practice: Contingency Planning for Train Service Recovery - Service Recovery 2013”** or any document of a similar or equivalent nature; and
- (d) where the particulars of such plan in relation to the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) have been:
  - (i) agreed at an initial and, where required, subsequent telephone conference between the Operator, the Infrastructure Manager and any other affected Train Operator; and
  - (ii) on each occasion, recorded in an official control log by the relevant Region Control Manager of the Infrastructure Manager,

and prevention or restriction of access to the track or a section of the track shall have the meaning given to that term in paragraph 1.1(a)(i) of Chapter 9.4.4 (*Force Majeure*);

**“Settlement Proposal”**

has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.2 of Chapter 5.3 (*Accessibility and Inclusivity*);

**“Shared Facilities”**

means those facilities in respect of which the Operator and Network Rail carry out their respective activities concurrently;

<b>“Short Formations”</b>	means the relevant measure by which the Operator’s operational performance is assessed, as described in and calculated in accordance with paragraph 5.1 ( <i>Short Formations</i> ) of Chapter 4.4 ( <i>Operational Performance</i> );																				
<b>“Short Formations Benchmark Table”</b>	means the table entitled, "Short Formation Benchmark Table" as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;																				
<b>“Short Formations Re-Calculation”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 5.1(b) of Chapter 4.4 ( <i>Operational Performance</i> );																				
<b>“Short Formations Figures”</b>	means the number of Passenger Services in any Reporting Period formed with less than the required Passenger Carrying Capacity specified in the Train Formation Capacity Plan;																				
<b>“Single Fare”</b>	means a Fare which entitles the purchaser to make, without further restrictions as to the time of day for which the Fare is valid, on any one (1) day, one (1) journey in Standard Class Accommodation between the stations and/or the zones for which the Fare is valid;																				
<b>“SKA Rating Standard”</b>	means the recognised environmental assessment tool known as <b>“SKA Rating”</b> for sustainable fit outs published by the Royal Institute of Chartered Surveyors;																				
<b>“Small and Medium-sized Enterprises” or “SMEs”</b>	<p>means any individual micro, small or medium sized enterprise meeting the requirements set out in EU Recommendation 2003/36 and broadly falling into one of three categories, based on a combination of:</p> <p>(a) the number of employees; and</p> <p>(b) either its turnover or its balance sheet total;</p> <p>The three categories are:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Company category</th> <th>Employees</th> <th>Turnover</th> <th>or</th> <th>Balance sheet total</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Medium</td> <td>&lt;250</td> <td>≤ €50m</td> <td></td> <td>≤ €43m</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Small</td> <td>&lt;50</td> <td>≤ €10m</td> <td></td> <td>≤ €10m</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Micro</td> <td>&lt;10</td> <td>≤ €2m</td> <td></td> <td>≤ €2m</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Company category	Employees	Turnover	or	Balance sheet total	Medium	<250	≤ €50m		≤ €43m	Small	<50	≤ €10m		≤ €10m	Micro	<10	≤ €2m		≤ €2m
Company category	Employees	Turnover	or	Balance sheet total																	
Medium	<250	≤ €50m		≤ €43m																	
Small	<50	≤ €10m		≤ €10m																	
Micro	<10	≤ €2m		≤ €2m																	
<b>“Smart Media”</b>	<p>means any of the following which can be used as part of a Smart Ticketing Scheme:</p> <p>(a) digital barcodes;</p> <p>(b) a barcode printed on paper either by customers (e.g. at home, office) or by franchisee staff at stations or on board trains;</p> <p>(c) ITSO Certified Smart Media;</p> <p>(d) contactless payment media (cEMVs);</p> <p>(e) Oyster (TfL’s smartcard); and</p> <p>(f) any of the above formats stored and presented on a portable electronic device;</p>																				
<b>“Smart Ticketing Scheme”</b>	means a scheme that uses Smart Media that can be fulfilled electronically. It must:																				

- (a) **either** provide passengers with an electronic way of buying (including at home, on the move or at stations), receiving or collecting and using their ticket; **or** identify that a passenger has entered and left the rail network at particular stations, and deducts the cost of the journey from their debit/credit card, pre-pay account or other permissible funding mechanism;
- (b) evidence the purchase of a single or multiple Fare(s) for a passenger;
- (c) provide management information that a journey is being/has been made to the relevant back office;

**“Smart Media Target”**

means the targets set out in the Business Plan for increasing take-up of Smart Media by users of the Passenger Services;

**“SoS Audits”**

has the meaning given to such term in paragraph 6.1 of Part 1 (*Service Quality Regime*) of Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*);

**“SoS Claim”**

means all losses, liabilities, costs, damages and expenses that the Secretary of State or, for the purpose of paragraph (b) below, the Secretary of State’s nominee does or will incur or suffer:

- (a) as a consequence of any breach, negligence or other default of the Operator under or in connection with this Contract and/or any agreement ancillary to this Contract, including the Supplemental Agreement, the Direct Award Collateral Agreement (and/or a Transfer Agreement pursuant to (and as defined in) the Direct Award Collateral Agreement); and/or
- (b) in respect of any matter for which the Operator is to indemnify the Secretary of State or, for the purpose of paragraph 5.2(b) (*Assignment of Property Leases during the Contract Term*) of Chapter 9.1 (*Fixed Assets*) or paragraph 4.5(b)(ii) (*Property Leases*) of Chapter 9.5.3 (*Obligations applying on or after Termination*) only, the Secretary of State’s nominee pursuant to this Contract or any agreement ancillary to this Contract, including the Supplemental Agreement the Direct Award Collateral Agreement (and/or a Transfer Agreement pursuant to (and as defined in) the Direct Award Collateral Agreement);

**“SoS Nominee”**

has the meaning given to it in paragraph 5.6 of Part 1 (*Service Quality Regime*) of Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*);

**“SoS Service Quality Inspection”**

means inspections undertaken by the Secretary of State or the Secretary of State’s agents in place of the Operator;

**“SoS Service Quality Inspection Period”**

has the meaning given to it in paragraph 14.2(b)(iii) of Part 1 (*Service Quality Regime*) of Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*);

**“Spares”**

means parts and components of rolling stock vehicles which are available for the purpose of carrying out maintenance services on rolling stock vehicles;

**“Special Categories of Personal Data”**

has the meaning given to it in the Data Protection Legislation;

**“Specifically Included Change of Law”**

has the meaning given to it in the definition of Change of Law;

**“Specified Actions”**

include:

- (a) identifying, developing, designing, assessing and/or advising on options or proposals for delivering particular outputs or outcomes, including undertaking or commissioning feasibility studies; keeping records; collating relevant data; developing implementation plans; analysing financial, operational, practical and other impacts and risks; developing business cases; reviewing and commenting on documents, proposals, draft implementation timetables and programmes;
- (b) supplying to the Secretary of State and other relevant Specified Persons any relevant data or information that is held by the Operator or which the Operator can reasonably be expected to obtain or produce (including any documents, information or other outputs prepared pursuant to paragraph (a) above, and, where applicable, information regarding usage and financial performance of passenger services);
- (c) providing opinions, advice, expertise, comments, commentary or analysis to relevant Specified Persons, in writing and/or by attending and actively participating in meetings, workshops, steering groups, advisory panels as may be appropriate in the circumstances;
- (d) carrying out all the activities and actions that might reasonably be required to be carried out or undertaken by a competent train operator to support the effective, efficient and timely delivery of any improvement scheme promoted by any Specified Person;
- (e) if requested to do so by the Secretary of State, negotiating in good faith with a Specified Person with a view to reaching agreement with that person in relation to the terms (including price) for provision of Passenger Services at any new station or on any new or reopened rail route;
- (f) not unreasonably exercising its rights under, or raising any objections pursuant to, its Access Agreements or any industry procedures (including Network Change and Station Change) in a way designed to directly or indirectly prevent, prejudice or frustrate the implementation or achievement of any Specified Matter in a way that would frustrate the achievement of the Specified Matter;
- (g) if requested by the Secretary of State, identifying a specific person who will act as the Operator’s primary point of contact with the Secretary of State in relation to any of the Specified Matters;
- (h) implementing any initiatives or actions that may be agreed with Specified Persons during the course of the cooperation required by paragraph 1.1 (*Duty of Cooperation*) of Chapter 3 (*Collaboration*) (but subject to paragraph 1.3 (*Duty of Cooperation*) of Chapter 3 (*Collaboration*)); and



- (i) taking, or refraining from taking, such other actions as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify by notice to the Operator in accordance with paragraph 1.2 (*Duty of Cooperation*) of Chapter 3 (*Collaboration*),

in each case in a timely manner and to the extent applicable in the context of any particular Specified Matter;

**“Specified Additional Rolling Stock”**

has the meaning given in paragraph 1.1(b) of Chapter 4.3 (*The Rolling Stock*);

**“Specified Industry Initiatives”**

means such Improvement Initiatives which are intended to secure improvements on a railway industry wide basis as the Secretary of State and/ or Network Rail may, from time to time, notify the Operator, which may include (but shall not be limited to) measures or initiatives in relation to:

- (a) improving level crossing safety and risk mitigation;
- (b) prevention of suicide, trespass and vandalism on the railway;
- (c) improving track worker safety;
- (d) promoting decarbonisation and other environmental improvements;
- (e) improving passenger information including during perturbation;
- (f) the reopening of disused or freight-only railway routes to passenger services;
- (g) Network Rail’s long-term strategy and planning activities;
- (h) reforming the manner in which train service requirements are specified by funders and procurers;
- (i) the timetable technology strategy; and
- (j) the Traction Decarbonisation Network Study;

**“Specified Matters”**

include:

- (a) the identification, development and design of Improvement Initiatives, including the Specified Industry Initiatives;
- (b) the design, development, planning, delivery and implementation of the infrastructure improvement programme known as the ‘TransPennine Route Upgrade’;
- (c) the planning and delivery of improvement works at Stations or Operator Access Stations, including Minor Works and other physical works to improve accessibility;
- (d) developing opportunities for financing investment at Stations and Operator Access Stations, for example in order to improve the customer experience, to improve energy efficiency and/or achieve other environmental benefits;
- (e) developing anything that can reasonably be considered to be a railway industry system, including



systems in relation to the attribution of train delay, the allocation of revenue and the collection and dissemination of industry-wide information;

- (f) ensuring the continuation of passenger services across the network in a coordinated manner, and in line with the priorities and directions, as may be set out by the Secretary of State from time to time, including:
  - (i) co-ordinating with other Train Operators to ensure consistency of coverage to all communities across the national network, including changes to Rail Services to assist where other Train Operators are unable to fully perform their own Rail Services;
  - (ii) assisting altered or additional freight services to operate on the national rail network and, where appropriate, enabling certain essential goods (such as medical equipment or other urgent items) to be carried on Passenger Services; and
  - (iii) continuing where possible and appropriate to enforce any agreements with third parties to deliver quality and value for money;
- (g) the design and development of any scheme promoted by a Local Authority or any other person specified in paragraph 1.3 (*Duty of Cooperation*) of Chapter 3 (*Collaboration*) aimed at providing additional or varied Passenger Services; improving any station; regenerating, redeveloping or otherwise improving the public realm in the area surrounding any station; constructing and providing passenger services at new stations; opening new railway routes or reopening disused or freight-only railway routes for passenger use; or delivering other improvements that relate to the Rail Services;
- (h) efficient planning, development and implementation of infrastructure maintenance, renewal and enhancement works, including:
  - (i) planning possessions, and
  - (ii) identifying opportunities to coordinate and combine the delivery of works (e.g. renewals and enhancements),

with a view to achieving the optimum compromise between outcomes for passengers and cost-efficiency for the railway industry and ensuring that track worker safety is a key consideration (including incorporating recommendations and learning points from Rail Accident Investigation Branch investigations such as Rail Accident Report 11/2020);
- (i) continuous improvement of train timetabling and train planning functions, including the Operational Planning Matters;
- (j) developing and implementing initiatives relating to the Operator's participation or prospective

- participation in Industry Schemes, where such Industry Schemes relate to the Rail Services;
- (k) conserving and promoting historic buildings and structures forming part of the railway estate;
  - (l) identifying and executing joint initiatives with heritage railway lines within the area of the Rail Services, with a view to increasing their usage and providing benefit to Passengers and the community;
  - (m) facilitating the achievement of the objectives of any Specified Person, where the achievement of such objectives would:
    - (i) benefit passengers, the environment or the achievement of any other government policy objective; or
    - (ii) improve the cost efficiency of operating the railway;
  - (n) such other activities as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify by notice to the Operator in accordance with paragraph 1.2 (*Duty of Cooperation*) of Chapter 3 (*Collaboration*); and
  - (o) assisting in the timely, efficient and cost effective implementation and delivery of the HS2 Project in a manner which provides the best overall solution for the network;

**“Specified Persons”**

include:

- (a) the Secretary of State;
- (b) Network Rail;
- (c) other train operators, including any operator who is the holder of a passenger licence or non-passenger licence under the Act;
- (d) suppliers (including rolling stock lessors and maintainers);
- (e) any Local Authority or Devolved Transport Body;
- (f) the Scottish Ministers;
- (g) the Welsh Ministers;
- (h) the British Transport Police;
- (i) the ORR;
- (j) the RSSB;
- (k) the Passengers’ Council;
- (l) the London Transport Users’ Committee;
- (m) the Accessibility Panel and other bodies representing the interests of persons who share protected characteristics within the meaning of the EA 2010;
- (n) Not used;
- (o) HS2 Limited;
- (p) HS2 Shadow Operator;
- (q) the Railway Heritage Trust;

- (r) the RDG;
- (s) the RRRG;
- (t) any other rail industry body not identified above; and
- (u) such other persons as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify by notice to the Operator in accordance with paragraph 1.2 (*Duty of Cooperation*) of Chapter 3 (*Collaboration*),

in each case to the extent applicable in the context of any particular Specified Matter;

<b>“SQR Benchmark”</b>	means any SQR Station Benchmark, SQR Train Benchmark or SQR Customer Service Benchmark (as the context may require);
<b>“SQR Component”</b>	means each of the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) SQR Trains Component;</li> <li>(b) SQR Stations Component; and</li> <li>(c) SQR Customer Service Component;</li> </ul>
<b>“SQR Contract”</b>	means the contract between the Operator and the SQR Contractor pursuant to which the SQR Contractor provides the Service Quality Inspections;
<b>“SQR Contractor”</b>	means the contractor appointed by the Operator under the SQR Contract to undertake the Service Quality Inspections;
<b>“SQR Customer Service”</b>	means the services measured by the indicators set out in Part 3 ( <i>SQR Customer Service</i> ) of Appendix 1 ( <i>Service Quality Schedules</i> ) to Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“SQR Customer Service Benchmark”</b>	means the benchmark for each Service Quality Area relating to SQR Customer Service as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan, or as may be agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 18.1 of Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> ) or paragraph 2.7(b) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“SQR Customer Service Component”</b>	means those Service Quality Areas that relate to customer service, as more particularly described in paragraph 3 ( <i>Service Quality Standards</i> ) of Appendix 5 ( <i>Quantified Target Methodology</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“SQR Expected Fee Performance Level”</b>	means, in respect of the relevant SQR Component, the specified value in relation to SQR performance as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan, or otherwise agreed or determined (as applicable) in accordance with paragraph 2.7(b) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“SQR Management System”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.1 of Part 1 ( <i>Service Quality Regime</i> ) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“SQR Maximum Fee Performance Level”</b>	means, in respect of the relevant SQR Component, the specified value in relation to SQR performance as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan, or otherwise agreed or determined (as applicable) in

	accordance with paragraph 2.7(b) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“SQR Nil Fee Performance Level”</b>	means, in respect of the relevant SQR Component, the specified value in relation to SQR performance as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan, or otherwise agreed or determined (as applicable) in accordance with paragraph 2.7(b) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“SQR Register”</b>	means the register of the facilities and services which exist on a SQR Train and at a SQR Station and which is to be used for carrying out: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Service Quality Inspections; and</li> <li>(b) Independent Service Quality Audits, SoS Audits or SoS Service Inspections,</li> </ul> <p>in each case, as such register is required pursuant to paragraph 2.2 of Part 1 (<i>Service Quality Regime</i>) of Chapter 5.5 (<i>Customer Experience Performance</i>);</p>
<b>“SQR Station”</b>	means the Stations and the Relevant Managed Stations;
<b>“SQR Station Benchmark”</b>	means the benchmark for each Service Quality Area relating to SQR Stations as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan, or as may be agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 18.1 of Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> ) or paragraph 2.7(b) of Chapter 7.2;
<b>“SQR Stations Component”</b>	means those Service Quality Areas that relate to Stations, as more particularly described in paragraph 3 ( <i>Service Quality Standards</i> ) of Appendix 5 ( <i>Quantified Target Methodology</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“SQR Targets”</b>	means, in relation to each SQR Component, in the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) SQR Nil Fee Performance Level;</li> <li>(b) SQR Expected Fee Performance Level; and</li> <li>(c) SQR Maximum Fee Performance Level;</li> </ul> <p>as specified as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan, or as may be agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 2.7(b) (<i>Changes to the Applicable Assessment Methodology</i>) of Chapter 7.2 (<i>Performance Based Fee</i>);</p>
<b>“SQR Train”</b>	means a train engaged in the provision of Passenger Services;
<b>“SQR Train Benchmark”</b>	means the benchmark for each Service Quality Area relating to SQR Trains as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan, or as may be agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 18.1 of Part 1 of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> ) or paragraph 2.7(b) of Chapter 7.2;
<b>“SQR Trains Component”</b>	means those Service Quality Areas that relate to trains engaged in the provision of Passenger Services as more particularly described in paragraph 3 ( <i>Service Quality Standards</i> ) of Appendix 5 ( <i>Quantified Target Methodology</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Stakeholder”</b>	means the Passengers’ Council and any relevant Local Authority and organisations who can reasonably be

	considered to have a legitimate and proper interest in the Passenger Services including Community Rail Partnerships representing Community Rail Routes designated as such by the Secretary of State;
<b>“Standard Class Accommodation”</b>	means, in respect of any train or service, accommodation which is available to the purchaser of any Fare which, taking into account any rights or restrictions relating to that Fare (other than restrictions relating to accommodation on that train or service), entitles such purchaser to make a journey on that train or service (provided that any accommodation on such train which may have been reserved by such purchaser shall be deemed to have been made so available if, had it not been so reserved, it would have been available for use by such purchaser);
<b>“Standard Occupational Classification Codes”</b>	means the codes published in the Standard Occupational Classification 2010 as provided by the Office for National Statistics which can be found at  <a href="https://www.ons.gov.uk/methodology/classificationsandstandards/standardoccupationalclassificationsoc/soc2010/soc2010volume2thestructureandcodingindex">https://www.ons.gov.uk/methodology/classificationsandstandards/standardoccupationalclassificationsoc/soc2010/soc2010volume2thestructureandcodingindex</a> ;
<b>“Start Date”</b>	means the time and date on which the Operator is to commence operating the Rail Services, which shall be the later of:  (a) 02:00 on 30 May 2021; or (b) such time and date as may be notified to the Operator by the Secretary of State pursuant to clause 2.3(a) ( <i>Amendment of Start Date/Expiry Date</i> ) of this Contract;
<b>“Station”</b>	means:  (a) any station in respect of which the Operator has entered into a Station Lease; or (b) any New Station at which the Operator becomes the Facility Owner;
<b>“Station Access Conditions”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the relevant Access Agreement to which it relates;
<b>“Station Asset Management Plan”</b>	means the document in the agreed terms marked SAMP provided by the Operator pursuant to the Previous Agreement and as amended from time to time in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 9.1 ( <i>Fixed Assets</i> );
<b>“Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation”</b>	means the certification of the Operator’s station asset management organisation and systems for Stations as complying with the requirements of ISO55001:2014 (or such other reasonably equivalent standard as may be approved in writing by the Secretary of State from time to time in place of ISO55001:2014);
<b>“Station Change”</b>	has the meaning given to the term “Proposal” under the Station Access Conditions;
<b>“Station Lease” or “SL”</b>	means:  (a) any lease of a station that the Operator is a party to as at the Start Date; or

- (b) a lease of any other station to which the Operator becomes the Facility Owner at any time during the Contract Period;

**“Station Services”**

means:

- (a) the provision of any services to persons at Stations or to Train Operators whose trains call at such Stations, provided that such services:
  - (i) are made available only or principally to passengers alighting from or joining trains calling at such Stations and to such Train Operators;
  - (ii) are provided in connection with the calling of trains at such Stations and are not designed to encourage passengers or other persons to use such Station Services other than in connection with a journey on a train calling at such Stations;
  - (iii) exclude the sale or issue (for a charge) of any goods other than passenger timetables and any items included in the price of a Fare; and
  - (iv) may include the provision of car parking spaces;
- (b) the provision of access to any person under an Access Agreement at any Station; and
- (c) the provision of any service which the Operator may provide, or may be required to provide, under any Access Agreement in effect on the Start Date or as lawfully directed by the ORR from time to time;

**“Station Service Quality Inspection”**

means an inspection of the facilities and services at a SQR Station in the manner specified in the Service Quality Schedules and in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 5.5 (*Customer Experience Performance*);

**“Station Sublease”**

means a lease or sub lease of premises comprising part or parts of a Station exclusively occupied by another Train Operator;

**“Stored Credit Balance”**

means any monetary amount held by the Operator which a passenger can apply at a future date to the purchase of a Fare (and stored in any medium);

**“Subcontractor”**

has the meaning given to it in paragraph 6.3(b) of Chapter 9.3 (*Branding and Intellectual Property*);

**“Subsequent Business Plan Year”**

means any period of twelve (12) months beginning on 1 April and ending on the following 31 March, that commences (a) upon or after the date of expiry of the Initial Business Plan Year and (b) before the end of the Contract Term (regardless of whether such period extends beyond the Contract Term);

**"Subsidies Rules"**

has the meaning given in paragraph 7 (*Subsidy Control, State Aid and Procurement Regulations*) of Chapter 9.7 (*Miscellaneous Legal Terms*);

**“Suburban Station”**

means any station which is not a London Station and which is listed below or is closer to London than (and on the same line as) the following stations:

- (a) Shoeburyness;
- (b) Southend Victoria;
- (c) Southminster;
- (d) Marks Tey (excluding Sudbury branch);
- (e) Audley End (excluding Stansted Airport);
- (f) Ashwell & Morden;
- (g) Arlesey;
- (h) Harlington;
- (i) Bletchley (excluding Bedford branch);
- (j) Aylesbury;
- (k) Haddenham & Thame Parkway;
- (l) Twyford (including Henley branch);
- (m) Windsor & Eton Riverside;
- (n) Earley;
- (o) Fleet;
- (p) Alton;
- (q) Witley;
- (r) Christ’s Hospital;
- (s) Brighton (excluding Coastway);
- (t) East Grinstead;
- (u) Crowborough;
- (v) Wadhurst;
- (w) Paddock Wood (including the line between Strood and Paddock Wood);
- (x) Maidstone East;
- (y) Canterbury East; and
- (z) Margate;

**“Successor Operator”**

means a Train Operator succeeding or intended by the Secretary of State to succeed (and whose identity is notified to the Operator by the Secretary of State) the Operator in the provision or operation of all or any of the Rail Services including, where the context so admits, the Operator where it is to continue to provide or operate the Rail Services following termination of the National Rail Contract;

**“Successor Operator Timetable”**

has the meaning given to it in paragraph 9.2(a) of Chapter 9.5.3 (*Provisions applying on and after Termination*);

**“Suicide Prevention Duty Holders Group”**

means the cross industry steering group which directly governs and oversees the management and delivery of the rail industry’s suicide prevent programme and which is made of representatives from those organisations within the industry that have responsibility for preventing suicide on the railway;

**“Suicide Prevention Duty Holders’ Group’s 9 Point Plan”**

means the best practice plan established and published by the “cross-industry suicide prevention group”, setting out



	nine deliverables aimed at suicide reduction (as amended or replaced from time to time);
<b>“Suicide Prevention Plan”</b>	means the Operator's suicide prevention plan developed under the Previous Agreement, as may be updated from time to time in accordance with this Contract;
<b>“Suicide Prevention Strategy”</b>	means the ‘From Crisis to Care’ strategy document for the period 2016-2019 (as amended or replaced from time to time) published by the British Transport Police;
<b>“Supplemental Agreement”</b>	means a supplemental agreement between the Operator and a Successor Operator to be entered into pursuant to a Transfer Scheme, being substantially in the form of the document entitled Supplemental Agreement in the agreed terms, but subject to such amendments as the Secretary of State may reasonably make thereto as a result of any change of circumstances (including any Change of Law) affecting such supplemental agreement between the date of the National Rail Contract and the date on which the relevant Transfer Scheme is made and subject further to paragraph 3.2 of Chapter 9.5.3 ( <i>Provisions applying on and after Termination</i> );
<b>“Supplementary Material”</b>	means any supplementary documents or materials as agreed between the parties and most recently Placed In Escrow;
<b>“T-3 Measure”</b>	means, for each Reporting Period each of the benchmarks specified in the T-3 Table for that Reporting Period;
<b>“T-3 Table”</b>	means the table entitled, “T-3 Table” as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“T-15 Measure”</b>	means, for each Reporting Period each of the benchmarks specified in the T-15 Table for that Reporting Period;
<b>“T-15 Table”</b>	means the table entitled, “T-15 Table” as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“Target Cost” or “TC”</b>	means the value agreed or determined (as applicable) pursuant to paragraph 3.1 ( <i>Target Cost</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> ) and specified in the Target Cost Template within the Financial Cost Model, as may be amended pursuant paragraphs 4 ( <i>Target Amendments</i> ), 5 ( <i>Effect of Extended Term and Alterations to the PBF Assessment Period</i> ) or 6 ( <i>Exceptional Events</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Target Cost Maximum Fee Performance Level” or “TCMax”</b>	means the value agreed or determined (as applicable) pursuant to paragraph 3.1 ( <i>Target Cost</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> ) and specified in the Target Cost Template within the Financial Cost Model, as may be amended pursuant paragraphs 4 ( <i>Target Amendments</i> ), 5 ( <i>Effect of Extended Term and Alterations to the PBF Assessment Period</i> ) or 6 ( <i>Exceptional Events</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Target Cost Nil Fee Performance Level” or “TCNil”</b>	means the value agreed or determined (as applicable) pursuant to paragraph 3.1 ( <i>Target Cost</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> ) and specified in the Target Cost Template within the Financial Cost Model, as may be amended pursuant paragraphs 4 ( <i>Target Amendments</i> ), 5 ( <i>Effect of Extended Term and Alterations to the PBF</i>

	<i>Assessment Period</i> ) or 6 ( <i>Exceptional Events</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Target Cost Template”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.1(a) ( <i>Target Cost</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Target Passenger Demand”</b>	means the higher of Actual Passenger Demand and Forecast Passenger Demand or any other level of passenger demand specified by the Secretary of State not being greater than the higher of Actual Passenger Demand or Forecast Passenger Demand;
<b>“Target Profit” or “TP”</b>	means the value agreed or determined (as applicable) pursuant to paragraph 3.3 ( <i>Target Profit</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> ) and specified in the Target Profit Template within the Financial Cost Model, as may be amended pursuant paragraphs 4 ( <i>Target Amendments</i> ), 5 ( <i>Effect of Extended Term and Alterations to the PBF Assessment Period</i> ) or 6 ( <i>Exceptional Events</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Target Profit Maximum Fee Performance Level” or “TPMax”</b>	means the value agreed or determined (as applicable) pursuant to paragraph 3.3 ( <i>Target Profit</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> ) and specified in the Target Profit Template within the Financial Cost Model, as may be amended pursuant paragraphs 4 ( <i>Target Amendments</i> ), 5 ( <i>Effect of Extended Term and Alterations to the PBF Assessment Period</i> ) or 6 ( <i>Exceptional Events</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Target Profit Nil Fee Performance Level” or “TPNil”</b>	means the value agreed or determined (as applicable) pursuant to paragraph 3.3 ( <i>Target Profit</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> ) and specified in the Target Profit Template within the Financial Cost Model, as may be amended pursuant paragraphs 4 ( <i>Target Amendments</i> ), 5 ( <i>Effect of Extended Term and Alterations to the PBF Assessment Period</i> ) or 6 ( <i>Exceptional Events</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Target Profit Template”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.3(a) ( <i>Target Profit</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Target Revenue” or “TR”</b>	means the value agreed or determined (as applicable) pursuant to paragraph 3.2 ( <i>Target Revenue</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> ) and specified in the Target Revenue Template within the Financial Cost Model, as may be amended pursuant paragraphs 4 ( <i>Target Amendments</i> ), 5 ( <i>Effect of Extended Term and Alterations to the PBF Assessment Period</i> ) or 6 ( <i>Exceptional Events</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Target Revenue Maximum Fee Performance Level” or “TRMax”</b>	means the value agreed or determined (as applicable) pursuant to paragraph 3.2 ( <i>Target Revenue</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> ) and specified in the Target Revenue Template within the Financial Cost Model, as may be amended pursuant paragraphs 4 ( <i>Target Amendments</i> ), 5 ( <i>Effect of Extended Term and Alterations to the PBF Assessment Period</i> ) or 6 ( <i>Exceptional Events</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Target Revenue Nil Fee Performance Level” or “TRNil”</b>	means the value agreed or determined (as applicable) pursuant to paragraph 3.2 ( <i>Target Revenue</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> ) and specified in the Target Revenue Template within the Financial Cost Model, as may be amended pursuant paragraphs 4 ( <i>Target Amendments</i> ),

	5 ( <i>Effect of Extended Term and Alterations to the PBF Assessment Period</i> ) or 6 ( <i>Exceptional Events</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Target Revenue Template”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.2(a) ( <i>Target Revenue</i> ) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“Taxation”</b>	means any kind of tax, duty, levy or other charge whether or not similar to any in force at the date of the National Rail Contract and whether imposed by a local, governmental or other competent authority in the United Kingdom or elsewhere;
<b>“TDR Amendment”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.6 (TDR Amendments) of Chapter 4.1 ( <i>Service Development</i> );
<b>“Technical Support Contract”</b>	means a contract for technical support to which the Operator is a party, relating to the rolling stock vehicles used in the provision of the Passenger Services;
<b>“Tendering/Reletting Process”</b>	means either of the processes described in paragraph 1.1 and 1.2 of Chapter 9.5.2 ( <i>Reletting Provisions and Maintenance as a Going Concern</i> );
<b>“Termination Event”</b>	means any or each of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) any Force Majeure Event continues with the effect of preventing the Operator from delivering, wholly or mainly, the Passenger Services for more than six (6) consecutive months; or</li> <li>(b) the warranty given by the Operator pursuant to paragraph 3.2 (<i>Tax Compliance</i>) of Chapter 9.7 (<i>Miscellaneous Legal Terms</i>) is materially untrue; or</li> <li>(c) the Operator commits a material breach of its obligation to notify the Secretary of State of any Occasion of Tax Non-Compliance in respect of any Affected Party as required by paragraph 3.2(b)(i) (<i>Tax Compliance</i>) of Chapter 9.7 (<i>Miscellaneous Legal Terms</i>); or</li> <li>(d) the Operator fails to provide details of proposed mitigating factors as required by paragraph 3.2(b)(ii) (<i>Tax Compliance</i>) of Chapter 9.7 (<i>Miscellaneous Legal Terms</i>) which in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, are acceptable; or</li> <li>(e) the Secretary of State serves a Competition Event Notice on the Operator pursuant to paragraph 6 (<i>Competition</i>) of Chapter 9.7 (<i>Miscellaneous Legal Terms</i>);</li> </ul>
<b>“Termination Notice”</b>	means a notice from the Secretary of State to the Operator terminating the National Rail Contract following an Event of Default or a Termination Event in accordance with Chapter 9.4.1 ( <i>Events of Default and Termination Events</i> );
<b>“Third Party Data”</b>	means any information, data and materials that may be provided to the Secretary of State by any third party that relates to the Operator and which the Secretary of State decides (in the Secretary of State’s absolute discretion) to add to the RPC Database;
<b>“Third Party Trade Mark”</b>	means any trade mark which: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) is owned or licensed by a third party;</li> <li>(b) does not relate to the Operator or any Affiliate of the Operator;</li> </ul>

	(c) any Successor Operator can reasonably be expected to continue to display on the assets to which it is applied; and
	(d) is reasonably and legitimately used in the ordinary course of the Operator's provision of the Rail Services;
<b>“Through Ticketing (Non-Travelcard) Agreement”</b>	means the agreement of that name referred to in paragraph 4.1(e) of Appendix 1 ( <i>List of Transport, Travel and Other Schemes</i> ) to Chapter 8.2.8 ( <i>Transport, Travel and Other Schemes</i> );
<b>“2010 Ticket Revenue”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4 of Chapter 8.2.4 ( <i>Regulation of Fares Basket Values and Individual Fares</i> );
<b>“Ticketing and Settlement Agreement”</b>	means the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement dated 23 July 1995 between RSP, the Operator and the other Train Operators named therein, as amended from time to time with the approval of the Secretary of State;
<b>“Ticketless Travel Rate”</b>	means, for any Ticketless Travel Survey Period, that proportion (expressed as a percentage to three decimal places) of revenue estimated by the Ticketless Travel Surveys conducted within that Ticketless Travel Survey Period to be associated with passengers travelling on the Passenger Services without a valid ticket or other valid permission to travel;
<b>“Ticketless Travel Survey”</b>	means for the purposes of paragraph 1 of Part A of Chapter 8.1 ( <i>Marketing and Revenue Growth</i> ), the survey carried out by or on behalf of the Secretary of State in each Ticketless Travel Survey Period for the purposes of submitting to the Secretary of State the report required pursuant to paragraph 1.3 of Part A of Chapter 8.1 ( <i>Marketing and Revenue Growth</i> );
<b>“Ticketless Travel Survey Methodology” or “TSM”</b>	means the document in the agreed terms marked <b>TSM</b> ;
<b>“Ticketless Travel Survey Period”</b>	means such day or days as are determined by the Secretary of State falling within each of the following periods (or such alternative periods as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify) for the purposes of paragraph 2 of Part A of Chapter 8.1 ( <i>Marketing and Revenue Growth</i> ): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the first to the sixth Reporting Period (inclusive) to fall in any Contract Year; and</li> <li>(b) the seventh to the thirteenth Reporting Period (inclusive) to fall in any Contract Year;</li> </ul>
<b>“Time to 3 Minutes” or “T-3” or “Time to 3”</b>	means the percentage of recorded station stops called at within three (3) minutes of the planned time relating to the Rail Services as produced and/or published by Network Rail;
<b>“Time to 15 Minutes” or “T-15” or “Time to 15”</b>	means the percentage of recorded station stops called at within fifteen (15) minutes of the planned time relating to the Rail Services as produced and/or published by Network Rail;
<b>“Time to 3 Minutes Figures”</b>	means the moving annual average percentage published by Network Rail in respect of Time to 3 Minutes, rounded to two (2) decimal places;

<b>“Time to 15 Minutes Figures”</b>	means the moving annual average percentage published by Network Rail in respect of Time to 15 Minutes, rounded to two (2) decimal places;
<b>“Timetable”</b>	means the timetable which reflects the National Rail Timetable containing the departure and arrival times of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) all Passenger Services which call at Stations and/or Operator Access Stations; and</li> <li>(b) principal Connections at those stations and other stations;</li> </ul>
<b>“Timetable Development Rights”</b>	means all or any of the rights of the Operator under any Track Access Agreement to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) operate Passenger Services and ancillary movements by virtue of that Track Access Agreement;</li> <li>(b) deliver any required notification and/or declaration to the Infrastructure Manager in respect of its intention to exercise any rights;</li> <li>(c) make or refrain from making any bids for Train Slots, in each case before any relevant priority dates provided for in, and in accordance with, the Network Code;</li> <li>(d) surrender any Train Slots allocated to the Operator by the Infrastructure Manager in accordance with the Network Code;</li> <li>(e) object to, make representations, appeal or withhold consent in respect of any actual or proposed act or omission by the Infrastructure Manager; and</li> <li>(f) seek from the Infrastructure Manager additional benefits as a condition to granting any consent to any actual or proposed act or omission by the Infrastructure Manager;</li> </ul>
<b>“Timetable Planning Rules”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Network Code;
<b>“Timetabled Services”</b>	means any particular Passenger Service characterised by the day of the week (including Saturday and Sunday), time of day, origin station and destination and calling pattern which is scheduled to operate (for example, the 10:10 service departing Manchester Airport to Edinburgh on a Sunday etc.);
<b>“Timetabling and Train Planning Compliance Investigation”</b>	has the meaning set out in paragraph 2.1 of Chapter 4.2 ( <i>Operating Obligations</i> );
<b>“TOC Minutes Delay”</b>	means the relevant measure by which the Operator’s operational performance is assessed, as described in and calculated in accordance with paragraph 4.1 ( <i>TOC Minutes Delay Calculations</i> ) of Chapter 4.4 ( <i>Operational Performance</i> );
<b>“TOC Minute Delay Benchmark Table”</b>	means the table entitled "TOC Minute Delay Benchmarks" as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“TOC Minutes Delay Re-Calculation”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.1(b) of Chapter 4.4 ( <i>Operational Performance</i> );
<b>“TOC on Self Cancellations”</b>	means the relevant measure by which the Operator’s operational performance is assessed, as described in and calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.1 ( <i>TOC on Self</i>



	<i>Cancellation Calculation</i> ) of Chapter 4.4 ( <i>Operational Performance</i> );
<b>“TOC on Self Cancellations Benchmark Table”</b>	means the table entitled "TOC on Self Cancellations Benchmarks" as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“TOC on Self Cancellations Re-Calculation”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.1(b) of Chapter 4.4 ( <i>Operational Performance</i> );
<b>“Track Access Agreement”</b>	means each Access Agreement between Infrastructure Manager and the Operator which permits the Operator to provide the Passenger Services on track operated by the Infrastructure Manager;
<b>“Trade and Cooperation Agreement”</b>	means the Trade and Cooperation Agreement between the European Union and the European Atomic Energy Community, of the One Part, and the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, of the Other Part signed on 30 December 2020;
<b>“Trade Mark”</b>	means any registered or unregistered trade mark either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) licensed by the Secretary of State under the Brand Licence; or</li> <li>(b) specified in Appendix 1 (<i>List of Operator Trade Marks</i>) to Chapter 9.3 (<i>Branding and Intellectual Property</i>),</li> </ul> but excluding the Primary Brand and any Secondary Brands;
<b>“Trade Union”</b>	means any trade union(s) recognised by the Operator or any Relevant Employer in respect of Business Employees;
<b>“Train Crew Numbers Data”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.3 ( <i>Sharing further data with Network Rail</i> ) of Chapter 3 ( <i>Collaboration</i> );
<b>“Train Fleet”</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the rolling stock vehicles described in or required by Chapter 4.3 (<i>The Rolling Stock</i>); and</li> <li>(b) any other rolling stock vehicles the Secretary of State consents to in accordance with paragraph 3 of Chapter 4.3 (<i>The Rolling Stock</i>);</li> </ul>
<b>“Train Operator”</b>	means a franchisee, franchise operator or other operator, which in each case operate railway passenger services pursuant to a franchise agreement (or equivalent agreement) or a Public Sector Operator;
<b>“Train Formation Capacity Plan” or “TFCP”</b>	means the plan (including sub-plans) prepared by the Operator for the operation of trains and train formations under the Timetable that best matches available capacity to Forecast Passenger Demand as amended from time to time during the Contract Period in accordance with this Contract;
<b>“Train Service Quality Inspection”</b>	means an inspection of the facilities and services on a vehicle comprised within a SQR Train in the manner specified in the Service Quality Schedules and in accordance with the requirements of Part 1 ( <i>Service Quality Regime</i> ) of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“Train Service Requirement” or “TSR”</b>	means the train service requirement more particularly described in paragraph 1 of Chapter 4.1 ( <i>Service Development</i> ) as such train service requirement may

	subsequently be amended or replaced in accordance with Chapter 4.1 ( <i>Service Development</i> );
<b>“Train Slots”</b>	has the meaning given to it in the Network Code;
<b>“Transaction”</b>	means the entry into the National Rail Contract by the Secretary of State and the Operator
<b>“Transfer Scheme”</b>	means a transfer scheme made by the Secretary of State under section 12 and Schedule 2 of the Railways Act 2005 (or equivalent statutory provision) pursuant to paragraph 3.1 of Chapter 9.5.3 ( <i>Provisions applying on and after Termination</i> ), being substantially in the form of the document entitled Transfer Scheme in the agreed terms, but subject to such amendments as the Secretary of State may make thereto as a result of any Change of Law affecting such transfer scheme or other change of circumstances between the date of the National Rail Contract and the date on which such scheme is made;
<b>“Transitory Branding”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.1 ( <i>Removal of Branding</i> ) of Chapter 9.3 ( <i>Branding and Intellectual Property</i> );
<b>“Transport Act”</b>	means the Transport Act 2000;
<b>“Transport for London” or “TfL”</b>	means Transport for London as established under the Greater London Authority Act 1999;
<b>“Transport for Wales”</b>	means a company wholly owned by Welsh Ministers to deliver transport projects in Wales;
<b>“Transport Scotland”</b>	means the national transport agency of Scotland created on 1 January 2006 which is an Executive Agency of the Scottish Government and accountable to Scottish Ministers;
<b>“Transport Infrastructure Skills Strategy”</b>	means the document of that name launched by the Department for Transport on 28 January 2016 (as located at the date of this Contract at: <a href="https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/transport-infrastructure-skills-strategy-building-sustainable-skills">https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/transport-infrastructure-skills-strategy-building-sustainable-skills</a> );
<b>“Travelcard Agreement”</b>	means the agreement of that name referred to in paragraph 4.1(d) of Appendix 1 ( <i>List of Transport, Travel and Other Schemes</i> ) to Chapter 8.2.8 ( <i>Transport, Travel and Other Schemes</i> );
<b>“Traveline”</b>	means the website available at: <a href="http://www.traveline.info">http://www.traveline.info</a> (or such other applicable address that is adopted from time to time) which is provided by the partnership of transport companies, local authorities and passenger groups which have come together to bring the information on routes and timers for door to door travel by bus, rail, tube, tram, coach and ferry around Great Britain;
<b>“TRH Score”</b>	means the threat, risk harm score for each Station calculated by the British Transport Police in accordance with the BTP Methodology at railway stations;
<b>“Trigger Event”</b>	means if and when any of the following occurs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) any Cost Budget Change Event;</li> <li>(b) any Financial Target Amendment Event; and/or</li> <li>(c) any Operational Performance Target Amendment Event;</li> </ul>



<b>“Trustee”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.1 of Chapter 7.6 ( <i>Railways Pension Scheme</i> );
<b>“TSI”</b>	means any Technical Standard for Interoperability with which the Operator is required to comply pursuant to Directives EU 96/48 and EU 2001/16 and related legislation;
<b>“TT Action Plan”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.2(a)(i) of Chapter 8.1 ( <i>Marketing and Revenue Growth</i> );
<b>“TT Deemed”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.1 ( <i>Ticketless Travel Survey Periods Calculations</i> ) of Chapter 8.1 ( <i>Marketing and Revenue Growth</i> );
<b>“TT Expected Fee Performance Level” or “TTE”</b>	means, in respect of the FP TT Sub-Component, the specified value in relation to the FP TT Sub-Component as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan, or otherwise agreed or determined (as applicable) in accordance with paragraph 2.7(b) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“TT Maximum Fee Performance Level” or “TTMax”</b>	means, in respect of the FP TT Sub-Component, the specified value in relation to the FP TT Sub-Component as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan, or otherwise agreed or determined (as applicable) in accordance with paragraph 2.7(b) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“TT Nil Fee Performance Level” or “TTNil”</b>	means, in respect of the FP TT Sub-Component, the specified value in relation to the FP TT Sub-Component as set out as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan, or otherwise agreed or determined (as applicable) in accordance with paragraph 2.7(b) of Chapter 7.2 ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> );
<b>“TT Targets”</b>	means, in relation to the FP TT Sub-Component, in the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) TT Nil Fee Performance Level;</li> <li>(b) TT Expected Fee Performance Level; and</li> <li>(c) TT Maximum Fee Performance Level;</li> </ul>
<b>“Turnaround Time”</b>	means the time specified in the train plan between the completion of a Passenger Service in accordance with the Timetable and the commencement of the next Passenger Service in accordance with the Timetable on the same day using some or all of the same rolling stock vehicles;
<b>“Undisputed Cancellation”</b>	means a Cancellation that is not a Disputed Cancellation;
<b>“Undisputed Network Rail Cancellation”</b>	means a Network Rail Cancellation that is not a Disputed Cancellation;
<b>“Undisputed Network Rail Partial Cancellation”</b>	means a Network Rail Partial Cancellation that is not a Disputed Partial Cancellation;
<b>“Undisputed Partial Cancellation”</b>	means a Partial Cancellation that is not a Disputed Partial Cancellation;
<b>“Unrepresented Employees”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.6 of Chapter 2.2 ( <i>Rail Workforce</i> );
<b>“Value”</b>	means at any time the aggregate of the Projected Revenue of each Fare in a Fares Basket at that time;
<b>“Value Added Tax”</b>	means value added tax as provided for in the Value Added Tax Act 1994;

<b>“Variation”</b>	means a variation to the terms of the National Rail Contract pursuant to paragraph 8 of Chapter 7.5 ( <i>Variations, Changes and Amendments</i> );
<b>“VCSE”</b>	means Voluntary, Community and Social Enterprise, a non-governmental organisation that is value-driven and which principally reinvests its surpluses to further social, environmental or cultural objectives. VCSEs include small local community and voluntary groups, registered charities, foundations, trusts and the growing number of social enterprises and co-operatives;
<b>“Wavelength Customer Promises”</b>	means each of the ‘customer promises’, being customer-focused initiatives and key commitments intended to benefit customers as identified in the Wavelength Programme;
<b>“Wavelength Programme”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 22 of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“Wavelength Survey”</b>	has the meaning given paragraph 22 of Chapter 5.5 ( <i>Customer Experience Performance</i> );
<b>“W<sub>BM</sub>”</b>	means the weighting of the Business Management Fee expressed as a percentage of the Performance Based Fee, specified as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“W<sub>CE</sub>”</b>	means the aggregate weighting of the customer experience element of the Performance Based Fee (comprising the aggregate of the Service Quality Standards Fee and the Customer Satisfaction Fee) as specified as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“W<sub>CS</sub>”</b>	means the weighting of the Customer Satisfaction Fee expressed as a percentage of the customer experience element of the Performance Based Fee and which shall be forty per cent (40%);
<b>“Weekday”</b>	means any day other than a Saturday, a Sunday or a Bank Holiday;
<b>“Weekly Season Ticket”</b>	means a Season Ticket Fare which is valid in Standard Class Accommodation from (and including) the day it first comes into effect until (but excluding) the day which falls seven (7) days after such day;
<b>“Welsh Ministers”</b>	has the meaning ascribed to it in section 45(1)(b) of the Government of Wales Act 2006 and shall include any other body replacing them from time to time;
<b>“W<sub>FIN</sub>”</b>	means the weighting of the Financial Performance Fee expressed as a percentage of the Performance Based Fee, specified as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“W<sub>FINC</sub>”</b>	means the weighting to be applied to the FP Cost Sub-Component when calculating the amount of the Financial Performance Fee for that PBF Assessment Period, being the percentage specified as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“W<sub>FINR</sub>”</b>	means the weighting to be applied to the FP Revenue Sub-Component when calculating the amount of the Financial Performance Fee for that PBF Assessment Period, being the percentage specified as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;

<b>“W<sub>FINTT</sub>”</b>	means, where the Applicable Assessment Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee applies the FP TT QTM, the weighting to be applied to the FP TT Sub-Component when calculating the amount of the Financial Performance Fee for that PBF Assessment Period, being the percentage specified as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“Williams Rail Review”</b>	means the root and branch review of Britain’s railway, independently chaired by Keith Williams;
<b>“W<sub>OP</sub>”</b>	means the weighting of the Operational Performance Fee expressed as a percentage of the Performance Based Fee, specified as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“W<sub>OPC</sub>”</b>	means the percentage weighting applicable to TOC on Self Cancellations, specified as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“W<sub>OPMD</sub>”</b>	means the percentage weighting applicable to TOC Minutes Delay, specified as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“W<sub>OPSF</sub>”</b>	means the percentage weighting applicable to Short Formations, specified as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“W<sub>OPT3</sub>”</b>	means the percentage weighting applicable to T-3, specified as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“W<sub>OPT15</sub>”</b>	means the percentage weighting applicable to T-15, specified as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan;
<b>“W<sub>OPAC</sub>”</b>	means the percentage weighting applicable to All Cancellations, specified as part of the Annual PBF Specifications in the Business Plan; and
<b>“Workers”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 10 of Chapter 2.2 ( <i>Rail Workforce</i> );
<b>“Workforce Diversity Data”</b>	means data on the diversity of the Operator’s workforce including statistics showing: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the gender, race, disability, sexual orientation and working pattern breakdown for specified jobs, categories and levels;</li> <li>(b) religion and gender reassignment across the whole workforce;</li> <li>(c) the promotion of the Operator’s workforce that fall into the following groups: marriage and civil partnership; pregnancy and maternity; social mobility; and parental leave and caring responsibilities; and</li> <li>(d) such other data as the Secretary of State may notify the Operator in accordance with paragraph 1.6(b)(ii) of Chapter 2.1 (<i>Diversity and Inclusion and Training and Development</i>);</li> </ul>
<b>“Working Capital Payment”</b>	means the Contract Payment Component calculated in accordance with paragraph 9.2 of Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> ); and

<b>“Working Capital Repayment”</b>	means the Contract Payment Component calculated in accordance with paragraph 10.2 of Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> ).
<b>“Working Capital Shortfall”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 9.3 of Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> );
<b>“W<sub>SQ</sub>”</b>	means the weighting of the Service Quality Standards Fee expressed as a percentage of the customer experience element of the Performance Based Fee and which shall be sixty per cent (60%);
<b>“Yield Management Data”</b>	means data collected by or on behalf of the Operator for the purpose of or in connection with managing or setting the prices at which any tickets for travel on the Passenger Services are sold and/or any quotas and/or restrictions applying to such tickets including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the number of passengers travelling upon any particular Passenger Service;</li> <li>(b) the ticket types held by such passengers;</li> <li>(c) the prices paid by such passengers for such tickets; and</li> <li>(d) the dates and/or times between which such tickets were made available to purchase at such prices;</li> </ul>
<b>“Yield Management System”</b>	means any system (whether a Computer System or otherwise) for the collection of Yield Management Data and/or onto which Yield Management Data is input, processed and/or held as such system may be amended or altered from time to time;
<b>“YT<sub>2PP</sub>”</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.3 of Appendix 1 ( <i>Calculation of Periodic Contract Payments (PCP)</i> ) to Chapter 7.1 ( <i>Contract Payments</i> ); and
<b>“Zone”</b>	means a zone set out in the map in Schedule 2 of the Travelcard Agreement on the date such agreement came into effect or as amended by agreement with the Secretary of State.

**DEROGATIONS (WAIVERS) - POST CONTRACT SIGNATURE DATE**

**This page is intentionally blank.**